MARKHAM's
MASTER-PIECE
REVIVED:

Containing all Knowledge belonging to the *Smith*, *Farrier* or *Horse-Leach*, touching the Curing

ALL

DISEASES

IN

HORSES;

DRAWN

With great pains from approved Experience and the Publick Practice of the best Horse-Marshals in *Christendom*.

Divided into Two Books.

The *I.* containing all *Cures Physical*; The *II.* all *Cures Chirurgical*:

TOGETHER WITH

The *Nature*, *Use* and *Quality* of every *SIMPLE* mentioned through the whole WORK.

Now the Eleventh time Printed, Corrected and Augmented with above Thirty new Chapters and Forty new Medicins heretofore never Published: All which in the Authors Life-time were concealed for his own Benefit, being the most exact Work that ever was Published of this Nature.

To which is added by way of *APPENDIX*,

The Country-Man's Care for his other CATTEL,

CONTAINING

The exactest *Receipts* for Curing all DISEASES in Oxen, Cows, Sheep, Hogs, Goats, and all smaller Cattel.

Never before made Publick.

LONDON: Printed by *Andrew Clark* for *Thomas Passenger* at the Three Bibles on the middle of *London-Bridge*. 1675.

Ld. Arundell D. 13

The Mind or Meaning of the FRONTISPIECE.

THe Figure 1. a complete *Horſeman* ſhows,
That *Rides*, *Keeps*, *Cures*, and all perfections knows.
The 2. *Diet*; the 3. Letting Blood,
Beſt *Balm* of *Balms*, for inward Griefs moſt good:
The 4. *Wounds*, *Galls*, and *Sores* doth firmly Cure;
The 5. helps *Natures* Marks; 6. doth procure
Help for the *Sinews* Griefs, as *Slip* or *Strain*,
Knick or *Convulſion*, all are helpt again.
The 7. wholſom *Drink*; the 8. doth take
Blood from the *Mouth*, which ſudden Death doth ſlake.
The 9. ſhews the *Horſe-Caudle* or the *Maſh*,
Good as the beſt, yet ſome Fools count it Traſh.
The 10. ſhews *Fury* in untamed things,
The only *Fountain* whence *Diſeaſes* ſprings.

MARKHAMS Maister-Peece.

Containing all knowledge belonging to Smith Farrier, or Horse-leech, touching the curing of all diseases in Horses.

Deuided into two bookes
The first containing all cures Mareschall.
The second all belonging to Chyrurgery
The 12th Impression corrected and enlarged by the Author.

Geruase Markham.

To which is now added The Country mans Care For Curing Diseases in Smaller Cattle.

MARKHAM's
MASTER-PIECE
REVIVED:

Containing all Knowledge belonging to the *Smith*, *Farrier* or *Horſe-Leach*, touching the Curing

ALL

DISEASES

IN

HORSES;

DRAWN

With great pains from approved Experience and the Publick Practice of the beſt Horſe-Marſhals in *Chriſtendom*.

Divided into Two Books.

The *I.* containing all *Cures Phyſical*; The *II.* all *Cures Chirurgical*:

TOGETHER WITH

The *Nature*, *Uſe* and *Quality* of every *SIMPLE* mentioned through the whole WORK.

Now the Eleventh time Printed, Corrected and Augmented with above Thirty new Chapters and Forty new Medicins heretofore never Publiſht: All which in the Authors Life-time were concealed for his own Benefit, being the moſt exact Work that ever was Publiſhed of this Nature.

To which is added by way of *APPENDIX*,

The Country-Man's Care for his other CATTEL,

CONTAINING

The exacteſt *Receipts* for Curing all DISEASES in Oxen, Cows, Sheep, Hogs, Goats, and all ſmaller Cattel.

Never before made Publick.

LONDON: Printed by *Andrew Clark* for *Thomas Paſſenger* at the Three Bibles on the middle of *London-Bridge*. 1675.

Cup.406.j.6

TO

The RIGHT HONOURABLE,
and my NOBLE LORD,

Sir Robert Dormer,

BARONET,

Baron *Dormer* of *Wing*, Viſcount *Aſcot*, Earl of *Carnarvan*, and Maſter of His Majeſties Hawks.

SIR,

EVer ſince I came to ſerve your Country in Military Occaſions, I accounted my ſelf your Servant, and to that end have made ſtrong Intimation: But Multa cadent, *many haps hinder hopes: now left to mine own Power, I could not find any thing that could ſo well expreſs*

preſs me to your Lordſhip, or ſhew you what I am, either in Affection or Virtue, as the Dedication of this Book, which contains me amply and fully adorned with the beſt of mine own Feathers. And howſoever it may appear to your Honour with an old Countenance, both becauſe my Self, the Title, and much of the matter is old, yet let me give aſſurance unto your Noble Goodneſs, that there is that newneſs of Truth, Art, and approved Experience, which unto this day hath not been diſcovered in any other Author. It is more (my Noble Lord) than fifty years agon, ſince I began to ſail in this Ocean, and to diſcover the fruitful Traffick of this needful Art: Nor have I in the interim of Time been a Truant, but with my beſt means and abilities have purſued it (as near as I could) unto the height

height of Perfection, and doubtless (much honoured Sir) I have not lost all my labour, what I have gained I have here now newly inserted, and send it in all Humility to kiss your Lordships hand; not as a material thing worthy your Study, but as a poor virtue that needs your Defence. And howsoever, I dare not set it forth as a Present worthy your acceptance, yet be pleas'd to make it such by your Favour, which can make mean deserving appear to be of greatest merit. This Obligation now offered unto your Worthy hand, is the free offering of my Love, Service and Affection; and in a word of my self, who am as well as my Work devoted to be ever yours. This Book is but the external Pledge which doth demonstrate the inward Obligation of my Heart, since what I

am, Art, Soul and Affection is only Yours, and deſire to be ſo eſteemed in all my Actions, eſpecially in this Work. If it arrive with as good Succeſs, as I tranſport it with ſincere Devotion, no doubt but the Work will gain luſtre, and my ſelf ſhall find that ſatisfaction which ſhall make me ever acknowledge my ſelf,

Your Honours humble
devoted Servant,

GERVASE MARKHAM.

AN

AN ADMONITION TO THE READER,

Which I would wiſh him to Read, before he peruſe the BOOK.

TWO Errors (gentle Reader) have been laid to my charge in the firſt Publication of this Book, as namely, a miſtaking in the Table of Additions wanting Direction: And the great Multiplicity or heaping together of many Medicins for one Grief, without diſtinguiſhing their goodneſs, or foretelling the Practitioner, on which to rely for his beſt Profit and Aſſurance.

The firſt was but a venial eſcape in the Printer, and may be forgotten, inaſmuch as it is in this Impreſſion fully amended. For the ſecond, which is the Multiplicity of Medicines, I have for thy ſatisfaction, to all thoſe Medicins which of mine

own knowledge I have found to be certain and moſt approved, and to be the beſt of thoſe which are coupled with it; I have in the Margin, and over againſt the Medicin placed this Mark ☞.

As alſo to every new Addition, and new Chapter, (never before publiſhed) I have in the beginning of the Chapter placed this ☞.

And for thy better furtherance in this Work, I have likewiſe in the Table, to all the new Additions (which are the very Excellencies of all my knowledge) placed this Mark alſo ☞.

And this I have done for two Reaſons:

Firſt, to make this Work which was one of my firſt, and entituled my *MASTER-PIECE*, a true *MASTER-PIECE* indeed, and ſo exact in every part, that other ſtoln Pieces and Pamphlets Chriſtened in my name, and Printed without my knowledge or aſſiſtance, with twice ſo many Falſhoods as Pages, may be known to be both Baſtards and Abortive; miſtaking an Ounce for half an Ounce, three Hand-fuls for two, too much of one Simple and too little of another, of which whoſoever maketh trial, will, without he hath had ſome knowledge already, indanger his Horſe; and therefore I have given many men notice my ſelf of it, becauſe they have taken one thing for another.

And

And that the bumbasted Title, and the illiterate and absurd Epistles, were neither the one nor the other of my Invention: For I must most ingenuously confess, that, but to this Book and my first, I was never so happy as to be made a God-Father.

And lastly, to wish all those which are abused by false and imperfect Printings, to come to this Book for Correction, which is a Cabinet that contains all, and more than others struggle for. I can give the Reader no better a Reason to persuade him to read my Book, than to shew him the real use of Horses well managed, according to the Rules of Horsemanship; he is fit for Feats of Arms, and Triumphs in War; and a great pity it is, that such an excellent Beast should any way miscarry for want of knowing his natural Diseases, and the Cure thereof.

I have now made the Souldier and all others, Masters of Art in the Cures of their Horses, if Farriers be failing to advise and consider with them: For it is a Knowledge fit for a Gentleman, both in Peace and War, to be able to cure the Diseases incident to his Horses; for other Countries do love all Experiments, and to be seen generally in all generous Practices, whereof Horsemanship is one of the chiefest. Which Work I will justifie upon my Reputation to have been tried by me, and hath wrought good effect; having these fifty years been a Practitioner in the same,

and

and did never think to have diſcloſed theſe Secrets that now I have, which Time and my Induſtry hath brought to light; and becauſe old Age groweth upon me, and that the Grave will be never awhit the better, I thought therefore to divulge them to the World, rather than to have hid them in Oblivion; deſiring the Reader to give God the Glory, and me but only Thanks and good Wiſhes. So I reſt,

Thine,

G.M.

The

The AUTHORS NAMES,
From whom any thing in this *Work* is Collected, being the beſt Farriers.

Theſe are Publick.

Xenophon
Ruſticus
Vegetius
Pelagonius
Camerarius
Apollonius
Greſſon
Grilli
Horatio
Gloria de Caballi
Libal
Stevens
Wickerus
La Brove
Martin ſenior
Albiterio
Vinet
Clifford
Maskal
Markham.

Theſe are Private.

Martin junior
Webb
Dallidoun ſenior
Dallidoun junior
Ausbourn
Stanley
Smith
Dowſing
Day
Barns
Mayfield
Lupman
Goodſoon
Parfray
White

Markham's Maſter-Piece.

THE FIRST BOOK CONTAINING

All Cures Phyſical, or ſuch Infirmities, as, being inward, crave the Adminiſtration of Phyſick, and are called in Horſe-Leach-craft, *Horſe-ſickneſſes.*

CHAP. I.

Of the natural Compoſition of Horſes Bodies.

TOuching the true compoſition of a Horſes body, you ſhall underſtand, that it is (as the body of Man) compounded of thirteen ſeveral things; that is to ſay, ſeven natural, and ſix not natural: The ſeven natural, are *Elements, Temperaments, Humours, Members, Powers* or *Vertues, Actions* or *Operations*, and *Spirits*; all which be called natural, becauſe the natural Perfection and excellency of every ſenſible body doth wholly depend upon them, and hath his moving no longer than they have power of working. The ſix, which are not natural, be the *Ayr*, *Meat* and *Drink*, *Motion* and *Reſt*, *Sleep* and *Watch*, *Emptineſs* and *Fulneſs*, and the *Affects* or *Motions* of the mind; and theſe are called not natural, becauſe as (being rightly and in due order applied) they preſerve, ſuſtain, and fortifie the body;

ſo being miſgoverned, or uſed in any exceſſe, or diſorder, they are the only corrupt deſtroyers of the whole body: and of theſe thirteen ſimples which compound the Fabrick, or whole frame of the body, I intend to ſpeak ſeverally.

CHAP. II.

Of the four Elements, their Vertues and Operations.

FIrſt, for the Expoſition of the word *Element*, you ſhall underſtand, that it is the primary or firſt beginning of all things, being of it ſelf pure, uncorrupt, and ſimple; all things being firſt made thereof, and all things at the laſt being reſolved into the ſame again. It is alſo in its own nature ſo bright, clear, and without contraction of impurity, that it is not able to be diſcerned by any ſenſible eye whatſoever. Laſtly, it is the leaſt part or *Atome* of that thing which is made or proceedeth from it.

Now of theſe Elements which are the uſual firſt movers, or beginners of all moving things, there are only four in number, that is to ſay, *Fire*, *Ayr*, *Water*, and *Earth*; meaning not that *Fire*, *Ayr*, *Water*, and *Earth*, which is viſible here with us beneath, and which, through the groſſeneſs thereof, is both palpable and to be diſcerned; but thoſe which are mounted aloft, and through their purity inviſible and concealed from us, (for the other are compounded bodies, and not ſimple.) And of theſe perfect and diſtinct Elements you ſhall know, that the *Fire* is the higheſt, as being fixed or joyned next unto the Moon, being hot and dry, yet naturally exceeding, or being moſt predominant, or ruling in heat.

The *Ayr* is placed next unto *Fire*, and is naturally light and hot; yet his predominant or chief quality is moiſt.

The *Water* is joyned unto the *Ayre*; the diſpoſition thereof being heavy and moiſt; but his predominant or chief quality only cold.

Laſtly, the *Earth*, adjoyned to the *Water*, is the loweſt; and it is moſt heavy and cold; but the predominant or chief quality thereof is only drineſs.

Now for the vertues, properties, and operations of theſe four Elements, you ſhall underſtand, that firſt the Fire, by means of his heat, moveth matter to generation, and ſtirreth up warmth in all living things;

things; it is that which the Philoſophers call *Heterogenea*, which is in the mixt bodies to ſeparate things of divers kinds one from another, and alſo to joyn things of like kinds together, which they likewiſe call *Homogenea*. For by vertue of the Fire, the bones of Horſes are ſeparated from the fleſh, the fleſh from the ſinews, the ſinews from the veins, the veins from the arteries, the heart from the liver, the liver from the ſpleen, and ſo forth, in ſuch ſort as we ſee the divers parts of the fuel we burn, by the vertue of the fire and heat to be ſeparated, and divided one from another, as the vapour from the ſmoke, the ſmoke from the flame, and the flame from the aſhes. And as in theſe things, ſo in many other things, as in the trial of Metals, and ſuch like, where the fire by vertue of his heat ſeparateth body from body, that is, metal from metal, and corruption from incorruption, gathering and knitting together everything of one and the ſelf ſame kind. Beſides, the vertue of the Fire, is to ripen, order, and digeſt things raw and undigeſted, mingling the dry with the moiſt, and opening the pores, that the Air being ſomewhat more ſolid and groſs, may enter into the body: And laſtly, it breaketh and moderateth the coldneſs of the Water and the Earth, ſo that it may not diſtemper or confound the body.

Touching the vertue and operation of the Air, you ſhall underſtand, that by the moiſtneſs therof, it maketh the matter apt to receive ſhape, either natural, or accidental, and by the help and aſſiſtance of the Fire, bringeth the powers and influences of the Heavens and Stars into the inferiour bodies, making the mixt bodies not only ſubtil and penetrable, but alſo light and mounting, to the end they may neither be too groſs, nor too heavy. Secondly, the Air through his moiſtneſs cooleth the burning heat of the Heart, Liver, and Intrails, as we daily ſee by the office of the Lights and Lungs, which like a pair of bellows draweth unceſſantly freſh air unto the Heart and inward members. And albeit, the Aire doth not ſeem to the ſenſe of the outward eyes, to be any thing neer ſo moiſt as the Water, yet according to the opinions, both of our Books and beſt Phyſicians, it is by much the moiſter, which is well proved, (ſay they) by the abundant flux it containeth, which flux ſpreadeth it ſelf ſo farre abroad in the Body, that it filleth every empty part and corner thereof, with the ſpecial Properties and Characters of moiſtneſs, and by that Reaſon, is much harder to be kept within his own bounds,

than the water is. Laſtly, as the Water was altered by God from his firſt natural place, for the better profit both of Man and Beaſt; even ſo the Air, according to School-mens opinions, was not left altogether in his firſt natural diſpoſition, leſt being over-moyſt it ſhould ſo confound and ſuffocate all Senſe, that neither Man nor Beaſt ſhould be able to Breath or Live.

Now for the Vertue and Operation of the Water, it is to be noted, that through the Coldneſs thereof, it conglutinateth and bindeth in mixt Bodies, both parts and members together, which be of divers kinds; as bones with fleſh and ſinews, fleſh with ſinews and bones, and ſinews with bones and fleſh. Even as for a familiar Example, we ſee in the time of any great Froſt, the ſtrength of the Cold how it bindeth things of divers kinds together, bringing into one maſſe or ſubſtance, both Water, Dirt, Stones, Straws, Sticks and Leaves: The Water alſo with its Coldneſs, doth temper and cool the inflammation and heat of the Fire, gathering together thoſe things, which otherwiſe the violent Heat would diſperſe and ſcatter abroad.

Laſtly, for the vertue and operation of the Earth, it is through his drineſs in mixt bodies, ſo to harden and fix them together, that they may retain their ſhapes, which otherwiſe by the power of the Air and Water, would be ſo ſoluble and looſe, that they could not hold together; as we may ſee in Paſt, Wax, and ſuch like, which whilſt it is moiſt, will receive no print, but being once hardned, it retaineth any form that is preſt into it. And here is to be noted, that according to the opinion of *Hippocrates*, when any ſenſible body dyeth, not only every quality, but every ſubſtance and part makes his return to the Element from whence it came; as heat to the Fire, moiſtneſs to the Air, coldneſs to the Water, and drineſs to the Earth. And thus briefly you ſee, that of theſe four common Elements, or common beginners of things; the Fire being hot, ſeparateth; the Air being moiſt, ſhapeth; the Water being cold, bindeth; and the Earth being dry, hardneth and retaineth. The uſe that you are to make of this knowledge, over and beſides the compoſition of a natural body, is, that when you find any ſickneſs, or infirmity, which proceedeth from the Fire, as Inflammations of the body, or ſuch like, that then you apply ſimples of the nature of the Air or Water, which may moiſten and cool the violence of the heat. If the infirmity proceed from

from the Air, as Flux of blood, or too much moiſture, then you ſhall apply ſimples of the nature of the Fire or Earth, whoſe heat and drineſs may diſperſe and harden ſuch moiſture. If the diſeaſe ſpring from the Water, as Colds, Rheumes, Apoplexies, and ſuch like; then you ſhall ſeek ſimples of the nature of the Fire and Air; that through the heat of the one, anb the moiſt lightneſs of the other, all ſuch cold, groſs and ſolid humours may be diſperſed. But if the diſeaſe proceed from the earth, as Mangineſs and Leproſie, or their like, that are dry and hardned infections, then you ſhall ſeek ſimples of the nature of the Fire only, whoſe heat may diſſolve and looſen thoſe ill knit, dry, and hard humours.

Thus you ſee, too much heat is abated by coldneſs and moiſtneſs; too much moiſtneſs by heat and drineſs; too much coldneſs by heat and moiſtneſs; too much drineſs by heat only.

Thus much of theſe four common Elements, which begin all things living and unliving, ſenſible and unſenſible; yet of ſenſible things, which live and have blood, there be other more neer Elements, or beginnings, which are called proper Elements, or generation; as the ingendring ſeed, and menſtrual blood, from whence every Beaſt taketh his firſt ſhape and beginning; and yet thoſe proper bginnings have their whole dependency and hanging upon the qualities of the firſt common beginnings already ſpoken of, which is moiſt, dry, hot and cold, for without them they are nothing, nor can do any thing.

CHAP. III.

Of Temperaments, and their ſeveral kinds, and how far every way they extend in Horſes.

THeſe *Temperaments*, or *Temperatures*, which are the ſecond thing in a Horſes compoſition, do ſpring from the Commixture of the four Elements, and are nine in number, whereof eight are unequal, and the ninth is equal. Of the eight unequal, four are ſimple, and thoſe be hot, cold, moiſt, and dry, which Phyſicians call the firſt Qualities; and of theſe, the firſt two be Active, and the other two Paſſive: the other four are compound, and they be hot and moiſt, hot and dry, cold and moiſt, cold and dry. Now the equal Temperament is divided

divided into two, an Univerſal and a Special. The equal *Temperament Univerſal*, is, when the four Elements are in an equal proportion, generally divided through the whole Body, Nature injoying no more from the one, than from the other. The equal *Temperament Eſpecial*, is, when the Elements are proportioned according as every kind doth moſt properly require, be it either Plant or Beaſt: In Plants, when every Plant hath that commixture of Elements, which are proper to its kind, the hot Plant being hot, the cold being cold, *&c.* Whereas contrariwiſe, to have a hot Plant cold, or a cold hot, to have Rue cold, or Sorrel hot, were a falſe and unequal commixture of Elements. So likewiſe of Beaſts, that Horſe, that Dogg, that Swine is ſaid to have his due *Temperament*, when he is of ſuch temperature as is moſt proper unto his kind, which only is beſt diſcerned by his Actions, or Motions. As thus, the Horſe is known to be hot and moiſt by his Lightneſs, Swiftneſs, Valiantneſs, and long Life, and alſo to be of a temperate nature, in that he is eaſily Tamed, Docible, Obedient and Familiar with the Man. And ſo long as either Horſe, or any other thing, continueth in the Mediocrity and Excellency of his proper Temperament, ſo long as we may truly judge him of a good temper and diſpoſition; but if there be any over-flow of qualities, or exceſs in his Humours, as either heat, coldneſs, moiſtneſs, or drineſs, then we ſay, he is either a hot Cholerick Horſe, a cold Dull Horſe, a dry Miſchievous Horſe, or a moiſt Cowardly Horſe, according to the over-flow of that quality which reigneth in him.

Again, every Horſe is ſaid to have his due *Temperament*, according to his Age, and the Country wherein he is bred, and ſometimes according to the time of the year wherein he Liveth. And thus a Horſe in his foal-age, which is, till he be ſix years old, is naturally hot and moiſt; in his middle age, which is till twelve, more hot and dry than moiſt; and in his old age, which is paſt eighteen, more cold and dry, than either hot or moiſt. So likewiſe, the Horſes which are bred in Southern parts, as either in *Spain*, *Barbary*, or *Greece*, are naturally more hot than thoſe which are bred either in the ſeventeen Lands, *Germany*, or *England*; neither is there any Horſe, which is in good ſtate of body, that is ſo hot in the Spring-time of the year, as in the Summer, nor ſo cold in the Summer, as in Winter. All which obſervations are with moſt curious diligence to be obſerved of every Horſe-leach, when he goeth about to cure any ſickneſs: for unleſs

unleſs he conſider their natures and temperatures, and every other circumſtance already declared, he ſhall right ſoon be deceived in the adminiſtration of his Phyſick. Therefore, I earneſtly deſire every Farrier, before he give any drench or potion, firſt to inquire the kind, race, and diſpoſition of the Horſe, next his age, then the Country, and laſtly, the time of the year: and ſo according to the truth thereof, to mix his receipts.

It is moſt expedient alſo, for every Horſe-leach to conſider the ſecond qualities, which are ſo called, becauſe they take their beginnings from the firſt qualities already declared; of which ſecond qualities ſome be called palpable, or to be touched, as theſe, ſoftneſs, hardneſs, ſmoothneſs, roughneſs, toughneſs, brickleneſs, lightneſs, heavineſs, thinneſs, thickneſs, ſmallneſs, groſſeneſs, and ſuch other like. Some again are not palpable, as thoſe which appertain to hearing, ſeeing, and ſmelling, as noyſes, colours, odours, and ſuch like; and by obſerving well the ſecond qualities, he ſhall with much eaſe know whether the Horſe be diſpoſed to any ſickneſs or not, as ſhall be more largly declared hereafter in every particular Chapter.

CHAP. IV.

Of Humours, and to what end they ſerve.

NOw concerning *Humours*, which are the third compoſers of a Horſes body, and ſo likewiſe of every other beaſt alſo; you ſhall underſtand that they are four in number, that is to ſay, *Blood*, *Flegm*, *Choler*, and *Melancholy*. As touching *Blood*, it is in its nature uncorrupted, and therefore hot and moiſt, and ſweet in taſte, as participating of the Elements Fire and Air. *Flegm* is cold and moiſt, and either ſweet, or wallowiſh without any taſte at all, as participating of the Elements Water and Air; *Choler* is hot and dry, and bitter in taſte, as participating of the Elements Fire and Earth. *Melancholy* is cold and dry, and in taſte ſowre and heavy, as participating of the Elements Water and Earth: ſo that theſe four Humours by their qualities, are every way allied unto the Elements. For to ſpeak briefly, and according to the manner of Phyſicians, *Blood* is of the nature of the Air, in being moſt predominant therein; *Flegm* of the nature of water, *Choler* of the nature of Fire, and *Melancholy*

Melancholy of the nature of the Earth. And albeit theſe Humours are ſymbolized or mixt through every part of the body, yet every one of them aboundeth more in one part than in another, and have their places of reſidence, abſolute, and particular to themſelves; as *Blood* about the heart; *Flegm* in the brain; *Choler* in the liver; and *Melancholy* in the ſpleen. Now as theſe Humours do more or leſs abound, or have greater or leſſer ſoveraignty in the Horſe, ſo is the Beaſt naturally better or worſe coloured, qualified, or diſpoſed, as thus. That Horſe in whom Blood hath the greateſt predominance, and may be called a Horſe ſanguine, is bright, bay of colour, and in diſpoſition pleaſant, nimble, and of temperate or moderate motion. That Horſe in whom Flegm hath the greateſt dominion, and may be called a flegmatick Horſe, is for the moſt part of a milky white colour, and ſo conſequently ſlow, dull, and heavy. If Choler bear the greateſt rule in his conſtitution, then is his colour commonly a bright Sorrel, and by that means of diſpoſition hot, fiery, and of little ſtrength. Laſtly, if the Earth have gotten power above the other Elements, ſo that he may be called a Melancholy Horſe, then his colour is commonly a Mouſe dunn, and his diſpoſition cowardly, faint, and ſlothfull. But becauſe theſe particularities are properly appertaining to the Complexions of Horſes, of which we ſhall have cauſe to ſpeak more largly hereafter, I will not ſtand upon any greater relations; only I give you thus much in Concluſion: to underſtand that every one of theſe afore-ſaid Humours hath his proper uſe and end, whereunto it ſerveth, as thus. *Blood* ſerveth more properly to nouriſh the body. *Flegm* giveth motion to the joynts. *Melancholy* begetteth an Appetite or Longing to his meat. Now during the time that theſe Humours do poſſeſs their natural qualities, ſo long they are wholſome, and be called by their ſimple names, without Gloſſe or Addition: but if by any miſchance they be diſordered or corrupted, then they are unwholſome, and are no longer called by their ſimple names, but have other Epithetons annexed unto them, as *Melancholy blood*, *Salt flegm*, *Cholor aduſt* or *burnt Choler*, and *fretting Melancholy*, whereof proceedeth many peſtilent and dangerous diſeaſes, as ſhall be at large declared hereafter. And thus much for the ſtate of Humours.

CHAP.

CHAP. V.

Of Members, and their ſeveral kinds.

TOuching *Members*, which are the fourth main inſtrument in this great fabrick of a Horſes body, they are by School-men divided into two parts: The firſt is called *Similaria*, which is like, ſemblable, or one and the ſame thing: The other is called *Inſtrumental*, and are contrary to the firſt.

Members alike, are thoſe, which being ſeparated, or diſtributed into parts, yet every part thereof is alike in ſubſtance to the whole, neither altering in definition, appellation, or nature; as fleſh, bone, ſinew, and ſuch like: for fleſh being cut or inciſed into many parts, yet is every part ſtill fleſh, ſo reputed, and ſo called, as well as when it was in combination altogether; and as of this, ſo likewiſe may it be ſaid of bones, ſinews, and the like.

Now for *Members Inſtrumental*, they be thoſe which being made of parts ſemblable, and divided into parts, yet the parts are not alike, neither have all one name with the whole; as the head, legg, foot, and ſuch like: for every part of the head is not called the head, nor every part of the legg the legg, but have other appellations, as the brow, the temples, the knee, the feet-lock, &c. Now theſe Inſtrumental members, in doing of their offices and duties, are of much more perfection than the Semblable members: wherefore School-men have made amongſt theſe Inſtrumental members, four Soveraigns or Princes above the reſt; that is, the *Brain*, the *Heart*, the *Liver*, and the *Stones*; of which the firſt three are the preſervers of the ſingular body, and the fourth of the whole kind: the firſt three giving motion and agitation to the body, the fourth generation and increaſe to ſucceeding ages.

Now from theſe principal members, like branches from a well-grown Tree, do ſpring other members, which do them ſervice: as from the Brain ſpringeth ſinews, whoſe office is feeling, from the Heart arteries, whoſe office is ſprightlineſs and lively hood; from the Liver veins, whoſe office is warmth and ſtrength; and from the Stones the ſeed-veſſels, whoſe office is procreation and increaſe. Now foraſmuch as from theſe do likewiſe proceed a World of other mem-

bers, as *Tendons*, *Ligaments*, *Lungs*, *Spleens*, *Guts*, and such like; all which, in as much as the knowledge of them doth more properly belong to the office of the Chirurgion, than to the Physician, (though most necessary to both) I am here to advertise every studious Reader, that when he shall have occasion to meddle with any member about a Horse, that he turn to the second Book of this Volume, which treateth only of Chirurgery, and there he shall not only find every member and lineament in a Horse, but also the true Anatomy so lively demonstrated, that there shall be nothing wanting to the perfecting of his understanding. And thus much in this place of Members.

CHAP. VI.

Of Powers, and how a Horses body is governed by them.

POwers, which by some are called *Vertues*, or principal faculties, and do govern and controle both the body of man and beast, and have the fifth place in this work, are in number three, that is, the *power Animal*, the *power Vital*, and the *power Natural*. The *power Animal*, is a vertue incident to the Brain, which through the Sinews coming like little conduit pipes from the Brain, distributeth feeling and moving to all the parts of the body. The *power Vital* is a vertue belonging to the Heart, which doth give Life and Spirit to all the body by means of the Arteries; which proceeding from the Heart, which is the chief fountain of natural heat, carry in their little chanels over the whole body, that ayr and spiritual blood which makes it full of lightness and alacrity. The *power Natural* is a vertue belonging to the Liver, which gives nourishment unto all the body, and to every part thereof, by means of the Veins, which do likewise proceed from the Liver, like greater conduits, carrying the blood from the Liver, which is the fountain of blood, into every part of the body. Besides, the *power Natural* containeth four other vertues, that is, the vertue *Attractive*, which draweth food, meat to sustain the body; the vertue *Retentive*, by which it retaineth and keepeth the food received; the vertue *Digestive*, whereby it concocteth and digesteth the same; and lastly, the vertue *Expulsive*, by which it expelleth excrements and superfluities. Thus these

Powers

Powers or Vertues being of no leſs validity than you perceive by this diſcourſe, it is the part and duty of every good Horſe-leach, to have a more carefull and vigilant reſpect unto them; for if any of them fail, the Horſe cannot live. Therefore, whenſoever you ſee that either your Horſe refuſeth his food, or that he cannot retain and keep his food, but caſteth it up again; or that he doth not digeſt his food, but keeps it corruptly in his ſtomack; or that he cannot avoid his excrements in a natural manner, but holds it burning in his body, take them for moſt certain ſigns of mortal ſickneſs: And thus much of Powers or Vertues.

CHAP. VII.

Of Actions or Operations, and whereto they belong.

AS touching *Actions*, or *Operations*, which are the ſixth column or pillar which doth uphold this natural body of which we treat, they are not only belonging, but even derived from the three powers immediatly ſpoken of in the former Chapter, as thus: The action and operation of the *power Animal*, is to diſcern, to move, and to feel. Horſes diſcern by means of the vertue *Imaginative*; *Diſcurſative*, and *Memorative*, whereof the firſt is placed in the forehead, the ſecond in the middle of the brain, and the third in the hinder part of the head. All which are comprehended under the *power Animal*. Horſes move by means of the vertue *motive*, whoſe action and Operation is to reſtrain, or let ſlack the ſinews, whereby every Member hath his moving. And Horſes feeling is by means of the vertue *Senſitive*, whoſe action or Operation is buſied in the five Senſes, as to *See*, *Hear*, *Smell*, *Taſt*, and *Touch*, and all theſe Actions ſpring from the *Power Animal*.

The Action or Operation of the *Power Vital*, is to reſtrain and looſen the Heart, and the Arteries which proceed from the Heart, which Action, whether it be hurt or diſturbed in a Horſes Body, is eaſily known of every good *Farrier*, or *Horſe-Marſhal*, by the unequal beating of his pulſe; that is to ſay, of the Arteries, which come down from the Heart to the inſides of both his fore Leggs, a little below the Knuckles of his Shoulders, and likwiſe croſs both the Temples of his Head, a little higher than his Eyes. And if any man

be ſo ſimple, to imagine that the thickneſs of the Horſes skin ſhall be an impediment to the feeling of this Motion; let him Remember, that as a Horſes skin is thicker than a Mans, ſo alſo are his Arteries greater, and beat with more violence, and ſo conſequently be felt without any great difficulty.

The Actions or Operations of the *Power Natural*, are *to Ingender, to Encreaſe, to Nourish, to deſire with Appetite, to Attract, to Change, to Digeſt, to Retain, and to Expell, and many other of like kind.* Theſe Actions therefore are carefully to be looked unto by every *Farrier*, to the intent that he may Learn by them, not only the whole eſtate of a Horſes Body, but alſo what particular Member thereof is evil affected, as thus: if either in your Horſe you find much Forgetfulneſs, Unnimbleneſs of his Limbs, or Dulneſs upon Correction, it is a ſign of *ſickneſs* in the Brain, and that the *Power Animal* is evil affected. If you find that his *Pulſes* do beat extraordinary ſlow, or much too faſt, it is a ſigne that his Heart is grieved, and his *Power Vital* evil affected: but if you find that he doth conſume, pine away, and loſeth his ſtomack, it is a ſign that his *Liver* is perplexed, all his inward parts out of frame, and his *Power Natural* evil affected.

Now you ſhall again underſtand, that of Actions, ſome be *Voluntary*, ſome not *Voluntary*.

The *Voluntary* Actions be thoſe, which a Horſe may either further or hinder, ſtay or let, when themſelves pleaſe, as the moving of the Leggs: for they may go, ſtand, or lye down at their own pleaſure.

The Actions not *Voluntary*, are thoſe, which depend not upon the will of any Beaſt, but be done of their own accord, and naturally, as the moving of the Heart, and of the Arteries, and the paſſage of the Blood; the firſt, whereof beateth *Sleeping* and *Waking*; and the other hath his courſe every minute. And thus much of the Actions and Operations.

CHAP. VIII.

Of Spirits, and in what part of the Horſes Body they remain.

SPirits, which is the ſeventh natural Builder of this natural Work, are to be underſtood, to be that fine, pure, clear, and aery ſubſtance, which is ingendred of the fineſt part of the Blood, whereby the

the vertue of every principal Member may viſit all the other parts of the Body, making them to do their duties, according to the rules of Nature. Now of ſpirits, according to the Opinions of ſome Phyſicians, there are but two kinds, that is, the *Spirit Animal*, and the *Spirit Vital*: The *Spirit Animal* is that which giveth power of feeling and moving to a Horſe, and hath his reſting place in the Brain, from whence through the Sinews, it is diſperſed into all other parts of the Body: and it is ingendred of the Vital Spirit, being more vehemently wrought and laboured, and partly of continual breathing: Even ſo it is partly preſerved by the *Cauſe* of the Brain, which doth hourly water and nouriſh it.

The *Spirit Vital* is contained in the Heart, from whence it floweth into every part of the Body, being the chief cauſe of all natural heat; and it is preſerved and nouriſhed both by breathing and blood.

To theſe two Spirits, there be ſome *Farriers*, both *Italians* and *French*, which add a third Spirit, and call it the *Spirit Natural*, ſaying, it hath his reſidence in the *Liver*, and the *Veins*, but the two former are of ſuch Power, and have ſuch Superiority, that the Body cannot live without them, nor have any being at all: Wherefore, it is the Office of the *Farrier* continually, in all his Medicines, to have either ſome comfortable Simple, which may maintain and keep the Spirits in their full ſtrength, lively-hood and vertue. And thus much touching Spirits, and thoſe ſeven natural things which compact a natural Body.

CHAP. IX.

Of the ſix things not Natural, how they Profit, and how they Hurt.

HAving ſpoken of the Natural things, whereof a Horſes Body is Compounded, it is needfull now that we ſpeak ſomething of the other ſix which be not *Natural*, ſo farr forth as they concern the Office of the *Farrier*, and no further; for with other matters we have not to do. The firſt thing then which is not Natural, yet preſerveth a Horſes Body in good ſtate, is the Air, which being pure, ſharp, clear, and piercing, giveth great life and nouriſhment to a Horſe: but being contrary, that is, groſs, thick, and full of putrifaction, it cannot chooſe but alter the good Habit of his Body, and breed in him many

many Infirmities: Therefore, every *Farrier*, ſhall have great reſpect to the Air wherein a Horſe either Liveth, or was bred in, as if a Horſe that was bred in a Hot Air, come to live in a Cold, and through the exchange grow ſick, the *Farrier*, ſhall by warm Diet, cloſe Houſe, and Moderate cloathing, bring his Nature to a ſtronger acquaintance: Alſo when a Horſe exceedeth in any of the four qualities, that is, in Hear, Moiſtneſs, Coldneſs, or Drineſs, it is beſt for him to live in that Air which is contrary to that quality, wherein he exceedeth. Laſtly, in many Diſeaſes, the change of the Air is moſt wholeſome, as ſhall be ſhewed at large in the particular Diſeaſes.

For the Meat and Drink of a Horſe, which is the ſecond thing not Natural in a Horſes Compoſition, it is not to be doubted, but whilſt it is ſweet, clean and good, as Bread well made and Baked, dry Oats, dry Beans, dry Peaſe, ſweet Hay, ſweet Straw, or ſhort Graſs, ſo long it nouriſheth and preſerveth the Horſes Body: But if it be fuſty, raw, corrupt and unclean, or if he eat Tares, Fitches, Rye, or Barly, then muſt he needs be unſound, and full of infirmities: Therefore the *Farrier* ſhall be carefull to keep him from all ſuch Food, as breeds naughty evil Blood. As for his water, the more pure it is, the better; and the more muddy, thick, and pleaſant, ſo much the more unhealthfull.

Now for this Moving and Reſt, that is, either his Travel or Standing ſtill, which is the third thing not natural in a Horſes compoſition, doubtleſs they be great *preſervers* of a Horſes health; for as moderate Exerciſes diſſolve groſs Humours, ingender Appetite, and add ſtrength unto the Limbs, ſo likewiſe indifferent Reſt cauſeth Digeſtion, comforteth the Sinews, and maketh the Heart cheerfull againſt inſuing Labour. But on the contrary part, immoderate Travel or Exerciſes, when a Horſe is Ridden beyond his ſtrength, breede h many dangerous and mortal ſickneſſes, as the Foundring in the Body, the Conſumption in the *Lungs* and *Liver*, molten *Greaſe*, and ſuch like, beſides the piſſing of *Blood*, *Manginеſs*, *Farby*, and ſuch like: All which inward Diſeaſes crave ſtrong *Purges*, and the outward *Sharp* and *Corroding* Medicines. Immoderate Reſt, which is, when a Horſe doth ſtand long ſtill without any Exerciſe, Feeding foul and groſly, is as great an enemy to a Horſes health as the other: for it congregateth and bindeth together all ſorts of ill Humours, breeds corruption in the Blood, rottenneſs in the Fleſh,

and

and generally as many Diſeaſes as any ill Diet whatſoever.

The Sleep or Watch of a Horſe, (which is the fourth thing in our Compoſition) is ſo neceſſary a comfort to a Horſe, that he cannot live without it: it is the greateſt mover of Digeſtion; and ſo conſequently gives comfort to the whole Body. For whilſt the Horſe ſleeps, the powers Animal do take their reſt, which otherwiſe would be over-Wearied, and neither able to diſcharge their Duties, nor to continue their Actions and Operations, which is the giving of feeling and moving only: and whilſt a Horſe doth ſleep, the powers Natural have more liberty to do their Work, in concocting the Meat, and comforting the Body, in ſo much as I account ſleep to be the only quieting of the Senſes, ordained by Nature to ingender ſtrength. Sleep is begotten by ſweet, fatty and groſs Vapours, (and not by their contraries) which are raiſed from the Heart to the Brain; with the Coldneſs of which Brain, thoſe Vapours being congealed and thickned together, do ſtop the pipes of the Senſitive Spirits, ſo as they can not reſort to the Inſtruments of the Senſes, to give the Body feeling and moving, whereby the Body at that time is deprived of thoſe Motions. And according as thoſe Vapours do more or leſs fill the pipes, ſo is the Horſes ſleep more or leſs ſound and undiſturbed; but when this ſleep ſhall at any time grow into exceſs, and you ſhall perceive a Horſe to ſleep beyond both Nature and Cuſtom, then you ſhall know that ſuch ſleep commeth from an evil Habit of the Body, and is a ſign either of a *Lethargy*, and a numbneſs of the Spirits, or elſe that he hath ſome inward grief and pain in his Limbs when he ſtandeth; which being eaſed by lying, makes him covet a continual reſt and ſleeping. Now for the Watch of a Horſe, becauſe it is the meer contrary to ſleep, there needs little to be ſaid more than this; that as the exceſs of the one ſheweth the want of the other, ſo the natural wanting of either, ſhews the evil ſtate of a Horſes body, and gives the *Farriers* warning to expect enſuing ſickneſs.

Now for Emptineſs and Fulneſs, (which is the fifth not natural Compoſitor) foraſmuch as it is only an adding to, and a taking away; ſome *Farriers* have held Opinion, that all Phyſick belonging to a Horſes body, conſiſteth in them two only; and truly, I am of this mind, that whoſoever can take away Corruption, and add Perfection, ſhall without doubt ever keep an able and ſubſtantial Body. But to our purpoſe, of this Fulneſs there are two ſorts, the one

fulneſs

fulneſs by exceſs of Humours, the other fulneſs by exceſs of Meat; either of which perturbing the Spirits, are the grounds of ſickneſs. Again, exceſs of Humours are of two kinds, the one an equal encreaſe of all manner of Humours gathered together, and the other particular exceſs, either of too much *Melancholy Flegm*, or other Watriſh Humours whatſoever, the firſt being termed an abundance of Humours, the latter an exceſs of evil Jayce or Nutriment. Laſtly, there is fulneſs in quantity, and fulneſs in quality. Fulneſs in quantity, is, when a Horſe is full of Blood, or any other ſimple Humour. Fulneſs in quality, is, when any of thoſe Humours are too hot, or too cold, too groſs, or too thin. Now for Emptineſs, as all Diſeaſes of Fulneſs muſt be cured by it only, ſo all Diſeaſes of Emptineſs muſt be healed by Fulneſs, as by taking of *Blood*, by *Purge*, *Friction*, *Scarrification*, *Foxing*, *Sweating*, *Bathing*, and a World of ſuch like, as ſhall be very largely ſet forth hereafter, in it's proper place.

Laſtly, touching the affections of a Horſes mind, you ſhall underſtand, that ſo far forth as the Senſitive Soul doth ſtretch, ſo far they have ſenſe and feeling of Affections, as namely, to Love, to Hate, to be Angry, to Rejoyce, to be Sorry, and to Fear: For all which there needs no great *Apology*, ſith, we have it in daily Experience: as who ſeeth not the love of ſome Horſes to their Keepers, their hate to Strangers, their angers in their Sights, their joyes in their Prides and Wooings, their ſorrows in their Sickneſſes, and their fears unto their Riders: now theſe Affections, ſith many times they are the grounds of ſtrange Motions in the Body; therefore, they ought carefully to be looked unto by the *Farrier*, and that the Horſe be not overpreſſed with any of them; eſpecially fear and hatred, the firſt whereof compelleth the Blood and Spirits to fly to the inward parts, and to leave the outward without ſenſe or feeling; and the latter makes him to be unquiet, fierce, and raging; both together breed diſtemperature in a Horſe, and thoſe diſtemperatures ingender mortal ſickneſſes. *And thus much for theſe ſix things, being held not Natural in a Horſes Compoſition.*

CHAP.

CHAP. X.

Of Horſes Complexions.

HAving ſpoken of thoſe thirteen Natural and not Natural things, whereof a Horſes Body is compounded, we will now in a ſomewhat more particular manner ſpeak of the Complexions of Horſes, which is one of the moſt neceſſary Faces that a *Farrier* can behold, both for the judging of a Horſes Infirmities, and alſo for the true compounding of his Medicines for every Diſeaſe: Therefore you ſhall firſt underſtand, that by the Colour of the Horſe, you ſhall ever judge his Complexion: For, look which of the Elements is moſt predominant in him, from that Element we draw his Complexion, as thus. If he participate more of the Fire than of any of the other Elements, then we hold him to be a Cholerick Horſe, and his Colour is either a bright *Sorrel*, a *coal Black* without any white, or an *Iron gray* unchangeable, that is, ſuch a Gray as neither will ever turn a Dable gray, a White, or a Flea-bitten, and theſe Horſes are of Nature *Light*, *Hot*, *Fiery*, and ſeldome of any great ſtrength; theſe Horſes are much ſubject to peſtilent *Feavers*, *Yellows*, and Inflammations of the *Liver*. Therefore every *Farrier* ſhall be carefull in his compoſing of any Medicine for ſuch a Horſe, to purge Choler, yet very moderately, and not with any extraordinary ſtrength in the Potion or Drench; becauſe, the Horſe being in his beſt ſtrength, not reputed ſtrong, ſhould you apply any violent thing to him, that little ſtrength being abated, there were great danger in the confounding of the whole Body.

If the Horſe participate more of the Air, than of the other Elements, then he is of a Sanguine Complexion, and his Colour is either a bright Bay, or a dark Bay, which hath neither ſkeuling Countenance, mayly Mouth, nor white Flank, or a white Flea bitten, white yard like Silver, or Black with a white *Star*, white Rach, or white Foot. Theſe Horſes are of Nature *Pleaſant*, *Nimble*, *Free*, and of good *Strength*. The Diſeaſes to them moſt incident, is Conſumption of the *Liver*, *Leproſie*, *Glanders*, or any Diſeaſe that is infectious. They are of a good ſtrong Conſtitution, and may endure ſtrength in their Medicines, eſpecially any thing that cooleth the Blood.

If the Horſe participate more of the Water, than of the other Elements, then is he of a Flegmatick Complexion, and his Colour is either milk-white, a yellow *Dun*, *Kite-glead*, or a *Pide-ball*, in whom there is an equal mixture of Colours, that is as much white as of the other Colour. Otherwiſe, if the Bay, the Black, or the Dun exceed the White, he is ſaid to be of that Complexion of which the Colour is greateſt. Theſe Horſes are of Nature ſlow, and apt to loſe fleſh: The Diſeaſes which are moſt incident unto them, are *Colds*, *Head-ach*, *Rheums*, *Staggers*, and ſuch like. They are able to indure the reaſonable ſtrength of any Medicine, becauſe the abundance of *Flegm* which is in them, ſufficeth both Nature, and the potion to work upon: All cold ſimples are to them exceeding hurtfull, ſo are alſo they which are violently hot in the third Degree: the firſt, becauſe it bindeth too ſoon; the latter, becauſe it diſperſes too ſuddenly, therefore ſimples of a moderate mean are the beſt.

If the Horſe participate more of the Earth, than of the other Elements, then he is of a Melancholy complexion, and his Colour a *Mouſe-dunn*, *Ruſſet*, *Cheſnut*, *Aſhy-gray*, *dark Bay*, with *mayly Mouth*, *Red* or *White* flank, or a *Reddiſh Bay*, having long white Hair like *Goats* Hair, growing on his Leggs. Theſe Horſes are of Nature heavy, and faint-hearted; The Diſeaſes to them moſt incident, are Inflammations in the *Spleen*, *Frenzie*, *Dropſie*, and ſuch like. They are commonly of better ſtrength, than they will ſuffer to appear by their Actions, and are able to endure the ſtrength of any reaſonable Medicine: all Cicatrizing and Dry ſimples are hurtfull unto them; the Cold and Moiſt are the moſt profitable.

Having thus ſhewed you theſe four Complexions, *Cholerick*, *Sanguine*, *Flegmatick*, and *Melancholy*, together with their qualities and ſtrengths, you ſhall underſtand now, that amongſt *Farriers* there is another Complexion, or fifth Conſtitution, which is called the Compoſition or mixture of Complexions: That is, whenſoever a Horſe doth participate of all the four Elements equally, and in due proportion, none being greater or leſſer than another, and this Complexion of all other is the beſt, and moſt perfect, and the Horſe which is of this Complexion, is ever of one of theſe Colours; that is to ſay, either a fair Brown bay, Dabled, or not dabled, a Dable gray, a Black full of Silver hair, or a fair Roan Red or Black. and theſe Horſes are of Nature moſt excellent, moſt Temperate, Strongeſt, Gentleſt, and

and moſt Healthfull: though they may have any Diſeaſe, yet are they naturally inclined to no Diſeaſe: But what infirmity ſoever falleth unto them, is meerly accidental, and not through any overflow of natural diſtemperature. All Medicines muſt be compounded for them, according to the nature of the ſickneſs, and the time of their languiſhment: For if the ſickneſs be young, and new bred, then they are able to receive any well compoſed Receipt; but if it be old, and the inward Powers and Faculties feebled, then you muſt be carefull to help *Nature*, by adding to every Medicine of what nature ſoever, ſome *ſimple* of Comfort, that, as ill Humours be cleanſed, ſo ſtrength may ſtill be repaired and maintained. And thus much for Complexions.

CHAP. XI.

Of Inward ſickneſs, the cauſes and ſeveral kinds thereof.

SIth I have already paſſed over all thoſe things which have a natural and perfect working in a Horſes Body, and do maintain, uphold, and preſerve the ſame in good ſtate and health, except accidentally they be encountered and croſſed by ſome Exceſs, either in Diet or in exerciſe: it ſhall now be meet, that we begin to ſpeak of the things which be contrary and againſt Nature, which are all thoſe things, whereby at any time the healthfull eſtate of the Horſes Body is any way impeached: and they be three in number; that is the *Cauſes*, the *Sickneſs*, and the *Accidents* which follow every ſickneſs.

Now the *Cauſes* of ſickneſs are all unnatural affects, and evil diſpoſitions, which going before, do as it were by Violence, bring ſickneſs after them: and of theſe Cauſes there be two ſorts, ſome Internal, ſome External: The Internal be thoſe which breed within the Body of the Horſe, as evil Humours, evil Obſtructions, and evil Juyce. External are they which communicate with the outward parts of the Body, as Heat, Cold, Worms, and ſuch like, of which I ſhall ſpeak more in the ſecond Book: And for ſo much, as I intend at the beginning of every particular Diſeaſe, to ſhew the cauſe of that Diſeaſe, I will at this time ſpeak no more of that ſubject.

Now for *ſickneſs* it ſelf, which is any thing that is contrary to Nature, it is divided into three general kinds: the firſt, an *Evil Temperature*,

perature, the ſecond, an *Evil ſtate and Compoſition*; and the third, a *loſening or Dividing of an Unity*. Now of theſe two latter, I intend not to ſpeak in this place, becauſe they appertain to Chirurgery, which I reſerve for the ſecond Book: But for the firſt kind, which is an Evil Temperature, it is taken two-fold, that is, either ſimple or compound: Simple, when one quality only doth abound, or exceed, as to be too moiſt, or too dry: Compound, when more qualities than one do grow into exceſs, as for a Horſe to be too hot, and too dry, or too cold, and too moiſt. Again, ſickneſſes are ſaid ſome to be long, as *Conſumptions*, *Glanders*, and ſuch like, which linger and wear a Horſe away by ſmall degrees; Some ſhort, as the *Staggers*, *Yellows*, *Anticor*, and ſuch like, which as ſoon as they be perceived, ſo ſoon they be mortal.

Now of Inward ſickneſſes, ſome do occupy all the whole Body, ſome but particular parts: thoſe which occupy the whole Body, are *Feavers*, the *Peſtilence*, *Convulſions*, and ſuch like: thoſe which occupy Parts or Members, are Colds which annoy the Head; Surfeits which perplex the ſtomack: and ſo likewiſe all Outward infirmities, proper to every particular Member, as *Splents* upon the leggs, *Spavens* on the Hoofs, *Pearls* in the eyes, and ſuch like; as ſhall be amply ſhewed hereafter, with their ſeveral Cures. And thus much for ſickneſs, and the ſeveral kinds thereof.

CHAP. XII.

Of the ſigns of ſickneſs, and of what nature it conſiſteth.

THe ſigns and faces, by which ſickneſs is diſcerned, are many, and almoſt numberleſs: yet in the beſt ſort, that I may, I will ſhew you ſuch, and ſo many, as ſhall amply ſerve for any Mans underſtanding. Know then firſt that there be, according to the Rules in Phyſick; four eſpecial wayes to judge of inward and outward infirmities. Firſt, by accidents, as by the ſhape, number, quantity, and place of the Member grieved: for if it carry not his true proportion, or be more or leſs in number or quantity, or out of his proper place, then queſtionleſs it is diſeaſed. Secondly, by alteration of the quality, as when it is either too Hot, too Cold, too Moiſt, or too Dry. Thirdly, when any Member of the Body is hindered from doing his Office;

Office; as when the Eye cannot ſee, or the Foot cannot tread. And fourthly, by Excrements, as by his Dung or Urine. But foraſmuch, as in the ſpeculation of theſe qualities, many of the ignorant ſort may be either Amazed, Diſtract, or Deceived, and that my Deſire is to give an abſolute ſatisfaction to all ſorts of people, I will briefly, and plainly ſhew you the moſt undeceiveable ſigns of all ſorts of inward ſickneſſes, as thus: If a Horſe be ſlower in labour, or Duller to the *Spurr* than he hath been accuſtomed; If he be ſhorter Breathed; If his Ears hange down more than they were wont; If his Hair be more ſtaring; If his Flanks be more than uſually hollow; If he burn betwixt his Ears, or about his Paſterns; If in Travel his ſtomack fail him, or his Mouth, that in labour was uſually wont to be Foaming, become dry; all theſe are moſt apparent ſigns of inward Sickneſs.

When a Horſe holdeth down his Head, which was wont to be of cheerfull Countenance, it is a ſigne either of a *Feaver*, *Head-ach*, or elſe *Foundring* in the *Body*.

If a Horſe be dimm of ſight, which was clear ſighted, it is a ſign either of *Head-ach*, the *Staggers*, or *Sore eyes*.

When a Horſe turneth his Head back-ward to the place grieved, if it be to the *Right ſide*, it is a ſign of *Obſtructions* in the *Liver*: but if he turn it down to his Belly, then it is a ſign either of *Cholick*, *Bots*, or *Worms*.

When a Horſe hath water running from his mouth, it is a ſign of the *Staggers*, or *wet Cough*.

If a Horſes breath ſtinks, or foul matter iſſues from his Noſtrils, it is a ſign of an Ulcer in the Noſe or Head; but if the matter be white, then it is a ſign of *Glanders*; if the matter be black, then it is a ſign of the mourning of the *Chine*; but if the matter be yellow, then it betokens the Conſumption of the *Liver*; but if he caſt little lumps out of his mouth, then it betokens the Conſumption or rottenneſs of the *Lungs*.

If a Horſes Body and Breath be hot, it is a ſign of a *Fever*, and heat of the ſtomack; if therewithall he forſake his meat, it is a ſign of Inflammation in his *Liver*, and either of dry or moiſt *Yellows*.

If the Temple of a Horſes Head be very hollow, it is a ſign either of the *Strangle*, or old Age.

Shortneſs of Breath, and a beating Flanck, is a ſign either of a *Feavir*, or the *Strangle*, but if the paſſage of the throat be ſtopped, it

is

is a ſign the film of the *Lungs* is broken, and the *Spleen* troubled, or elſe broken-Winded.

If any thing lie on both ſides the Fore-head, which may be felt beat, it is a ſign of the *Staggers*.

If there be any thing ſwelling about the Ears, it is a ſign of the *Pole-evil*: ſwelling under the Ear, is a ſign of the *Vives*; and ſwelling in the Mouth, a ſign either of *Canker*, *Flaps*, *Lampaſſe*.

Swelling under the Throat, is a ſign of the *Glanders*; and ſwelling about the Tongue roots, a ſign of the *Strangle*: But if there be about the Tongue roots, nothing but little ſmall knots, like wax kernels, then it is a ſign but of Cold only.

Swelling on the Left ſide, is a ſign of a ſick *Spleen*. Swelling in the Belly and Legs, a ſign of the *Dropſie*, and ſwelling in the Flanck, of *Cholick* only.

To Cough, or to Offer to Cough, is a ſign either of the Glanders, or the Mourning of the Chine, of a Feather in the Weaſand, of the wet or dry Cough, of the Film broken, of the dry Malady, of a Conſumption, or of Foundring in the Body.

Staggering is a ſign either of a *Feaver*, of the Staggers, or of Swaying in the Neck: but if he ſtagger or role behind only, then it is a ſign either of Foundring in the Body, or of pain in the Kidneys.

Trembling is a ſign of a *Feaver*, or of a Foundring in the Body: and here is to be noted, that a Horſe which trembleth after the Drinking of cold Water, hath during that time of Trembling, a very certain fit of an Ague; and if any *Farrier* or other, will but obſerve it, he ſhall find that the Horſe, after he hath done Trembling, will burn and glow in as great extremity, at leaſt an hour and a half after; and ſome Horſes after their burning, will ſweat alſo.

The Hollowneſs of a Horſes back is a ſign of a dry Malady, or the Dropſie.

Hair-ſtaring is a ſign either of a cold *Stomack*, or of Foundring in the Body, but generally of a Cold, or want of Cloaths.

If a Horſe ſtale with much pain, it is a ſign either of Foundring in the Body, the wind *Cholick*, or the Stone; and if the Urine which comes from him be yellow, it is a ſign of the Glanders, but if it be blackiſh and thick, it is a ſign of a pain in the Kidneys.

Leanneſs and Gauntineſs, is a ſign of Hide-bound, or of a Conſumption, of the dry Malady, of Foundring in the Body, Inflammation,

mation of the Liver, the Yellows, *Cholick*, or *Worms*.

Laxativeneſs, or looſeneſs of the Body, is a ſign of a Hot Liver.

Coſtiveneſs in the Body, is a ſign of Dry Yellows, or of Diſeaſes in the Gaul.

If a Horſes Dung ſtink, it is a ſign of a Hot Liver; if it have no ſmell, then of a Cold Liver; but if it be undigeſted, then either of a Conſumption, or of a Dry Malady.

If a Horſe go ſtiff, it is a ſign either of Wrinching, Hipping, Stalling, or Foundring either in Body or legs: if he go Crouching behind, and Stiff before, then the grief is in his fore-Legs, but if he go only Weak behind, then is the grief in his hinder Leggs only.

If a Horſe deſire extraordinarily to lye down on his right ſide, it is a ſign of Heat in the *Liver*. If on the left ſide, then of a Diſeaſed *Spleen*. If he be oft up and down, finding no reſt, then it is a ſign of Bors, Worms, Cholick, or Griping in the Belly: if when he is down, he ſpreads himſelf abroad, it ſhews the Dropſie; if he groan when he is down, it ſhews either a ſick Spleen, moiſt Yellows, Cholick, Bors, or film broken; if he be not able to riſe when he is down, then either mortal Weakneſs, or Foundring in the Body or Legs.

To be troubled with much Wind, is a ſign either of grief in the Spleen, or loſs of much Blood.

If a Horſe forſake his Meat, it is a ſign either of a Feaver, Headach, Strangle, Staggers, Conſumption, or dry Malady, Anticor, Foundering in the Body, a hot and conſumed liver, moiſt Yellowes, Cholick, or the Worms; but if when he forſakes his Provender, he doth as it were Chavel, or Chaw a little Hay, and in his Chawing doth make a certain ſharp Noſe in his Mouth, as if his Tongue could not well part from the Roof without a kind of Chanking, it is then a certain *ſign* that the Horſe is troubled with the falling of the Pallet of the Mouth, a Diſeaſe which only commeth by over-much Travelling, or too ſore a Barthen.

If a Horſe deſire to *eat* much, and drink little, it is a *ſign* of a Cold Liver, but if he deſire to *drink* much, and eat little, it is then a *ſign* either of a *Feaver*, rotten *Lungs*, heat in the Stomack, heat in the *Liver*, or the dry Yellows.

If a Horſe both *Eat* and *Drink* with an extraordinary greedineſs, it is a *ſign* of Rotten *Lungs*, or a Diſeaſed Spleen.

Lazy heavy going, Contrary to true Nature, is a ſign either of a *Feaver*,

Fever, *Sick-ſpleen*, *Yellows*, or elſe Oſtructions of the *Liver*.

If a Horſe ſtrike with his foot at his Belly, it is a *ſign* of the *Cholick*: but if when he *ſtriketh*, he fisk with his Taile alſo, then it is either Bots, or rough Worms.

If a Horſe be Scabby, and Ulcerous all over his Body, and about his Neck, it is a *ſign* of the Mangy: if it be an Ulcer full of *Knots*, creeping alongſt a Vein, it is the Farcy: if ſpreading abroad only in one place, it is a *Canker*: if the Ulcer be hollow and crooked, it is a *Fiſtula*: but if it be a ſpungy Wart, full of Blood, it is then an *Anbury*

If a Horſes Tongue hang out, and be ſwoln, it is a *ſign* of the *Strangle*.

To Conclude, if a Horſe in health beat ſhort, thick, and faſt in the flanck, it is a ſign of *ſickneſs* in the Lungs and Lights, which we call *Broken-winded*, with a World of other ſuch like ſigns and tokens, as ſhall be more amply declared in every particular Chapter.

CHAP. XIII.

General Obſervations in the Phyſicking of Horſes.

AFter you can by theſe Signs and Characters, judge and approve either the health or ſickneſs of a Horſe, it is then neceſſary, that you learn ſome General Rules and obſervations which belong to the *Phyſicking* of a Horſe; leſt that either by your Raſhneſs, Unſkilfulneſs, or Uncleanneſs, in what you go about to do, you commit errours more groſſe than the Medicine you adminiſter hath power to do good. Know then firſt, that whenſoever you go about to give your Horſe any inward Potion or Drench, you muſt firſt take very carefull heed, that your *Drink* be no more than *Milk* warm: for there is nothing more mortal to a Horſe, than the ſcalding of his ſtomack. Next, you muſt be very carefull that you give the Drench eaſily and gently, leſt in making too much haſt, the Drink paſs into his Weſand or Wind Pipe, and ſo force him to an extreme Coughing, and almoſt ſuffocate him; which if it do, you muſt then let his Head looſe, and walk him up and down till the paſſion be paſt. Laſtly, you ſhall obſerve, in giving a Drench, to draw out the Horſes Tongue before you put in the Horn, and then preſently let it looſe again: for that

that will compel him to ſwallow whether he will or no. And this is principally to be uſed, when you give your Horſe Pills, as Butter and Garlick, Butter and Sanders, or Butter and Saven: Alſo, every Drench will work the better, the longer you keep the ſick Horſe faſting, both before and after his Medicine; wherein is likewiſe to be Obſerved, that moderate Exerciſe, (as gently Walking, or Trotting up and down, according to the horſes ſtrength, after his Drench received) is moſt wholeſome, and maketh the Medicines work a great deal the better.

You ſhall likewiſe Obſerve, if you horſes *ſickneſs* be a Feaver, to mix alwayes your ſimples either with warm Water, with Honey, or with Oyl; but if the Diſeaſe be Coughs, Rheums, or any thing that proceedeth of Cold cauſes then you ſhall mix your ſimples with good Ale, or Wine; and if your Horſe be brought low and weak with *ſickneſs*, then you ſhall mix your ſimples with Milk and Eggs.

You ſhall alſo Obſerve, that in Blood-letting, you muſt take but half ſo much from a young Colt, as from an old horſe, and but the fourth part from a yearling Foal: alſo in letting Blood, you muſt carefully regard the Age and Strength of your Horſe, taking more or leſs according to his Ability of Body. Laſtly, letting of Blood is either to Divert *ſickneſs*, and preſerve Health, or to Refreſh, and cool the Spirits, or to diminiſh Blood, or elſe to purge groſs and bad Humours.

Obſerve before you let your Horſe Blood; firſt moderately to chafe, or exerciſe him: then let him take reſt a day before his letting Blood, and three days after, not forgetting that *April* and *October* are the two principal Seaſons of the year for that purpoſe, except urgent occaſion be miniſtred.

Obſerve, whenſoever you Rake your Horſe with your hand, (which is to draw his Ordure out of his Fundament when he cannot Dung) that then, firſt you anoint all your hands with Sallet Oyl, or Butter: the like you muſt ever do when you put up any Suppoſitary; but when you adminiſter any Gliſter, you ſhall then but anoint the Gliſter-pipe only. Many other Obſervations there are, which be more particular, and thoſe you ſhall find annexed to the ſeveral Cures of every Diſeaſe. Thus much then of theſe general Obſervations.

CHAP. XIV.

Of the Urine, and Excrements of a Horſe.

AFter you have made your Memory acquainted with the Signs and Obſervations before ſpecified, and ſo in the end find a Horſe, which by the demonſtration of ſome of theſe Signs, appeareth moſt certainly to be ſick and Diſeaſed: My advice is then, (if conveniently you may, and that the violence of the Sickneſs do not urge the contrary) that before you adminiſter any thing unto him, in any caſe you ſee his Urine, from which Urine you ſhall reap theſe Knowledges.

Firſt, if the Urine of a Horſe be of a pale, whitiſh, yellow colour like unto Amber, and therewithall ſomewhat ſtrong ſmelling, and not very clear, then you ſhall be aſſured that the Horſe is in good ſtate of Body, Strong and Healthfull; but if it be extraordinary White, as it were Creamy, then it is a ſign the Horſe hath weak Reins, and is ſubject to the Stone, and the ſtopping of the Kidneys.

If the Urine of a Horſe be ſomewhat high-Coloured, Bright and Clear like Lamber, and not like Amber, or like a Cup of ſtrong March Beer; then it ſheweth the Horſe hath Inflammation in his Blood, and that he hath either a Fever, or elſe ſome great Surfeit; but if it be Red like Blood, then is his Inflammation more great, and his Surfeit is only an over-heat taken by over-Riding; inſomuch, that if preſent remedy be not applied, either by Scouring, or other healthfull Phyſick, the Horſe cannot chuſe but fall into ſome mortal ſickneſs.

If the Urine of a Horſe be of a pale Greeniſh Colour, thick and ſlimy, it is a ſign of a weak Back, and Conſumption of the Seed.

Laſtly, if the Horſes Urine be high-Coloured, yet therewithall Cloudy, and full of blackneſs, then it is a ſign that the Horſes *ſickneſs* is *Mortal*, and hardly to be preſerved by any *Phyſick*; but if the *Blackneſs* and *Cloudineſs* of the Urine do not remain, (as it were) bound up together in one Body, but is broken and diſperſed, ſhewing many Clouds in one Water, then it is a ſign that the Violence of the ſickneſs departeth away, and there is great hope, by good Government that the Horſe will recover his Health as at the beginning.

Now for the Excrements or Dung of a Horſe, which is no *leſs* worthy of Note than the Urine; you ſhall firſt underſtand, that if his Dung be ever of Alliance with his Food, I mean either in part or whole Coloured like unto that he eateth, as thus for Example. If your Horſe go at Graſs, his Dung will ever be *green*, and the brighter ſuch *Greenneſs* is, and being in a mean between Hardneſs and Softneſs, the ſounder and in more perfect Eſtate the Horſe ſtandeth; but if the Greenneſs be bright, yet the Ordure ſo ſoluble and looſe, that it cometh from the Horſe like Water, then you ſhall underſtand, that either the Horſe hath eaten up ſome Feather, or elſe he hath an inward Coldneſs both in his Stomack and Bowels.

If a Horſes Dung be of a reaſonable thickneſs, neither too Coſtive nor too Soluble, yet the Greenneſs inclined to ſome Blackneſs, it is a ſign that the Horſe hath a hot Stomack, and is eaſily ſubject either to the Yellows or Staggers.

If the Horſes Dung be in round hard Pellets, and of a Blackiſh green Colour, like the Dung of a Sheep, or a Deer, then it is without fail, that the Horſe hath had ſome great Surfeit, either by over Riding, or by ill Food, or elſe is certainly poſſeſt either of the Yellows, or Feaver, or Foundring in the Body.

Now if your Horſe be fed only upon Straw, then its Colour will be of a high-Coloured Yellow, rather Coſtive than Soluble, and the Grain thereof Long, and not well Couched together: And all theſe be good ſigns of great Healthfulneſs; but if the Colour be inclined to Redneſs, or if it be exceeding Dry without moiſture, or if it be Thin, like the Dung of an Oxe or Cow, they all be apparent ſigns of inward ſickneſs; but if the Redneſs turn to Blackneſs, and that his Ordure doth loſe the ſtrength of its Smelling, then it is a great Sign of Death and Mortality.

If your Horſe be fed with Hay and Provender, then your perfect and ſound Dung will be of a Brown yellow Colour, the Grain ſomewhat long, yet moiſt and well fixt together; but if the Brownneſs turn to Redneſs, it is a ſign of diſtemperature; and if it turn to Blackneſs, then of Death. Now for the ſmell of this Dung, you muſt underſtand, that the more Provender you give, the greater will be the ſmell, and the leſs Provender the leſs ſmell.

Laſtly, if you feed your Horſe only upon Provender, as Bread, Oats, and ſuch like, then the Dung which ſhews a perfect and a

ſound Body, will be of a pale yellow Colour, like coarſe Honey, firm, like a thick Salve, having within it when you tread upon it or break it little white Grains, like thoſe which are in Sope; or if the Dung be harder, like the ordinary Ordure of a Man, it is not amiſe: For both be ſigns of health and ſtrength; and if the Dung look Red, then it is a ſign that the Horſe hath taken ſome inward Heat, and his Stomack and Bowels do reſt ſtill inflamed.

If his Dung be Brown and ſlimy, or if it ſhine and look greaſie, it is a ſign that he hath had ſome of his inward Greaſe molten, and that it reſteth and putrifieth in his Body; but if with his Dung, you ſee him voyd great clods and lumps of Greaſe, then you may be aſſured that his Greaſe was molten, but Nature hath overcome Infirmity, and the worſt Danger is paſt already; but if the Dung be matter undigeſted, ſo that you may either perceive therein whole Corns, or whole bits of Bread, it is a ſign the Horſe hath either and a late Surfeit, or is entring into a Mortal Conſumption. Laſtly, if his Dung be Black, or have loſt the *Smell*, it is an apparent ſign of Death. And thus much for Urine and Excrements, and the ſeveral knowledges attained by them.

CHAP. XV.

Of Feavers in General, and the divers kinds thereof.

THat Horſes have Feavers, and thoſe Feavers of divers and ſundry Natures, there is nothing more certain, as by ſtrict Obſervation may daily be perceived, eſpecially when we uſe either much Travel, or diſorderly Diet: for queſtionleſs from theſe two and none other Heads, do ſpring moſt Feavers whatſoever. But firſt, that I may give you an account what a Horſes Feaver is, you ſhall know that it is an unnatural and immoderate Heat, which proceeding firſt from the Heart, diſperſeth it ſelf not only through all the Arteries, but even the Veins of a Horſes Body, and thereby hindreth all the Actions and wholeſome Motions of the ſame. Now of Feavers, ſome *Farriers* make three ſorts: The firſt, thoſe which breed in the Spirits, being inflamed and ſet on fire beyond the ordinary courſe of Nature: The ſecond, thoſe which breed in the Humours, being likewiſe diſtempered by Heat: And the third, thoſe which breed in the firm parts

of

of the Body, and are continually hot. Now I for your better Memory, will divide them only into two parts, that is to ſay, Ordinary, and Extraordinary. The Ordinary *Feavers*, are all thoſe which are bred either in the Spirits, or in the Humours: as namely, *Quotidians*, *Tertians*, *Quartans*, *Feavers continual*, *Feavers hectick*, *Feavers* in *Autumn*, *Summer* or *Winter*. And the Feavers Extraordinary, are all thoſe which are bred in the firm parts of the Body, and are ever hot, as *Peſtilent Feavers*, and the *Plague*, which are ever accompanied with *Ulcers*; and the *Feaver accidental*, which proceedeth from the anguiſh and pain of ſome mortal Wound.

Now for the cauſe, from whence theſe *Feavers* do proceed, you ſhall underſtand, that all theſe which I call Ordinary *Feavers*, do generally ſpring either from ſurfeit by extreme Labour, or ſome ſurfeit by naughty meat, as *Raw Peaſe*, *Raw Fitches*, *Raw Oats*, *Mouldy* and Unwholſome *Bread*, and ſuch like: Sometimes they do proceed from the extreme Violence and heat of the Sun Beams, when Travailing with diſorderly haſt, in the extremeſt heat of the Day, thoſe two heats mixed together, *Labour*, and the *Sun*, there cannot chuſe but be bred in the Horſe ſome *Mortal* inflammation; and for mine own part, I have ſeen Horſes fall down Dead in the High-way: For whoſe Deaths, I could find no Reaſon more than their *Labour*, and the heat of the *Sun*. *Feavers* ſometimes ſpring from a contrary cauſe, as from extreme Cold, in this manner: When a Horſe in the Winter-time hath been Travelled ſore all the Day, and is brought into the houſe hot, if after his blood and inward powers are ſetled and cooled, you then preſently, or the ſame Night give him cold Water as much as he will Drink, you ſhall ſee him out of hand fall unto an extreme Quaking, and from that quaking into a violent Burning, with all other diſtemperatures of a Feaver.

Now for Extraordinary Feavers, they ever proceed either from Corruption of Blood, or from Infection of the Air; and albeit theſe Feavers are not uſually known unto our *Farriers*, yet they are as common as the former; only the Violence of them is ſo great, and the Poyſon ſo ſtrong, that they ever carry with them ſome other Mortal ſickneſs, as namely, the *Staggers*, *Yellows*, *Anticor*, and ſuch like, which never are, but a Peſtilent Feaver ever goeth before them: And they, like the Marks of the Plague, are ſeldome ſeen till the Cures be deſperate; and then the unskilfull *Farrier*, neither noting, nor knowing,

knowing, if he did not, the effects of the Feaver. [illegible] call the name of the Horſes infirmity, and taking the [illegible] greater, fails many times to do the good Office and Cure [illegible] intendeth.

Now the ſigns to know the Feaver, be theſe: First he will ever hold down his Head, he will quake and tremble: but when his trembling is paſt, then will his Body burn, and his Breath hot, he will Breath faſt, and his Flank will beat, he will Reel, he will forſake his Meat, his Eyes will be ſwoln and cloſed up, yet therewithall much Watering; his Fleſh will as it were fall from his Bones, and his Stones will hang down low; he will often lay down and riſe up again: as his deſire will be to Drink; yet at no time drink much, neither will he at any time ſleep.

Now for the general Cure of theſe general *Feavers*, you ſhall underſtand, that ſome *Farriers* uſe to let the Horſe blood in the Face, Temples, and Palate of the Mouth, and the firſt day to give him no Meat, but warm Drink only, by a little at a time: and after the fineſt Graſs, or fineſt Hey wet in Water, keeping him Warm, and often wallking him up and down in a temperate Air, and giving him good ſtore of Litter, then when he begins to mend, to feed him with Barly ſodden, huſkt and beaten; as you do Wheat before you make Furmety. And this Cure is not amiſs; for it agreeth with the Antient experience of the *Italians*: but in our Engliſh Horſes, (through the Clime, as I ſuppoſe) it often faileth.

The beſt Cure therefore that I have found, is, as ſoon as you perceive him to begin to ſhake, to give him the yolks of three or four Eggs, beaten with ſeven or eight ſpoonfulls of Aqua-vitæ to Drink, and then chafe him up and down till his ſhaking be paſt, and then ſet him up cloſe and warm, and with many Cloaths make him ſweat an hour: Let his Food be Oats, very well dried and ſifted, and once a day, ſome waſh'd in Ale. If his ſhaking fit be paſt, before you perceive his ſickneſs, you ſhall only give him a pint of *Muſkadine*, and an ounce of Sugar-candy beaten to powder, and brewed together to *Drink*, and ſo let him reſt, feeding him by little and little, as aforeſaid, and giving him no Water but ſuch as is warm: and this Order you ſhall obſerve at the beginning of every fit, if you can note them, or elſe every Morning, if his ſickneſs hath no ceaſing.

CHAP.

CHAP. XVI.

Of the Quotidian, or every daies Fever, and the Cure.

THe *Quotidian*, or every daies *Fever*, is that which takes a Horſe, and holdeth him with one fit once every day; and will at firſt appear ſome what Violent, but ſeldom or never endureth long, if the *Farrier* have any Diſcretion. It proceedeth moſt commonly from extreme Riding, either after water, or a full ſtomack; and then ſuddenly, after his Heat, being thruſt into a Stable, and neither ſtopt nor rubbed, a ſuddain Coldneſs to that ſuddain Heat, begets a ſhaking, and ſo conſequently, the effect of a *Fever*.

The ſigns to know it, are Watriſh and Blood-hotten Eyes, ſhort, and hot Breathing, Panting, Loathing of his Meat, and Stiffneſs in his Limbs; but above theſe, to know it is a *Quotidian*, you ſhall obſerve, that theſe ſigns, together with the ſickneſs, will not laſt above ſix or eight hours in one day, and then he will be cheerful and in health again, till very near the ſame hour of the next day, at what time his fit will begin again. And here is to be noted, that the more it alereth the hours, the more hope there is of his health; as if it takes him at ſeven of the Clock of the one day, and at three of the Clock of the other, and ſo forth. The Cure is, you ſhall only during his fit, give him nothing but a ſweet Maſh made of Malt and Water, being lukewarm, and walk him gently up and down in a temperate Air: then as ſoon as his fit is paſt, you ſhall ſet him up, and rub his Body and Leggs exceedingly; then four hours after you ſhall give him this Drink: Take of ſtrong Ale a quart, and boyl therein half a handfull of Worm-wood, of long Pepper and Grains two Ounces, or the beſt Treacle two Ounces, and of the Powder of dryed Rue one Ounce; Now when a third part of the Ale is conſumed, take it from the fire and ſtrain it, then put therein three Ounces of Sugar-candy beaten to Powder; then when it is luke-warm, give it him with a Horn to Drink. Do this twice at the leaſt, or thrice if his fits continue, and there is no doubt but he will Recover.

CHAP.

CHAP. XVII.

Of the Tertian Feaver.

THe *Tertian Feaver*, is that which commeth every other day, holding the Horſe with one ſick day, and one ſound: it is not ſo Violent as the *Quotidian*, but much longer Laſting; it happeneth oftеſt in the Spring time of the year, when Blood begins to encreaſe, and moſt commonly to Colts and young horſes. It proceeds of the ſame cauſes that the *Quotidian* doth, and ſometimes of Rankneſs, and ill Blood. The ſigns to know it, are all the ſigns formerly ſpoken of, and this is the chiefeſt, that the Horſe will be apparently ſick, as it were on the Monday, then apparently well on the Tueſday, and ſick on the Wedneſday following. This *Feaver* is never ſeen, but it beginneth with ſhaking. The Cure thereof, is, as ſoon as you perceive the horſe to begin to ſhake, you ſhall take a certain Herb, or rather a Weed called Stone-crop, and bruiſing it in a Morter, take ſome four ſpoonfull of the juyce thereof, and infuſe it in a quart of ſtrong Ale, and give it the Horſe to Drink: then walk him gently up and down in ſome temperate Air for an hour, then ſet him up, and with the help of Cloaths put him into a ſweat for an other hour, then cool him; and in any wiſe, till his fits leave him, let him Drink no Cold Water, and let his Provender be the oldeſt and drieſt Oats you can get, only upon his good daies before his fits come, keep him very long faſting and empty.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of the Quartan Feaver.

THe *Quartan Feaver*, is that which ſome *Farriers* call a third daies ſickneſs, as thus: If his fits begin on the Monday, he will be well on the Tueſday and Wedneſday, and ſick again on the Thurſday. It proceeds from the ſame Cauſes that the *Tertian Feaver* doth, yet in his working is not ſo apparently Violent, but of much longer Continuance: for if great care and help be not, theſe *Feavers* will laſt ſome a quarter of a year, ſome half a year, and ſome a whole year,

year. There needs no other ſign to know it, then the coming and going of the fits, as hath been declared already. And for the Cure, it is the ſelf ſame which is deſcribed in the former Chapter, for the *Tertian Feaver:* only if his fits do not leave him at the firſt taking of the Medicine, you ſhall then give it him again the ſecond time, but not above thrice at the moſt in any wiſe.

CHAP. XIX.

Of the Feaver Continual.

THe *Feaver continual*, is that which continueth without any intermiſſion, and it is moſt dangerous and violent: for there is in it the effects of all the former Feavers, every one taking place as the other endeth: as the *Quotidian* beginning, is perſued by a *Tertian*, and a *Tertian* by a *Quartan*, and thoſe two ſupply ſo many hours till the *Quotidian* doth begin again. This kind of Continual Feaver, moſt often ſpringeth from ſome inflammation or Violent heat ingendred in the Principal Members about the Heart: and the ſigns thereof are want of Reſt, and falling away of the Fleſh, beſide certain Inflammations or ſwellings, which will appear about his Withers and Flanks. The Cure is, firſt to purge his Head by ſneeſing, the manner whereof you ſhall find in a particular Chapter hereafter: which done, you ſhall give him this Drink, take of Jermander two Ounces of Gum Tragacant, and dried Roſes, of each half an Ounce, beat them into fine Powder, and put them into a quart of Ale, adding thereunto, of Oyl-Olive two Ounces, and as much Honey; and when it is lukewarm, give it the Horſe to Drink: then walk him a little ſpace, and after ſet him up Cloſe and Warm, keep him from Cold water, and let his Provender be dry Oats.

CHAP. XX.

Of the Hectick Feaver.

THe *Hectick* Feaver in Horſes, is a dangerous and mortal Feaver, being in a Horſe the firſt Original breeder of a Conſumption; it is a certain Hot and Dry Humour, which runneth between the

Skin and the Fleſh, proceeding from a ſick Stomack, which having been ſcalded with hot Drinks, (as thoſe ill Dieted Running Horſes be, which feed upon much Spice, or thoſe which take hot Drenches upon every fooliſh and ſlight occaſion) hath almoſt clean loſt the power of Digeſtion: It ſometimes happens to thoſe Horſes which Men too carefully teaching to Drink Beer and Wine, do ſo continually apply them thereunto, that in the end they become ſubject to this ſickneſs. The ſigns to know it; the Horſe will never eat with any appetite, and when you draw out his Tongue, you ſhall find it raw, and almoſt ſcalded; his Fleſh will be looſe and Flaggy, and his Body ſubject to a continual Trembling. The Cure is, firſt waſh his Tongue either with the ſirrup of Mulberries, or with Allom, Running water, Sage and Woodbind Leaves boyled together, then give him faſting in a morning this Drink; Take of Aloes one Ounce, of Garlick half an Ounce, of Licoras and Anniſeeds of each a Dram, beaten to powder, and let him drink it with a quart of white Wine, luke-warm, and made ſweet with Sugar candy or Honey: let him drink no Drink, but warm maſhes of Malt and Water, and let his meat be ſweet Hay, or green Corn blades: and ever after his Medicine, let him be chafed a little, kept faſting two or three hours, and ſtand warm and well cloathed.

CHAP. XXI.

Of the Feaver taken in Autumn, or the fall of the Leaf.

ALL theſe Feavers before ſpoken of, do for the moſt part, commonly happen to Horſes in the Spring-time of the year, by reaſon that the new Blood is ever apteſt to be inflamed: yet notwithſtanding, we find by Experience, that Feavers will ſometimes come at the fall of the Leaf, which we call *Autumn*, and they are of a longer continuance than the other. The ſigns are none other but ſuch as I have already declared: For they are the ſame Feavers, only altering the time of the year. If therefore your Horſe do chance to catch a Feaver at the fall of the Leaf, you ſhall let him Blood on his Neck-vein, and in the Palate of his Mouth, and you ſhall give him to drink the ſame drink which is formerly ſet down for the Feaver continual, and there is no doubt of his Recovery.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXII.

Of the Feaver taken in the Summer-ſeaſon.

A Feaver taken in the Summer ſeaſon, is the worſt of all Ordinary Feavers whatſoever, eſpecially all ſuch as are taken in the Dog-dayes, becauſe according to the opinion of Farriers, all accidents are then moſt furious: the eſpecial ſigns of this Feaver are, that his Arteries will beat moſt palpably, and whereſoever he ſtaleth, there you ſhall perceive he ſheddeth his Seed alſo. The Cure, according to the Antients, is to let him Blood in the great Vein which he hath on his hinder Haunch, almoſt four inches beneath his Fundament; but for mine own part becauſe that Vein is not eaſily found by every ignorant Smith, and that many times by miſtaking, they may cut the Artery, inſtead of the Vein, I hold it fully as good to let him Blood on the Neck-vein, which done, give him this Drink two hours and a half after; take the juyce of a handfull of Purſlane, and mix it with Gun-Tragacant, Anniſeeds, and Damask Roſe-leaves beaten to Powder; then put them into a quart of Strong Ale, made ſweet either with Sugar-candy, or Honey, and fail not to give him this Drink three mornings together, keep the Horſe warm during his Sickneſs.

CHAP. XXIII.

Of the Feaver taken in the Winter-ſeaſon.

A Feaver taken in the Winter, is not ſo dangerous to the Life of a Horſe, as the Feaver before mentioned; yet it is a Feaver which will continue long, and ask great Circumſpection in the Cure: the cauſes thereof, are the ſame which are formerly deſcribed; and the ſigns are no other than hath been already declared. Touching the Cure, it is thus: you ſhall firſt purge his Head by making him ſneeze, that done, you ſhall let him Blood both in the Neck and the Palate of the Mouth, and then two hours and a half after give him this Drink. Take of Rue three Ounces, of round Pepper half an Ounce, of Bay-berries, and the ſeed of Smallage, each half an Ounce,

boyl these in White Wine, and give it him to Drink luke-warm. Other Farriers use to take a pint of new Milk, and to put therein two Ounces of Sallet-Oyl, of Saffron one scruple, and of Myrrh two scruples, of the seed of Smallage a spoonful, and to make him drink it luke-warm; but the Horse which taketh this Drink, must be good in strength, for if he be brought low, it is somewhat too strong.

The Antient *Italians* did use for this Feaver, to give this Drink: Take of *Aristolochia* half an Ounce, of *Gentian*, of Hyssop, Wormwood, of Southernwort, of each half an Ounce, of dry fat Figs three Ounces, of the seed of Smallage an Ounce and a half of Rue half an handfull, boyl them all with running water in a clean Vessel, till almost half be consumed; then when it begins to thicken, take it from the fire, strain it, and give it the Horse luke-warm. Now there are not any of these Drinks but are sufficient for the Cure; but the first is best. Now for his Diet, be sure to keep him fasting long before his fits come, and let his drink be only warm mashes of Malt and Water. Now if you perceive that his fits continue, and bring the Horse to any weakness, you shall then to comfort and quicken the natural heat of the Horse, rub and chafe all his Body over, either in the Sun, or by some soft Fire, with some wholsome Friction, of which Frictions you shall find choice in a particular Chapter hereafter following, together with their several natures and uses.

CHAP. XXIV.

Of the Feaver which cometh by Surfeit of meat only.

THe Feaver which cometh by Surfeit of meat only, without either Disorder in Travel or Corruption of Blood, is known by these signs: the Horse will heave and beat upon his Back, his breath will be Short, Hot, and Dry, and his Wind he will draw only at his Nose with great Violence. The Cure therefore is, you shall let him Blood in his Neck, under his Eyes, and in the palate of his Mouth, you shall also purge his Head by making him sneese, then keep him with very thin Diet, that is, let him fast for more than half of the day, and let him not drink above once in four and twenty hours, and that drink to be warm Water; you shall also once or twice chafe his Body with a wholsome Friction; and if, during his Cure, he

he chance to grow Coſtive, you ſhall cauſe him to be raked, and afterward give him either a Suppoſitary, or a Cliſter, of both which, and of their ſeveral natures, you ſhall read ſufficiently in a Chapter following.

CHAP. XXV.

Of Feavers extraordinary, and firſt of Peſtilent Feavers.

WE find by many Antient *Italian* Writers, that both the *Romans*, and others their Countrymen, have by experience found many Horſes ſubject to this Peſtilent Feaver, which is a moſt contagious and peſtiferous Diſeaſe, almoſt incurable; and for mine own part, I have ſeen it in many Colts and young Horſes. Surely it proceedeth, as I judge, either from great Corruption of Blood, or from Infection of the Air. The ſigns thereof be, the Horſe will hold down his Head, forſake his Meat, ſhed much water at his Eyes; and many times have ſwellings or Ulcers riſing a little below his Ear roots. The Cure is, firſt you ſhall not fail to let him Blood in the *Neck-vein*: then two or three hours after you ſhall give him a Cliſter: then make him this Plaiſter: Take of Squilla five Ounces, of Elder, of *Caſtoreum*, of Muſtardſeed, and of *Euforbium*, of each two Ounces; diſſolve the ſame in the juice of Daffodill and Sage, and lay it all about the Temples of his Head, and between his Ears: then give him to drink for three or four dayes together, every Morning, two Ounces of the beſt Treacle diſſolved in a pint of good *Muſkadine*.

The *Italians* uſe to give him divers Mornings, a pound of the juice of Elder-roots, or inſtead of his Hay, a good quantity of that Herb which is called *Venus hair*; but if the time of the year be ſuch, that they cannot have it green, then they boyl it in water and ſtrain it, and give it him to *Drink*, but I hold the firſt *Drink*, to be moſt ſufficient, his Diet being thin, and his keeping Warm.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXVI.

Of the Plague or Peſtilence in Horſes, of ſome called the Gargil or Murrain.

THis Peſtilence, Murrain, or Gargill in Horſes, is a contagious and moſt infectious Diſeaſe, proceeding either from ſurfeit of Heat, Cold, Labour, or Hunger, or any other thing breeding Corrupt Humours in a Horſes Body, as the holding too long of his Urine, drinking when he is hot, or feeding upon groſs, foul, and Corrupt Foods, as in low Grounds, after Floods, when the Graſs is unpurged, and ſuch like. Sometimes it ſprings from ſome Evil influence of the Planets, corrupting the Plants and fruits of the Earth, and Cattel too ſometimes, and from divers other ſuch like Cauſes; but howſoever, when the Diſeaſe beginneth, certain it is, that it is moſt infectious, and if there be not care and prevention uſed, of Multitudes it will not leave one. Nor any of the Antient *Italian* Farriers, nor any of our *Engliſh* Farriers that I have met with, do or can ſhew me any ſign or token to know this Diſeaſe, more then that one or two muſt firſt Dye, and then by their Deaths I muſt adjudge and prevent what will follow; but they are miſtaken: For this Diſeaſe is as eaſily known by outward ſigns, as any Diſeaſe whatſoever; as namely, the Horſe will begin to lowr and hang down his Head; and within two or three days after ſuch lowring, you ſhall ſee him begin to ſwell under his Ear roots, or under the roots of his Tongue, and that ſwelling will run univerſally over all one ſide of his Face, being very extreme hard and great. Moreover, all his Lips, Mouth, and Whites of his Eyes will be exceeding yellow, and his Breath will be ſtrong, and ſtink exceedingly.

The Cure of this Diſeaſe, according to the manner of the *Italians* and *French men*, is, firſt to ſeperate the ſound from the ſick, even a far diſtance from that Air where the ſick Breatheth; then let him Blood in the Neck veins, and give every one ſeverally to drink, two ſpoonfull of the powder of *Diapente*, brewed in a pint of ſtrong *Sack*, of the compoſition of which *Diapente*, and of the particular Vertues thereof, you ſhall read in a Chapter following. If you cannot readily get this *Diapente*, you may then take a pint of *Muskadine*, and diſſolve

diſſolve into it two Ounces of the beſt Treacle, and it will ſerve the turn. Queſtionleſs theſe Medicines are both exceeding good; for they are great Preſervatives againſt all infections.

Now that which I have found far to exceed them, and to be moſt Excellent, not only for this Plague amongſt Horſes, but for the Plague or Murrain, (of ſome called the Mountains-evil) amongſt Beaſts, is this; Take a good quantity of old Urine, and mix therewithal a good quantity of Hens Dung, ſtir them well together till the Dung be diſſolved: then with a Horn give to every Horſe or Beaſt a pint thereof lukewarm. This have I ſeen help hundreds.

CHAP. XXVII.

Of the Feaver accidental, coming by ſome Wound received.

IF a Horſe ſhall receive any grievous and ſore wound, either by ſtroke or thruſt, by which any of the Vital Powers are let or hindred, certain it is, that the pain and anguiſh of ſuch Wounds will bring a Horſe to a hot Feaver, and then his Life is in great danger: Beſides, a Horſe being naturally ſubject to moiſt Diſtillations in his throat, there will many times riſe therein great Swellings and Ulcers, through the pain whereof, a Horſe will fall into a burning Ague.

The ſigns whereof are, that he will covet much to drink, but cannot drink, and his fleſh will fall away in much extraordinary faſhion.

The Cure, beſides the remedies before mentioned, is, to let him Blood under his Ears, and in the Mouth: And then to take a fine Manchet, and cutting it in ſlices, ſteep it in Muskadine, and compell him to ſwallow them: It ſhall alſo be good, if once in three dayes you ſteep your Manchet in Sallet Oyl, and make him eat it. As for his drink, let it be only warm Mathes of Malt and Water, which if he cannot drink, you ſhall then give it him with an Horn. And thus much touching Feavers both ordinary and extraordinary.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXVIII.

One general, certain, and approved Cure for all the Feavers and Sicknesses formerly rehearsed, never yet disclosed from the Authors breast.

I Have in the former Chapters shewed you the Names, Diversities, Natures, Signs, and ordinary Cures for all sorts of Feavers whatsoever: Now because I know the Ignorance of some so great, that they cannot discern; the Sloth of others such, that they will not indeavour to discern; and the Folly of many so peevish, that they will mistake what they may discern: I will shew you here one general, certain, and approved Medicine, for all Feavers of what Nature or Violence soever.

When therefore at any time you shall find by any of the Signs formerly rehearsed, that your Horse droopeth, you shall presently let him Blood in the Neck-vein, and let him bleed well, then three Mornings together after (the Horse being fasting) give him half an Ounce of the Powder called *Diapente*, (the Composition whereof you shall find in a particular Chapter, together with the Vertues,) and this *Diapente* you shall brew in a pint of Muskadine, and so give it the Horse to drink with an Horn: then let him be Ridden or Walked abroad for an hour; after he cometh in, give him any meat whatsoever that he will eat. At noon give him a sweet Mash. In the Evening perfume his Head with a sweet perfume: The Composition whereof you shall find in a particular Chapter; at Night rub all his Limbs well with hard Wisps, and his Head and nape of the Neck with a coarse harden Rubber, then feed as aforesaid. And thus do 3 dayes together, and without doubt health will come suddainly.

CHAP. XXIX.

Of the Diseases in the Head.

AS a Horses Head is composed of many parts, so are those many parts subject to many and sundry grievances, as namely, the Panicles or thin Skins, which cleave to the Bones, and do cover the whole

whole Brain, are ſubject to Head-ach, Meagrim, Dizzineſs, and Amazes; the whole Brain it ſelf is properly ſubject to breed the Frenſie, Madneſs, Sleeping evil, the taking and forgetfulneſs. And here is to be noted, that many Farriers, and thoſe of approved good skill, have ſtrongly held Opinions, that Horſes have very little, or no Brains at all: And my ſelf for mine own part, being carried away with their Cenſures, did at laſt, upon good Conſideration, cut up the Heads of divers Horſes, ſome Dead, ſome in Dying, and could never find any Liquid or thin Brain, as in other Beaſts, but only a very thick, ſtrong, tough, and ſhining ſubſtance, ſolid and firm, like a tough jelly, which I ever held to be only a Panicle, and ſo reſolved with others, that a Horſe had no Brain: but after, upon further Diſcourſe with Men of better Learning, I had this Reſolution given me: That a Horſe being a Beaſt of extraordinary ſtrength and ability, made even to endure the worſt of all extremities, either by ſore Labour, or heavy Burthen, that Nature in his Creation had endowed him with Members anſwerable to ſuch Vigour: As namely, that his Brain was not liquid and moiſt, as ſubject to fleet, or to be diſtempered with every ſmall diſorder, but tough and hard, even unpenetrable, and not to be pierc'd by any reaſonable motion. And for the Panicles, they ſhewed me thoſe thin skins over and beſides that great ſubſtance: ſo that by experience I ſaw, and now know, that a Horſe hath both Brain and a Panicle, and in them two are bred the Diſeaſes before mentioned. Now in the Ventricles, or Cels of the Brain, and in thoſe Conduits by which the lively Spirits give feeling and motion to the Body, there to breed the Turnſick, or Sturdy, the Staggers, the falling evill, the Night-mare, the Apoplexie, the Palſie and Convulſion, or Cramp, the Catharre, or Rheum, and laſtly the Glanders. And thus much of the Head in general.

CHAP. XXX.

Of Head-ach, or pain in the Head.

THe Head-ach is a pain that cometh either of ſome Inward cauſe, or of ſome Cholerick Humor gathered together in the Panicles of the Brain, or elſe of ſome extreme Heat or Cold, or of ſome ſuddain Blow, or of ſome noiſome Savour. The ſigns are, the

hanging down of the Horſes Head and Ears, dropping of his Urine, dimneſs of ſight, ſwoln and watriſh Eyes. The Cure according to the opinion of ſome of our Engliſh Farriers, is to let him Blood in the Eye-veins, and to ſquirt warm Water into his Noſtrils; and for that day give him no meat; the next Morning faſting, give him warm Water, and ſome Graſs: at night give him Barley and Fitches mixt together, and ſo keep him warm till he be ſound: But this Cure I do not fancy. The beſt help is, firſt to make him ſneez by Fuming him, then let him Blood in the Palate of the Mouth, and keep him faſting at the leaſt twelve hours after: then pour into his Noſtrils Wine, wherein hath been ſodden *Euphorbium* and *Franckincenſe*, and after feed him and keep his Head warm.

CHAP. XXXI.

Of the Frenzy, and Madneſs in a Horſe.

THe Madneſs of a Horſe, by the moſt antient and beſt appproved Farriers, is divided into four Paſſions: The firſt is, when ſome naughty Blood doth ſtrike the Panicle of the Brain but in one part only, it preſently makes the Horſe dull both of mind and ſight: and you ſhall know it by this ſign, the Horſe will turn round like a Beaſt that is troubled with the Sturdy: the Reaſon being, becauſe the outſide of the Head is grieved only. The ſecond is, when the Poyſon of ſuch Blood doth infect the middle part of the Brain: Then the Horſe becometh Frantick, leaping againſt Walls or any thing. The third is, when that Blood filleth the veins of the ſtomack, and infecteth as well the Heart as the Brain: then he is ſaid to be mad. But the fourth and laſt is, when that Blood infecteth not only the Brain and Heart, but even the Panicles alſo, and then is he ſaid to be ſtark Mad, which you ſhall know by his Biting at every Man which comes near him, by his gnawing of the Manger and the Walls about him. And laſtly, by tearing his own skin in pieces.

Now for the Cure, you ſhall cauſe him to be let Blood in all the lower parts of his Body, to draw the Blood from his Head; as namely, on the Shackle-veins, the Spur-veins, the Plat-veins, and the Thigh-veins, and you ſhall let him Blood abundantly, then give him this Drink: take the Root of wild Cucumber, and where that cannot

cannot be gotten, take a handfull of Rue or Mints, and a handful of black Elleborus, and boyl then in ſtrong Red Wine, and give it luke-warm to the Horſe in a Horn.

Some uſe to give Mans Dung with Wine, three Mornings together: and alſo to rubt his Body over with a Friction at leaſt twice a day, and not to fail to give him moderate Exerciſe.

Others uſe to pierce the skin of his Head with a hot Iron, to let out the ill Humours.

Others as the moſt certain of all Medicines, uſe to Geld him of both, or one Stone at the leaſt, but I like it not for mine own part.

The Cure I have ever uſed for this grief, was either to make him ☜ ſwallow down hard Hens Dung, or elſe give him to drink, the Root of *Virga Paſtoris* ſtamped in Water, and for his ordering during the Cure, I would have his ſtable quiet, but not cloſe, and his food only warm Maſhes of Malt and Water, yet but a very little at one time, for the thinneſt Dyet is beſt.

CHAP. XXXII.

Of the Sleeping Evil, or Lethargy in a Horſe.

THe Sleeping Evil, is an infirmity which maketh a Horſe to ſleep continually, depriving him thereby, both of Memory, Appetite, and all Alacrity of Spirit. It is moſt incident to White and Dun Horſes, becauſe it proceedeth only from *Flegm*, cold and groſs, which moiſtneth the Brain too much, cauſeth heavineſs and ſleep: there needs no other ſign more than his ſleeping only. The Cure is, to keep him waking whether he will or no, with great noiſes and affright; then let him Blood in the Neck, and the Palate of the Mouth, and give him to drink Water luke-warm, wherein hath been boyled Camomil, Mother wort, Wheat, Bran, Salt, and Vineger: you ſhall alſo perfume his Head, and make him ſneeze, and anoint the Palate of his Mouth with Honey and Muſtard mixt together: It ſhall not be amiſs, if with the ordinary Water which he drinketh, you mix either Parſley ſeed, or Fennel ſeed, for that will provoke Urine: you ſhall alſo bath his Leggs, and ſtop his Hoofs with Bran, Salt, and Vineger boyled together, and applied as hot as may be, and his Stable would be lightſome and full of noiſe.

CHAP. XXXIII.

Of a Horſe that is taken, or of Shrow-running.

THoſe Horſes are ſuppoſed by Farriers to be taken, or as ſome call it, Planet-ſtrook, which are deprived of feeling or of moving, not being able to ſtir any Member, but remain in the ſame form as they were at their time of taking. Some hold it proceeding of Choler and Flegm, when they are ſuperabundantly mixt together, or of Melancholy Blood, which being a cold dry Humour, doth oppreſs and ſicken the hinder part of the Brain. Other antient Farriers hold, it cometh of ſome extreme cold, or extreme heat, or raw digeſtion, ſtriking into the empty Veins ſuddenly: or elſe of extreme Hunger cauſed by long faſting. The ſigns thereof are numbneſs, and want of motion before ſpoken of: As for the cauſe, it is diverſe, for firſt you muſt note, whether it come of cold or heat: If it come of Cold, you ſhall know it by the ſtuffing and poze in the Head, which is ever joyned with the Diſeaſe: if of Heat, by the hotneſs of his Breath, and clear fetching of his Wind. Now if it proceed from Cold, you ſhall give him to drink one Ounce of *Laſerpitium* mixt with Sallet Oyl and Muskadine luke-warm: if it proceed of Heat, you ſhall give him one Ounce of *Laſerpitium* with Water and Hony luke-warm: but if it proceed of Crudity, or any raw digeſtion, then you ſhall help him by faſting: and if it proceed of Faſting, then you ſhall heal him by feeding him often with good Meat, as with wholeſome Bread, and dry oats; yet but a little at a time, that he may ever eat with a good ſtomach.

Now for the *French* Farriers, as Monſieur *Horace* and the reſt, who call this Diſeaſe *Surprim*, they hold, it cometh only from Cold cauſes, following Hot accidents, and they uſe for their Cure to let him blood on the Breaſt-veins, and then put him into a ſweat, either by Exerciſe, or multiplicity of Cloaths, but many Cloaths are better, becauſe the Horſe is not capable of Labour: and ſometimes they will bury him all ſave his Head in an old Dunghill, till through the Heat thereof his Limbs receive ſuch feeling, that he begins to ſtruggle out of the ſame. All which Cures are not much amiſs: Yet in mine Opinion, this is the beſt, eaſieſt, and ſureſt way: Firſt, to let him blood in the Neck and Breaſt, then to anoint all his

his Body with Oyl *Petroleum*, then give him this drink. Take of Malmſey three pints, and mix it with a quartern of Sugar, Cinamon, and Cloves, and let him drink it luke-warm, then take old rotten wet litter, and for want thereof, wet Hay, and with Cloaths, Surſingles and Cords, ſwaddle all his whole Body over with the ſame of a good thickneſs, and renew it once in three days till he be whole; let his Stable be Warm, his Exerciſe moderate, and if he grow Coſtive, let him firſt be raked, and after give him either a Cl ſter, or a Suppoſitary, according to his ſtrength. There is alſo another kind of taking, and that is, when a H rſe is Planet-ſtrook, or ſtricken with Thunder: but it is utterly incurable, and therefore I will omit to ſpeak further of i-. The laſt kind of taking is when a Horſe is Shrow-run, that when a Horſe lieth ſleeping, there is a certain venemous field-Mouſe called a Shrow, whoſe Head is extraordinary long, like a Swines Head, and her Feet ſhorter of the one ſide than the other. This Mouſe if ſhe happen to run over any of the Limbs of the Horſe, preſently the Horſe 'oſeth the uſe of that Limb ſhe ran over, and if ſhe run over his Body, he commonly loſeth the uſe of his hinder loins: and theſe accidents having been often found unexpected, common Farriers have held the Horſe to be taken, or Planet-ſtrook. As for the Cure thereof, the beſt is to ſeek out a Brier, which groweth at both ends, and take the Horſe or Beaſt that is thus vexed, and draw him under the ſame, and it is a preſent remedy. For mine own part, I have heard much, both of the Infirmity, and of the Cure, but I have had no Experience of i-, but only in one young Foa', which being ſudden'y Lame, was as ſuddenly helped, to my much Contentment.

CHAP. XXXIV.

Of the Staggers.

THe *Staggers* is a dizzy madneſs of the Brain, proceeding from corrupt Blood, or groſs, tough ar d heavy Humours, which oppreſs and make ſick the Brain, and from when e proceedeth a vaporous Spirit, diſſ lved by a weak heat which r oubleth all the whole Head: it is almoſt of all Diſeaſes the moſt common, yet very mortal and dangerous: it commeth many times from ſurfeit of Meat, ſurfeit of Travel, or from corruption of Blood. The ſigns to know it is

Dimneſs

Dimneſs of ſight, ſwoln and watriſh Eyes, a moiſt Mouth, ſtaggering and reeling of the Horſe, and beating of his Head againſt the walls, or thruſting it into his Litter. The Cure is divers: for almoſt every Smith hath a ſeveral Medicine, yet theſe which I ſhall rehearſe, are the moſt approved. The antient Farriers, both *Italians* and *French*, uſe to let the Horſe blood in the Temple-veins, and then with a Knife make an hole an inch long over-thwart his Fore-head, underneath his Fore-top, and raiſing the skin up with a Corner, ſome two or three inches about, ſtop the hollowneſs with a tent dipt in Turpentine and Hogs greaſe molten together; but ſome of our Smiths finding this Cure fail, except the Diſeaſe be very young, uſe to ſtop the hollowneſs with Dock roots. Others with a Clove or two of Garlick. Others uſe for this Diſeaſe to take Selladine, and ſtamping it to ſtop it into his Ears, and ſo tye up his Ears, or ſtich the tips of his Ears together, that he may not ſhake the Medicine out. Others uſe to mix Salt and Water together thick, and to put it into his Ears. Others uſe to mix *Groundſill* and Aqua-vitæ together, and to put that into his Ears. Others uſe to take Garlick, Rue, and Bay Salt, and beat them groſly, then mix Vinegar with them, and put it into the Horſes Ears, then wet Wool or Tow in the Medicine, and ſtop that in his Ears alſo: let the Medicine reſt ſo four and twenty Hours, and if he forſake his Meat, waſh his Tongue with Vineger, and it will recover his ſtomack. Others uſe firſt to perfume the Horſes Head, to make him ſneeſe, then to take half a handful of Selladine, and as much Herb-of-grace, three or four Cloves of Garlick, and a little Bay Salt, and ſtamp them together: then mix therewith two or three ſpoonfuls of Vinegar or Verjuyce, and thruſt it hard into the Horſes Ears: then tye up his Ears with a ſoft inkle ſtring, that no Air may come in, and let this Medicine remain the ſpace of a Day and a Night: then let him Blood in the Neck-vein, and give him a comfortable Drench, of which Drenches you ſhall find great plenty, together with their uſes, in a Chapter following. There be ſome Smiths which only take Rue and Salladine, of each a like quantity, and ſtamping them with white Salt, thruſt it into the Horſe Ear, and it helpeth. Others take an Ounce and a half of the Oyl of bitter Almonds, two drams of Oxe-gall, an half penny in black Ellebor ſtamped, and five drams of the grains of Caſtoreum, Vineger, and Verjuyce, ſeeth them altogether till the Vinegar be conſumed, then ſtrain them,

them, and put it into the Horſes Ears. All theſe Medicines have been divers times approved to be ſingular good, and for mine own part, I have found great effects in them: Yet that which I have found at all times moſt Excellent, is, if the Diſeaſe be young and early taken, (that is, before the Horſe be grown into an extremity of Weakneſs) to take only Verjuice and Bay Salt, and mixing them well together, to ſtop it into the Horſes Ears. But if the Diſeaſe be old, and the Horſe brought to a deſperate ſtate of mortality, then you ſhall take Aſſafetida, and having diſſolved it in Vinegar, warm it upon a Chafingdiſh of Coals, and with round balls of Tow, ſtuff it hard into the horſes Ears, and ſo bind them up for four and twenty hours, after which time give him a comfortable drink. Now whereas ſome Smiths do uſe to ſtamp *Aqua-vitæ* and Garlick together, and ſtop that into his Ears: I for my part, think it too ſtrong, except the Horſe be in great luſt, and full of fleſh, which if he be, doubtleſs it may do well enough: only for a general Rule you muſt obſerve, ever to let the Horſe blood in the Neck-vein, two or three Mornings together, and every time to great abundance of Blood from him.

CHAP. XXXV.

Of the Falling Evil.

THis Falling Evil, or as the Italians call it, this *Malcadaco*, is nothing elſe but that which we call in Men the *Falling ſickneſs*, in Beaſts the Falling evil: for it doth for a certain Seaſon, deprive them of all ſenſe whatſoever. It is a Diſeaſe not commonly incident to our Engliſh Races, but amongſt the Italian, Spaniſh, and French Horſes, many times found.

Now conſidering that the moſt of our beſt *Engliſh* Stables are furniſhed even with ſome horſes of theſe Countries, I think it good to write ſomething touching the Diſeaſe. It proceeds from cold and groſs Flegm, gathered together in the Fore-part of the Head, betwixt the Panicle and the Brain, which being by any hot Vapour diſperſt over the whole Brain, it doth inſtantly caſe this falling. There be others which ſuppoſe that it is governed by the Moon; and that by a certain courſe thereof, both horſes and other Beaſts do fall, and

as

as it were die for a ſmall time. The ſign to know the Diſeaſe, is, the horſe will fall ſuddainly, both through the Reſolution of his Members, and the Diſtenſion of his Sinews, all his Body will quake and quiver, and they will foam much at their Mouths, yet when you think them paſt all hope of Life, they will ſtill ſtart up ſuddenly and fall to their Mear. Now if you will know whether theſe fits will come often, or but ſeldome, you ſhall feel the Griſtle betwixt his Noſtrils, and if it be Cold, he will oft; but if it be Warm, he will fall ſeldome. The Cure is, you ſhall firſt let him Blood in the Neck-vein, taking good ſtore of Blood away: then within four or five dayes after, you ſhall let him Blood on his Temple-veins, and on his Eye-veins: then anoint all his Body over with a comfortable Friction, then bathe his Head and Ears with Oyl de Bay, liquid pitch and tar mixt together, and of the ſame put ſome into his Ears: then make him a Cap or Biggin of Canveaſe, quilted with Wool to keep his Head warm: then give him a purgation or ſcouring, of which you ſhall find plenty in a Chapter hereafter: you ſhall alſo force him to ſneeze: but if the Diſeaſe notwithſtanding continue ſtill, you ſhall then with a hot Iron pierce the skin of his Fore Head in divers places, and after anoint it with ſweet Butter, for thereby you ſhall draw out the groſs Humours which do oppreſs the Brain, and in any wiſe during the time that he remaineth in Phyſick, let his Stable be kept exceeding warm, and his Dyet thin.

CHAP. XXXVI.

Of the Night mare.

THis Diſeaſe which we call the Night mare, is an infirmity which only troubleth the horſe in the Night-ſeaſon, ſtopping the drawing of his Breath, in ſuch Violent ſort, that with the ſtruggling and ſtriving he will be driven into a great ſweat and faintneſs: It Proceedeth, according to the opinion of antient Farriers, from a continnual Crudity, or raw Digeſtion of the ſtomack, from whence groſs Vapours aſcending up into the Head, do not only oppreſs the Brain, but all the Senſitive parts alſo. Now for my part, I rather hold it an infirmity of the Stomack and inward Bowels, which being cloyed with much Glut and Fat, doth in the Night-ſeaſon ſo hinder the

the Spirits and Powers from doing their Natural Office, that the Beaſt having, as it were, his Breath ſtrang'ed, doth with an unnatural ſtruggling in his ſleep, put his Body into an extreme ſweat, and with that Paſſion is brought to much faintneſs; of which I have had much and continual Experience, not only in Horſes, exceeding fat, and newly taken from the Graſs, but eſpecially from ſuch horſes as are either fatted upon Eddiſh Graſs, which in ſome Countries is called after Mathes; or ſuch as are taken up fat in the Winter-ſeaſon. The ſigns to know this Diſeaſe, is, that in the Morning when you come early to your horſe, you ſhall find him all of a great ſweat, and his Body ſomething panting; or perhaps you ſhall but only find him ſweat in his flanks, upon his Neck, and at the Roots of his Ears: either of both are ſigns of this ſickneſs, eſpecially if at Night when you litter him, if you find that he is dry of his Body, and giveth no outward ſign of inward ſickneſs. Now there be ſome that will Object againſt me, and ſay, that this Infirmity is not the Night-mare, but an ordinary Infirmity ingendred by ſuperfluity of Cold, Groſs, and unwholſome Food, got in the Winter-ſeaſon; which nature, through the help of warm Cloaths, and a warm houſe, expells in this manner, in the Night-ſeaſon. To this Objection I anſwer, that if they do diſallow this ſickneſs to be the Night-mare, that then without Contradiction, there is no ſuch Diſeaſe as the Night-mare at all, and that it is but only a Name without any ſubſtance or conſequence; but foraſmuch as this ſickneſs is not only very uſual, but alſo carrieth with it all the effects and attributs aſcribed unto the Night-mare, and that it is as yet a Diſeaſe unnamed, I do not think I can give it a more proper term than to call it the Night-mare. The Cure whereof is, every Morning and Evening, both before and after his water, to give the Horſe ſome moderate Exerciſe, as to make him go at leaſt a mile and more for his water; and after he is Watered, to Gallop him gently on the hand a good ſpace: then when he is brought into the houſe, and well Rubbed, to give him his Provender, (being Oats) and to mix therewith a handfull, or better, of Hempſeed; only in this Cure you muſt be carefull, that your Exerciſe do not enforce him to Sweat, nor ſhall you have need to uſe it longer, than you find that he ſweateth much in the Night-ſeaſon. This Exerciſe and Medicine will not only Cure this infirmity, but alſo any Cold that is newly gotten whatſoever.

CHAP. XXXVII.

Of the Apoplexie, or Palſie.

THeſe Palſies or Apoplexies which happen unto Horſes, are of two ſorts: the one general, the other particular. The general Palſie is, when a horſe is deprived of all ſence, and moving, generally over his whole Body, which is ſeldome or never found out by our Farriers: becauſe the mortality and ſuddenneſs of Death which perſues the Diſeaſe, takes from them, all Notes and Obſervations of the Infirmity: and indeed, for the general Palſie, there is no Cure, and therefore there needs no Deſcription of ſign or cure. For this particular Palſie, that is, when a horſe is deprived but of ſome part or member of his Body, and moſt commonly it is but the Neck only, as both my ſelf and others have found by daily Experience. This Diſeaſe proceedeth from foulneſs of food, or from fen-feeding, which breedeth groſs and tough Humours, which joyned with Crudities and raw Digeſtions, oppreſs the Brain violently altogether: it alſo commeth many times by means of ſome Blow or Wound given upon the Temples of the Head. The ſigns to know the Diſeaſe are, the gathering together of his Body, going crookedly, and not ſtraight forward, but ſeldome, and holding his Neck awry without motion: yet never forſaking his Provender or Meat, but eating it with greedineſs, and much ſlavering. The Cure is to, let him Blood on his Neck-vein, and Temple-vein, on the contrary ſide to that way he wryeth: then annoint all his Neck over with the Oyl Petrolium, and with wet Hay Ropes ſwaddle all his Neck over, even from his Breaſt to his Ears, but having before ſplented his Neck ſtrait with ſplents of Wood, made ſtrong, ſmooth, and flat for the purpoſe: then for three Mornings together, give him a pint of old *Muſkadine*, with two ſpoonfull of this Powder to drink. Take of Opopanax two Ounces, of Storax three Ounces, of Gentian three Ounces, of Manna Succary three Ounces, of Myrrh one ſcruple, and of long Pepper two ſcruples, beat all theſe into fine powder.

Now there be ſome Farriers, which for this Diſeaſe uſe to draw the Horſes neck on the contrary ſide with a hot Iron, even from the Neck to the Shoulder, and on the Temple of his Head of that ſide alſo,

alſo, a long ſtrike, and on the other a little Star in this manner +, and from his Reins to his middle Back, ſmall lines in this manner

But I that know this ſickneſs proceedeth from the Brain and Sinews, cannot conceive how any help ſhould come from burning of the skin, that is drawn up and ſtraightned: And therefore I would wiſh every Farrier to forbear this tormenting, unleſs he apparently ſee, that the skin it ſelf through diſlike and weakneſs, is ſhrunk alſo, and then the Cure is not amiſs.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

Of the general Cramps, or Convulſion of ſinews.

THeſe general Cramps, or Convulſion of ſinews, are moſt forcible Contractions, or drawings together of the ſinews, and muſcles: and they happen ſometimes generally into many parts of the Body, ſomtimes particularly, as but into one Member and no more: When they are generally diſperſt in horſes, they proceed commonly from ſome wound, wherein a ſinew is half cut and no more, and ſo there rnnneth a general Contraction over the whole Body by degrees. When they are particular, as but in one Member, then they proceed either from Cold windy cauſes, or from the want of Blood. For the general Contraction which commeth by a wound, you ſhall read the Cure thereof in the Book of Chirurgery following, where the ſinew being cut in two pieces, the Contraction ceaſeth. For this particular, where but one Member is grieved, you ſhall know it by theſe ſigns: the Member will be ſtark and ſtiff, inſomuch that neither the Beaſt, nor any Man will be able to bow it: the ſinews will be hard like ſticks, and the horſe being down, is not able to riſe during the time of the Contraction, he will alſo halt extremely whilſt the fit is upon him, and preſently go well again, as it were in one moment. The Cure is, to chafe the member exceedingly, either with Linſeed Oyl, Sheeps foot Oyl, or Neats foot Oyl, and during the time of his chafing, to hold up the contrary Foot that he may ſtand upon the Limb which is moſt pained. There is alſo another Cramp or Convulſion of ſinews, which doth extnd into the Neck and Reins of the Horſes back, and ſo almoſt univerſal over the horſes

whole Body; It proceeds ever, either from ſome extreme Cold, as by turning a Horſe ſuddainly out of a warm Stable, and warm Cloaths, into the piercing rage of the Cold Winter, or by the loſs of Blood, whereby great Windineſs entreth into the Veins, and ſo benummeth the ſinews: or elſe by too much Phyſicking and Drenching of a Horſe, whereby the natural Heat is much Weakned or Dried. The ſigns of this Convulſion be, his Head and Neck will ſtand awry, his Ears upright, and his Eyes hollow, his mouth will be clung up that he cannot Eat, and his Back will riſe up in the midſt like the Back of a Camel; the Cure hereof is, with great ſtore of warm woollen Cloaths, as Blankets, and Coverlids, ſome folded double about his Body, and ſome girded all over from his Head to his Tail, to force him into a ſweat; but if the Cloaths will not force him to ſweat, then you ſhall either fold all his Body over with Hot wet Horſe Litter, or elſe bury him all ſave the Head in a Dunghill or Mixon; then when he hath ſweat an hour or two, and is moderately cooled, you ſhall annoint him all over with this Oyntment, (holding hot Barrs of Iron over him, to make the Oyntment ſink into his Body:) Take of Hoggs-greaſe one pound, of Turpentine a quarter of a pound, of Pepper beaten into powder half a dram, of old oyl Olives one pound; boyl all theſe together; and uſe it being made warm. There be other Farriers which uſe this Oyntment: Take of new Wax one pound, of Turpentine four Ounces, of Oyl de Bay as much, Opoponax two Ounces, of Deers ſuet, and of Oyl of *Styrax* of each three Ounces, melt all theſe together, and uſe it warm.

There be others which uſe, after his ſweat, nothing but Oyl of *Cypreſſe*, or of *Spike*, and Oyl de Bay mixt together, and with it annoint his Body over. After this Unction thus applied, you ſhall take twenty grains of long Pepper beaten into fine Powder, of Cedar two Ounces, of *Nitre* one Ounce, of *Laſerpitium* as much as a Bean, and mingle all theſe together with a Gallon of white Wine, and give him a quart thereof to drink every Morning for four dayes. Now for his Diet and Order, let his Food be warm Maſhes, and the fineſt Hay, his Stable exceeding Warm, and his Exerciſe gentle walking abroad in his Cloaths, once every day about High-noon.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXIX.

Of the Cold or Poze in the Head.

THE Cold or Poze in a Horſes Head is gotten by divers ſuddain and unſeen means, according to the Temper and Conſtitution of the Horſes Body, inſomuch, that the beſt keeper whatſoever cannot ſometimes warrant his Horſe from that Infirmity. Now according as this Cold is old or new, great or ſmall, and according to the abundance of Humours which abound in the head, and as thoſe Humours are of thickneſs or thinneſs, ſo is the Diſeaſe and the danger thereof greater or leſſer, ſtronger or weaker. For you ſhall underſtand, that if the Horſe have but only a cold that is newly taken, the ſigns are, he will have many Knots like Wax Kernels between his Chaules about the Roots of his Tongue; his Head will be ſomewhat heavy, and from his Noſtrils will run a certain clear Water; but if about his Tongue roots be any great Swelling or Inflammation like a mighty botch or bile, then it is the ſtrangle; but if from his Noſtrils do iſſue any thick, ſtinking or corrupt Matter, then it is the *Glanders*, of both which we ſhall ſpeak hereafter in their proper places. Now for this ordinary Cold, which is ordinarily taken, (the ſigns whereof, beſides his much Coughing, are before declared) you ſhall underſtand, that for the Cure being very eaſie, it is helped ſundry ways: Some Cure it only by purging his Head with pils of Butter and Garlick, the manner whereof you ſhall find in the Chapter of Purgations. Other Farriers Cure it with purging his Head with Fumes, and forcing him to Neeſe, the manner whereof is in the Chapter of Neezing; which done, you ſhall give him to drink Water wherein hath been ſodden *Fenugreek*, Wheat-meal, and Anniſeeds; and then to trot him up and down half an hour after. Others uſe to give him Neezing powder, blown up into his Noſtrils; and then this drink: take a pint of Malmſey, and the whites and yolks of four or five Eggs, a head of Garlick bruiſed ſmall, Pepper and Cynamon, and Nutmeggs, of each a like quantity beaten to fine powder, and a pretty quantity of ſweet Butter, mix them together, and give it lukewarm with a Horn three daies together: then keep him faſting at leaſt two hours after. Others uſe to let the Horſe blood in the Vein under

under his Tail, and to rub all his Mouth over with a bunch of Sage bound to a ſticks end, and then to mix with his Provender the tender crops of black Berries; but I take this Medicine to be fitteſt for ſuch Horſes, who with the cold Rhume are troubled with pain in their Chaps, and not with ſtuffing in their Head.

Now albeit none of theſe Medicines are faultworth, yet ſome for mine own part, I have ever found to be moſt Excellent for theſe ſlight colds, moderate Exerciſe, both before and after a Horſes water, in ſuch ſort as is declared in the Chapter of the Night-mare, without any other Fuming or Drenching, except I found the Cold to be more than ordinary, and that for want of heed-taking it was like to grow to ſome Ulcer about the Ro ts of the Tongue. In this Caſe, I would for one time and no more, give the horſe a pint of Sack, and half a pint of Sallet-Oyl made luke-warm, and well brewed with good ſtore of *Sugar candy*, to drink in the Morning faſting, and then exerciſe him moderately thereupon, without putting him into any ſweat, and it hath never failed to work the effects I wiſhed in ample ſort, without hindring me at any time of my Travail or Journey, but if you cannot conveniently come by this Medicine, and you muſt notwithſtanding Travail your Horſe, then take a ſpoonfull of *Tarr*, and folding it in a fine Cloath, fix or tye it faſt to the Mouth of your Bit, or Snaffell, and ſo Travail your horſe therewith, and it will take his cold clean away. But yet it will a little abate and leſſen his ſtomack.

CHAP. XL.

How certainly to take away any Cold, Poze, or Ratling in the Head, how Violent ſoever, without giving any inward Medicine.

IF your Horſe have taken any extreme Cold, or Poze in his Head, and being matcht either to Hunt, or to run for any great Wager, the day is ſo near that you dare not give him any inward Drench, without which, none of our Farriers know how to Cure any Cold; you ſhall then, or at any other time, (for there is no Medicine in the World more Soveraign) take as much ſweet Butter as a big Wall-nut, and with the powder of Brimſtone finely beaten and ſearſt, work them either with your Knife, or a Splatter together, till the Butter be

be brought to a high Cold-Colour; then take two clean Gooſe-feather, the longeſt in all the Wing, and firſt at the quils ends, with a Needle, faſten two long Threds: Then with your Salve annoint all the Feathers clean over; which done, in the dry powder of Brimſton tole them over and over; then putting the Feathers ends foremoſt, open the Horſes Noſtrils, and thruſt them up into his head: then take the threds which are at the quils-ends, and faſten them on the top of the Horſes Head: which done, Ride him abroad for an hour or two, ayring him in this manner Morning and Evening, and when you bring him into the Stable, after he hath ſtood tied up a pretty Seaſon, untie the Threds, and draw out the Feathers, and wiping them very dry, lay them up till you have next Occaſion to uſe them. This Cure of all others is moſt certain, and taketh away any ſtopping in the Head how extreme ſoever.

CHAP. XLI.

The Perfection and beſt of all Medicines for Poze or Cold.

TAke (if you can get it) an Ounce of the fine and pure paſte of Elicampane, which hath the ſtrings at the Roots taken from it, or for want thereof, an Ounce of the Conſerve of Elicampane, and diſſolve it in a pint and a half of Sack, and ſo give it the Horſe with a Horn in the Morning faſting, and then Ride him half an hour after it, and let him faſt two hours more, then feed him as at Ordinary times: and thus do for two or three Mornings together.

CHAP. XLII.

Of a Horſe that is Hide-bound.

THis Diſeaſe which we call Hide-bound, is, when a horſes skin cleaveth ſo hard to his Ribbs and Back, that you cannot with your Hand pull up or looſen the one from the other. It proceedeth ſometimes from poverty and ill keeping, ſometimes from ſurfeit of over-Riding; eſpecially if when he is extreme hot, he be ſuffered to ſtand long in the Rain or wet-Weather: and laſtly, it proceedeth from a corrupt drineſs of the Blood, which wanting his natural courſe,

courſe, forceth his skin to ſhrink up, and cleave to the Bones. The ſigns, beſides the cleaving of his skin, is, leanneſs of Body, gauntneſs of Belly, and the ſtanding up of the Ridge-bone of his Back: it drieth up the Entrails, torments the Body, and makes his Dung ſtink extraordinarily: and if he be not remedied, Mangineſs will preſently follow after it. The Cure of it is divers, according to the opinion of divers Work-men: the moſt antient Farriers did uſe to let him Blood on the Spur-veins, of both ſides his Belly, ſomewhat toward his flank, which done, they gave him this *Drink:* Take of white-Wine, or ſtrong Ale a quart, and add thereunto three Ounces of Sallet Oyl, of *Cumin* one Ounce, of *Anniſeeds* two Ounces, of *Licoras* two Ounces, beaten all into fine powder, and give it him luke-warm with a Horn; when he hath Drunk, let one chafe his Back, from the Huckle-bone upward, for the ſpace of an hour or more: then ſet him in a warm Stable, with good ſtore of Litter; then fold about his Body a thick Blanket, ſoaked in Water, and wrung, then over it a dry Blanket, then gird them both faſt, and ſtop the ſurſingle about with great Wiſps, for the wet Blanket will put him into a great Heat, and for want of a wet Blanket, if you fold his Body in wet Hay, it will do the like, and looſen his skin; this you ſhall do the ſpace of a Week, during which time he ſhall drink no Cold water.

There be other Farriers, which before they lay on the wet Blanket, will annoint all the horſes Body over with Wine and Sallet Oyl, and ſurely it is good alſo. There be others which for this Diſeaſe, uſe to let the Horſe blood in the Neck, then bathe his ſides with warm Water, wherein hath been ſodden Bay Leaves: then annoint him all over with the Oyl of Rue or Camomile, holding a hot Iron over him to make the Oyl ſink into his skin, then give him this Drink: Take of Carrets, Rue, Wild Mint, of each an Ounce and a half, of Worm-wood two Ounces; dry them, and beat them to powder, then give two ſpoonfulls thereof in a pint of Malmſey. There be other *Farriers*, which take *Fenugreek*, *Turmerick*, *Anniſeeds*, *Bayes*, *Licoras*, and *Cumin*, of each a like quantity, dry them, and beat them to powder, and give the Horſe two ſpoonfull thereof with a quart of Ale or Beer luke-warm: Uſe this at leaſt three Mornings together, and it will not only help the Diſeaſe, but if it be formerly uſed, it will prevent the comming thereof: This Drink is alſo good for

for a Cold. Now although every one of theſe Medicines are very good, yet for mine own part, I have found this which followeth to exceed them all.

First, let him Blood in the *Neck-vein*, then give him this *Drink*. ☜ Take two handfulls of *Selladine*, if it be in the Summer, the Leaves and Stalks will ſerve, but if it be in Winter, take Leaves, Stalk, Roots, and all, chop them ſmall, then take a handfull of Wormwood, and a handfull of Rue, chop them likewiſe, put all theſe into three quarts of ſtrong Ale or Beer, and boyl them till it come to a quart; then take it from the fire, and ſtrain it till you have left no moiſture in the Herbs; then diſſolve it in three Ounces of the beſt Treakle, and give it the Horſe luke-warm to *Drink*: then for a Week together, once a day, rub all the Horſes Body over with Oyl and Beer, or Butter and beer, againſt the Hair, and feed him with warm Maſhes of Malt and Water, and for his Provender, let him have Barley ſodden till it be ready to break, provided that you keep it not untill it ſowr.

CHAP. XLIII.

Of the Glanders.

TOuching this Diſeaſe which we call the *Glanders*, My Maſters, the old Farriers and I, are at much difference: for ſome of them do hold Opinion, that it is an inflammation of the Kirnels, which lie on each ſide of the Throat, underneath the Roots of the Tongue, neer the ſwallowing place; and their Reaſon is, that becauſe thoſe Kirnels are called of the *Italians*, *Glandulæ*, that thence we borrow this Word *Glanders*; adding moreover, that a Horſe which is troubled with this Diſeaſe, hath great Kirnels underneath his Jaws, eaſie to be felt, paining him ſo, that he cannot Eat, or ſwallow any any thing. Others ſay, it is a ſwelling upon the Jaw Bones, great and hard, which being inflamed, doth putrifie and rot. But both theſe Opinions I hold in part Erroneous: for although our old Farriers might (according to the cuſtom of our Nation, which loveth imitation of Strangers) borrow this Word *Glanders* from the *Italian Glandulæ*; yet theſe inflammations under the Chaps of the Tongue Roots, is that Diſeaſe which we call the *Strangle*, and not the *Glan-*

ders; and whereas they would call the *Strangle*, the *Quinsie*, or *Squinancy*, there is no such matter, neither hath a Horse any such Disease, except they will call the *Vives* by that name, which is far more fitter for the application.

Now for the Glanders, you shall understand, that it is a Running Impostume, ingendred either by Cold, or by Famine, or by long Thirst, or by Eating corrupt and musty Meat, or by being kept in Unsavory Places, or is taken by standing with infected Horses. It is a gathering together of moist and corrupt Humours, which runneth at the Nose; or may be said to be a flux of Rheum, which issueth sometimes at one, sometimes at both the Nostrils: the cause being, the Wideness of the passage, so that the Cold liberally entring into the Brain, bindeth and crusheth it in such manner, that it maketh the Humours there to distill; which descending to the Spiritual parts, and possessing them, in the end suffocates the Horse, either by their abundance, or killeth him by corrupting the principal parts; or else by congealing there by little and little, over-runneth the natural heat. Now that Distillation, that by cold cometh from the Brain, and breedeth this Glanders, is of three sorts. The first is a Cold, which maketh indigest Humours to pass from the Brain, which cometh by taking off the Saddle suddenly when the Horse is hot, or by letting him Drink before he be inwardly cooled, or before his body be dried: This Distillation commonly is slimy matter that smells not, and is easie to be Cured; for it is no inward Ulcer, but only abundance of Humour, the substance whereof is Gross and White. The second is a great Cold ingendred and congealed, causing Humours something thin and slimy, of the Colour of Marrow, or the White of an Egg: this descendeth to the Throat, and lyeth there till it be discharged through the Nostrils. The third is by long continuance thicker, and therefore harder to be Cured; if the Colour thereof be yellow like a Bean, then is the Glanders most desperate, and lyeth also in his Throat: but if it be a brown or darkish yellow, then commonly a Feaver will accompany the Disease, To these three Distillations, there is commonly added a fourth, which is, when the matter which comes from his Nose, is Dark, Thin, and Reddish, like little sparks of blood; but then it is not said to be the Glanders, but the Mourning of the Chine, which is a Disease, for the most part held incurable. It is therefore most necessary for every good Farrier, when he

shall

ſhall take this Cure in hand, to conſider well the matter which iſſueth from the Horſes Noſe: For if the Humour be clear and tranſparent, ſo that it may be ſeen through, then it is not greatly hurtful, or of much moment. If it be White it is worſe, yet with much eaſe Cured. If it be Yellow, ſeparate him from the ſound Horſes, for he is infectious, yet to be Cured: If that Yellow be mixed with Blood, it is with much difficulty helped, or if the matter be like unto Saffron, the Horſe is hardly to be ſaved. He muſt alſo conſider whether the matter ſtink, or have loſt the ſmell; The firſt is the ſign of a Ulcer, the latter of Death: alſo whether he Cougheth with ſtraightneſs in his Cheſt or no; for that alſo is a ſign of an inward Ulcer, and that the Diſeaſe is paſt Cure. Now for the Cure of theſe three Diſtillations, which are all that make up a compleat *Glanders*, you ſhall underſtand, that when the *Glanders* is of the firſt ſort, it is eaſily helped by moderate Exerciſe, and warm Keeping: but if it be of the ſecond ſort, you ſhall give him warm Maſhes of Malt and Water, and perfume his Head well, and purge it by Sneezing; and into his Maſhes you ſhall put Fennel ſeed bruiſed. Others will take a pint of white-Wine, and a handfull of Soot, a quart of Milk, and two Heads of Garlick bruiſed; brew them together, and give it the Horſe to Drink. Others will take a pottle of Urine, a handfull of Bay Salt, and a good quantity of Brown Sugar-candy, boyl it to a quart; then add Licoras and Aniſeeds beaten to fine powder, and give it luke-warm to Drink. Others will take Lard, or Swines Greaſe and boyl it in Water: then take the Fat from the Water, and mingle it with a little Oyl Olive, and a good quantity of Urine, and half as much white-Wine, give a quart of this luke warm to drink. Others uſe to give of Ale a quart, of grated bread one Ounce and an half, the yolks of two Eggs, of Ginger, Saffron, Cloves, Cinamon, Nutmegs, Cardamomum, Spikenard or Lavender, Galingal, and Honey, of each a pretty quantity, mix theſe together, and give it to Drink. Now if the Diſtillation be of the third ſort, which is the worſt of the three, you ſhall take half a pound of Swines Blood, and melt it at the fire, add to it a pound of the juice of Beets, with three Ounces of *Euforbium* finely beaten; and when it hath boyled a little, take it from the fire, and add another Ounce of *Euforbium* to it: Keep this Oyntment, and anoint therewith two very long Feathers, or little Rods, lapt with Linnen about, and ſo anointed, put them

into his Noſtrils, and after rubbing them up and down, tye them to the Noſe-band of the Bridle, and walk him abroad: Do thus three daies together, and it will either abſolutely Cure him, or at leaſt take away the Eye-ſore. Others uſe to take a quart of Ale, an half penny-worth of long Pepper, a little Brimſtone, a penny-worth of *Galingal*, two penny-worth of Spignard of *Spain*, two penny-weight of Saffron brayed, with two Ounces of Butter boyled in the Ale: When it is luke-warm, caſt the Horſe, and holding up his Head, power it equally into his Noſtrils; then holding his Noſtrils cloſe, till his Eyes ſtare, and that he ſweat; which done, give him Bayes and Ale to Drink: then let him riſe, and ſet him up warm; feeding him with warm Grains and Salt, or with ſweet Maſhes; but the beſt is, if the Weather be warm, to let him run abroad at Graſs. Other Farriers uſe to diſſolve in Vinegar three drams of Muſtard-ſeed, and as much *Enforbium*; then to give him one dram at his Noſtril every day before he Drink. Others uſe to take of *Myrrh*, *Iris*, *Illyrica*, ſeeds of Smallage, *Ariſtolochia*, of each three Ounces, *Salniter*, *Brimſtone*, of each five Ounces, Bayes two Ounces, Saffron one Ounce; make this into powder, and when you give it, give part in pills, made with Paſte and Wine, and part by the Noſtrils with ſtrong Ale: do this for the ſpace of three daies at the leaſt. Others uſe to take of Malmſey a pint, of ſtrong Ale a pint, of Aquavitæ four ſpoonfuls, and brew them together, with a pretty quantity of Aniſeeds, Licoras, Elicampane Roots, long Pepper, Garlick, and three or four new laid Eggs, and a little Butter; give this luke-warm to Drink; then Walk him abroad, and ſet him up warm; do this every other day for a Week together. Others uſe to take ſtale Urine that hath ſtood three or four daies, and ten Garlick heads, and ſeething them together, give it the Horſe to Drink. Others uſe to take Swines greaſe well Clarified, and as much Oyl de Bay as a Walnut, and give it the Horſe to Drink, with fair Water luke warm.

☞ But better than all theſe it is, to take of Elicampane, Anniſeeds, and Licoras, of each one penny-worth, boyl them in three pint of Ale or Beer till one pint be conſumed, then add unto it a quarter of a pint of Sallet Oyl, and give it him to Drink luke-warm, then with a quill blow *Enforbium* up into his Noſtrils, and within three daies after, take of Muſtard four ſpoonfull, Vinegar a pint, Butter three Ounces, boyl them together, then add thereunto half an Ounce of Pepper,

Pepper, and give it the Horſe luke-warm to Drink; uſe this Medicine a fortnight. Others uſe to take a handfull of pill'd Garlick, and boyl it in a quart of Milk till a pint be Conſumed, then add thereto two Ounces of ſweet Butter, and a pint of ſtrong Ale: ſtir them well together, and give it the Horſe faſting to Drink luke-warm; which done, Ride him a little up and down, and uſe this the ſpace of nine daies.

Thus I have plainly ſhewed you the Opinion and Practice of all the beſt *Farriers* both of this Kingdom and of others, and they be all very good and effectual; yet for mine own part, that which I have found ever the beſt in my practice, is, if the Diſeaſe be of the firſt or ſecond ſort, to give the Horſe to Drink faſting every Morning for a fort night together, a pint of ſtrong Ale, and five ſpoonfull of the Oyl of Oats, the making of which Oyl, you ſhal read in a particular Chapter following; but if the Diſeaſe be of the third ſort, which is moſt deſperate, you ſhall then take of Tanners Ouſe a pint, and of new Milk a pint, and of Oyl Olive half a pint, and the quantity of a Head of Garlick bruiſed, and a little Turmerick, mix theſe well together, and give it the Horſe to Drink: Do this thrice in one fortnight, and it will help, if any help be to be had.

CHAP. XLIV.

Two moſt certain and lately found out Medicines, which will without all fail Cure any Glanders, though our Farriers hold it impoſſible.

IF your Horſes Cold be come to the worſt Glanders, which is a continual Running at the Noſe, and hath run by the ſpace of divers Moneths, ſo that your *Farriers* can do you no good; ſhall then take better then two handfull of the white Cankerous moſs which grows upon an old Oken pale, and boyl it in two quarts of Milk, till one quart be almoſt conſumed; then ſtrain it, and ſqueeze the moſs well, which done, give it the Horſe luke-warm to Drink: then take the Gooſe-feathers, Brimſtone, and Butter, in ſuch manner as is ſet down in the new Additions for the Cold, or Poze in a Horſes Head, (*pag.* 55.) and having put them up into his Noſtrils, Ride him forth an hour or two gently, and after he is come home, draw forth the Feathers, and keep his Body warm. This Diſeaſe you ſhall underſtand,

cometh

cometh not ſuddenly, but grows out of long proceſs of time; ſo likewiſe the Cure muſt not be expected to be done in a moment, but with much leiſure; therefore you muſt continue your Medicine as your leiſure will ſerve, either every day, or at leaſt thrice a week, if it be for four or five Moneths together, and be aſſured in the end it will yield your deſire.

Now the ſecond certain and well approved Medicine is, to take Elicampane Roots, and boyl them in Milk till they be ſoft, that you may bruiſe them to Pap: Then with a Horn give them to the Horſe, together with the Milk luke-warm, being no more then will make the Roots Liquid: then having annointed your Gooſe-feathers, put them up into his Noſtrils, and Ride him forth, as is before ſhewed.

CHAP. XLV.

Of the Mourning of the Chine.

THis Diſeaſe which we call the *Mourning of the Chine*, or as ſome Farriers term it, the *moiſt Malady*, is that fourth ſort of corrupt Diſtillation from the Brain, of which we have ſpoken in the Chapter before, ſhewing from whence it proceeds, and the ſigns thereof: *to wit*, that the Corrupt matter which iſſueth from his Noſtrils will be Dark, Thin, and Reddiſh, with little ſtreaks of Blood in it. It is ſuppoſed by ſome Farriers, that this Diſeaſe is a foul Conſumption of the Liver, and I do not derogate from that Opinion: For I have found the Liver waſted in thoſe Horſes which I have opened upon this Diſeaſe: And this Conſumption proceeds from a Cold, which after grows to a Poze, then to a Glanders, and laſtly to this Mourning of the Chine.

The Cure whereof, according to the Opinion of the oldeſt *Farriers*, is, to take clear Water, and that Honey which is called *Hydromel*, a quart, and put thereunto three Ounces of Sallet Oyl, and pour it into his Noſtrils each Morning, the ſpace of three daies; and if that help not, then give him to drink every day, or once in two daies at the leaſt, a quart of old Wine, mingled with ſome of the ſoveraign Medicine called *Tetrapharmacum*, which is to be had almoſt of every *Apothecary*. Others uſe to take Garlick, Houſlick, and Chervill, and

and ſtamping them together, thruſt it up into the Horſes Noſtrils.

Others uſe to let the Horſe faſt all Night, then take a pint and a half of Milk, three heads of Garlick pild and ſtamped, boyl them to the half, and give it to Horſe, ſome at the Mouth and ſome at the Noſe: then gallop him a quarter of a Mile, then reſt him; then gallop him half a Mile, then reſt him again: thus do twice or thrice together, then ſet him up warm, and give him no Water till it be Highnoon; then give him a ſweet Maſh: Uſe this Cure at leaſt three daies together. Others uſe to take half a peck of Oats, and boyl them in running-water till half be conſumed, then put them into a Bagg, and lay them very hot upon the Navel place of his Back, and there let it lie thirty hours, uſing thus to do three or four times at the leaſt. Others uſe to take *Worm-wood*, *Penedinum*, and *Centory*, of each a like quantity: boyl them in Wine, then ſtrain them, and pour thereof many times into his Noſtrils, eſpecially into that which moſt runneth. Others uſe to take Hare-hound, Licoras, and Aniſeeds, beaten to powder; then with ſweet Butter to make pils thereof, and to give them faſting to the Horſe. Others uſe to take Wheat-flower, Aniſeeds, and Licoras ſtamped in a Morter, five or ſix Cloves of Garlick bruiſed; mix all theſe together, and make a paſte of them; then make it into pills as big as Wall-nuts, and taking out the Horſes Tongue, caſt the Balls down the Horſes throat three or four at a time, then give him two new laid Eggs ſhels and all after them.

Now after all theſe, the beſt and moſt approved Medicine, is, to take as much of the middle green bark of an Elder Tree growing on the Water ſide, as will fill a reaſonable Veſſel, putting thereunto as much running water as the Veſſel will hold, and let it boyl till half be conſumed, and then fill up the Veſſel again with Water, continuing ſo to do three times one after another; and at the laſt time, when the one half is conſumed, take it from the fire, and ſtrain it exceedingly through a linnen Cloath; then to that Decoction, add at leaſt a full third part of the Oyl of Oats, or for want of that, of Oyl Olive, or of Hoggs greaſe, or ſweet Butter; and being warmed again, take a quart thereof, and give it the Horſe to drink, one Horn-full at his Mouth, and another at his Noſtrils, eſpecially that which caſteth out the matter. And in any caſe, let the Horſe be Faſting when he taketh this Medicine; for it not only Cureth this, but any ſickneſs

ſickneſs proceeding from Cold whatſoever. It ſhall be alſo good to uſe to his Body ſome wholſome Friction, and to his Head ſome wholſome Bath, of which Baths you ſhall read more hereafter in a Chapter following. For his Diet, his meat would be ſodden Barley, and ſweet Hay, and his Drink warm Water, or Maſhes: but if it be in the Summer-ſeaſon, then it is beſt to let him run at Graſs only.

CHAP. XLVI.

A moſt Rare and Certain approved Medicine, to Cure any High running Glanders, called the Mourning of the Chine, held of all Men incurable.

THis Diſeaſe, to my Knowledge, there is not any Smith or Farrier in this Kingdom, can tell how to Cure; for it comes not to the Extremity, till the Horſe have run at his Noſe a year or more; and have at the Roots of his Tongue, a hard Lump gathered, which will not be diſſolved. Now for mine own part, it is well known I have Cured many with this Medicine only. Take of *Auripigmentum* and *Tuſſilaginis* beaten into fine Powder, of each of them four Drams: then beating them with fine Turpentine, bring them into a paſte, then make of it little Cakes or Trotches, as broad as a groat, and dry them: This done, lay about two or three of them on a Chafing-diſh of Coals, and cover them with a Tunnel, ſo that the ſmoak may come out only at the end thereof, and ſo without any loſs aſcend up into the Horſes Head through his Noſtrils, then Ride the Horſe till he begin to ſwear; do this once every Morning before water, till the Running be ſtopt, which will be in a very ſhort ſpace, conſidering the greatneſs of the Diſeaſe.

CHAP. XLVII.

Of the Cough.

COughing is a Motion of the Lungs, raiſed naturally from his Expulſive power, to caſt out the hurtfull cauſe, as Neezing is the Motion of the Brain. Now of Coughs, there be ſome outward, and

and ſome inward: thoſe are ſaid to be outward, which proceed of outward cauſes, as when a Horſe doth Eat or Drink too greedily, ſo that his Meat goeth the wrong way, or when he licketh up a Feather, or eateth duſty or ſharp-bearded ſtraw, and ſuch like, which tickling his Throat, cauſeth him to Cough; thoſe which are ſaid to be inward, are either wet or dry, of which we ſhall ſpeak more hereafter. Now of theſe outward Coughs, they may proceed from the Corruption of the Air, which if it do, you ſhall give him half an Ounce of *Diapente* in a pint of Sack, and it will help. It may alſo proceed from duſt, and then you muſt waſh it down by powring into his Noſtrils Ale and Oyl mingled together. It may come by eating ſharp and ſowre things; and then you muſt put down his Throat pills of ſweet Butter, whoſe ſoftneſs will help him. It may proceed from ſome little or ſlight taken Cold, and then you ſhall take the whites and yolks of two Eggs, three Ounces of Sallet-Oyl, two handfull of Bean flower, one Ounce of *Fenugreck*, mix them with a pint of old Malmſey, and give it the Horſe to drink three daies together: or elſe take Tarr and freſh Butter, mix them together, and give pils thereof to the Horſe four times in ſeven daies: that is, the firſt, the third, the fifth, and the ſeventh day. There be others which uſe to take a Gallon of fair water, and make it ready to ſeeth; then put thereto a peck of ground Malt, with two handfull of Box leaves chopt ſmall, and a little Groundſell, mix them altogether, and give him every Morning and Evening a pint for a Week together. If to the Box leaves you add Oats and Bettony, it is not amiſs, ſo you keep the Horſe warm. Others uſe to give the Horſe a pint of Swines Blood warm. Others uſe to boyl in a Gallon of water one pound of *Fenugreek*, then ſtraining it, give the water Morning and Evening by a pint at a time to drink, then drying his *Fenugreek* give it the Horſe with his Provender. Others uſe for all manner of Coughs to take a quartern of white Currants, and as much Clarified Honey, two Ounces of ſweet Marjoram, with old freſh Greaſe, and a Head of Garlick; melt that which is to be molten, and pun that which is to be beaten; mix them together, and give the Horſe a pint thereof, better than three Mornings together. Others uſe to give the Horſe the gut of a young Pullet dipt in Honey, and being warm; and certainly, there is not any of theſe Medicines but are moſt ſoveraign and well approved. Now whereas ſome

Farriers uſe to thruſt down the Throat of the Horſe a Willow-wand, rolled about with a Linnen cloath, and annointed all over with Hony, (I for my part) do not like it: for it both torments the Horſe, more then there is occaſion, and doth but only go about to take away that which is gone in the ſtruggling, before the Medicine can be uſed: for it is only for a Cough, which cometh by a Feather, or ſome ſuch like matter.

CHAP. XLVIII.

Of the inward, or Wet Cough.

TOuching inward Coughs, which are getten and ingendred by Colds and Rhumes of long continuance, being not only dangerous, but ſometimes mortal, you ſhall underſtand, that they are divided into two kinds, the one Wet, the other Dry; the Wet Cold proceedeth from Cold cauſes taken after great heat; which heat diſſolving Humours, thoſe Humours being again congealed do preſently cauſe Obſtructions and Stopping of the longs. Now the ſigns to know this wet Cough, is, the Horſe will ever after his Coughing, caſt out either water or matter out of his Noſtrils, or champ or chaw with his Teeth the thick matter which he caſteth out of his Throat, as you ſhall eaſily perceive, if you heedfully note him; he will alſo Cough often without intermiſſion, and when he Cougheth, he will not much bow down his Head, nor abſtain from his Meat: and when he Drinketh, you ſhall ſee ſome of his Water to iſſue out of his Noſtrils. The Cure is, firſt to keep him exceeding warm; then forasmuch as it proceedeth of Cold cauſes, you ſhall give him hot Drinks, and Spices, as Sack, or ſtrong Ale brewed with Cinamon, Ginger, Cloves, Treacle, long Pepper, and either Swines Greaſe, Sallet Oyl, or ſweet Butter; for you ſhall know, that all Cold cauſes are Cured with Medicines that open and warm; and the hot with ſuch as cleanſe and Cool. Some uſe to take a pretty quantity of *Benjamine*, and the yol of an Egg, which being well mixt together, and put into an Egg-ſhell caſt all down into the Horſes throat, and then moderately Ride him up and down for more than a quarter of an hour: and do this three or four Mornings together. Others uſe to keep him Warm, and then to give him this Drink. Take of Barley one peck,

and

and boyl it in two or three Gallons of running Water, till the Barley burſt, together with bruiſed Licoras, Anniſeeds, and Raiſons, of each a pound; then ſtrain it, and to that Licuor put of Honey a pint, and a quarter of Sugar-candy, and keep it cloſe in a pot to ſerve the Horſe therewith four ſeveral Mornings, and caſt not away the Barley, nor the reſt of the ſtrainings, but make it hot every day to perfume the Horſe withall in a cloſe Bag; and if he eat of it, it is ſo much the better: and after this, you ſhall give the Horſe ſome moderate Exerciſe; and for his Dyet, let him drink no cold water till his Cough abate, and as it leſſeneth, ſo let the Water be the leſs warmed.

Now for mine own part, though all theſe Receits be exceeding good, and very well approved, yet in this Caſe, thus hath been, and ever ſhall be my Practice; if I found either by the Heavineſs of the Horſes Head, or by the Ratling of his Noſtrils, that the Cough proceeded moſt from the ſtoping of his Head, I would only give him four or five Mornings together, three or four good round pils of Butter and Garlick, (well knodden together) faſting, then Ride him moderately an hour after; but if I found that the ſickneſs remained in the Cheſt or Breaſt of the Horſe, then I would give him twice in four daies a pint of Sack, half a pint of Sallet-Oyl, and two Ounces of Sugar-candy well brewed together, and made luke-warm, and then Ride him half an hour after, and ſet him up warm, ſuffering him to drink no cold water till his Cough begin to abate and leave him.

But for all Wet Coughs, frettized and broken Lungs, putrified and rotten Lungs, or any ſuch moiſt Diſeaſe, ſee the new Additions for the Mourning of the Chine, and it is a certain Cure.

CHAP. XLIX.

Of the Dry Cough.

THis Diſeaſe which we call the Dry Cough, is a groſs and tough Humour, cleaving hard to the hollow places of the Lungs, which ſtoppeth the Wind-pipes, ſo that the Horſe can hardly draw his Breath. It doth proceed by ill Government, from the Rhume, with diſtilleth from the Head, falleth down to the Breaſt, and there

inforceth the Horſe to ſtrive to caſt it out.

The eſpecial ſigns to know it, is, by eating Hot Meats, as Bread that is ſpiced, Straw dry, Hay, or ſuch like, his extremity of Coughing will increaſe; by eating Cold and moiſt meats, as Graſs, Sorage, Grains, and ſuch like, it will abate and be the leſs: he cougheth ſeldome, yet when he Cougheth, he Cougheth Violently, long time together, and Drily, with a hollow ſound from his Cheſt: he alſo boweth his Head down to the ground, and forſaketh his meat whilſt he Cougheth, yet never caſteth forth any thing either at his Mouth or Noſtrils.

This Cough is moſt dangerous, and not being taken in time, is incurable: for it will grow to the Purſick or Broken-winded altogether. The Cure, according to the opinion of the antient Farriers, is, that foraſmuch as it proceedeth from Hot Humours, therefore you ſhall perfume his Head with Cold ſimples, as *Camomile*, *Mellilot*, *Licoras*, dried Red *Roſes* and *Camphire* boyled in water, and the fume made to paſs up into his Mouth and Noſtrils.

Others uſe to take a Cloſe Earthen pot, and to put therein three pints of the ſtrongeſt Vinegar, and four Eggs, ſhells and all unbroken, and four Heads of Garlick clean pilled and bruiſed, and ſet the pot being very cloſe covered in a warm Dunghill, or a Horſes Mixin, and there let it ſtand 24. hours, then take it forth and open it, and take out the Eggs which will be as ſoft as ſilk, and lay them by untill you have ſtrained the Vinegar and Garlick through a linnen Cloath: then put to that Liquor a quartern of Honey, and half a quartern of Sugar-candy, and two Ounces of Licoras, and two Ounces of Aniſeed beaten all into fine powder, and then the Horſe having faſted all the night, early in the Morning about ſeven or eight a clock, open the Horſes mouth with a Drench ſtaff and a Cord, and firſt caſt down his Throat one of the Eggs, and then preſently pour after it a Horn full of the afore ſaid Drink, being made luke-warm: then caſt in another Egg, and another Horn full: and thus do till he hath ſwallowed up all the Eggs, or three at the leaſt; then Bridle him and Cover him warmer than he was before, and ſet him up in the Stable, tying him to the bare Rack for the ſpace of two hours: then unbridle him, and give him either ſome Oats, Hay, or Graſs; yet in any caſe give him no Hay; untill it hath been ſomewhat ſprinkled with water: for there is no greater enemy to a dry Cough than

than dry Hay, dry Straw, or Chaff; then let him have cold water the ſpace of nine dayes. Now if you chance the firſt Morning to leave an Egg untaken, you ſhall not fail to give it him, and the remainder of the Drink the Morning following. If you find by this practice that the Cough weareth not away, you ſhall then purge his Head with Pils, of which you ſhall read in the Chapter of Purgations: after his Pils received, you ſhall let him faſt three hours, ſtanding warm cloathed and littered in the Stable; you ſhall alſo now and then give him a warm Maſh, and once a day trot him moderately abroad.

There be other *Farriers* which for this dry *Cough* take only the Herb called *Lyons foot*, *Ladies mantle*, *Spurge*, and *Smallage*, of each a like quantity, ſeeth them in a quart of old Wine, or a quart of running Water till ſome part be conſumed, and give it the Horſe to drink; if inſtead of the herbs themſelves, you give the juyce of the herbs in Wine, it is good. There be others which take a good quantity of white Currants, and as much Honey, two Ounces of Marjoram, one Ounce of Penirial, with five pounds of freſh Greaſe, and nine Heads of *Garlick*; beat that which is to be beaten, and melt the reſt; give this in four or five days like pils dipt in Honey. Others uſe to take *Myrrh*, *Opoponax*, *Iris*, *Ilerica*, and *Galbanum*, of each two Ounces, of red *Storax* three Ounces, of *Turpentine* four Ounces, of *Henbane* half an Ounce, of *Opium* half an Ounce, beat them to fine powder, and give two or three ſpoonfull with a pint of old Wine, or a quart of Ale.

Others uſe to take forty grains of Pepper, four or five Roots of Raddiſh, four Heads of Garlick, and five Ounces of ſweet Butter; ſtamp them all well together, and give every day a Ball of it to the Horſe for a Week together, making him faſt two hours after his taking of it: and ſurely it is a moſt Excellent approved Medicine for any old over grown Cold, or Cough. Other Farriers uſe to take of Oyl de Bay, and ſweet Butter, of each half a pound, Garlick one pound, beat it together unpilled, and being well beaten with a peſtle of Wood, add your Oyl and Butter unto it: then having made it into Balls, with a little Wheat-flower, give your Horſe every Morning for a Week and more, three or four Balls as bigg as Walnuts, keeping him faſting after from meat three hours, and from drink till it be night, provided that ſtill his Drink be warm, and his Meat, if it poſſible

possible may be, Grass, or Hay sprinkled with water: as for his Provender, it would be Oats and Fenugreek sprinkled among it. Now if you perceive that at a fort-nights end, his Cough doth nothing at all abate, you shall then for another Week give him again the same Physick and Dyet; but truly for mine own part, I have never found it to fail in any Horse whatsoever; yet I will wish all Farriers not to be too busie with these inward Medicines, except they be well assured that the Cold hath been long, and that the Cough is dangerous.

CHAP. L.

Two Excellent true and well approved Medicines for any Cold, dry Cough, shortness of Breath, pursiness or Broken-winded.

☞

THe first is, take of Tarre three spoonfull, of sweet Butter as much, beat and work them well together with the fine powder of Licoras, Anniseeds, and Sugar-candy, till it be brought to a hard paste: then make it in three round Balls, and put into each Ball four or five Cloves of Garlick, and so give them to the Horse, and warm him with Riding both before and after he hath received the pils, and be assured that he be fasting when he takes it, and fast at least two hours after he hath taken it.

The second is, take of the white fat or lard of Bacon, a piece four fingers long, and almost two fingers thick both wayes; then with your Knife making many holes into it, stop it with as many Cloves of garlick as you can conveniently get into it, then rowling it in the powder of Licoras, Anniseeds, Sugar-candy and Brimstone, all equally mixt together, give it your Horse fasting in a Morning at least twice a Week continually, and Ride him after it, and be sure that all the Hay he eats be finely sprinkled with water.

CHAP.

CHAP. LI.

The beſt of all other Medicines for a Dry Cough, never before mentioned, nor revealed.

TAke of the Sirrup of Colts-foot two Ounces, of the powder of Elecampane, of Anniſeeds, and of Licoras, of each half an Ounce, of Sugar-candy divided into two parts, two Ounces, then with ſweet Butter work the Sirrup and the powders, and one part of the Sugar-candy into a ſtiff paſte, and thereof make Pils or ſmall Balls, and roll them in the other part of the Sugar-candy, and ſo give it to the Horſe faſting, and exerciſe him gently an hour after it: and thus do for divers Mornings till you find amendment.

CHAP. LII.

Of the Frettized, Broken, and Rotten Lungs.

COughs do many times proceed from the Corruption and Putrifaction of the Lungs, gotten either by ſome extreme Cold, Running or Leaping, or by over-greedy Drinking after great thirſt; becauſe the Lungs being incloſed in a very thin film, they are therefore the much ſooner broken; and if ſuch a Breach be made, without inſtant Cure, they begin to Inflame and Apoſtume, Oppreſſing and Sc[illegible]ning the whole Lunges. Now the ſigns to know this Diſeaſe, is, the Horſes flanks will beat when he Cougheth, and the ſlower they beat, the more old and dangerous is the Diſeaſe: he will alſo draw his wind ſhort, and by little at once: he will groan much, be fearfull and loath to Cough; and often turn his Head to the place grieved: To conclude, he will never Cough but he will bring up ſomething which he will champ in his Mouth after. The Cure is, give him two or three Ounces of Hoggs greaſe, and two or three ſpoonfull of *Diapente* brewed in a quart of Barly water, wherein Currants have been ſodden. Other Farriers uſe to take a pound of Licoras, and being ſcraped and ſliced, to ſteep it in a quart of water four and twenty hours; then to ſtrain it, then to boyl three or four Ounces of Currants in it, and ſo give it the Horſe

Horſe to drink, and keep him faſting three or four hours after. There be other Farriers which uſe to take of *Fenugreek* and linſeed, of each half a pound, of Gum-Dragant, of Maſtick, of Myrrh, of Sugar, of Fitch-flower, of each one Ounce; let all theſe be beaten into fine powder, & then infuſed one whole night in a good quantity of warm water, and the next day give him a quart of this luke-warm, putting thereto two Ounces of the Oyl of Roſes, and this you muſt do many dayes together: and if the Diſeaſe be new, it will certainly heal; if it be never ſo old it will aſſuredly eaſe him, but in any caſe let him drink no cold water: And for his food, Graſs is the moſt Excellent.

Others uſe (and it is the beſt Cure) to take of Malmſey a pint, of Honey three ſpoonfull, mix them together, then take of *Myrrh*, of *Saffron*, of *Caſſia* and *Cinamon*, of each a like quantity, beat them to a fine powder, and give two ſpoonful thereof in the Wine to drink, do this at leaſt a fortnight together, and it is certain it will help theſe frettized and broken Lungs, but for the putrified and rotten Lungs, we will ſpeak more in this next Chapter.

CHAP. LIII.

Of the Putrified and Rotten Lungs.

THis Diſeaſe of Rotten and Exulcerate Lungs, you ſhall know by theſe ſigns: he will Cough oft and vehemently, and ever in his Coughing he will caſt little Reddiſh lumps out of his mouth, he will decay much in his fleſh, and yet eat his meat with more greedineſs than when he was ſound: and when he Cougheth, he will cough with more eaſe and clearneſs, than if his Lungs were but only broken. The Cure whereof, according to the practice of our ordinary Engliſh Farriers, is, to give the Horſe divers Mornings together a pint of ſtrong Vinegar warm, or elſe as much of mans Urine, with half ſo much Hoggs-greaſe brewed warm togther.

☞ But the more antient Farriers take a good quantity of the juyce of Purſlain mixt with the Oyl of Roſes, adding thereunto a little *Tragacanthum*, which hath before been laid to ſleep in Goats milk, or for want thereof in Barley, or Oaten milk ſtrained from the Corn, and give him a pint thereof every Morning for ſeven days together. This Medicine is but only to Ripen and Break the impoſtume, which you

you ſhall know if it hath done, becauſe when the ſore is broaken, his Breath will ſtink exceedingly: Then ſhall you give him the other ſeven dayes this Drink. Take of the Root called *Coſtus*, two Ounces, and of *Caſſia*, or *Cinamon*, three Ounces beaten into fine powder, and a few Raiſins, and give it him to drink, with a pint of Malmſey. Others uſe to take of *Frankincenſe* and *Ariſtologia*, of each two Ounces beaten into fine powder, and give the Horſe two or three ſpoonfuls thereof with a pint of Malmſey. Others take of unburnt Brimſtone two Ounces, of *Ariſtolochia* one Ounce and a half beaten to powder, and give it the Horſe with a pint of Malmſey.

CHAP. LIV.

Of ſhortneſs of Breath, or Purſineſs.

THis Diſeaſe of ſhort Breath or Purſineſs, may come two ſeveral ways, that is, Naturally, or Accidentally: Naturally, as by the ſtraightneſs of his Conduits, which convey his Breath, when they want liberty to carry his Breath freely, or being cloyed up with fat, force Stoppings and Obſtructions in his Wind-pipe, and thereby make his Lungs labour and work painfully. Accidentally, as by haſty running after Drinking, or upon full Stomach, by which Humours are compelled to deſcend down into the Throat and Lungs, and there ſtoppeth the paſſage of the Breath. The ſigns of this Diſeaſe are continual panting and heaving of his Body without any Coughing, great heat of Breath at his Noſtrils, and a ſqueezing or drawing in of his Noſe when he Breatheth; beſides a coveting to hold out his Head whilſt he fetcheth his Wind. The Cure, according to the opinion of ſome of our beſt Farriers, is, to give him in his Provender, the Kirnels of Grapes, for they both fat and purge; and you muſt give them plentifully. The warm Blood of a ſucking Pigg is excellent good alſo. Other Farriers uſe to take Venus-hair, Ireos, Aſh-keys, Licoras, Fenugreek, and Raiſins, of each a dram and a half; Pepper, Almonds, Borage, Nettle ſeed, Ariſtolochia, and Colloquintida, of each two drams; Algaritium one dram and a half, Honey two pound, diſſolve them with water, wherein Licoras hath been ſodden, and give him one pint every Morning for three or four Mornings. Others uſe to take Molline, or Long wort, and make a powder there-

of, and give two ſpoonfuls thereof with a pint of running water, or elſe powder of Gentain, in the fore-ſaid manner, and do it for divers Mornings.

☞ Others uſe to take of Nutmegs, Cloves, Galingal, grains of Paradiſe, of each three drams, Caraway ſeed, and Fenugreek, a little greater quantity, as much Saffron, and half an Ounce of Licoras; beat them all into fine powder, then put two or three ſpoonfuls thereof to a pint of White-wine, and the yolks of four Eggs, and give it the Horſe to Drink; then tye his Head up high to the Rack for an hour after: that done, either Ride him, or Walk him up and down gently, and keep him faſting four or five hours after at the leaſt: the next day turn him to Graſs, and he will do well. There be others which uſe to let the Horſe blood in the Neck vein, and then give him this Drink: Take of Wine and Oyl, of each a pint, of *Frankincenſe* half an Ounce, and of the juyce of *Hare hound* half a pint; mix them well together and give them to Drink.

☞ Others uſe to give him only ſomewhat more than a pint of Honey, Hoggs-Greaſe and Butter molten together, and let him Drink it luke-warm. Eggs made ſoft in Vinegar, as is ſhewed in the Chapter of the dry Cough, is Excellent for this ſhortneſs of Breath, ſo you give the Eggs increaſing, that is, the firſt day one, the ſecond day three, and the third five: and withall, to pour a little Oyl and Wine into his Noſtrils is very good alſo. There be other Farriers which uſe to take a Snake, and cut off her Head and Tail, and then take out the Guts and Entrails, boyl the reſt in Water till the Bone part from the Fleſh: Then caſt the Bone away, and give every third day of this Decoction more than a pint, till you have ſpent three Snakes: and this is Excellent good for the dry Cough alſo.

Now the laſt and beſt Medicine for this ſhortneſs of Breath, (for indeed in this Caſe I do not affect much Phyſicking) is only to take Anniſeed, Licoras, and Sugar-candy, all beaten into very fine powder, and take four ſpoonfuls thereof, and brew it well with a pint of white-wine, and half a pint of Sallet-Oyl: and uſe this ever after your Horſes travail, and a day before he is travailed.

CHAP.

CHAP. LV.

Of the Broken winded, or Pur-ſick Horſe.

THis Diſeaſe of Broken-winded, I have ever ſince I firſt began to know either Horſe or Horſe-leach craft, very much diſputed with my ſelf: and for many years did conſtantly hold (as I ſtill do) that in truth there is no ſuch Diſeaſe; only in this I found by daily Experience, that by over-haſty or ſudden running of a fat Horſe (or other) preſently after his Water, or by long ſtanding in the Stable with no Exerciſe and foul Food, that thereby groſs and thick Humours may be drawn down into the Horſes Body ſo abundantly, that cleaving hard unto the hollow places of his Lungs, and ſtopping up the Wind pipes, the Wind may be ſo kept in, that it may only have his reſort backward, and not upward, filling the Guts, and taking from the Body great part of his ſtrength and lively-hood: which if from the Corruption of our old Inventions, we call Broken-winded, then I muſt needs confeſs, that I have ſeen many Broken-winded Horſes. The ſigns of which Diſeaſe are theſe, much and Violent beating of his Flanks, eſpecially drawing up of his Belly upward, great opening and raiſing of his Noſtrils, and a continual ſwift going to and fro of his Tuel: beſides, it is ever accompanied with a Dry and Hollow Cough. The Cure, I muſt needs ſay in ſo great an Extremity, (for it is the worſt of all the evils of the Lungs, which are before ſpoken of) is moſt deſperate, but the preſervations and helps both to continue the Horſes Health and his daily *Service*, are very many, as namely, (according to the opinion of the antient Farriers) to purge your Horſe by giving him this Drink. Take of *Maiden-hair*, *Ireos*, *Aſh*, *Licoras*, *Fenugreek*, *Baſnis*, of each half an Ounce, of *Cardanum*, *Pepper*, *bitter Almonds*, *Borage*, of each two Ounces, of *Nettle-ſeed*, and of *Ariſtolochia*, of each two Ounces, boyl them altogether in a ſufficient quantity of water, and in that Decoction diſſolve half an Ounce of *Agarick*, and two Ounces of Colloquintida, together with two pound of Honey, and give him a pint and a half of this at a time, for at leaſt a Week together; and if this Medicine chance at any time to prove too thick, you ſhall make it thin with Water, wherein Licoras hath been ſodden; and ſome Farriers alſo

beſides this Medicine, will with a hot Iron draw the Flanks of the Horſe to reſtrain their beating, and ſlit the Horſes Noſtrils to give the wind more liberty, but I do not affect either the one or the other: The beſt Diet for a Horſe in this caſe, is Graſs in Summer, and Hay ſprinkled with water in Winter. There be other Farriers, which for this Infirmity hold, that to give the Horſe three or four daies together ſodden Wheat, and now and then a quart of new ſweet Wine, or other good Wine, mixt with Licoras water, is a certain remedy. There be other Farriers, which for this Diſeaſe take the Guts of a Hedge-hog, and hang them in a warm Oven till they be dry, ſo that a man may make powder of them: Then give your Horſe two or three ſpoonfull thereof with a pint of Wine or ſtrong Ale: then the reſt mixt with Anniſeeds, Licores, and ſweet Butter, and make round Balls or Pils thereof, and give the Horſe two or three after his Drink: and ſo let him faſt at leaſt two hours after. Now when at any time you give him any Provender, be ſure to waſh it in *Ale* or *Beer*; then take *Cumin*, *Anniſeeds*, *Licoras*, and *Sentuary*, of each a juſt quantity, make them being mixt togther into fine powder, and ſtrew two ſpoonfulls thereof upon the provender being wet. This Phyſick muſt be uſed for a fortnight at the leaſt. Others uſe to take of Cloves and Nutmegs three drams, of Galingale and *Cardamomum* three drams, of Soor, of Bay-ſeeds, and *Cumin*, of each three drams, and make them into fine powder, and put it into white Wine being well tempered with a little Saffron: then put to ſo many yolks of Eggs as may countervail the other quantity: then mix them with water wherein Licoras hath been ſodden, making it ſo thin that the Horſe may drink it, and after he hath drunk the quantity of a pint and a half of this drink, tye up his Head to the Rack, and let him ſo ſtand at leaſt an hour after, that the drink may deſcend into his Guts, then walk him gently abroad, that the Medicine may work; and in any Caſe give him no water for the ſpace of four and twenty hours after: The next Morning give him ſome Graſs to eat, and the branches of Willow or Sallow, which will cool the Heat of the Potion.

☞ Now there be other *Farriers* which take of *Pances*, *Long-wort*, *Maiden-hair*, the crops of *Neſtles*, *Carduus Benedictus*, herb *Fluetin*, the roots of *Dragons* bruiſed, the roots of *Elicampane* bruiſed, of Water-hemp, of *Penirial*, of *Light-wort*, of *Angelica*, of each of theſe

theſe a good handfull, or ſo many of theſe as you can conveniently get: bruiſe them, and lay them all Night in two or three Gallons of water, and give it a boyl in the Morning, and let the Horſe drink thereof as much luke-warm as he will, then after this Drink, give him a pretty quantity of ſodden Wheat; uſe this Diet for a Week or more at the leaſt: and then if the Seaſon be fit, put him to Graſs. This Cure is of great Reputation, and thought to help when all other fail: for mine own part, I wiſh every man to judge it by the practice.

There be others, which only for nine or ten dayes together, will give their Horſe water, wherein Licoras hath been ſodden, mixt with Wine, and hold it a moſt ſoveraign help.

There be others, which will only give new Milk from the Cow: but I deſpair of that Cure, becauſe Milk being only Flegmatick, Flegm is the only ſubſtance of this Diſeaſe. Other *Farriers* uſe to keep the Horſe faſting four and twenty hours, then take a quart of Ale, a quarter of an Ounce of Fenugreek, half a quarter of Bayes, of the green Bark of Elder Trees, of Sugar candy, of water Creſſes, of red Mints, of red Fennel, or Haw Tree leaves, and of Primroſe leaves, of each half an Ounce, the Whites of ſix Eggs; beat theſe in a morter, and ſeeth them in the Ale, give it him to drink, then let him faſt after it two hours: then give him Meat and Provender enough, yet but a little drink. Others uſe to give him wet Hay, and moderate Travail: then take twenty Eggs, ſteep them in Vinegar four and twenty hours, giving the Horſe two every Morning, and after the Eggs are ſpent, a pottle of new Milk from the Cow.

Now there be other *Farriers*, which only will diſſolve in Vinegar fifteen Eggs, and give the Horſe the firſt day three, the ſecond day five, and the third day ſeven, and hold it a good help. Others will take an Ounce of Frankincenſe, two Ounces of Brimſtone, and mix it with a pint of Wine, and half a pint of Honey. Others will take *Sal niter*, burnt with the powder of pitch, and give it with the ſame quantity of Wine and Honey. Others will only give *Sal-niter* mingled with his meat, provided always, that in every Cure you keep your Horſe from Cold and Labour, and daily chafe his Head with Oyl and Wine. But of this, look in the laſt new Additions for the dry Cough, noted thus ☞.

CHAP.

CHAP. LVI.

Of the dry Malady or Conſumption.

THis Diſeaſe of the dry Malady, or as the Antient Farriers term it, a general Conſumption, is nothing but a meer Exulceration of the lungs, proceeding from a Cankerous fretting and gnawing Humour ingendred by Cold and Surfeit, which deſcending from the Head, ſickneth and corrodeth the Lungs. Some of our ignorant *Farriers* will call it the Mourning of the Chine, but they are thus far forth deceived, that the Mourning of the Chine doth ever caſt ſome filthy matter from the Noſe, and the dry Malady never caſteth forth any thing.

The ſigns to know this dry Malady or Conſumption, are theſe: His fleſh, and ſtrong eſtate of Body will conſume and waſte away, the Belly will be gaunt, his back-bone hid, and his Skin ſo ſtretched or ſhrunk up, that if you ſtrike on him with your hand, it will ſound hollow like a Tabor: his Hair will hardly ſhed, and either he will utterly deny his Meat, or the meat he eateth will not Digeſt, proſper, or breed any fleſh on his Body; he will offer to Cough, but cannot, except in a faint manner, as though he had eaten ſmall Bones; and truly, according to the Opinion of others, ſo I find by mine own practice of fifty years, that it is incurable, yet that a Horſe may be long preſerved to do much ſervice, I have found it by theſe helps: Firſt to purge his Head with ſuch Fumes and Pils as are good for the Glanders, which you may find in the Chapter of Purgations, then give him Cole-worts ſmall chopt with his Provender, and now and then the Blood of a ſucking Pig warm.

There be other well Experienced Men, that inſtead of the Blood, will give either the juyce of *Leeks* mixt with Oyl and Wine, or elſe Wine and *Frankincenſe*, or Sallet Oyl and the juyce of Rue mixt together: But in my conceit, the beſt Cure, is, to purge his Body clean with comfortable and gentle purges, and then to be ſuffered to run at Graſs, both for a Winter and a Summer, and there is no queſtion, but he muſt neceſſarily end or mend, for languiſh long he cannot.

CHAP.

CHAP. LVII.

Of the Conſumption of the fleſh.

THis Diſeaſe which we call the Conſumption of the fleſh, is an unnatural or general diſlike, or falling away of the whole Body, (or, as we term it) the waſting of the fleſh, which proceedeth from divers grounds: as namely, from inward Surfeits, either by naughty Food, or ill Diet, or from unclean, moiſt, and ſtinking Lodging, but eſpecially from diſorderly Labour, as by taking great and ſuddain Colds after Violent heat, or ſuch like; all which procure the waſting or falling away of the fleſh. The ſigns whereof are theſe: firſt, an unnatural and cauſeleſs Leanneſs, a dry and hard Skin cleaving faſt to his ſides, want of Stomach or Appetite to his Meat, a falling away of his Fillets, and a general Conſumption both of his Buttocks and Shoulders: the Cure whereof, according to the Antients, is, to take a Sheeps Head unflaied, and boyl it in a Gallon and a half of Ale, or running Water untill the Fleſh be conſumed from the Bones; then ſtrain it through a Cloath, and put thereto of Sugar half a pound, of Cinamon one Ounce, of conſerve of Roſes, of Barberies, and of Cherries, of each one Ounce; mingle them together, and give the Horſe every Morning a quart thereof luke-warm, till two Sheeps Heads be ſpent; and after every time he Drinketh, let him be gently Walked or Ridden up and down according to his ſtrength, that is, if the Weather be Warm, abroad, if it be Cold and Windy, then in the Stable, or ſome cloſe Houſe, ſuffering him neither to Eat nor Drink for two hours after his Medicine; and from Cold water you ſhall keep him the ſpace of fifteen dayes. Now for his ordinary Food or Provender, you ſhall repute that beſt which he eateth beſt, whatſoever it be; and that you ſhall give him by little and little, and not any groſs or great quantity at once, becauſe the abundance and glut of Food taketh away both the Appetite and Nutriment which ſhould proceed from wholſome Feeding.

CHAP.

CHAP. LVIII.

How to make a lean Horſe fat.

BEſides this General Conſumption of a Horſes fleſh, which for the moſt part, or altogether, proceedeth from ſickneſs; there is alſo another Conſumption, or want of fleſh, which proceedeth from Neſhneſs, Tenderneſs, Freeneſs of Spirit, and the Climate under which the Horſe is bred: as namely, when a Horſe that is bred in a warm Climate, comes to live in a Cold; or when a Horſe that is bred upon a fruitfull and rich Soil, comes to live in a Barren and dry place. In any of theſe Caſes, the Horſe will be lean without any apparent ſign of Grief or Diſeaſe, which to recover, there be many Receipts and Medicines, as namely: The antient *Farriers* did uſe when a Horſe either grew lean without Sickneſs or Wound, or any known Diſtemperature, to take a quarter of a peck of Beans, and boyl them in two Gallons of water till they ſwell or burſt, then to mix with them a peck of Wheat Bran, and ſo to give it the Horſe in manner of a Maſh, or inſtead of Provender: for it will fat ſuddainly. Others, and eſpecially the *Italians*, will take Cole-worts, and having ſodden them, mix them with Wheat Bran, and Salt, and give them inſtead of Provender. There be others which take the fatty Decoction of three Tortoyſe being well ſoden, (their Heads, Tails, Bones, and Feet being rejected) and giving it the Horſe, ſuppoſe it fatteth ſuddainly: or if you mix the fleſh of the Tortoyſe ſo ſodden with your Horſes Provender, that is good alſo. But as the ſimples are Italian, and not Engliſh, ſo I for mine own part, refer the uſe rather to them than to my Country-men. There be others which uſe to fat up their Horſes, by giving them a certain Grain which we call Bock, in the ſame manner as we give Oats or Peaſe. There be others, which to fat a Horſe will give him only parched Wheat, and a little Wine mixed with his water, and amongſt his ordinary Provender alwayes ſome Wheat Bran; and be exceeding carefull that the Horſe be clean Dreſt, well Rubbed, and ſoft Littered; for without ſuch clean Keeping, there is no Meat will injoy, or do good upon him; and alſo when he is fedd, it muſt be by little at once, and not furfeited. There be other Farriers, which to feed up a lean Horſe,

will

will take Sage, Savin, Bay-berries, Earth nuts, Bears greaſe, to drink with a quart of Wine. Others will give the Entrails of a Barbell or Tench with white Wine. Others will give new hot Draff, and new Bran, and twenty hard roaſted Eggs, the ſhells being pulled off, then bruiſe them, and then put thereto a pretty quantity of Salt, then mix all together, and give a good quantity thereof to the Horſe at Morn, Noon, and at Evening for his Provender; and once a day (which will be at High-noon) give him a quart or three pints of ſtrong Ale, and when the Horſe beginneth to be Glutted upon this meat, then give him dried Oats: if he be Glutted upon that then give him Bread, if he leave his Bread, give him Malt, or any Grain that he will eat with a good Appetite, obſerving ever to keep the Horſe very warm, and with this Diet in fourteen dayes the leaneſt Horſe will be made exceeding fat. There be other *Farriers* which to make a Horſe fat, will take a quarter of Wine, and half an Ounce of Brimſtone finely beaten with a raw Egg, and a penny weight of the powder of *Myrrh*; mix all together, and give it the Horſe to drink many Mornings together. Others will take three-leaved Graſs, half green, and half dry, and give it the Horſe inſtead of Hay, by little at once, and it will fat ſuddainly, only it will breed much rank blood. Other *Farriers* uſe to take two penny worth of Pepper, and as much Saffron, Anniſeeds and Turmerick, a penny worth of longe Pepper, two penny worth of Treacle, a penny worth of Licoras, a good quantity of Penirial, and Archangel: give the Horſe theſe with the yolks of Eggs in Milk to drink. Others uſe to take Wheat made clean, and ſod with Salt and Lard dried in the Sun, and give it twice a day before each Watering. Others ſtrong Ale, *Myrrh*, Sallet Oyl, and twenty grains of white Pepper, and inſtead of the Ale, you may take the Decoction, that is, the water wherein Sage and Rhue hath been ſodden, it will ſoon make the Horſe fat. Others take ſodden Beans well bruiſed and ſprinkled with Salt, adding to the water four times ſo much Bean flower, or Wheat bran, and give that to the Horſe, and it will fat him ſuddainly. Wine mixt with the Blood of a ſucking Pigg, made luke-warm, or Wine with the juyce of Feather-feaw, or an Ounce of Sulphur, and a penny weight of *Myrrh* well made into Powder, together with a new laid Egg, will raiſe up a Horſe that languiſheth. Barley dried, or Barley boyled till it burſt, either will fatten a Horſe.

☞ But the beſt way of fatting a Horſe, (for moſt of the wayes before preſcribed are not to breed fat that will continue) is, firſt to give your Horſe three Mornings together a pint of ſweet Wine, and two ſpoonfull of *Diapente* brewed together: for that Drink will take away all infection and ſickneſs from the inward parts: then to feed him well with Provender at leaſt four times a day, that is, after his water in the Morning, after his water at Noon, after his water in the Evening, and after his water at 9 of the Clock at Night. Now you ſhall not let his Provender be all of one ſort, but every meal, it may be, changed, as thus: if in the Morning you give him Oats, at Noon likewiſe you ſhall give him Bread, at Evening Beans or Peaſe mixt with Wheat Bran, at Night ſodden Barley, &c. and ever obſerve, of what Food he eateth beſt, of that let him have the greateſt plenty, and there is no queſtion but he will in ſhort ſpace grow fat, ſound, and full of Spirit, without either miſlike or ſickneſs.

CHAP. LIX.

The Mirrour and Maſter of all Medicines, teaching how to make the leaneſt and unſoundeſt Horſes that may be, fat, ſound, and fit either for Market or Travail, in the ſpace of fourteen dayes.

☞ IF your Horſe be full of all the inward Diſeaſes that may be, and brought to that diſlike and poverty that you are deſperate of his Life, you ſhall take of Anniſeeds, of Cumin-ſeeds, of Fenugreek, of Carthamus, of Elicampane, of the flower of Brimſton, of brown Sugar-candy, of each of theſe two Ounces beaten and ſearſt to a very fine powder, then take an Ounce of the juyce of Licoras, and diſſolve it in half a pint of White-wine, then take three Ounces of the Sirrup of Colts-foot, of Sallet-Oyl, and of life Honey, of each half a pint, then mix all this with the former Powders, and with as much Wheat flower as will bind and knit them altogether, work them into a ſtiff paſte, and make thereof Balls as bigg as French Walnuts, Hulls and all, and ſo keep them in a cloſe Gally-pot, and when you have occaſion to uſe them, take one and annoint it with ſweet Butter, and give it the Horſe in the manner of a Pill, and Ride him a little after it, then feed and water him as at other times, and thus do (if it be to prevent

prevent ſickneſs) for three or four Mornings together.

But if it be to take away infirmity, as Glanders, &c. then uſe it at leaſt a Week or more.

But if to take away Molten-greaſe, then inſtantly after his heat, and in his heat.

But if it be to fatten a Horſe, then uſe it at leaſt a fort-night: now as you give them thus in the manner of a pill, ſo you may give them diſſolved in ſweet Wine, Ale, or Beer.

Laſtly, if it be to fatten a Horſe, then you ſhall take the ſecond Balls: that is to ſay, of Wheat-meal ſix pound, or as Phyſicians write, *Quantum ſufficit*, of Anniſeeds two Ounces, of Cumin ſeeds ſix drams, of *Carthamus* one dram and a half, of Fenugreek ſeeds one Ounce two drams, of Brimſtone one Ounce and a half, of Sallet Oyl one pint two Ounces, of Honey one pound and a half, of White Wine four pints: This muſt be made into paſte, the hard Simples being pounded into Powder, and finely ſearſt, and then well kneaded together, and ſo made into Balls as big as a Mans fiſt, and then every Morning and Evening when you would water your Horſe, diſſolve into his Cold water one of theſe Balls, by lathering and chafing the ſame in the water, and then give it him to drink. The Horſe it may be will be coy at the firſt to drink, but it is no matter, let him faſt till he take it: for before two Balls be ſpent, he will refuſe all waters for this only. This is the Medicine above all Medicines, and is truly the beſt ſcouring that can be given to any Horſe whatſoever: for beſides his wonderfull Feeding, it cleanſeth the Body from all bad Humours whatſoever.

CHAP. LX.

Of the Breaſt-pain, or pain in the Breaſt.

THough moſt of our *Farriers* are not curious to underſtand this Diſeaſe, becauſe it is not ſo common as others: yet both my ſelf and others find it is a Diſeaſe very apt to breed, and to indanger the Horſe with Death. The *Italians* call it *Grannezza dipetto*, and it proceedeth from the ſuperfluity of Blood and other groſs Humours, which being diſſolved by ſome extreme and diſorderly heat, reſorteth downward to the Breaſt, and paineth the Horſe extremely that he

can hardly go. The ſigns are, a ſtiff ſtaggering, and weak going with his Fore-leggs, and he can very hardly, or not at all bow down his Head to the ground, either to Eat or drink, and will groan much when he doth either the one or the other. The Cure is firſt to bathe all his Breaſt, and fore-booths with the Oyl of Peter, and if that do not help him within three or four daies, then to let him Blood on both his Breaſt-veins in the ordinary place, and then put in a Rowel either of Hair, Cork, Horn, or Leather, of all which, and the manner of Rowelling, you ſhall read in a more particular Chapter hereafter in the Book of *Chirurgery*.

☞ Now there be other *Farriers*, which for this ſickneſs, will firſt give the Horſe an inward Drench, as namely, a pint of ſweet Wine, and two ſpoonfull of Diapente, then bathe all his Breaſt and Legs with Wine and Oyl mingled together, and in ſome ten or twelve daies it will take away the grief.

CHAP. LXI.

Of the ſickneſs of the Heart, called the Anticor.

THis ſickneſs of the Heart, which by the antient *Farriers* is called *Anticor*, as much as to ſay, againſt or contrary to the Heart, is a dangerous and mortal ſickneſs, proceeding from the great abundance of Blood which is bred by too Curious and proud Keeping, where the Horſe hath much meat, and little or no Labour, as for the moſt part your Geldings of price have, which running all the Summer at Graſs, do nothing but gather their own food, and ſuch like, where the Maſters too much love and tenderneſs, is the means to bring the Horſe to his Death, as we find daily in our practice: for when ſuch naughty and corrupt Blood is gathered, it reſorteth to the inward parts, and ſo ſuffocateth his Heart. The ſigns whereof are, the Horſe will many times have a ſmall ſwelling riſe at the bottom of the Breaſt, which ſwelling will increaſe and riſe upward even to the top of the Neck of the Horſe, and then moſt aſſuredly it kills the Horſe: he will alſo hang his Head either down to the Manger, or down to the Ground, forſaking his Food, and groaning with much painfulneſs. This Diſeaſe is of many an ignorant Smith taken ſometimes for the Yellows, and ſometimes for the Staggers, but you ſhall

☞ know

know that it is not by theſe Obſervations: Firſt, neither about the whites of his Eyes, nor the inſides of his Lips ſhall you perceive any apparent Yellows, and ſo then it cannot be the Yellows, nor will he have any great ſwelling about his Eyes, nor dizzineſs in his Head, before he be at the point of Death; and ſo conſequently it cannot be the Staggers. The Cure whereof is two-fold: the firſt a Prevention, or preſervative before the Diſeaſe come; the ſecond a Remedy after the Diſeaſe is apparent.

For the Prevention, or Preſervative, you ſhall obſerve, that if your Horſe live idly, either at Graſs or in the Stable, and withall grow very Fat, which Fatneſs is never uncompanied with Corruptneſs, that then you fail not to let him Blood in the Neck-vein before you turn him to Graſs, or before you put him to feed in the Stable; and likewiſe let him Blood two or three Moneths after, when you ſee he is fed, and at each time of letting Blood, you muſt make your quantity according to the goodneſs of the Blood: for if the Blood be black and thick, which is a ſign of Inflammation and Corruption, you ſhall take the more: if it be pure red, and thin, which is a ſign of Strength and Healthfulneſs, you ſhall take little or none at all. There be others which uſe for this Prevention, to give the Horſe a Scouring, or purgation of Malmſey, Oyl, and Sugar-candy, the making and uſe whereof you ſhall read in the Chapter of Purgations, and this would be given immediately when you put your Horſe to feed, and as ſoon as you ſee his skin full ſwoln with fatneſs.

Now for the Remedy, when this Diſeaſe ſhall be apparent; you ſhall let him Blood on both his Platveins, or if the Smiths skill will not extend ſo far, then you ſhall let the Horſe blood on the Neck-vein, and that he bleed abundantly: then you ſhall give him this Drink. Take a quart of malmſey, and put thereunto half a quartern of Sugar, and two Ounces of Cinamon beaten to powder and being made warm give it the Horſe to drink: then keep him very warm in the Stable, ſtuffing him round about with ſoft Wiſps very cloſe, eſpecially about the Stomach, leſt the wind do annoy him: and let his ordinary Drink be warm Mathes of Malt and Water, and his Food only that, whatſoever it be, which he eateth with the beſt Stomach.

Now if you ſee any ſwelling to appear, whether it be ſoft or hard, then beſides letting him Blood, you ſhall ſtrike the ſwelling in divers places

places with a Fleam or Launcet, that the corruption may iſſue forth, then annoint it with Hogs-greaſe made warm: For that will either expell it, or bring it to a Head, eſpecially if the ſwelling be kept exceeding warm. There be other Farriers which for this Diſeaſe uſe to let the Horſe blood as is aforeſaid, and then to give him a quart of Malmſey, well brewed with three ſpoonfull of the powder called *Diapente*, and if the Swelling ariſe, to lay thereunto nothing but Hay well ſodden in old Urine, and then keep the ſame Diet as is aforeſaid. Others uſe after the letting of Blood, to give the Horſe no Drink, but only ten or twelve ſpoonfulls of that water which is called Doctor *Stephens* Water, and is not unknown to any Apothecary: and then for the reſt of the Cure to proceed in all things as is before ſpecified, and queſtionleſs I have ſeen ſtrange effects of this practice.

CHAP. LXII.

Of tyred Horſes.

SInce we are thus far proceeded into the inward and vital parts of a Horſes body, it is not amiſs to ſpeak ſomething of the Tyring of Horſes, and of the remedies for the ſame, becauſe when a Horſe is truly tyred (as by over extreme Labour) it is queſtionleſs that all his Vital parts are made ſick and feebled. For to tell you in more plainneſs what tyring is, it is when a Horſe by extreme and unceſſant Labour, hath all his inward and vital Powers which ſhould accompany and rejoice the Heart, expelled and driven outward to the outward parts, and leſs deſerving Members, leaving the Heart forlorn and ſick, inſomuch that a General and Cold faintneſs ſpreadeth over the whole Body, and weakneth it, in ſuch ſort that it can indure no further Travail, till thoſe lively Heats, Faculties and Powers be brought unto their natural and true places back again, and made to give comfort to the Heart whom their loſs ſickned.

Now for the tyring of Horſes, though in truth it proceedeth from no other cauſe but this before ſpoken, yet in as much as in our common and vulgar ſpeech, we ſay every Horſe that giveth over his Labour is tyred, you ſhall underſtand, that ſuch giving over may proceed from four Cauſes: the firſt, from inward ſickneſs: the ſecond, from

from ſome Wound received either of Body or Limbs: the third, from dulneſs of Spirit, Cowardlineſs, or Reſtineſs; and the fourth from moſt extreme Labour and Travail, which is true tyredneſs indeed. Now for the firſt, which is inward ſickneſs, you ſhall look into the general ſigns of every Diſeaſe, and if you find any of thoſe ſigns to be apparent, you ſhall ſtraight conclude upon that Diſeaſe, and taking away the cauſe thereof, have no doubt but the effect of his Tyring will vaniſh with the ſame: for the ſecond, which is by ſome wound received, as by cutting or diſmembring the Sinews, Ligaments, Muſcles, or by ſtraining or ſtooming any bone or joynt, or by pricking in ſhooing, or ſtriking Nail, Iron, Stub or Thorn into the ſole of the Horſes foot, and ſuch like.

Sith, the firſt is apparent to the Eye, by diſ-joyning the skin, the other by Halting, you ſhall take a ſurvey of your Horſe, and finding any of them apparent, look what the grief is, repair to the latter part of this Book, which treateth of Chirurgery, and finding it there, uſe the means preſcribed, and the tyring will eaſily be Cured. Now for the third, which is dulneſs of Spirit, Cowardneſs or Reſtineſs, you ſhall find them by theſe ſigns: If he have no apparent ſign either of inward ſickneſs, or outward grief, neither ſweateth much, nor ſheweth any great alteration of countenance, Yet notwithſtanding tyreth, and refuſeth reaſonable Labour, then ſuch tyring proceedeth from dulneſs of Spirit; but if after indifferent long Travail the Horſe tyre, and then the man deſcending from his back, the Horſe run or trot away, as though he were not tyred, the Man then mounting again, the Horſe utterly refuſe to go forward, ſuch tyring proceedeth from Cowardlineſs; but if a Horſe within one, two, or three miles Riding, being temperately uſed, and being neither put to any trial of his ſtrength, nor, as it were, ſcarcely warmed, if he in his beſt ſtrength refuſe Labour, and Tyre, it proceedeth only from Reſtineſs and ill Conditions. Then for the Cure of any of all theſe, proceeding from Dulneſs, Fearfulneſs, and Unwillingneſs, you ſhall take ordinary Window-glaſs, and beat it into fine powder: Then take up the skin of each ſide the Spur-vein between your Finger and your Thumb, and with a fine Naul or Bodkin, make divers ſmall holes through his skin, then rub Glaſs powder very hard into thoſe holes; which done, mount his Back, and do but offer to touch his ſide with your Heels, and be ſure, if he have Life in him, he will go forward, the greateſt

fear

fear being that he will ſtill but go too faſt: but after your journey is ended, and you alighted, you muſt not fail, (becauſe this powder of Glaſs will corrode and rot his ſides) to annoint both the ſore places with the powder of Jet and Turpentine mixt together, for that will draw out the Venom, and heal his ſides again. There be others which uſe when a Horſe is tyred thus through dull Cowardlineſs or Reſtineſs, to thruſt a burning Brand or Iron into his Buttocks, or to bring bottles of blazing Straw about his Ears, there is neither of the Cures but is exceeding good.

But for the true tyred Horſe, which tyreth through a natural faintneſs, drawn from exceeding Labour, the ſigns to know it, being long Travel, much Sweat, and willingneſs of Courſe during his ſtrength: the Cure thereof, according to the opinion of ſome Farriers, is to pour oyl and Vinegar into his Noſtrils, and to give him the drink of Sheeps-heads, mentioned in the Chapter of the Conſumption of the fleſh, being the 57 Chapter of this Book, and to bath his Leggs with a Comfortable bath, of which you ſhall find choice in the Chapter of Baths, or elſe charge them with this charge: Take of Bole-armony, and of Wheat-flower, of each half a pound, & a little Rozen beaten into fine powder, and a quart of ſtrong Vinegar, mingle them well together, and cover all his Leggs therewith, and if it be in the Summer, turn him to Graſs, and he will recover his wearineſs. Others uſe to take a ſlice of freſh Beef, having ſteeped it in Vinegar, lap it about your Bit or Snaffle, and having made it faſt with a Threed, Ride your Horſe there with, and he will hardly tyre: yet after your journey is ended, be ſure to give your Horſe reſt, much warmth, & good feeding, that is, warm Maſhes, and ſtore of Provender, or elſe he will be the worſe whilſt he liveth.

Now if it be ſo that your Horſe tyre in ſuch a place as the neceſſity of your occaſions are to be preferred before the value of your Horſe, and that you muſt ſeek unnatural means to controle Nature: In this caſe you ſhall take (where the powder of Glaſs before ſpoken of cannot be had) three or four round pibble Stones, and put them into one of his Ears, and then tye the Ear that the ſtones fall not out, and the noiſe of thoſe ſtones will make the Horſe go after he is utterly tyred; but if that fail, you ſhall with a Knife make a hole in the flap of the Horſes Ear, and thruſt a long rough ſtick, full of nicks, through the ſame; and ever as the Horſe ſlacks his pace, ſo ſaw and fret the ſtick up and down in the hole, and be ſure whilſt he hath any Life he will not leave going.

Many

Many other torments there are which be needleſs to Rehearſe, only this is my moſt general advice, if at any time you tyre your Horſe, to take of old Urine a quart, of Salt-peter three Ounces, boyl them well together, and bath all the Horſes four legs in the ſame, and without queſtion it will bring to the ſinews their natural ſtrength and nimbleneſs; and for other defects, warm and good keeping will Cure them.

And although ſome of our Northern Farriers do hold, that Oten dough will prevent tyring, yet I have not approved it ſo, becauſe I could never get any Horſe that would eat it, the dough will ſo ſtick and clam in the Horſes mouth: therefore I hold the Cures, already recited, to be fully ſufficient. But for further ſatisfaction uſe theſe, which I reſerved for mine own privacy.

Take a quart of ſtrong Ale, and put thereto half an Ounce of the powder of Elicampane, and brew them well together, and give it the Horſe with an Horn. ☜

Take a bunch of *Penerial*, and tye it to the mouth of your bit or ſnaffle, and it will preſerve a Horſe from tyring. Now if all theſe fail, then take off your Horſes Saddle, and rub his back all over very hard with the herb called *Arſemart*, and lay *Arſemart* under his Saddle, and ſo Ride him. ☜

CHAP. LXIII.

Of the Diſeaſes of the Stomack, and firſt of the Loathing of Meat.

THis Diſeaſe of the Loathing of Meat, is taken two wayes; the one a forſaking of Meat, as when a Horſes mouth, either through the inflammation of his ſtomach, doth break out into Bliſters, or ſuch like Venemous ſores; or when he hath the Lampaſs, Giggs, Woolfs teeth, and ſuch like. The Cure of all, which you ſhall readily find in the ſecond part of this Book, which treateth of Chirurgery: the other a diſlike of his meat through the intemperature of his Stomach, being either too hot, as proceeding either from rankneſs of Blood, or extremity of Travail, as you may perceive by daily experience, when a Horſe is ſet up in his Stable very hot, and meat inſtantly given him, it is all things to nothing, but he will loath and refuſe it. Hence it comes, that I do ever hate the Noon-tide

baiting of horses, because Mens journeys commonly crave haste, the Horse cannot take such a natural cooling as he ought before his meat, and thereby breeds much sickness and disease: for meat given presently after Travail when a horse is hot, is the Mother of all infirmity: or else it proceedeth from the intemperature of the Stomach, being too Cold, as being caused by some natural defect. Now if it proceed from heat only, which you shall know either by his sudden loathing of his Meat, or the extreme heat of his Mouth and Breath: Then to cool his Stomach again, you shall either wash his Tongue with Vinegar, or give him to drink Cold water mingled with Oyl and Vinegar. There be other Farriers which use to give this Drink: take of Milk and Wine of each one pint, and put thereunto of Mel Rosatum three Ounces, and having washed his mouth with Vinegar and Salt, give him the drink luke-warm with a Horn. But if the loathing of his meat proceed from the coldness of his stomach, which only is known by the standing up and staring of the hair, Then by the opinion of the antient Farriers, you shall give him Wine and Oyl mixt together divers Mornings to drink: but others of our late Farriers give Wine, Oyl, Rue, and Sage boyl'd together by a quart at a time to drink. Others to the former Compound will add white Pepper and Myrrh. Others use to give the horse Onions pill'd and chopt, and Rocket seed boyled and bruised in Wine. Others use to mix Wine with the blood of a Sow Pigg. Now to conclude, for the general forsaking or loathing of meat, proceeding either from hot or cold causes in the Stomach, there is nothing better than the green blades of Corn, (especially Wheat) being given in a good quantity, and that the time of the year serve for the gathering thereof. Others instead thereof, will give the Horse sweet Wine and the seeds of Gith mixt together, or else sweet Wine and Garlick well peel'd and stampt, being a long time brewed together.

CHAP. LXIIII.

Of the casting out of the Horses drink.

THe antient Farriers, especially the Italians, constantly do affirm, that a horse may have such a Palsy, proceeding from the Coldness of his stomach, that may make him unable to retain and keep his

his drink, but that many times he will vomit and caſt it up again: For mine own part, from other cauſes, as from cold in the Head, where the Rhume bindeth about the Roots and Kirnels of the Tongue, hath as it were ſtrangled and made ſtraight the paſſages to the ſtomach: There I have many times ſeen a horſe caſt his water that he drank, in very abundant ſort back again through his Noſtrils, and ſometimes ſtrive with great earneſtneſs to drink, but could not at all. The ſigns of both (from which cauſe ſoever it proceed) is only the caſting up of his Drink or Water, and the Cure thereof is only to give him Cordial and warm drinks, as is Malmſey, Cinamon, Aniſeeds, and Cloves, well brewed and mixt together, and to annoint his Breaſt, and under his Shoulders, with either the Oyl of Cypreſs, Oyl of Spike, or the Oyl of Pepper, and to purge his Head with fumes or pills, ſuch as will force him to ſneeze, of which you may ſee more in a Chapter following: for ſuch fumigations joyning with theſe hot Oyls, will ſoon diſſolve the Humours.

CHAP. LXV.

Of Surfeiting with glut of Provender.

THere is not any Diſeaſe more eaſily procured, nor more dangerous to the life of a horſe, than the Surfeit which is taken by the glut of Provender, it commeth moſt commonly by keeping the Horſe extreme ſharp and hungry, as either by long Travail, or long ſtanding empty: and then in the height of Greedineſs, giving him ſuch ſuper-abundance of meat, that his ſtomach wanting ſtrength to digeſt it, all the whole Body is driven into an infinite great pain and extremity. The ſigns are great weakneſs and feebleneſs in the horſes limbs, ſo that he can hardly ſtand, but lieth down oft, and being down, walloweth and tumbleth up and down as if he had the Bots.

The Cure thereof, according to the common practice of our common Farriers, is, to take half a penny worth of black Sope, and a quart of new Milk, and as much ſweet Butter as Sope, and having on a Chafing-diſh and Coals, mix them together, and give it the Horſe to Drink: this will cleanſe the horſes ſtomach, and bring it to it's ſtrength again.

But the antient Farriers did use first, to let the horse blood in the Neck-vein, (because every Surfeit breeds distemperature in the blood) then trot the Horse up and down an hour and more, and if he cannot stale, draw out his Yard, and wash it with white Wine made luke-warm, and thrust into his yard either a Clove of Garlick, or a little Oyl of Camomile, with a piece of small Wax Candle. If he cannot Dung, first with your hand rake his Fundament, and then give him a Clister, of which you shall read hereafter: When his Clister is received, you shall Walk him up and down till he have emptied his Belly, then set him up, and keep him hungry the space of two or three dayes, observing ever to sprinkle the Hay he eateth with a little water, and let his Drink be warm Water and Bran made mash-wise: After he hath drunk the Drink, let him eat the Bran if he please, but from other Provender keep him still fasting, at the least ten dayes.

There be other Farriers, that in this case, use only to take a quart of Beer or Ale, and two penny-worth of Sallet-Oyl, and as much Dragon Water, a penny-worth of Treacle, and make all these warm upon the coals, then put in an Ounce of Cinamon, Anniseeds, and Cloves, all beaten together, and so give it the Horse luke-warm to drink.

☞ All these receits are exceeding good, yet for mine own part, and many of the best Farriers confirm the same, that there is nothing better for this Disease than moderate Exercise, much Fasting, and once in four or five days a pint of sweet Wine, with two spoonfull of the powder of Diapente.

CHAP. LXVI.

Of Foundring in the Body, being a surfeit got either by Meat, Drink, or Labour.

THis Disease of Foundring in the Body, is of all Surfeits the most vile, most dangerous, and most incident to horses that are daily Travailed; it proceedeth according to the opinion of some Farriers, from eating of much Provender suddenly after Labour; the Horse, being then, as it were, panting hot, (as we may daily see unskilfull Horse-men do at this day) whereby the meat which the Horse eateth, not

not being digeſted, breedeth evill and groſs Humours, which by little and little ſpread themſelves thorough the Members, do at length oppreſs and almoſt confound the whole Body, abſolutely taking away from him all his ſtrength, inſomuch that he can neither go nor bow his joynts, nor being laid, is able to riſe again: Beſides, it taketh away from him his Inſtrumental powers, as the office both of Urine and Excrements, which cannot be performed but with extreme pain. There be other Farriers, and to their opinion I rather lean, that ſuppoſe it proceedeth from ſuffering the Horſe to drink too much in his Travail, being very hot, whereby the Greaſe being ſuddainly cooled, it doth clap about, and ſuffocate the inward parts with ſuch a loathſome fulneſs, that without ſpeedy evacuation, there can be no hope but of Death only. Now whereas ſome Farriers do hold, that this Foundring in the Body, ſhould be no other than the Foundring in the leggs, becauſe it is (ſay they) a melting and diſſolution of evil Humours which reſort down-ward, they are much deceived: For it is not, as they hold, a diſſolution of Humours, but rather a binding together of Corporal and Subſtantial evils, which by an unnatural accident doth torment the Heart. Now for the hold which they take of the name of Foundring, as if it were drawn from the French Word *Fundu*, ſignifying melting, truly I think it was rather the ignorance of our old Farriers, which knew not how to intitle the Diſeaſe, than any coherence it hath with the name it beareth: For mine own part, I am of opinion, that this Diſeaſe which we call Foundering in the body, doth not only proceed from the cauſes aforeſaid, but alſo and moſt oftenſt by ſuddain waſhing Horſes in the Winter-ſeaſon, when they are extreme fat and hot with inſtant Travail, where the cold Vapour of the water ſtriking into the Body, doth not only aſtoniſh the inward and vital parts, but alſo freezeth up the skin, and maketh the Blood to loſe his office. Now the ſigns to perceive this Diſeaſe are, holding down of his Head, ſtaring up of his Hair, Coughing, Staggering behind, trembling after Water, diſlike of his Meat, Leanneſs, Stiff going, Diſability to riſe when he is down: And to conclude, which is the chiefeſt ſign of all other, his Belly will be clung up to his Back, and his Back riſing up like a Camel.

The Cure, according to the opinion of the Farriers, is, firſt, to rake his Fundament, and then to give him a Cliſter: which done, and that the Horſes belly is emptied, then take of Malmſey a quart,

of

of Sugar half a quartern, of Cinamon half an ounce, of Licoras, and Anniſeeds, of each two ſpoonfull beaten into fine powder; which being put into the Malmſey, warm them together at the fire, ſo that the Hony may be molten, then give it the horſe luke-warm to Drink: which done, walk him up and down either in the warm Stable, or ſome warm Road the ſpace of an hour, then let him ſtand on the Bit faſting two hours more, only let him be warm Cloathed, Stopt, and Littered, and when you give him Hay, let it be ſprinkled with Water, and let his Provender be very clean ſifted from duſt, and given by a little at once; and let his Drink be warm Maſhes of Malt and Water. Now when you ſee him recover and get a little ſtrength, you ſhall then let him blood in the Neck-vein, and once a day perfume him with Frankincenſe to make him neeſe, and uſe to give him Exerciſe abroad when the weather is warm, and in the Houſe when the weather is ſtormy.

Now there be other Farriers which uſe for this Diſeaſe, to take a half penny worth of Garlick, two penny worth of the powder of Pepper, two penny worth of the powder of Ginger, two penny worth of Grains bruiſed, and put all theſe into a pottle of ſtrong Ale, and give it the Horſe to drink by a quart at a time, dieting and ordering him as afore-ſaid; and when he getteth ſtrength, either let him blood in the Neck-vein, or the Spur-veins, or on both: to Conclude, there is no Drink nor Dyet which is comfortable, but it is moſt ſoveraign and good for this infirmity.

CHAP. LXVII.

Of the greedy Worm, or hungry evil in Horſes.

THis hungry evil is a Diſeaſe more common, than found out by our Farriers, becauſe the moſt of our Horſe Maſters being of great ignorance, hold it a ſpecial vertue to ſee a Horſe eat eagerly, whereas indeed this over haſty and greedy eating, is more rather an infirmity and ſickneſs of the inward parts; and this Diſeaſe is none other than an inſatiate and greedy eating, contrary to Nature and old Cuſtom, and for the moſt part, it followeth ſome extreme great Emptineſs, or want of natural Food, the beaſt being even at the pinch, and ready to be chap-faln. There be ſome Farriers which ſuppoſe

ſuppoſe that it proceedeth from ſome extreme Cold outwardly taken by Travelling in Cold and Barren places, as in the Froſt and Snow, where the outward Cold maketh the ſtomach cold, whereby all the inward powers are weakned. The ſigns are only an alteration or change in the Horſes feeding, having left all temperance, and ſnarching and chopping at his Meat, as if he would devour the Manger: The Cure, according to the opinion of ſome Farriers, is, firſt to comfort his ſtomach by giving him great ſlices of White bread toaſted at the fire, and ſteeped in Muskadine, or elſe Bread untoaſted, and ſteeped in Wine, and then to let him drink Wheat flower and Wine brewed together. There be others which uſe to Knead ſtiff Cakes of Wheat-flower and Wine, and to feed the Horſe therewith. Others uſe to make him bread of Pinetree nuts and Wine mingled together, or elſe common Earth and Wine mingled together. But for mine own part, I hold nothing better than moderatly feeding the Horſe many times in the day with wholeſome Bean bread, well Baked, or Oats well dried and ſifted.

CHAP. LXVIII.

Of the Diſeaſes of the Liver in General, and firſt of the Inflammation thereof.

THere is no queſtion but the Liver of a Horſe is ſubject to as many Diſeaſes, as either the Liver of a Man or any other Creature, only through the ignorance of our common Farriers, (who make all inward Diſeaſes one ſickneſs) the true grounds and cauſes not being looked into, the infirmity is let paſs, and many times poyſoned with falſe potions; but true it is, that the Liver ſometimes by the intemperateneſs thereof, as being either too hot or too cold, too moiſt, or too dry, or ſometimes by means of evil Humours, as Choler, or Flegm over-flowing in the ſame, Heat ingendring Choler, and Coldneſs Flegm, the Liver is ſubject to many ſickneſſes, & is diverſly pained, as by Inflammations, Apoſtumation, or Ulcer, or by Obſtructions, Stoppings, or hard Knobs: or laſtly, by the Conſumption of the whole ſubſtance thereof. The ſigns to know if the Diſeaſe proceed from Hot cauſes, is leanneſs of Body, the loathing of Meat, voiding Dung of a ſtrong Scent, great Thirſt, and looſeneſs of Belly.

The

The signs to know if the Disease proceed from cold causes, is good state of Body, appetite of Meat, dung not Stinking, no Thirst, and the Belly neither loose nor costive. Now to proceed to the particular Diseases of the Liver, and first of the Inflammation, you shall understand that it commeth by means that the Blood through the abundance, thinness, boyling heat, or sharpness thereof, or through the Violence of some outward cause, breaketh out of the Veins, and floweth into the Body or Substance of the Liver; and so being dispossest of his proper Vessels, doth immediately putrifie, and is inflamed, corrupting so much of the fleshy substance of the Liver, as is either touched or imbrued with the same, whence it commeth, that for the most part, the hollow side of the Liver is first consumed, yea, sometimes the full side also: This Inflammation by a natural heat is sometimes turned to Putrifaction, and then it is called an Apostumation: which when either by the strength of Nature or art, it doth break and run, then it is called an Ulcer, or filthy sore. Now the signs of an Inflammation on the hollow side of the Liver (which is the least hurtfull) is loathing of Meat, great Thirst, loosens of Belly, and a continual unwillingness to lye on the left side: but if the Inflammation be on the full side of the Liver, then the signs be short Breathing, a dry Cough, much Pain, when you handle the Horse about the Wind-pipe, and an unwillingness to lye on the right side. The signs of Apostumation is great heat, long fetching of breath, and a continual looking to his side. The signs of Ulceration, is continual coldness, starting up the hair, and much feebleness and fainting, because the filthy matter casting evil Vapours abroad, doth many times corrupt the Heart and occasion Death. Now for the Cure of these Inflammations, some Farriers use to take a quart of Ale, an Ounce of Myrrh, an Ounce of Frankincense, and brewing them well together, give it the Horse divers mornings to drink. Others use to take three Ounces of the seeds of Smallage, and three Ounces of Hyssop, and as much Southerwort, and boyl them well in Oyl and Wine mingled together, and give the Horse to drink; keep the Horse warm, and let him neither drink cold water, nor eat dry dusty Hay.

CHAP.

CHAP. LXIX.

Of Obſtructins, Stoppings, or hard Knobs on the Liver.

THeſe Obſtructions or Stoppings of a Horſes Liver, do come moſt commonly by Travelling or Labour on a full ſtomach, whereby the meat not being perfectly digeſted, breedeth groſs and tough Humours, which Humours by the extremity of Travel, are violently driven into the ſmall Veins, through which the Liver ought to receive good Nutriment, and ſo by that means breedeth Obſtructions and Stoppings. Now from theſe Obſtructions, (when they have continued any long time) eſpecially if the Humours be Cholerick, breedeth many times hard Knobs on the Liver, which Knobs maketh the Horſe continually lye on his right ſide, and never on the left, becauſe if he ſhould lye on the left ſide, the weight of the Knob would oppreſs the Stomach, and even ſicken all the Vital parts in him.

The ſigns of theſe Obſtructions or Stoppings, are Heavineſs of Countenance, Diſtention or Swelling, great Dulneſs and Sloath in the Horſe when he beginneth his Travail, and a continual looking back to his ſhort Ribs, where remaineth his greateſt pain and torment. Now the Cure thereof, is, to ſeeth continually in the water which he drinketh, *Agrimony*, *Fumitory*, *Camomil*, *Wormwood*, *Licoras*, *Anniſeeds*, *Smallage*, *Parſley*, *Spiknard*, *Gentian*, *Succory*, *Endive* and *Lupins*, the Vertues whereof are moſt comfortable to the Liver. But forasmuch as the moſt part of our Engliſh Farriers are very ſimple Smiths, whoſe Capacities are unable to dive into theſe ſeveral diſtinctions, and that this Work (or Maſter-piece) is intended for the weakeſt Brain whatſoever: You ſhall underſtand, that there be certain general ſigns to know when the Liver of a Horſe is grieved with any grief, of what Nature or Condition ſoever it be; and ſo likewiſe general Receits to Cure all the griefs, without diſtinguiſhing or knowing their Natures: You ſhall know then if a Horſe have any grief or pain in his Liver by theſe ſigns. Firſt, by a loathing of his Meat; next, by the waſting of his Fleſh, dryneſs of his Mouth, and roughneſs of his Tongue, and great ſwelling thereof, and refuſing to lye on the ſide grieved: And laſtly, a continual looking backward.

Now the general Cures for the ſickneſs of the Liver, is, according to the opinion of the antient Farriers, to give the Horſe Aloes diſſolved in ſweet Wine, for it both purgeth and comforteth the Liver. Others uſe to give him to drink Irees ſtampt and mixt with Wine and Water together, or inſtead of Irees, to give him Calamint, called of the Latins Polmonia. Others give Savery with Oyl and Wine mixt together. Others uſe Liver-wort and Agrimony with Wine and Oyl. Others uſe comfortable Frictions, and to ſteep his Provender in warm Water, and to mix with his Provender a little Nitrum, not forgetting to let him ſtand warm, and lye ſoft: But that which is generally praiſed above all Medicines, is, to give the Horſe a Woolfs Liver beaten to powder, and mixt either with Wine, Water, Oyl, or any other Medicine.

☞ Now for a concluſion of this Chapter, if the Farriers skill be ſo good, that he can diſtinguiſh the Nature of each ſeveral infirmity about the Liver; then I would have him for to underſtand, that for Inflammations (which are the firſt beginners of all Diſeaſes) would be uſed ſimples that mollifie and diſperſe Humours, as be theſe, Linſeed, Fenugreek, Camomil, Anniſeeds, Mellilot, and ſuch like; to which mollifying ſimples, would be ever added ſome ſimples that are aſtringent or binding, as are theſe Red Roſe leaves, Bramble leaves, Worm-wood, Plantain, Myrrh, Maſtick, Storax, and ſuch like. Now for Apoſtumes, they are to be ripened and voided, and Ulcers muſt be cleanſed and ſcoured downward, either by Excrement or Urine, and therefore the uſe of ſuch ſimples as provoke either the one or the other, (of which you ſhall find plenty in other Chapters) is moſt neceſſary.

CHAP. LXX.

Of the Conſumption of the Liver.

OF the Conſumption of the Liver, I have ſpoken ſomething in the Chapter of the Mourning of the Chine: yet becauſe amongſt our beſt Farriers it is diverſly taken, I will ſhew you their diverſe opinions. Firſt, ſome hold it commeth only from ſudden cold after heat, taken either by drinking or ſtanding ſtill. Others hold it commeth of any Humour, eſpecially of Cholerick matter, ſhed

ſhed throughout the whole ſubſtance of the Liver, which rotting by leaſurable degrees, doth in the end corrupt and confound all the ſubſtance of the Liver, proceeding, as they think, from corrupt Meats, and ſweet Drinks. And the laſt thinketh it commeth by extreme heat gotten in Travail, which inflaming the Blood, doth afterward putrifie, corrupt, and exulcerate the whole ſubſtance of the Liver: becauſe the Liver is ſpungious like the Lungs, therefore the Cure of this Diſeaſe is held deſperate; yet it bringeth no ſpeedy or ſudden Death, but a waſting and lingring infirmity: For the Liver being corrupted, digeſtion is taken away, and ſo the Body for want of good Nutriment, doth in time conſume. The ſigns of this Diſeaſe is a loathing of Meat, and a ſtretching forth of the Horſes Body at length as he ſtandeth, he will ſeldome or never lye down, his Breath will ſtink marveloufly, and he will continually caſt exceeding foul matter, either at one Noſtril, or at both, according as one ſide, or both ſides of the Liver is conſumed; and on that ſide which he caſteth, he will ever have betwixt his neather jawes, about the middeſt of them, a hard Knob or Kirnel about the bigneſs of a Walnut. Now the preſervative of this Diſeaſe, (for in truth it is incurable) is, according to the opinion of ſome Farriers, to take half a pint of Malmſey, and as much of the blood of a young Pigg, and to give it the Horſe luke-warm to drink. Other Farriers uſe to give the Horſe no other Food for the ſpace of three dayes, than warm Wort, and Oats baked in an Oven, being ſure that the Horſe be kept faſting the firſt Night before he receive his Medicine. Others ſuppoſe, that if into the Wort which he drinketh, you do put every Morning two or three ſpoonfull of the powder made of Agrimony, red Roſe leaves, Saccarum Roſaceum, Diarchadon Abbatis, Diſantelon, Licoras, and of the Liver of a Woolf, that is more excellent. Others hold that this powder given with Goats milk luke-warm, is very good. Others hold that Malmſey, and the juyce of Fetherfew given to drink is alſo good.

Others uſe (and hold it equal with the beſt) to take an Ounce of Sulphur Vive beaten into fine powder, and a penny weight of Myrrh beaten to fine powder, mix them together with a new laid Egge, and ☜ give them to drink with half a pint of Malmſey; uſe this divers times, and keep the Horſe faſting, yet ſeparate him from other horſes, for this Diſeaſe is infectious.

CHAP. LXXI.

Of the Diseases of the Gall.

AS is the Liver, even so the Gall of a Horse is subject to divers and many Infirmities, as to Obstructions, according to the opinion of old Farriers: from whence floweth the fulness and empt nes of the Bladder, and Stone in the Gall. And these Obstructions do chance two several wayes: First, when the passage by which Choler should pass from the Liver unto the Bladder of the Gall, as unto his proper Receptacle, is stopped; and so the Bladder of the Gall remaineth empty: for you are to understand, that the Gall is none other thing than a long, slender, little greenish Bladder, fixed underneath the Liver, which doth receive all the Cholerick bitter moisture, which would otherwise offend not only the Liver, but the whole Body also. Now if the passage of this necessary Vessel be stopped, there cannot chuse but follow many infirmities, as either Vomiting, the Lax, the Bloody-flux, or the Yellows.

Secondly, when the way whereby such Choler should issue forth of the Bladder of the Gall, down into the Guts and Excrements, is closed up, and so superaboundeth with too much Choler; from whence springeth dulness of Spirit, Suffocating, Belching, Heat, Thirst, and disposition to rage and fury; and truly to any Beast there is not a more dangerous Disease, than the over-flowing of the Gall: But our latter experience findeth that a Horse hath no Gall at all; but that filthy and corrupt matter is wasted and spent, either by Sweat, Exercise, or else doth turn to infirmity. The signs of both these kinds of Evils, or Obstructions, are yellowness of the Skin, infected with yellow Jaundise, and a continual Restiveness of the Body: and the Cures of them are, according to the most antient Farriers, to give the Horse Milk, and great store of Saffron, boyled together, or instead of Milk, to give Ale, Saffron, and Anniseeds mixt together. But there be other Farriers, with whom I more do agree, which hold, that Selladine Roots and Leaves chopt and bruised, and boyled in Beer; or for want of Selladine, Rue, or Herb of grace, and given the Horse lukewarm to Drink, is most soveraign.

Now

Now for the Stone in the Gall, which is of a blackiſh Colour, it comme from the Obſtruction of the Conduits of the Bladder, whereby the Choler being too long kept in, becommeth dry, and ſo converteth firſt into Gravel, and after into a ſolid and hard Stone, of which both the ſigns and the Cures are thoſe laſt before Rehearſed.

CHAP. LXXII.

Of all ſuch Diſeaſes as are incident to the Spleen.

THe Spleen is a Long, Narrow, Flat, Spungy ſubſtance, of a pale fleſhy Colour, joyning with the Liver and the Gall, it is the Receptacle of Melancholy, and the Dregs of the Blood, and is as ſubject to Infirmity, as any inward Member whatſoever, as to Inflammations, Obſtructions, Knobs, and Swellings; it is through the Spungineſs, apt to ſuck in all manner of filth, and to dilate and ſpread the ſame over the whole Body: The appearance thereof is on the left ſide under the ſhort Ribs, where you ſhall perceive ſome ſmall Swelling, which ſwelling gives great grief to the Midriff, eſpecially after a full Stomach, taking away much more of the Horſes Digeſtion than his Appetite, and being ſuffered to continue, it makes faint the Heart, and grows in the end to a hard Knob, or ſtony Subſtance.

This Diſeaſe, or Diſeaſes of the Spleen, are incident to Horſes moſt in the Summer, proceeding from the Surfeit, or greedy eating of green Meats. The ſigns of which Diſeaſes are theſe, Heavineſs, Dulneſs, pain on the Left ſide, and hard Swellings, ſhort Breath, much Groaning, and an over haſty deſire to his Meat. The Cure, according to the opinion of our beſt Farriers, is, to make the Horſe ſweat either by Labour or Cloaths, then to give him to drink a quart of White-Wine, wherein hath been boyled the leaves of Tamariſk bruiſed, and a good quantity of Cumin ſeed beaten to powder, and give it luke-warm. Others uſe, after the Horſe hath ſweat, to pour into his left Noſtril every day, the juyce of Myrabolans, mixt with Wine and Water, to the quantity of a pint. Others take Cumin-ſeed and Honey of each ſix Ounces, of Lacerpitium as much as a Bean, of Vinegar a pint, and put all theſe into three quarts of water, and let it ſtand ſo all Night, and give the Horſe a quart thereof next Morning,

Morning, having faſted all night. Others make the Horſe to drink of Garlick, Nitrum, Hare-hound, and Worm-wood ſodden in ſharp Wine, and to bathe all the Horſes left ſide with warm water, and to rub it hard. There be others which uſe to Cauterize or Scarrifie the Horſes left ſide with a hot Iron; but it is barbarous and vile, and carrieth no judgment in the practice.

CHAP. LXXIII.

Of the Yellows or Jaundiſe.

AS before I ſaid, from the Obſtructions or Over-flowings of the Gall and Spleen, doth ſpring this Diſeaſe which our common Smiths call the Yellows, and our better Farriers the Jaundiſe; and you ſhall underſtand, that of this Yellows or Jaundiſe, there are two kinds, the firſt an over-flowing of Choler, proceeding from the ſickneſs of the Gall, and it is called ſimply the Yellows, or yellow Jaundiſe; becauſe the outward parts of the Body, as Eyes, Skin, Mouth, inſide of the Lips, and the like, are dried and coloured Yellow: the other an Over-flowing of Melancholy, proceeding from the ſickneſs of the Spleen, and is called the black Yellows, or Black Jaundiſe, becauſe all the outward parts are black. Now both theſe Jaundiſe, or Yellows, have their beginnings from the evils of the Liver; the yellow Jaundiſe, when the Liver by inflammation hath all his Blood converted into Choler, and ſo over-whelms the Body: and the black Jaundiſe, when ſome Obſtructions in the Liver-vein, which goeth to the Spleen, hindreth the Spleen from doing his Office, and receiving the dregs of Blood from the Liver, or elſe when the Spleen is ſur-charged with ſuch dregs of Blood, and ſo ſheddeth them back again into the Veins.

Now although this diſtinction of the black Jaundiſe, or black Yellows, will appear ſtrange unto our common Farriers, yet it is moſt certain, that whenſoever a Horſe dyeth of the Yellows, he dyeth only of the black Yellows: for when it commeth unto the caſe of Mortality, then are all the inward powers converted to Blackneſs, and the Yellow ſubſtance is clean Maſtred; but whilſt the matter is Yellow, ſo long the Horſes Body is in good ſtate of recovery. Beſides, theſe Yellows do ever follow one the other, and the leſſer hath no ſooner

ſooner got preheminence, but the greater perſues him; of all the inward Diſeaſes in a Horſes Body, that is moſt common, eſpecial in practice, and yet moſt mortal, if it be not early prevented. The ſigns of this Diſeaſe of yellow Jaundiſe, are yellowneſs of his Eyes, Noſtrils, inſide of the Lips, the Skin, the Yard, and the Urine: his Ears and his Flank will ſweat, and he will Groan when he lyeth down, and he will not only be faint, but utterly forſake his Meat alſo. The Cures which are at this day in practice for this Diſeaſe, are infinite, and a World of them corrupt and poyſonous: Every Smith almoſt making a Medicine of his own invention, God knows weak, and to little purpoſe, but for the beſt Receits which at this day are uſed by any good Farriers whatſoever, I will deliver you the whole Catalogue.

Firſt, for the Antient Farriers, both Italian and French, they did uſe to take of Tyme and Cumin, of each like quantity, and ſtamping them together, to mingle it with Wine, Hony, and Water; and then to let him Blood in the Paſterns.

But now the Farriers of latter dayes uſe, firſt to let the Horſe blood in the Neck-vein, ſuffering him to bleed, till you perceive the Blood to grow pure, then to give him this Drink: Take of white-Wine or Ale a quart, and put thereunto Safforn, and Turmerick, of each half an Ounce, and the juyce that is wrung out of a great hand-full of Selladine, and being luke-warm, give it the Horſe to Drink, then keep him warm the ſpace of three or four dayes, giving him warm Water with a little Bran in it. Others uſe after the Horſe is let blood in the Neck-vein, Firſt to Rake him, then to give him a ſuppoſitary made of Salt, Honey, and Marjoram, and then give him to drink half an Ounce of Myrrh diſſolved in a quart of Wine or Ale. Others uſe to give after Blood-letting, only cold Water and Nitrum mixt together. There be others, which after Blood-letting, will only ſtop his Ears with Selladine, and then bind them faſt up, and let him have no Exerciſe for twelve hours after. Others uſe, after the letting him Blood, to give him a Cliſter, then to take Saffron, and Turmerick, and mixing them with a quart of Milk, give it him to drink luke-warm. Others uſe to let the Horſe blood in the third barr of the Roof of his Mouth, with a ſharp Knife, and after he hath bled well, to take a half penny worth of Engliſh Saffron, and a penny-worth of Turmerick, and a new laid Egg, with the ſhell and all

all ſmall bruken, and mix it in a quart of ſtale Ale or Beer, and ſo ſet him up warm.

Others uſe to take after Blood letting, of Turmerick, and Saffron, alike quantity, and two or three Cloves, and ſix ſpoonfull of Vinegar and Verjuyce, and to put into each Ear of the Horſe, three ſpoonfulls thereof, and then ſtop his Ears with black Wool, and ſo tye them up for ſeven or eight dayes after. Others take long Pepper, Grains, Turmerick, and Licoras, all beaten into fine powder, then brew them with a quart of ſtrong Beer or Ale, and give it the Horſe to drink. Others uſe after taking and Blood-letting, to take the juyce of Ivy-leaves, and mingling it with Wine, to ſquirt it into the Horſes Noſtrils, and to let him Drink only cold Water mixt with Nitrum, and let his Food be Graſs, or new Hay ſprinkled with Water.

Thus you have ſeen, I dare well affirm, all the beſt practices which are at this day known for this Diſeaſe, and where they all fail, there is no hope of Cure, (as the old Farriers affirm) yet let me thus far further inform you, This Diſeaſe of the Yellows or Jaundiſe, if the Keeper and Maſter be not a great deal the more skilfull and carefull, will ſteal upon you unawares, and (as I have often ſeen) when you are in the midſt of your Journey, remote and diſtant far from any Town that can give you ſuccour, it may be your Horſe will fall down under you, and if you ſhould let him reſt till you fetch him ſuccour, queſtionleſs he will be Dead.

In this extremity you have no help, but to draw out a ſharp pointed Knife, Dagger, or Rapier for a need, and as near as you can, opening the Horſes mouth, ſtrike him Blood about the third bar of the Roof of his Mouth, and ſo letting him eat and ſwallow his own Blood a good while, then raiſe him up, and be ſure he will go as freſh as ever he did: But after you come to a place of reſt, then be ſure to Blood him, and give him half an Ounce of the powder of Diapente in a pint of Muskadine well brewed together, and thus do three or four Mornings together, and let him be faſting before, and faſt two hours after; and after the Potion give him a little moderate Exerciſe, or elſe there will a worſe fit come upon him.

Now to conclude for the black Jaundiſe, which of ſome Farriers is called the dry Yellows, though for mine own part I hold it to be incurable; yet there be other Farriers which are of a contrary Humour, and preſcribe this Phyſick for the Cure thereof: Firſt, to give the

the Horſe a Cliſter made of Oyl, Water, Milk, and Nitrum, after his Fundament is raked, then to pour the Decoction of Mallows mingled with ſweet Wine in his Noſtrils, and let his Meat be Graſs or Hay ſprinkled with water, and a little Nitre, and his Provender dried Oats: He muſt reſt from Labour, and be often Rubbed. Now there be other Farriers, which for this Diſeaſe would only have the Horſe drink the Decoction of wild Coleworts ſodden in Wine; the effects of all which I only refer to Experience.

CHAP. LXXIIII.

Of the Dropſie, or evil habit of the Body.

WHereas we have ſpoken before of the Conſumption of the Fleſh, which proceedeth from Surfeits, ill Lodging, Labour, Colds, Heats, and ſuch like: you ſhall alſo now underſtand, that there is another Drineſs or Conſumption of the fleſh, which hath no apparent cauſe or ground, and is called of Farriers a Dropſie, or evil habit of the Body, which is moſt apparently ſeen, when the Horſe by diſlike doth loſe his true natural Colour, and when Bayneſs turns to Dunneſs, Blackneſs to Duskiſhneſs, and Whitneſs to Aſhineſs, and when he loſeth his Spirit, Strength, and Alacrity. Now this commeth not from the want of Nutriment, but from the want of good Nutriment, in that the Blood is corrupted either with Flegm, Choler, or Melancholy, comming (according to the opinion of our beſt Farriers) either from the Spleen, or the weakneſs of the Stomach or Liver, cauſing naughty Digeſtion.

Others think it commeth from Foul Feeding, or much Idleneſs, but for mine own part, albeit I have had as much tryal of this Diſeaſe, as any one Man, and that it becommeth not me to controle men of approved judgment; yet this I dare averr, that I never ſaw this Diſeaſe of the evil Habit, or evil Colour of the Body, ſpring from any other grounds, than either Diſorderly and Wild Riding, or from Hunger, or barren Woody Keeping. Betwixt it and the Dropſie, there is ſmall or no difference. For the Dropſie being divided into three kinds, this is the firſt thereof, as namely, an univerſal ſwelling of the Body, but eſpecially the Leggs, through the abundance of water lying between the skin and the fleſh. The ſecond, a ſwelling

in the covering or bottom of his Belly, as if the Horſe were with Cal which is only a watriſh Humour abiding betwixt the skin and the rim: And the third, a ſwelling in the ſame place by the like Humours, abideth betwixt the great bag and the Keil.

The common ſigns of this Diſeaſe, are ſhortneſs of Breath, ſwelling of the Body or Leggs, loſs of the Horſes natural Colour, no appetite unto Meat, and a continual Thirſt; his Back, Buttocks, and Flanks will be dry, and ſhrunk up to their Bones; his Veins will be hid that you cannot ſee them, and whereſoever you ſhall preſs your finger any thing hard againſt his Body, there you ſhall leave the print behind you, and the fleſh will not riſe of a good ſpace after: when he lyeth down he will ſpread out his Limbs, and not draw them round together, and his hair will ſhed with the ſmalleſt rubbing. There be other Farriers which make but only two Dropſies, that is, a wet Dropſie, and a windy Dropſie, but being examined, they are all one with thoſe recited, have all the ſame Signs and the ſame Cure, which according to the antient Farriers is in this ſort: firſt, to let him be warm covered with many Cloaths, and either by Exerciſe, or otherwiſe drive him into a ſweat; then let his Back and Body be rubbed againſt the hair, and let his Food be for the moſt part, Colworts, Smallage, and Elming Boughs, or whatſoever elſe will keep his Body ſoluble or provoke Urine: when you want this Food, let him eat Graſs, or Hay ſprinkled with water, and ſometimes you may give him a kind of Pulſe called Ciche, ſteeped a day and a night in Water, and then taken out and layd ſo, as the Water may drop away.

There be other Farriers which only would have the Horſe to drink Parſley ſtampt and mixt with Wine, or elſe the Root of the herb called Panax ſtampt and mixt with Wine. Now whereas ſome Farriers adviſe to ſlit the Belly a handfull behind the Navel, that the Wind and Water may leiſurely iſſue forth, of mine own Knowledge, I know the Cure to be moſt vile; nor can it be done, but to the utter ſpoil and Killing of the Horſe: for a Horſe is a Beaſt, and wanting knowledge of his own good, will never be dreſt but by Violence, and that Violence will bring down his Keil, ſo as it will never be recovered. Now for theſe Dropſies in the Belly, although I have ſhewed you the Signs and the Cures, yet they are Rare to be found, and more Rare to be Cured; but for the other Dropſie, which is the ſwelling of the Legs, and the loſs of the Colour of the hair,

hair, it is very ordinary and in hourly practice: the beſt Cure whereof, that ever I found amongſt the Farriers, is this.

Take of ſtrong Ale a Gallon, and ſet it on the fire, and then skum off the White froth which riſeth, then take a handfull of Wormwood with ſtalks, and put them into the Ale, and let them boyl till it be come almoſt to a quart: then take it off, and ſtrain it exceedingly, then diſſolve into it three Ounces of the beſt Treacle, and put in alſo an Ounce and a half of long Pepper and Grains beaten to very fine powder: then brew them all together till it be no more but lukewarm, and ſo give it the Horſe to drink; the next day let him blood on the Neck-vein, and annoint his Forelegs with train Oyl, and ſo turn him into good Graſs, and fear not his Recovery.

CHAP. LXXV.

Of the Diſeaſes in the Guts of a Horſe, and firſt of the Cholick.

A Horſes Guts are ſubject unto many and ſundry infirmities: as namely, to the wind Cholick, fretting of the Belly, Coſtiveneſs, Laxe, Bloody-flux, and Worms of divers kinds. Now for the Cholick, it is a grievous and tormenting pain in the great Gut or Bag, which, becauſe it is very large and ſpacious, and full of empty places, it is the more apt to receive divers offenſive matters, which do breed divers infirmities, eſpecially Wind, which finding no ready paſſage out, maketh the Body, as it were, ſwell, and offendeth both the ſtomach and other inward Members. This Diſeaſe doth not ſo much appear in the Stable, as abroad in Travail, and the ſigns are theſe: the Horſe will often offer to ſtale, but cannot; he will ſtrike at his Belly with his hinder foot, and many times ſtamp; he will forſake his Meat, and towards his Flank you ſhall ſee his Belly appear more full than ordinary, and he will deſire to lye down and wallow. The Cure thereof, according to the moſt antient Farriers, is, only to give him a Cliſter made either of Wild Cucumbers, or elſe of Hens-dung, Nitrum, and ſtrong Vinegar, the manner whereof you ſhall ſee in the Chapter of Cliſters, and after the Cliſter labour him.

Others uſe to give the Horſe the Urine of a child to drink, or a Cliſter of Sope and Salt water. Others uſe to give him five drams of

Myrrh in good wine, and then Gallop him gently thereupon. Others uſe to give him Smallage and Faſley with his Provender, and then to Travail him till he ſweat. But for my own part, I hold it beſt to take a quart of Malmſey, of Cloves, Pepper, Cinamon, of each half an Ounce, of Sugar half a quartern, and give it the Horſe luke-warm, and then Ride him at leaſt an hour after; but before you Ride him, annoint all his Flanks with Oyl-de bay, or Oyl of Spike. Now if whilſt you Ride him he will not Dung, you ſhall then Rake him, and if need be, enforce him to Dung, by thruſting into his Fundament a pill'd Onion Jagged Croſs-wayes, that the tickling of the Juyce may inforce Ordure: and by no means, for four or five dayes let him drink no Cold water, nor eat any Graſs or green Corn, but keep him upon wholeſome dry Meat in a warm Stable.

CHAP. LXXVI.

Of the Belly-ake, or Fretting in the Belly.

BEſides the Cholick, there is alſo another grievous pain in the Belly, which Farriers call the Belly-ake, or Fretting in the Belly; and it proceedeth either from eating of Green Pulſe, when it grows on the ground, or raw undried Peaſe, Beans, or Oats, or elſe when ſharp fretting Humours, or Inflammations, or abundance of groſs matter is gotten between the great Gut and the Paniele. The ſigns are much Wallowing, great Groaning, and often ſtriking at his Belly, and Gnawing upon the Manger. The Cure, according to the opinion of ſome Farriers, is, firſt to annoint your hand with Sallet-Oyl, Butter or greaſe, and then thruſting it in at the Horſes Fundament, pull out as much Dung as you can reach, which is called raking a Horſe: then give him a Cliſter of water and Salt mixt together, or inſtead thereof, give him a Suppoſitory of Honey and Salt, and then give him to Drink the powder of Centuary and wormwood brewed with a quart of Malmſey. Others uſe only to give the Horſe a Suppoſitory of New-caſtle Sope, and for mine own part, I hold it only the beſt.

CHAP.

CHAP. LXXVII.

Of the Coſtiveneſs, or Belly-bound.

COſtiveneſs, or Belly bound, is, when a Horſe is ſo bound in his Belly, that he cannot Dung; it is a Diſeaſe of all other moſt incident to Running Horſes, which are kept in a dry and hot Dyet. Now my Maſters, the great Farriers, affirm, that it proceedeth from Glut of Provender, or over-much Feeding, and Reſt; or from wind, groſs Humours, or Cold, cauſing Oboſtructions, and Stoppings in the Guts; but I ſuppoſe (and imagine that all the beſt Keepers of Hunting or Running Horſes will conſent with me) that it rather proceeds from much Faſting, whereby the Gut wanting freſh ſubſtance to fill it, doth out of its own great Heat, bake and dry up the little which it containeth: For it is a certain Rule, that nothing can overflow before it be full. Or elſe it may proceed from eating too much dry and hot Food, which ſucking up the flegm and moiſture of the Body, leaves not ſufficient whereby it may be digeſted; however, it is a dangerous infirmity, and is the beginning of many other evils. The ſigns are only abſtinence from the office of Nature, (I mean Dunging) which is moſt uſual in all Beaſts. The Cure whereof, according to the opinion of the Antienteſt Farriers, is, to take the water wherein Mallowes have been long boyled, to the quantity of a quart, and put thereto half a pint of Oyl, or inſteed thereof, half a pint of Butter very ſweet, and one Ounce of Benedicte Laxatu, and pour that into his Fundament Cliſterwiſe: then with a ſtring faſten his Tail hard to his Tuel, and then trot the Horſe up and down a pretty while, that the Medicine may work ſo much the better; then let his Tail looſe, and ſuffer him to void all that is in his Belly; then bring him into the Stable, and having ſtood a while, give him a little well-clarified Honey to drink; then cover him and keep him warm, and let his Drink for three or four dayes be nothing but ſweet warm Maſhes of Malt and water. Other Farriers uſe to take eleven leaves of Lortel, and ſtamping them in a Mortar, give it the Horſe to drink with one quart of good ſtrong Ale.

Others uſe to take an Ounce of Brimſtone finely beaten to powder, and mixing it with Spurge, to give it the Horſe in a Maſh to drink.

drink. Now for mine own part, I could wiſh you, if the Diſeaſe be not very extremely Violent, only but to rake the Horſes Fundament, and then to Gallop him in his Cloaths till he ſweat, and then give him a handfull or two of clean Rye, and a little Brimſtone mixt with it: for Brimſtone being given with Provender at any time, will ſcoure: but if the Diſeaſe be Raging and Violent, take a quarter of a pound of white Sope, a handfull of Spurge, and a handfull of Hemp-ſeed, bray them very well together, and give it the Horſe to drink with a quart of Ale luke-warm, then let him Faſt, and Exerciſe him more than half an hour after; and be ſure to keep him very warm, and let his Drink be only warm Maſhes. A World of other ſcouring Receits there be: but you ſhall find them more at large in the Chapter of Purgations, Cliſters, and Suppoſitories.

CHAP. LXXVIII.

Of the Lax, or too much Scouring of Horſes.

THe Lax, or open flux of a Horſes body, is a dangerous Diſeaſe, and quickly bringeth a Horſe to great weakneſs and faintneſs; It proceedeth ſomtimes from the abundance of Cholerick Humours, deſcending from the Liver or Gall down into the Guts: ſometimes by drinking over-much cold water immediately after his Provender; ſometimes by ſuddain Travelling upon a full ſtomach before his Meat be digeſted; ſometimes by haſty Running or Gallopping preſently after Water; and ſometimes by licking up a Feather, or eating Hens-dung: there is no Diſeaſe that taketh more ſore upon a Horſe in a ſhort time than this, and yet, ſith Nature her ſelf in this Diſeaſe ſeemeth to be a Phyſician to the Horſes body, I would not wiſh any Farrier to go about too ſuddenly to ſtop it; but if you find that by the continuance, Nature both loſeth her own ſtrength, and the Horſe the good eſtate of his Body, then you ſhall ſeek remedy, and the Cure thereof, according to the opinion of antient Farriers, is this: Take of Bean-flower, and Bole-Armeny, of each a quartern, mix them together in a quart of Red Wine, and give it the Horſe luke-warm to drink, and let him be kept very warm, and have much reſt: alſo let the water that he drinketh be luke-warm, and mixt with Bean flower; yet by no means let him drink above once

in

in four and twenty hours, and then not to his full ſatisfaction. Others take a pint of Red wine, the powder of one Nutmeg, half an Ounce of Cinamon, & as much of the Rind of a Pomegranat, & mixing them together, give it the horſe luke-warm to drink, & let him not drink any other Drink, except it be once in four and twenty hours, half a Horſes draught of warm water mixt with Bean-flower. Others take a half-peny worth of Allom beaten into fine powder, & Bole-Armeny beaten ſmall, and a quart of good Milk, mingle them together till the Milk be all on a Curd, and then give it the Horſe to drink, obſerving the Dyet before rehearſed: But if this Diſeaſe ſhall happen to a ſucking Foal, as commonly it will, and I my ſelf have ſeen many that for want of Experience have periſhed thereby, you ſhall then only give it a pint of ſtrong Verges to drink, and it is a preſent remedy. For the Foal only feeding upon Milk, and that Milk avoiding in as liquid form as it was received, the Verges will curdle it, and ſo make it avoid in a groſſer and more tougher ſubſtance.

CHAP. LXXIX.

Of the Bloody-flix in Horſes.

IT is not to be doubted, but that a Horſe may have the Bloody-Flix, for in my Experience I have ſeen it, beſides the confirmation of all my Maſters, the old Farriers. Now of the Bloody-flix they make divers kinds, for ſometimes the fat of the ſlimy filth which is avoided, is ſprinkled with a little Blood; ſometimes the Excrements is watriſh Blood, like the Water wherein Bloody fleſh hath been waſhed; ſometimes Blood mixed with Melancholy, and ſometimes pure Blood: but all theſe proceeding from one Head, which is the Exulceration of the Gut, they may all very well be helped by one Cure. Yet that you may know whether the Exulceration be in the inward ſmall Guts, or in the outward great Gut, you ſhall obſerve if the Matter and Blood be perfectly mixt together, then it is the inner ſmall Guts; but if they be not mixed, but come out ſeverally, the Blood moſt commonly following the Matter, then it is in the thick outward Guts. Now this Bloody-flix commeth moſt commonly of ſome ſharp Humours, ingendring either by naughty raw Food, or unreaſonable Travel, which Humours being violently driven,

driven, and having passed through many Crooked and Narrow wayes, do cleave to the Guts, and with their heat and sharpness fret them and cause Exulcerations and grievous pain. Sometimes this Bloody-flux may come from extreme Cold, extreme Heat, or extreme Moistness, or through the Violence of some extreme Scouring formerly given, wherein some poysonous simple, as Siomony, Stibium, or such like, may be applied in too great a quantity; or it may come from the weakness of the Liver, or other Members, which serve for Digestion. The sign of this Disease, is only the avoiding Blood with his Excrements, or Blood instead of Excrements: And the Cure, according to the opinion of the antient Farriers, is to take Saffron one Ounce, of Myrrh two Ounces, of Southern-wood three Ounces, of Parsley one Ounce, of Rue three Ounces, of Spittle-wort, and Hyssop, of each two Ounces, of Cassia, which is like Cinamon, one Ounce, let all these be beaten into fine powder, and mingled with Chalk and strong Vinegar wrought into a paste, of which paste make little Cakes, and dry them in the shadow, and being dried dissolve some of them in a pint and a half of Barley-milk, or for want thereof, in that juyce which is called Crimor Prisame, and give it the Horse to Drink: for it not only Cureth the Bloody-flix, but being given with a quart of warm Water, it healeth all grief and pain either in the Belly or Bladder, which commeth for want of staling.

Now for mine own part, I have ever used for the Bloody-flix, but this Medicine only. Take of Red Wine three pints, half a handfull of the Herb called Bursa Pastoris, or Shephards purse, and as much Tanners bark taken out of the Fat and dried, boyl them in the Wine till somewhat more than a pint be consumed, and then straining it very hard, give it the Horse luke-warm to drink, if you do add unto it a little Cinamon it is not amiss. There be other Farriers which use to dissolve in a pint of Red Wine, four Ounces of the conserve of Sows, and give it the Horse to Drink: but either of the other Medicines are fully sufficient.

CHAP.

CHAP. LXXX.

Of the falling down of a Horſes Fundament.

HOrſes ſometimes, by means of the Diſeaſe formerly ſpoken of, which is the Bloody-flix, and ſometimes by a natural weakneſs in the inward Bowels, comming through the Reſolution of the Muſcles, ſerving to draw up the Fundament, will many times have their Fundaments fall down in great length, both to the much pain of the Horſe, and great loathſomeneſs to the beholders. Now the reſolution or falling down, may come partly by over-much ſtraining to Dung when a Horſe is coſtive, and partly by over-great moiſture, as it happens in young Children: for, than a Horſe, no Creature hath a moiſter Body. Now the ſigns are apparent, hanging down of the Fundament, and the Cure is this. Firſt, you ſhall look whether the Fundament be inflamed, that is, whether it be much ſweld or no, if it be not inflamed, then you ſhall annoint it with Oyl of Roſes warmed on a Chafing-diſh and coals, or for want of ſuch Oyl, you ſhall waſh it with warm Red Wine, but if it be inflamed, then you ſhall bath it well with a ſoft ſpunge, dipt in the decoction of Mallows, Camomill, Linſeed, and Fenugreck, and alſo you ſhall annoint it well with Oyl of Camomill and Dill mingled together, to aſſwage the Swelling: and then with a gentle hand, and warm Linnen cloaths, thruſt it fair and ſoftly up into his true place; that done, bathe all the Tuel with Red Wine, wherein hath been ſodden Acatium, Galls, Achorn Cups, and the paring of Quinces: Then throw upon it either the powder of Bole-Armonick, or of Frankincenſs, or Sanguis Draconis, Myrrh, Acatium, or ſuch like, and then give him to drink the dry Pils of Pomegranats beaten to powder, either with Wine or warm water, and be ſure to keep the Horſe very warm, and in his Body neither too ſoluble or looſe, nor too coſtive or hard bound, but of a mean and ſoft temper, for the extremity of either is hurtfull.

CHAP. LXXXI.

Of the Bots, Truncheons, and Worms in a Horſes Body.

MY Maſters, the old antient Farriers, are of opinion, that the Guts of a Horſe do breed three ſorts of Worms, that is to ſay, little ſhort Worms with great red Heads, and long ſmall white Tails, which we call Bots: ſhort and thick Worms all of a bigneſs like a mans Finger, which we call Truncheons, and great long worms as big as a Mans finger, and at the leſt ſix inches in length, which we call by the ſimple name of Worms only.

☞ Now in mine own Experience, and all other Mens, I find a fourth ſort, which is of a middle ſize, and are red and fiery, with thick, ſhort, ſharp Heads, and are called poyſonous red Worms, and are of all other moſt poyſonous and dangerous, for they will aſcend up even to the throat of the Horſe, and will choak and kill him, and ſometimes they will eat through his ſtomach, and ſo confound him.

Now for mine own part, I am of opinion, that the firſt which are Bots, are not bred in the Guts but in the Stomach only, becauſe having cut up many Horſes, I never could yet find any one Bot in the Guts, yet great ſtore of both the other Worms, nor ever cut up the ſtomach of a Horſe, but I found great abundance of Bots, and neither of the other Worms: whence I am confidently opinionated, that Bots are ever bred in the Stomach, and both the other ſorts of Worms in the Guts: Truth it is, that all three do proceed from one ſelf ſame cauſe, which is a Raw, Groſs, and Flegmatick matter, apt to putrifaction, and ingendred by foul and naughty Feeding; and as they proceed from one ſelf cauſe, ſo have they all one Sign, and all one Cure. The ſigns then are, the Horſe will forſake his Meat, and not ſtand upon his Leggs, but wallow and tumble, and beat his Belly with his feet, and ſometimes the pain will be ſo extreme, that he will beat his Head againſt the ground, and truly, the Violence of the Red-worms are wonderfull, for I have ſeen Horſes whoſe ſtomach have been eaten quite through with them, ſo that the Meat which they eat, could not abide in their ſtomach, but fell upon the ſwallowing into the Body, making the Body ſwell like a Tun, and ſo have died with huge torment. Now the Cure according to the antienteſt Farriers is, to take

a quart

a quart of ſweet Milk, of Honey a quartern, and give it him luke-warm; then walk him up and down for the ſpace of an hour after, and ſo let him reſt for that day, with as little Meat and Drink as may be: and by no means ſuffer him to lye down. Then the next day when the Horſe is faſting, take of Rue a handfull, of Savin as much, and being well ſtampt, put thereunto a little Brimſtone, and a little Soot of a Chimney beaten into fine powder, put all theſe things together in a quart of wort, or new Ale, and there let them lye in ſteep the ſpace of an hour or two; then ſtrain it hard through a fair cloath, and give it the Horſe to drinke luke-warm, then Bridle him, and walk him abroad the ſpace of an hour, then ſet him up, and let him ſtand on the Bit two or three hours after, and then give him a little Hay.

Other antient Farriers uſe only to give the Horſe for this Diſeaſe, the warm Guts of a new ſlain Hen or Chicken, being thruſt down the Horſes throat, and ſure it is paſſing good, eſpecially if a little Salt be mixed with them: and this muſt be done three Mornings together faſting, keeping the Horſe from Drinking three or four hours after. Others uſe to take three Ounces of the Roots of Caphers, beaten with half ſo much Vinegar, and put it down the Horſes throat: or elſe a pint of Milk, and a ſpoonfull of Sope given the Horſe to drink: or Brimſtone and Milk given to drink, all very ſoveraign. Others uſe to bind about the Snaffle or bit, mans Dung new made, and ſo Ride him therewith.

Others take of Gentian, Aloes, and Savin, of each half an Ounce, and brew them together with Honey and ſtrong Ale. Others uſe to take only a quart of cold ſweet Wort. Others take Savin and Souther-wort, or elſe Worm-wood, and the tops of Broom ſmall chopt, and mix it with the Horſes Provender. Others uſe to give the Horſe to drink luke-warm, Elder-berries ſodden in Milk. Others uſe to give the Horſe with his Provender, his own Hair chopt ſmall, and mixt with Bay-Salt. Others put hot Embers in Water, and preſently ſtrain it, and give it the Horſe to drink. Others make little round Balls of Honey, and the fine powder of Chalk, and putting them into Ale, make the Horſe ſwallow them. Others uſe to take, eſpecially for the long Worms, a half-penny worth of Fenugreek, of Anniſeeds a quarter of a pound, a half-penny worth of Bay-berries, as much Licoras, and as much Turmerick, and a little quantity of Brimſtone, bear them into powder, put them into a quart

of Ale, and give it the Horſe faſting luke-warm to drink: then Ride him an hour after, then ſet him up warm four and twenty hours after. Others uſe, eſpecially for the Truncheons, to take two ſpoonfull of the powder of Worm wood, finely ſearſt, and put it in a pint of good Malmſey, and after it is brewed a while, let it ſtand and ſoak all night, and then give it the Horſe in the morning faſting, then keep him without meat or drink four hours after. Others uſe to give the Horſe to drink, two ſpoonfull of Worm ſeed, and as much Brimſtone, as powder of Savin, with a quart of Malmſey, Ale, or Beer. Others uſe to take as much black Sope as a Walnut, and as much Brimſtone beaten to powder, and a head or two of Garlick pill'd and bruiſed, and put into a quart of good Ale, and give it the Horſe luke-warm to drink.

This Medicine may alſo be adminiſtred to a Mare great with Foal, if ſhe be troubled with the Bots or other Worms, ſo that the black Sope be left out, for it is a Violent purger, and may kill the Foal in the Mares belly; yet for mine own part, I never give any inward Phyſical Medicines to a Mare great with Foal, but if I find her troubled with Worms, as is eaſie to be done by the ſtinking of her Breath, by the ſlimineſs of her Mouth, and by the greatenſs of the Worm-veins under her Lips, then preſently I do nothing but let her Blood in the Roof or Palate of her Mouth, and make her eat her own Blood; for that I know will both kill wormes, and help moſt inward Maladies. But leaving Mares with Foal, let us return again unto Horſes. There be other Farriers which uſe to take a handfull of new Hens-dung, and a quart of ſtale Ale, and bray them well together; then take a handfull of Bay Salt, and put two Eggs to it, and having mixt them all well together, give it the Horſe to drink. Others uſe to take half a penny-worth of Saffron, and as much Allum, and mix them with a pint of Milk, and give it the Horſe to drink: or elſe give him green Willow, and green Reed to eat. Others uſe (and think it the beſt of all other Medicines) to take the Guts of a young Hen or Pigeon, and roul it in a little black Sope, then in Bay Salt, and ſo force it down the Horſes throat. Others uſe (eſpecially for the Truncheons) to let the Horſe drink Hens dung, Mint, Sage, and Rhue, with Beer or Ale, and to let him blood in the Noſtrils. To conclude, except you ſee the Horſe very much pained, you ſhall need to give him nothing but Rozen and Brimſtone

mixt

mixt together, and blended with his Provender, having care that you ever give it Faſting, and long before the Horſe do Drink.

Laſtly, and as the chief of all Medicines for all manner of Worms, ☜ take as much Precipitate as will lye on a ſilver two-pence, and work it with as much Butter as a French Walnut, then lap it in another piece of Butter as big as a Hens egg, and ſo give it the Horſe faſting in the manner of a Pill. Ride him a little after it, and give him no water that Night, and let him faſt two hours, then feed as at other times.

CHAP. LXXXII.

Of the pain in a Horſes Kidneys.

THere is no queſtion, but the ſame Infirmities which do belong unto the Liver or Spleen of a Horſe, do alſo belong unto the Kidneys, as Inflammations, Obſtructions, Apoſthumes, and Ulcers; and truly, in opening of Horſes, I have found the Kidney ſometimes waſted, which I imputed to ſome matter of inflammation: I have likewiſe found much Gravel, which was only through Obſtructions; and I have ſeen the Kidneys as black as ink, which could not come without an Ulcerous Apoſtumation. But foraſmuch as a Horſe is a Beaſt, who cannot tell the manner of his pain, nor we ſo heedfull as we might have been, to obſerve the Symptom of every grief, we are inforc'd to conclude all under one Name, which is the pain in the Kidneys, gotten either by ſome great ſtrain in Leading, or by ſome great burthen Bearing.

The ſigns are, the Horſe will go Roling and Staggering behind, his Urine will be blackiſh and thick, and his Stones (if he have any) will be ſhrunk up into his Body; if he have not, you ſhall perceive the ſheath of his yard to be drawn backward, and the great Vein which runneth up the ſide of his Thigh, called the Kidney-vein, will ſlack and beat continually. The Cure, according to the opinion of the Antient Farriers, is, firſt to bathe his Back and Loins with Oyl, Wine, and Nitrum, warmed together, and after he is bathed, cover him with warm Cloaths, and let him ſtand in Litter up to the Belly, then give him to drink water wherein hath been ſodden Dill, Fennel, Anniſeeds, Smallage, Parſley, Spikenard, Myrrh, and Caſſia,

Cassia, or as many as you can conveniently get of these simples. The next Morning fasting, give him to drink a quart of Ews milk, or for want thereof, half so much Sallet-Oyl, and Deers suet molten together: or if you can get it, the Root of Daffodill boyled in Wine, and let his Provender be dried Oats; and in his Diet keep him about ten daies, and he will Recover.

CHAP. LXXXIII.

Of the Diseases belonging to the Bladder or Urine, and first of the Strangury.

ACcording to the determinate opinion of all the best and Antientest Horse-Leaches, the Bladder of a Horse is subject to three dangerous Diseases, as first, the Strangury, or Strangullion; the second, the Pain-piss, and the third the Stone, or Pissuppresst. Now for the first, which is the Strangury, or Strangullion, it is, when the Horse is provoked to stale often, and avoideth nothing but a few drops; it commeth without doubt, either by the heat and sharpness of Urine, caused either by great Travail, or by sharp and hot Meats and drinks, or else by the Exulceration of the Bladder, or by means of some Aposthume in the Liver and Kidneys, which Aposthume being broken, the matter resorteth down into the Bladder, and with the sharpness thereof causeth a continual provocation of pissing. The signs are (as I said before) a continual desire to piss, yet avoiding nothing but a few drops, and those with such pain, that he will whisk, wry, and beat his Tail as he pisseth.

The Cure whereof is, to bathe the Horses hinder Loins with warm water, and then take Bread and Bay-berries, and temper them together with May Butter, and give him two or three Balls thereof down his throat three daies together.

Others use, (and I have ever found it the best) to take a quart of new Milk, and a quartern of Sugar, and brewing them well together, give it the Horse to drink six Mornings together, observing to keep the Horse from all sharp meats, as Mow burnt Hay, Bran, and such like.

CHAP.

CHAP. LXXXIIII.

Of the Pain-piſs, or Piſſing with pain.

THis Diſeaſe of Pain-piſs, is, when a Horſe cannot piſs but with great pain and labour, and doth proceed ſometimes from the weakneſs of the Bladder, and the Cold intemperance thereof; and ſometimes through the abundance of Flegm and groſs Humours, ſtopping the neck of the Bladder. The ſigns whereof are, the Horſe will ſtretch himſelf out as though he would ſtale, and thruſt out his yard a little, and with the pain clap his Tail betwixt his thighs to his Belly, and having ſtood ſo a good while, in the end he will ſtale a good quantity.

The Cure whereof, according to the opinion of ſome Farriers, is, to take the juyce of Leeks, ſweet Wine, and Oyl, and mingling them together, to pour it into his right Noſtril, and walk him a little up and down upon it: or elſe to give him to drink Smallage ſeed, or elſe the Roots of wild Fennel ſodden with Wine. Others uſe to put fine ſharp Onions clean pill'd, and a little bruiſed, into his Fundament, and then to chaſe him immediatly upon it, either by Riding him, or Running him in a Mans hand: or elſe to take the ſcraping of the inward parts of the Horſes own Hoofs, beaten into powder, and mingled with Wine, and pour it into his right Noſtril, and then Ride him upon it. Others uſe to lead the Horſe to Sheep coats, or Sheep-pens, where great ſtore of Sheep are wonted, and making the Horſe to ſmell of the Dung, and Piſs of the Sheep, it will provoke him to ſtale preſently. Others uſe to give the Horſe white Dogs dung dried and mingled with Ammoniacum, Salt, and Wine to drink: or elſe Hogs dung only with Wine, or the dregs of Horſe piſs and Wine.

CHAP.

CHAP. LXXXV.

Of the Stone, or Piss-suppreſt in a Horſe.

THe Stone, or Piſs-ſuppreſt in a Horſe, is, when a Horſe would fain ſtale, but cannot at all, and therefore may well be called the ſuppreſſion of the Urine. It proceedeth according to the opinions of my Maſters, the old Farriers, ſometimes from the weakneſs of the Bladder, when the water Conduit is ſtopped with groſs Humours, or with matter deſcending from the Liver, or from ſome Inflammation or hard Knobs growing at the mouth of the Conduit, or for that the ſinews of the Bladder are numbed, ſo as the Bladder is without feeling: or it may come by keeping a Horſe in Long Travail, and not ſuffring him to ſtale; but moſt commonly and oftneſt it commeth from Obſtructions in the Kidneys, where, by the cauſes aforeſaid, a certain Red Gravel being bred, and falling down into the Conduits, by mixture of Flegm and other groſs Humours, is there brought to be a hard Stone, and ſtoppeth the paſſage of the Urine. For the ſigns there needeth no more but this, that he would fain piſs, but cannot.

The Cure, according to the opinion of the moſt antienteſt Farriers, is, firſt to draw out his yard, and bathe it well with white Wine, and pick it, and ſcour it well, leſt it be ſtopped with dirt and filthineſs; then put a little Oyl of Camomill into his yard with a wax Candle, and a bruiſed Clove of Garlick: but if that will not force him to ſtale, then take of Parſley two handfull, of Coriander one handfull, ſtamp them and ſtrain them with a quart of white Wine, & diſſolve therein one Ounce of Cake Sope, and give it luke-warm unto the horſe to drink; and ſee that you keep him as warm as may be, and let him drink no cold water for the ſpace of five or ſix dayes, & when you would have him to ſtale, let it either be on good plenty of ſtraw, or upon the graſs, or in a ſheep coat. Others (and thoſe of the beſt eſteem for Horſe-leach-craft at this day) uſe only to give white Wine, Cake-ſope, and Butter very well mixt together, and let the Horſe Drink it warm.

Others uſe to annoint the Horſes belly firſt with warm water, then when it is dried, to annoint it again with Sallet-Oyl, Hogs-greaſe and

and Tarr mixt together and made warm, and ſo hold a hot Iron againſt his Belly whilſt it is annointing, that the Oyntment may the better enter the Skin: But I hold this Medicine to be much better for the Strangury, or any other pain in the Belly, than for the Stone; yet it is approved good for all. Others uſe to take a pint of white Wine or Ale, and mix it with a little Garlick, and the whites of ten Eggs, and give it the Horſe to drink: or elſe give him the juyce of red Cole-worts mixt with white wine, or the Root of Alexanders bruiſed, and ſodden in Wine to drink, and waſh his yard with Vinegar. Others uſe to take either Worm-wood, Southern-wood, or Galingale, or Mallows, or Pimpernell, ſome of theſe, or any one of thoſe, ſtampt and ſtrained, and give it the Horſe with Ale to drink. Others uſe to take a pint of white Wine, half a pint of Burr-ſeed beaten very ſmall, two Ounces of Parſley ſeed, half a handful of Hyſop, half an Ounce of black Sope, mix them all well together, and warm it and give it the Horſe to drink: or elſe take un ſet Lee's, and ſtamp them ſmall, and Sope, Milk, and Butter, and being mixt together, give it the Horſe to drink. Others uſe to take a Nutmeg, and a handfull of Parſly-ſeed, beat them to powder, then take as much Butter, and mix them all together in a quart of ſtrong Ale, and give it the Horſe lake-warm to drink: or elſe take the Seed of Smallage, Parſly, Saxafrace, the Roots of Philupendula, Cherry-ſtone Kirnels, Grummell ſeeds, and Broom-ſeeds, of each a like quantity, beat them into fine powder, and give it the Horſe with a pint or a quart of white Wine.

Now albeit, theſe Medicines before rehearſed, are daily in practice, and approved very ſoveraign, yet for mine own part, I have found none more ſoveraign than this: Take a quart of ſtrong Ale, and put ☜ it into a pottle pot; then take as many Keen Radiſh Roots, clean waſht, being ſlit through and bruiſed, as will fill up the pot; then ſtopping the pot very cloſe that no Air may come in, let it ſo ſtand four and twenty hours, then ſtrain the Ale and the Roots very hard into a clean Veſſel, and give it the Horſe faſting in the Morning to drink: then Ride him a little up and down, and ſo ſet him up warm, and watch him, and you ſhall ſee him ſtale. This you muſt do divers Mornings together.

CHAP. LXXXVI.

Of a Horſe that piſſeth Blood.

There is nothing more certain, than that a Horſe many times will piſs Blood inſtead of Urine, the cauſe (as the moſt antient Farriers ſuppoſe) proceeding from ſome one of theſe Grounds; either overmuch Labour, or too heavy a Burthen, eſpecially when the Horſe is fat: for by either of them the Horſe may come to break ſome vein in his Body, and then you ſhall ſee clear Blood come out, and no Urine at all; but if the Blood be mixt with Urine, then they ſuppoſe it commeth from the Kidneys, having ſome ragged Stone therein, which through great Travel doth fret the veins of the Kidneys, and make them bleed, through which as the Urine paſſeth, it taketh the Blood away with it alſo; but for my own part, I have not found any greater cauſe for the piſſing of Blood then the taking up of a Horſe from Graſs in the ſtrength of Winter, (as about Chriſtmas) and preſently, without a dayes reſt in the Stable, to thruſt him into a long and weary Journey: from this cauſe I have ſeen many Horſes after two or three dayes Journey, to piſs Blood in moſt grievous manner. The ſigns are needleſs. The Cure according to the opinion of the antient Farriers, is this: Firſt, let the Horſe blood in the palat of the mouth, to convert the Blood the contrary way; then take of Tragagant which hath been ſteeped in white Wine, half an Ounce, of Poppy-ſeed, one dram and one ſcruple, and of Storax as much, and twelve pine apple Kirnels; let all theſe things be beaten and mingled well together, and give the Horſe thereof every Morning the ſpace of ſeven dayes; the quantity of a Wall-nut, infuſed in a quart of ſweet Wine. Other latter Farriers uſe to let the Horſe blood in the Neck, and boyl that Blood with Wheat, and with the powder of dried Pomegranat pills; then ſtrain it, and give it him three or four mornings together to Drink, and let him by no means Travil thereupon: or elſe give him of husked Beans boyled with husks of Acorns beaten ſmall, and mixt together. Others uſe to make him a Drink with the Roots of Daffodil mingled with White-flower, and Summach ſodden long in Water, and ſo to be given to the Horſe with ſweet Wine: or elſe

to

to make him drink of Goats milk and Sallet-Oyl, ſtraining thereunto a little Frumenty: or elſe to give him ſodden Beans and Deers ſuet in Wine, each of theſe are of like force and goodneſs. Now there be others which uſe for this Diſeaſe to take Barley, and ſeeth in the juyce of Gum-folly, and give him the Barly to eat, and the juyce to drink: or elſe take the powder of Licoras and Anniſeeds rouled up in Honey, and make round Balls thereof, and caſt down the Horſes throat two or three of them: Laſtly, and the beſt, take Licoras, Anniſeeds, and Garlick bruiſed together with Sallet-Oyl and Honey, and give it in a quart of new Milk to the Horſe to drink, it is very ſoveragin alſo; and theſe two Medicines laſt rehearſed, are exceeding good alſo for any Cold or Glandrs.

CHAP. LXXXVII.

Of the Colt Evil.

THe Colt Evil by the moſt antient Farriers, eſpecially the Italians, whoſe hot Country affordeth the Beaſts of more Hot and ſtrong Natures than ours doth, is thought to be a continual ſtanding Erection, together with an unnatural Swelling of the Yard, proceeding either from ſome wind, filling the Arteries and hollow Sinews, or Pipes of the Yard, or elſe through the abundance of Seed, provoked by the natural heat of the Horſe; but our Farriers, who have not ſeen that experience, becauſe our Horſes are of a Colder temper, ſay, it is only a Swelling of the ſheath of the Yard, and of that part of the Belly about the Yard, together with the Cod alſo, proceeding from corrupt ſeed, which commeth out of the Yard, and remaining within the ſheath, there putrifieth: And this judgment we find by Experince to be moſt true. Now you ſhall underſtand, that Geldings as well as Horſes are ſubject thereunto, becauſe they want natural Heat to expell ſeed any further.

The ſigns are only the outward Swelling of the Sheath and Cod, & none other: and the beſt Cure is, firſt to waſh the ſheath clean with luke-warm Vinegar, then draw out the yard and waſh it alſo; which done, Ride the Horſe twice every day, that is, Morning and Evening, into ſome deep Running water up to the Belly, toſſing him to and fro, to allay the heat of his Members till the ſwelling be vaniſhed,

and if you swim him now and then, it will not do amiss. Others use to bathe his Cods and Yard with the juyce of House-lick, or with the water wherein Kinholm hath been sod. Now this Colt-evil will sometimes stop the Horses Urine that he cannot piss: then you shall take new Ale, and a little black Sope, and give it the Horse to drink. Others use to wash the Horses Cods and Sheath with Butter and Vinegar made warm. Others use to wash his Yard and Cods with the juyce of Hemlock, or else take Bean-flower, Vinegar, and Bole-Armonick, and mixing them together, lay it Plaisterwise to his Sheath and Cods. Others make him a plaister of wine Lees, House-lick, and Bran mixt together, and laid to his Sheath and Cods: but if the first Receipt will serve, I would not wish you to use any other Medicine.

CHAP. LXXXVIII.

Of the Mattering of the Yard.

THis Disease of the Mattering of the Yard, is seldome seen but amongst the hot Races or Breeds of Horses, as the Jennet, the Barbary, and such like; and it happeneth ever at Covering time, when the Horse and Mare both being too hot, do burn themselves, by which means there issueth forth of the Horses yard much filthy matter. The signs are the falling down of the matter, and a swelling at the end of the Yard, and the Horse can by no means draw up his yard, or cover it within his sheath. The Cure is, to take a pint of white-Wine, and boyl therein a quartern of Roch-allom, and with a large Serringe or squirt, squirt in three or four squirtfull into his yard one after another, and be sure that your squirt go home unto the bottom, that the Liquor or Lotion may scoure the Bloody matter away: this do five or six times every day till the Horse be whole.

CHAP.

CHAP. LXXXIX.

Of the ſhedding of the Seed.

THe ſhedding of the Seed, or the falling away of the Sperm in Horſes, is none other than that which we call in men the Running of the Reins: it commeth, as our old Farriers ſay, either by abundance, and rankneſs of Seed, or by the weakneſs of the Stones, and Seed Veſſels, not able to retain the Seed untill it be digeſted and thickned; but truly for mine own part, I think it commeth oftner (eſpecially amongſt our Engliſh Horſes) by ſome great ſtrain in Leaping, or by teaching a Horſe to Bound, and making him bound above the compaſs of his Natural ſtrength. The ſigns are only the ſhedding of his Seed, which will be White, Thin, and Watriſh. The Cure, according to the antient Experiments, is, firſt to Ride the Horſe into ſome cold water up to the Belly, inſomuch that his Stones may be covered with water; which done, bathe his Fundament with Water and Oyl, then cover him exceeding warm, and give him every day to drink Red Wine, and Hoggs Dung, till the Flux of his ſeed ſtay; but latter Experience hath found this Receipt better. Take of Red Wine a quart, and put therein a little Acatium, the juyce of Plantain, and a little Maſtick, and give it him to drink; and then bathe all his Back with Red Wine, and Oyl of Roſes mixt together; but other Farriers take Venice, Turpentine, and being waſht, beat it well with half ſo much Sugar, and then make round Balls as big as walnuts, and give the Horſe five every Morning till the flux ſtay.

CHAP. XC.

Of the falling down of the Yard.

THe falling down of the Yard, is when a Horſe hath no ſtrength to draw up his Yard within the ſheath, but lets it hang down between his Leggs ill favouredly: it commeth (as our beſt Farriers ſuppoſe) either through the weakneſs of the Member, by means of ſome Reſolution in the Muſcles and Sinews, ſerving the ſame, cauſed by ſome great ſtrain or ſtripe on the Back; or elſe through extreme

Wea-

Wearineſs and Tyring. The ſign is only the apparent hanging dow n of the Member: and the Cure is, (according to ſome opinions) to waſh the Horſes yard in Salt water from the Sea, or for want thereof, with Water and Salt; but if that will not prevail, then prick all the outmoſt skin of his yard with a ſharp Needle, but yet as ſlightly as may be, and not deep: and then waſh all the pricks with ſtrong Vinegar, and this will not only make him draw up his yard again, but alſo if at any time his Fundament chance to fall, this Cure will put it up again. There be other Farriers which for this Diſeaſe will put into the pipe of the Horſes yard, Honey and Salt boyled together, and made Liquid, or elſe a quick flye, or a grain of Frankincenſe, or a Clowe of Garlick clean pill'd and bruiſed, and bathe his Back with Oyl, Wine, and Nitre made warm and mingled together.

But the beſt Cure, according to our Engliſh practice, is, firſt, to waſh all the yard with white-Wine warmed, and then annoint it with Oyl of Roſes and Honey mixt together, and ſo put it up into the ſheath, and with a little Bolſter of Canvaſe keep it from falling down, and dreſs him thus once in four and twenty hours, until he be recovered, and in any Caſe let his Back be kept as warm as is poſſible, both with Cloath and a charge of Plaiſter made of Bole-Armonick, Eggs, Wheat flower, Sanguis Draconis, Turpentine, and Vinegar; or elſe lay next his Back a wet-Sack, or wet Hay, and a dry Cloth over it, and that will keep his Back exceeding warm.

CHAP. XCI.

Of the Diſeaſes incident to Mares, and firſt of the barrenneſs of the Womb.

THe only Diſeaſe incident to the Womb of a Mare, (as far forth as our Farriers are Experienced) is Barrenneſs, which may proceed from divers cauſes, as through the untemperateneſs of the Matrix, being either too hot and fiery, or too cold and moiſt, or too dry; or elſe too ſhort, or too narrow, or having the Neck thereof turned awry, or by means of ſome Obſtruction, or Stopping in the Matrix, or in that the Mare is too fat or too lean, and divers other ſuch like cauſes. Now the Cure thereof, according to the old Farriers, is, to take a good handfull of Leeks, and ſtamp them in morter with four or five ſpoonfuls

fuls of Wine, then put thereunto twelve flyes, called Cantharides, then ſtrain them all together with a ſufficient quantity of water to ſerve the Mare therewith two days together, by pouring the ſame into her Nature with a Cliſter-pipe made for the purpoſe, and at the end of three dayes next following, offer the horſe unto her that ſhould cover her, and after ſhe is covered, waſh her Nature twice together with Cold water.

There be others which uſe to take of Nitrum, of Sparrows Dung, & of Turpentine, of each a like quantity well wrought together, and make a Suppoſitory, and put that into her Nature, and it will cauſe her both to deſire the Horſe, and alſo to conceive. There be ſome of opinion, that it is good to put a Nettle into the Horſes mouth that ſhould cover her. Of all which, let only Experience be your warrant.

CHAP. XCII.

Of the Peſtilent Conſumption in Mares.

THere is a certain Peſtilent Conſumption incident to Mares when they are with Foal, proceeding from cold Flegm, gathered by raw foggy Food in the Winter-ſeaſon, which deſcending from the Kidneys, doth oppreſs the Matrix, and makes the Mare conſume and pine away, ſo that, if ſhe be not holpen, ſhe will want ſtrength to Foal her Foal. The ſigns are, ſuddain Leanneſs, and a drooping of Spirit, with much diſlike of Meat, a continual deſire to be laid. The Cure is, to pour into her Noſtrils three pints of Fiſh brine, called Garume, three or four Mornings together, and if the grief be very great, then take five pints, and it will make her vent all Flegm at her Noſtrils.

CHAP. XCIII.

Of the rage of Love in Mares.

IT is reported by ſome of our Engliſh Farriers, that Mares being proudly and high kept, will at the Spring of the year, when their Blood begins to wax warm, if they chance, when they go to the water,

water, to ſee their own ſhadows therein, that preſently they will fall into an extreme Love therewith, and from that Love into ſuch a hot Rage, that they will forget either to Eat or drink, and never ceaſe Running about the paſture, gazing ſtrangely, and looking oft about and behind them. The Cure of this Folly, is, preſently to lead the Mare to the Water, and there to let her ſee her ſelf as before, and the ſecond ſight will utterly extinguiſh the memory of the firſt, and ſo take away her Folly.

CHAP. XCIV.

Of Mares which caſt their Foals.

THe occaſion why Mares caſt their Foals, that is, to Foal them either before their times, or dead, are very many, as ſtrains, ſtrokes, intemperate Riding, ruſhings, hard Wintrings, or too great Fatneſs, and ſuch like. Now you ſhall underſtand, that this aborſement, or untimely caſting of a Foal, is moſt dangerous to the Life of a Mare: For nature being, as it were, detained from her true and perfect cuſtom, which is the preſervation of Health, cannot chuſe but give way to the contrary, which is Death and Mortality, and the Body and Pores being ſet open to the air, before it be able to defend the Cold, cannot chooſe but be ſuffocated with unwholeſome Vapours. If therefore you have a Mare at any time which doth caſt her Foal, and withall falleth ſick upon the ſame, you ſhall preſently take her into the Houſe, and ſet her up very warm, then give her two ſpoonfull of the powder of Diapente well brewd in a pint of Muskadine, and feed her with ſweet Hay, and warm Maſhes, for at leaſt a week after.

CHAP. XCV.

Of Mares that are hard of Foaling.

IF it happen by any miſchance, or otherwiſe, that the paſſages or other conduits, which lead from the Matrix, be ſo ſtraightned that the Mare cannot Foal, and ſo be in danger of her Life: then it ſhall be good that you help her by holding and ſtopping her Noſtrils with

with your hand in a gentle manner, that her Breath may not have paſſage, and ſhe will Foal with a great deal the more eaſe, and much ſooner; and ſure the pain is nothing, becauſe a Mare alwayes Foaleth ſtanding. Now if at any time when your Mare hath Foaled, ſhe cannot void her Secundine, which is the skin wherein the Foal is wrapped, in that natural manner as ſhe ought, you ſhall then take a good handfull or two of Fennel, and boyl it in water: then take half a pint of that, and another half pint of old Wine, and put thereto a fourth part of Oyl, and mingle them all together over the fire, and being but luke warm, pour it into the Mares Noſtrils, and hold her Noſtrils cloſe with your hand, to keep it in a pretty while after, and no queſtion but ſhe will void her Secundine preſently.

CHAP. XCVI.

Of making a Mare to caſt her Foal.

IF at any time you would have your Mare to caſt her Foal, as having preſent occaſion to uſe her, or in that the Foal is not worthily enough begot, you ſhall take a bottle of new Milk, and two handfuls of Savin chopt and bruiſed, and putting them together, boyl them till one half be conſumed; then ſtrain it very hard, and give it the Mare luke-warm to drink, then preſently Gallop her a good ſpace, then ſet her up, do thus two Mornings, and before the third ſhe will have caſt her Foal. Others uſe with their hand to kill the Foal in the Mares belly, but it is dangerous, and the former Medicine is more ſufficient. And thus much of the infirmities of Mares. Now let us return again to Horſes and Mares in general.

CHAP. XCVII.

Of the Drinking of Horſe-leaches by Horſes.

IF a Horſe at any time drink down Horſe-leaches, they will ſuck his Blood and Kill him. The ſigns are, the Horſe will hang down his head to the ground, and abundance of filthy ſlaver will fall from his mouth, and ſometimes ſome Blood alſo. The Cure is, preſently to give him a pint of Sallet-Oyl to drink, and that will

make them fall away, and kill them. But the beſt is, to give him half an Ounce of Diapente brewed in a pint of good ſtrong Beer or Ale.

CHAP. XCVIII.

Of Swallowing down Hens dung, or any Venemous thing whatſoever.

IF a Horſe chance to ſwallow down any Hens dung with his Hay, it will fret his Guts, and make him to avoid much filthy matter at his Fundament. The Cure whereof, is, to take a pint of Wine, half a pint of Honey, and two ſpoonfulls of Smallage ſeed bruiſed, and mixing them well together, to give it the Horſe to drink, and then to Walk him well upon the ſame that he may empty his Belly. But if the Horſe chance to lick up any other Venemous thing, as Neut, or ſuch lick, which you ſhall know by the inſtant ſwelling of his body, and the trembling of all his members; then the Cure is, firſt to put him into a ſweat, either by Cloaths or Exerciſe; then to let him blood in the Palate of the mouth, and look how much he bleedeth, ſo much let him ſwallow down hot: or elſe give him ſtrong Wine and Salt mixt together: or elſe take the Root, and Leaves, and fruit of Briony, which being burnt to aſhes, give the Horſe a good ſpoonfull thereof, with a pint of ſweet Wine to drink.

☞ Now for mine own part, I have ever uſed to take a pint of Sallet-Oyl, and two ſpoonfull of Sugar-Candy beaten to powder, and as much of the powder Diapente, and brewing them together, give it the Horſe to drink: or for want of Diapente, ſo much of the ſhaving either of Ivory, or an old Stags horn, eſpecially the tips thereof burnt.

CHAP. XCIX.

Of purging Medicines in general, and firſt of the Suppoſitory.

PUrging is ſaid of our moſt antient Farriers, to be an emptying and diſcharging of all and every ſuperfluous humors which diſtemper the body with their evil qualities: For ſuch humors breed evil nutriment, which, when it will not be corrected nor holpen with good

good Diet, alteration, nor the benefit of nature and kindly heat, then muſt it by force either be taken away by Purgation, Cliſter, or Suppoſitory. Now for as much as a Horſe is troubled with many Diſeaſes in the Guts, and that nothing can purge the gut with that gentleneſs which a Suppoſitory doth, I will here firſt begin to ſpeak of Suppoſitories.

Underſtand then, that a Horſe being ſurfeited, and full of evil humours needing to be purged, it is beſt firſt to give him a Suppoſitory, leaſt if you ſhould come to apply a Cliſter, the great Gut being ſtopped with dry, hard, and hot excrements, the Medicine being not able to work beyond it, loſe both labour and vertue; ſo that I make account a Suppoſitory is but onely a preparative to a Gliſter, and but onely to cleanſe and make looſe the great Gut, which commeth to the tuel. The gentle Suppoſitory then, and that which purgeth Flegm in the beſt manner, is, to take a ſquare piece of cake ſope, or white new Caſtle ſope, about five or ſix inches long, and ſhaving it round till it be not above three inches about in the midſt, and a little ſmaller at each end than in the midſt: then annoint it over with Sallet-Oyl, and ſo with your hand thruſt it up more than a full ſpan into his Fundament: then ſuddenly clap his tayl to his tuell, and hold it hard and cloſe more than half an hour, in which ſpace the moſt part of the Suppoſitory will be waſted, then gently take away your hand, and let him void the Suppoſitory at his pleaſure. The next Suppoſitory to this, and which purgeth Choler abundantly, is, to take Savin ſtampt ſmall, Staves acre and ſalt, and boyl them in Honey till it be thick, then take and knead it, and roul it of a pretty thick long roul, as before you were taught for the hard ſope, and miniſter it at his tuell. The next to this, and that which purgeth Melancholy, is, to take a keen Onion, and pilling off the skin, jag it a little croſs-wiſe with your knife, and ſo thruſt it up into the Horſes Fundament. There is, beſides theſe Suppoſitories, one other Suppoſitory which is, to take a quart of Honey, and boyl it on the fire till it come to be thick like a Salve, then powr it forth upon a Table, and knead it like a piece of dough: then when it begins to harden, or grow ſtiff, (as it will do when it begins to cool) then roul it up under your hand, and make it in the form of a Suppoſitory, as is before ſhewed, & adminiſter it in the ſame manner. This Suppoſitory is good to purge the gut of any foul Humour, and therewithall is comfortable to the body.

Now you muſt alſo underſtand, that as theſe Suppoſitories are preparative before Gliſters, ſo they are likewiſe to be uſed ſimply of themſelves, where the ſickneſs of the Horſe carrieth no great danger: For upon every ſlight occaſion, or ſmall drineſs, which is to be diſſolved with the moſt gentle Medicine, to adminiſter a Gliſter, were to bring the Horſes body to ſuch an intemperate looſeneſs, as would prove much worſe than the former contrary drineſs. Therefore I wiſh every carefull Farrier (becauſe the body of a Horſe would not be tampered withall too much by phyſick) firſt, in the caſe of coſtiveneſs, or inflammation of the inward parts, to approve a Suppoſitory: as namely, the firſt preſcribed and naked like a mans fiſt, or elſe like a roul or quantity of Roch-Allome, or elſe four inches of a great tallow Candle or Percher of four in the pound; which if it work effectually, and keep the Horſes body ſoluble, then to proceed no further; but in caſe it do not, but that the offenſive matter ſtill breedeth and encreaſeth, then to adminiſter a Gliſter; and where that faileth to take away the offence, to adminiſter a Purgation. Now by the way, you are to take with you this general rule, and never to fail in the performance, which is, never to adminiſter either Suppoſitory or Gliſter, but firſt immediately before you give it, to Rake your Horſe, which Raking, is in this manner. Firſt, you ſhall annoint all your hand and arm over either with Sallet Oyl, ſweet Butter, or freſh Greaſe, and then thruſt it into the Horſes Fundament, and draw out all the Dung, Flegm, and filthy matter that you can feel, even as high up as the great bag: Which done, then either adminiſter your Suppoſitory or Gliſter, which you pleaſe, at your leiſure; and in any caſe, whilſt the Horſe is thus in Phyſick, keep him exceeding warm.

CHAP. C.

Of Gliſters, and their Uſes.

THe natures and properties of Gliſters are divers, and therefore it is neceſſary that every carefull Farrier learn to know to what end they ſerve, and of what Drugs or Simples they ought to be compounded: For every Gliſter is to be made according to the Diſeaſe. Now of Gliſters, ſome are to eaſe griefs, and to allay the ſharpneſs of the

the Humours; ſome to bind, ſome to looſen, and ſome to purge, and ſome to heal Ulcers. Theſe Gliſters by cleanſing the Guts, refreſh the vital parts, and prepare the way before for every inward and ſtrong Purgation. Therefore, whenſoever a Horſe, through groſneſs of Humours, corruption of Blood, or abundance of Flegm, Choler, or Melancholy, is brought unto that evil habit of body, that of neceſſity he muſt be purged, and that eſpecially his pain is in his Guts and Body, you ſhall then, as before I ſaid (having made a probation of a Suppoſitory) firſt of all adminiſter a Gliſter, leſt by Purging ſuddenly with any Purgation or Potion, you ſtir up a multitude of evil humours, which finding no paſſage downward (becauſe the Guts being ſtopped with Wind and Dregs) do ſtrike upward, and ſo perhaps put the Horſe into much greater danger.

Now for the compoſition of Gliſters, you ſhall underſtand, that they be made of four things; that is, of Decoctions, of Druggs, of Oyls, or ſuch like unctuous matter, as Butter, or ſoft Greaſe, and fourthly of divers Salts, to provoke the vertue Expulſive. A Decoction is the broath of cerain Herbs and Siraples boyled together in water, untill the third part be conſumed. Now ſometimes for want of ſuch Decoctions, you may if you pleaſe, uſe ſome fat Beef-broth, or the broath of a Sheeps head, or ſuch like, or Milk, or Whay, or ſome ſuch like liquor, mingled ſometimes either with Honey, or with Sugar, according to the quality of the Diſeaſe; the Gliſter being either Lenitive, that is to ſay, eaſing of pain: or Glutinative, which is, joyning of things together: or elſe Abſterſive, which is, wiping away, or cleanſing of filthy matter. Now of this Decoction, or Broath, being very clean ſtrained, you ſhall never take above three pints at the moſt, and many times but a quart; into which you ſhall put ſuch Druggs as are needfull, exceeding not at the moſt, above three or four ounces, according as the Simples be more or leſs violent: of the Oyl you ſhall never uſe in a Gliſter above half a pint, and of Salt not above three or foure Drams. You ſhall alſo continually adminiſter your Gliſter luke-warm, either with ſome long Horn, or a large Gliſter-pipe made for the purpoſe, and fixed to the largeſt bladder you can get; and this Gliſter-pipe is of all the beſt, and doth leaſt loſe labour. When you do adminiſter a Gliſter, you ſhall ſet the Horſes hinder parts ſomewhat higher then the foreparts, and then you ſhall put the Gliſter-pipe in at his Tuel into his Funda-

Fundament up to the head, and having the confection within the Bladder, wring it with a very good ſtrength into his body. A gliſter would be adminiſtered to a horſe when he is rather empty than full paunched, whether it be in the fore noon or after-noon. Now for the retaining or holding of the Gliſter in the Horſes body, three quarters of an hour is ſufficient, of what quality ſoever it be. Now you are to note by the way, that as ſoon as the Gliſter is adminiſtred unto the Horſes body, you muſt draw out the Pipe with all the gentleneſs that may be, and ſuddenly clap his tayl to his Tuel, and ſo hold it with your hand, without any moving or ſtirring of the Horſe, till the Medicine hath his full time of working.

Now to come unto particular Gliſters, that you may know which Gliſter it for which purpoſe; the firſt is, take of the pulp of Coloquintida, half an ounce, of Dragantium three quarters of an ounce, of Centuary and of Worm-wood, of each half a handfull, of Caſtoreum a quarter of an ounce, boyl them in three pints of water, then being ſtrained you ſhall diſſolve therein of Gerologundinum three ounces, of Salt three quarters of an Ounce, and of Oyl Olive half a pint, and ſo luke-warm adminiſter it Gliſter-wiſe, as hath been before expreſſed: this Gliſter is exceeding Soveraign for the Peſtilence in Horſes, or for any Fever of what nature ſoever.

The next is, to take the Decoction of Mallows, and to mix therewithall, either freſh Butter, or Sallet Oyl, and ſo luke-warm adminiſter it: this is of all Gliſters the moſt gentleſt, and as the former Gliſter is abſterſive or cleanſing, ſo this is lenitive and a great eaſer of pain; it is moſt Soveraign for a Horſe that is taken, or that hath any contraction or Convulſion, and generally for any Coſtiveneſs in a Horſe whatſoever, proceeding from inward ſurfeit or ſickneſs, as from the ſurfeit by Provender, foundring in the body, and ſuch like. The next is, to take of Salt water, or clean Brine a quart, and diſſolve therein a pretty quantity of Sope, and then luke-warm adminiſter it: this Gliſter is very good for the Cholick, or any other ſickneſs of the Guts or Belly. And thus from theſe three Gliſters you may compound many Gliſters; but in mine opinion, if you uſe no more than them onely, they will be fully ſufficient.

CHAP.

CHAP. CI.

Of Purgations, and their Uſes.

THe Purging of Horſes is ever by one of theſe two wayes, either by Pills, or by Potion: Pills are any ſolid and ſubſtantial ſtuff fixed together in one body, and being made into round balls, are caſt down the Horſes Throat. And a Potion is, when you give the Horſe any liquid Purging matter to drink, whether it be Purging Powders diſſolved in Wine or Ale, or that it be any other liquid ſtuff. Now for Pills, they onely Purge and make clean the Head and Brain, bringing Flegm and other groſs Humours down into the Excrements: And Potions cleanſe the Stomach, Guts, and every other inward Member. Now the Art of the true carefull Farrier is, in chuſing of the Simples, whereof theſe Pills or Potions are to be compounded, and in aptly, or artificially applying the ſame. Firſt then, it is needfull that every good Farrier (before he go about to Purge his Horſe) know with what ill humour a Horſe is oppreſt, as whether it proceed from Choler, Flegm, or Melancholy, and where the humours do moſt abound; and then what Simples are beſt to Purge thoſe humours, and with what property, quality, and temperament they be indued; for ſome Simples are moſt Violent, and next couzens to ſtrong Poyſons, as Scamony, or Coloquintida: ſome again are gentle, and rather nouriſhing than Medicinal, as Manna, Caſſia, Whay, Prunes, and ſuch like: and ſome are neither too violent, nor too gentle, but of a mean, as Rubarb, Agarick, Sene, and Aloes. Now the antient Farriers did uſe to Purge their Horſes with the pulp of Coloquintida, ſometimes with the Roots of wild Cowcumbers, and ſometimes with the Broath of a ſodden Whelp mixt with Nitrum, and ſuch like, but at this day they are not of our practice, and therefore I wiſh him, that for his experience, ſtill to make a tryal of ſtrong Medicines, or know the working of every ſimple, (which is a moſt praiſe worthy Ambition,) firſt to make his proofs upon Jades, whoſe loſs he reſpecteth not, and ſo by that working to adventure on better Horſes.

But to return to my purpoſe, the Farrier who goeth about to Purge a Horſe by Purgation, muſt conſider the nature of the Horſes Diſeaſe,

Diſeaſe, and the ſtrength of the Horſe, and with them joyn the nature, ſtrength, and quantity of the Medicine: he muſt alſo conſider the Climate under which the Horſe is bred, the time of the Diſeaſe, the time of the Year, and the time of the Day. For as the Diſeaſes and the Humours which cauſe the Diſeaſe, are ſundry, ſo they muſt be avoided by ſundry Medicines, ſundry wayes compounded, according as experience from a continual practice ſhall inſtruct you: wherein you are to obſerve and note, that weak, delicate, and tender Horſes are not to be purged with the Violence, which ſtrong, ſtubborn, and ſturdy Horſes are, and therefore in ſuch caſes, the quality and quantity is to be looked unto of every Simple. The Climate is to be reſpected, as whether it be hot or cold; and the time of the Diſeaſe: For ſome Diſeaſes muſt be purged at the beginning, as Fevers, Peſtilence, Yellows, Staggers, and all Violent inward Diſeaſes, and ſome not till the water be throughly digeſted, as Colds, Strangles, and Apoſtumations. Now albeit the ſickneſs proceeds from cold Humours, yet you muſt not adminiſter as hot Simples in Summer as in Winter; nor in the contrary caſe, ſo cold things in Winter as in Summer, whereby you ſee the time and the ſeaſon of the year is to be reſpected. Then touching reſpect of the day, you are to obſerve, that day to be beſt that is moſt temperate, ſith too much heat maketh a Horſe faint, and too much cold doth hinder the Medicine from working. A little regard is to be had in the Wind and Weather; for a moiſt day with a South-Wind, is to be preferred before a North-wind with a dry day. Now the beſt hour of receiving any kind of Potion, is ever in the morning, after he hath faſted from meat and drink all the night before. As ſoon as your Horſe hath received any Pill or Potion, let him be walked or gently Ridden up and down one hour at the leaſt, and then ſet up, and ſuffered to ſtand on the Bit two hours after, well littered and cloathed, and ſtopped; but if you perceive that he beginneth to grow ſick or ill (as moſt commonly Horſes will) then you ſhall ſuffer him to lye down, and as ſoon as his ſickneſs is paſt, you ſhall offer him to drink a Maſh of Malt and water luke-warm: from any other meat keep him faſting till his Medicine have done working.

Now to come to particular receipts and Medicines themſelves, you ſhall eaſily underſtand, that although the antient Farriers do make but

but two kinds, that is to ſay, Pills and Purgations, yet I divide them into three, that is to ſay, Scourings, Pills, and Purgations. Scourings are thoſe wholeſome, natural, and gentle purging Medicines, which ſtirring up no great Flux of humours, do onely keep the body clean from ſuch evils as would ariſe and grow, being every way as wholeſome in health as in ſickneſs, and may moſt properly be termed Preparatives, or preparers of the body to entertain more ſtronger Medicines. To ſpeak then firſt of the moſt gentleſt and natural ſcouring, it is onely Graſs being given to a Horſe only fifteen dayes together, and no more, for after that it fatteth and not ſcoureth. Next unto Graſs is Sorrage, which is only the blades of green Corn, as Wheat, Rye, Barley, and ſuch like, being given ſeven dayes and no more. Next is green Thiſtles, being cut up, and given the Horſe to eat the ſpace of five dayes and to more. And the laſt of this nature is the Maſh, made in this manner: take a peck of ground Malt, and put it into a Pail, then take a Gallon and a half of Water boyling hot from the fire, and put it into the Malt, then with a ſtaff, maſh and ſtir them together at leaſt half an hour, till taſting the Water you feel it as ſweet as Honey, then being lukewarm, give it the Horſe to drink. All theſe ſcourings do only but cleanſe the Guts, and cool the Body, adding comforts to the ſpirits, and ingendring ſtrength, only the Maſh is to be uſed after labour, or inſtead of drink in the time of any great ſickneſs. Scourings of a little ſtronger nature are theſe: firſt, when you give your Horſe any Provender, to mix with half a peck of Oats, a handfull or two of clean dreſt Hemp-ſeed: or elſe to take a good quantity of Box-Tree Leaves, and put them into a Pewter diſh, then ſet them before the fire, and let them dry leaſurely till they be ſo hard that you may cruſh them into powder, then take as much of the powder of Brimſtone as there is powder of Box, and mix them together, and amongſt half a Peck of Oats mix a handfull of this powder, and give it the Horſe to eat; both theſe Scourings are to be uſed after labour, eſpecially when the Horſe hath ſweat much.

These two Scourings work upon no matter, but what nature is willing to expel; they Purge the Stomach, Head, and Intrails, they kill all kind of Worms, and dry up Flegm. Scourings of the ſtrongeſt nature are to take of Salletoyl half a pint, and of new Milk from the Cow a pint, brew it together, and give it the Horſe luke-

warm: or elſe take a pint of Muſkadine, and half a pint of Sallet Oyl, and being mixt together, give it the Horſe to drink: Or elſe half a pint of Oyl, and a pint of Sack mixt together, and given the Horſe to drink luke-warm.

Theſe ſcouringscleanſe the Head, Body, and Guts of all Flegm or molten Greaſe, which any violent labour hath diſſolved: they are exceeding good for any manner of cold, or ſtoppings in the Wind-pipes, and if you add unto them good ſtore of Sugar-Candy, it will preſerve and keep the Horſe from ſickneſs. Now for Pills, you ſhall very plainly underſtand, that the firſt and eaſieſt are theſe, either to take twenty Cloves of Garlick clean pild and bruiſed, then a quarter of a pound of ſweet Butter, and ſo roul up the Garlick in four or five balls or Pellets, as big as two Walnuts a piece; and ſo taking out the Horſes tongue, thruſt them down his Throat one after another: or elſe to take a quarter of a pound of Butter, and as much red Saunders; beat them well together in a morter, and then make it into four or five balls, and put them down the horſes Throat. Pills of ſome-what ſtrong nature, are to take a handfull of Roſemary leaves, and chopping them ſmall, mix them with a quarrer of a pound of ſweet Butter, and then making it into round balls, give them unto the Horſe: Or elſe take round pieces of raw Melons, and thruſt them down the Horſes Throat: Or elſe to take five Green Figs, and put them down the Horſes Throat.

☞ The ſtrongeſt Pill is this: take of Lard two pound, laid in water two hours, then take nothing but a quarter of a pound of the clean fat thereof, and ſtamp it in a Mortar, and thereto put of Liquoriſh, of Anniſeeds, and of Fenugreek, of each beaten into powder one Ounce and a half, of Aloes likewiſe in powder one Ounce, of Agarick half an ounce, knead all theſe together like a Paſte, and make thereof four or five balls, and give it the Horſe. The laſt recited Pill is ſingular good for the dry Caugh, and all the other Pills are moſt Soveraign for all infirmities of the head, which grow either from Flegm, Melancholy, or any other cold or moiſt cauſe whatſoever. Now for Purgations, which are the ſtrongeſt cleanſers of the body, they be theſe: take two Ounces of Myrrh, and mix it with a pint of Wine, and it will purge all ſickneſs which proceedeth of Choler: the ſigns whereof are, his belly will ſwell, be very hot, and he can neither dung nor break wind. Take a pint of Wine and Beat a raw Egg therein,

therein, and add to it a quarter of an ounce of Brimſtone, and half an Ounce of Myrrh beaten to powder, and give it the Horſe luke-warm, and it will purge all inward Diſeaſes proceeding of Me ancholy. Two ſpoonfuls of the powder Diapente, given with half a pint of Swines greaſe, purgeth all Diſeaſes proceeding of Flegm. Take as much black Sope as a Walnut, a quart of new milk, and a quarter of a pint of Sallet-Oyl, and give it the Horſe luke-warm, and it purgeth all cold infirmities, but maketh the Horſe exceeding ſick. Take the Guts of a Tench or Barbel, being cut into little ſmall pieces, and give it the Horſe in a quart of white Wine, and it will purge the Horſe from all Coſtiveneſs or pain in the Guts. Rye being boyled, ſo that it burſt not, then dried again, and given the Horſe inſtead of Provender, purgeth and killeth all manner of Worms. Take of Radiſh roots one ounce, of the root called Panax, and of Scamony, of each half an ounce, beat all theſe together, and boyl them in a quart of Honey, then give the Horſe two ſpoonfuls of this in a quart of Ale luke-warm to Drink, and it will purge all groſs Humors, from whence proceedeth either the falling evil, or any Diſeaſe of the brain.

Take and boyl Elicampane roots in milk till they be ſoft, that you may bruiſe them to pap, and then adding thereto half a pint of Sallet-Oyl, give it the Horſe to drink luke-warm, and this will purge and cleanſe any kind of Glaunders. Take of ſweet Sope a quarter of a pound, and make it into three balls, and give them to the horſe, and it will purge, all evil humours whatſoever, both violently, and moſt abundantly.

CHAP. CII.

A moſt excellent rare ſcouring for any horſe, ſick or ſound, and eſpecially for running or hunting horſes, whoſe greaſe muſt neceſſarily be molten.

FOr aſmuch as the greateſt Art which doth belong to the keeper either of running or hunting Horſes, conſiſteth in the taking away from the Horſe his groſs glut and fat, which not only offendeth the vital parts, but alſo ſtoppeth up the conduits and Veſſels of wind, and that it cannot any way be done, but by ſcouring after exerciſe; you ſhall underſtand, that the beſt of all ſcourings, which hath hitherto been approved, is this, which I will here ſet down:

You ſhall take twenty Raiſins of the Sun, and pick out the ſtones, and ten figgs, which you ſhall ſlit in the midſt round-wiſe, boyl them in a pottle of running water till the water be conſumed, and thickned: then take the powder of Licoras, Anniſeeds, and Sugar-candy finely ſearſt, and mix it with the Raiſins and Figgs, ſtamping and working them together till it be brought to a ſtiff paſte, then making round balls thereof of a pretty bigneſs, roul and cover them all over with ſweet Butter, and give ſo many of them unto the horſe as you ſhall think meet for his ſtrength; provided that the day before, you muſt give your Horſe ſuch exerciſe as will be ſure to melt his greaſe, and that immediately before you give him this Medicine, you alſo warm him thoughly, that the humors being again ſtirred up, the Medicine may work more effectually.

CHAP. CIII.

Of Neezing or Fumigation, and the Uſe thereof.

THere is yet alſo another manner of Purging of a Horſe, and eſpecially his Head, and that is, by forcing him to neeze or ſnort violently at his Noſe, caſting forth all filthy and groſs matter, which otherwiſe will offend and oppreſs the brain; and this neezing is wrought ſometimes by fumes or ſmoaks, ſometimes by Powders, and ſometimes by Oyls, the ſharpneſs of which, tickling the tender and quick parts of the Head, do compell this ſnorting and neezing: Surely there is no Purgation more wholeſome, for as it cleanſeth and ſeparateth groſs matter, ſo it comforteth and maketh ſtrong the Brain. Now to come unto particular medicines which do procure this neezing, they be theſe: ſquirt into a Horſes Noſtrils either Mans Urine which is old, or the Urine of an Ox which hath had much reſt, and it will force a Horſe to neeze, and is moſt wholeſome for any Quotidian Fever. Take the powder of Gumdragant, Euſens, and Damask Roſes well mixt together, and blow it with a Quill into the Horſes Noſtrils, and it is good either againſt the Fever in Summer or Winter. Take warm Vinegar and ſquirt it into his Noſtrils, and it is comfortable againſt the Fever which cometh by raw Digeſtion.

Take Garlick ſtalks a handfull, being broke into little pieces, and a good quantity of Frankincenſe, and being put upon a Chafing-diſh

diſh and Coals, hold the Chafing-diſh under the Horſes Noſtrils, ſo that the fume may aſcend up into his head: and this is moſt excellent againſt the Head-ach. Take feathers and Brimſtone, and burn them on a Chafing-diſh and Coals under the Horſes Noſe: or blow Pepper and Peridtre beaten to Powder up into his Noſtrils, either of both theſe are moſt excellent againſt the ſleeping evil. Take the powder of Mother-wort, and blow it up into a Horſes Noſtrils, and it is good againſt the falling evil. Take two Gooſe feathers anoynted over with Oyl de Bay, and thruſt them up and down in the Horſes Noſtrils: or elſe take Sage, Penyrial, and Whear, Long ſodden together, and put into a Bag as hot as may be, which Bag would be ſo cloſe faſtned to the Horſes head, that all the ſmoak and ſavour thereof may aſcend up into his Noſtrils: Or take a Clout anoynted with Sope or Oyl de Bay, and rub it up and down his Noſtrils as high as may be. Any of all theſe, or all theſe together are moſt excellent againſt any cold, poze, or other obſtructions in the head. Take Orpiment and Sulphur, and burn them on the Coals and hold it under the Horſes Noſe: or take Oyl de Bay, Euforbium and white Ellebore, and anointing two feathers therewith, thruſt them up into the Horſes Noſtrils: both theſe are good againſt the Glanders.

Take of the ſtalks of Briony, or wild Vine, two handfulls, and bruiſe them betwixt two ſtones, and being ſo bruiſed, put them into a linnen bag, and faſten the Bag ſo to the Horſes Head, that the ſent may go up into his Noſtrils without touching the herb with his mouth: and this is excellent againſt the mourning of the Chine, or any inward cough. Take of Roſemary, of Nard, and of Sage, dried and beaten into fine Powder, of each a like weight, and with a Quil blow them up into the horſes Noſtrils: or take the powder of white Pepper, or of Salt Niter, or of Iris Illirica, or black Eleboris, and blow them with a Quil up into the Horſes Noſtrils: or take Linnen chopt, dipt in the Dregs of Oyl, and ſetting it on fire, then ſuddenly put it out again, and let the ſmoak aſcend up into the Horſes Noſtrils: or ſquirt into his Noſtrils Ariſtolochia, mixt with Wine, or Salt Niter mixt with water, or Salt and Roch Allom mixt with Wine: or take ground Ivy beaten ſmall, and thruſt up into his Noſe: or Bayberries beaten ſmall, and burnt on the Coals under the Horſes Noſe: or a Coal of fire put into a lump of wet Hay, making a ſmothering ſmoak, and

and held under the Horſes Noſe. Any of theſe are moſt excellent againſt any Diſeaſe of the head, eſpecially Staggers, Colds, Glaunders, Strangle, and ſuch like.

☞ Yet all theſe have their ſeveral imperfections: the beſt Fumes then of all others whatſoever, is, to take the beſt Olibanum, Storax, and Benjamine, and bruiſing them greſly together, burn them under the Horſes Noſe.

CHAP. CIV.

Of Frictions and Bathes, and of their ſeveral Uſes.

FRictions or Bathes, are a certain rubbing, annointing, or bathing of a Horſes Body all over, eſpecially againſt the hair, becauſe the Medicine may ſink in ſo much the better, with comfortable and Soveragin Unguents, whoſe vertues do looſen the skin, chear up the inward ſpirits, and ſpread a lively heat and feeling over the whole body: And of Frictions, both according to the opinion of the old Farriers and alſo of the beſt of this preſent age, theſe are the moſt Soveraign. Take of Damask Roſes one pound, of old Oyl a pint, of ſtrong Vinegar a pint and an half, of Mint and Rue, beaten into powder, of each one ounce and a half, together with one old dry Nut, beat them, and mingle them well together: Then being ſtrained and made luke-warm, if it be in the Summer time, and that the Sun ſhine hot, take the Horſe abroad: But if otherwiſe, keep him in the Stable, and heating a bar of Iron exceeding hot, hold it over, and on each ſide the Horſe, and with the Oyntment rub and chafe the Horſe all over againſt the hair, untill the horſe begin to ſweat; then Cloath the Horſe very warm, and let him ſtand. This Friction is excellent againſt all Winter Fevers, or any inward ſickneſs that commeth of Cold. Take of black Elleborus two or three handfulls, and boyl it in a ſufficient quantity of ſtrong Vinegar, and with that rub and chafe all the Horſes Head and Body quite over once or twice a day, and it is moſt excellent againſt Frenzie, Madneſs, or any Dryneſs, or Scalineſs of the skin.

☞ Take Oyl de Bay, or Dialthea, and anoynt all the Horſes Body all over therewith, holding a Pan of Coals, or a hot bar of Iron neer the Oyntment, to make it ſink in; or elſe make him a Bathe of Running

Running water, wherein is boyled Rue, Wormwood, Sage, Juniper, Bay-leaves, and Hyſop, and bathe all his body therewith: Either of theſe are moſt Soveraign for the mourning of the Chine, or any Diſeaſe of the Liver, Lungs, or Spleen. Take Wine and Oyl, and having mixt them together, chafe, and rub the Horſes body therewith, and it is moſt Soveraign for any inward ſickneſs, eſpecially the Liver. To bathe a Horſe in Salt water is very wholeſome, both for the Horſes skin, and alſo for any Diſeaſe in the ſtomach.

Laſtly, take of Mallows, of Sage, of each two or three handfulls, and a Roſe-cake, boyl them together in water, then being boyled till the water be all conſumed, add a good quantity of Butter, or Sallet Oyl, and mixing them together, bathe all the Horſes four Legs therewith, and all the parts of his Body alſo: and there is nothing more Soveraign for a Horſe that hath been tyred or over travelled. To let blood, and with that Blood, and Oyl, and Vinegar, preſently to anoynt his Body, helps moſt ſorts of imfirmities.

CHAP. CV.

General Drenches or Medicines for all the inward Diſeaſes or ſurfeits in Horſes.

THere is no Medicine more Soverain for all Diſeaſes which breed in a Horſes body, then to take half an ounce of the Powder called Diapente, and brew it either with a pint of Sack, if it be for Colds, or Muskadine, if it be for heart ſickneſs, and ſo give it the horſe to drink faſting in the morning: and do this at leaſt three mornings together, eſpecially when the horſe beginneth firſt to droop. The next to this, is, to take of Selladine two handfulls, both Root and Leaves, chop them and bruiſe them: then take of Rue as much, of red Sage and Mint as much, and of Aloes half an ounce: boyl theſe in a Pottle of Beer or Ale till the one half be conſumed, and then give it the Horſe luke-warm to drink.

Take four ounces of Diapente, and mix it with four ounces of clarified Honey, and keep it in a cloſe Glaſs, and give half an ounce thereof with a pint of ſweet Wine to the horſe to drink, and it is an excellent Drench. Take of Liquoriſh an ounce, of Anniſeeds, Cumin-

ſeeds,

ſeeds, Elicampane Roots, of each half an ounce, of Turmeric and Bayes, of each a quarter of an ounce, of Long Pepper and Fenugreek, of each two drams, beat theſe ſmall and ſearce them, and put five ſpoonfuls thereof into a quart of Ale warmed, with a little Butter or Oyl, and it is very Soverain for any Diſeaſe coming of cold cauſes. Take a quart of good Ale or Wine, a raw Egg beaten and mingled with twelve Scruples of quick Sulphur, and four Scruples of Myrrh made into powder, and give it the horſe to drink, it is a good Drench. The powder of Brimſtone mixt with ſweet Wine, is a good Drench alſo. The Root of the Sea-Onion, the Roots of Popler, called the Greek Rhammos, mingled with common Salt, given in water, keepeth the Horſe Long in health. Take fine powder of Fenugreek, and bruiſe it, ſeeth it in water till it wax thick, add a pound of ſweet Butter, an ounce of Linſeed Oyl, and as much of the Oyl of Nuts; mingle them well together, and give it the horſe in three or four dayes to drink, by a pretty quantity at a time. Selladine ſimply of it ſelf, or Rue ſimply of it ſelf, boyled in Beer or Ale, and as much Brimſtone as a Wall-nut, is an excellent Drench for any long taken ſurfeit. Garlick and Houſleek beaten together in a Mortar, and then boyled in Beer or Ale from a Pottle to a Quart, then mixt with Liquoriſh, Anniſeeds, and Sugar-Candy, and a pretty quantity of Sallet Oyl, is an excellent Drench for any inward ſickneſs which doth proceed from hot cauſes, as is the Frenzie, the Anticor, and ſuch like. And thus much of general Drenches, and their uſes.

CHAP. CVI.

How to make the powder called Diapente.

THis word Diapente is as much as to ſay, Compoſition of five Simples: for the receipt is thus compounded. Take of *Gentian*, of Ariſtolochia, of Bayberries, of Myrrh, and of the ſhavings of Ivory, of each a like quantity, beat them into very fine Powder, and then ſearce it. This Powder is praiſed to be a Soverain Preſervative or Medicine againſt all inward Diſeaſes: and therefore I would wiſh every Farrier, and all ſuch as are the Maſters of good Horſes never to be without it.

CHAP.

CHAP. CVII.

A moſt famous Receipt, which is both a ſingular Drench and ſingular Oyntment, called of the Italians Acc pum.

TAke of Euforbium half an ounce, of Caſtoreum one ounce, of Adraces half a quarter of a pound, Bdellium half an ounce, and half a quarter, of Pepper a quarter of a pound, Fox Greaſe half an ounce, Opoponax one ounce, Lacerpitium three quarters of an ounce, Amoniacum half a quarter of a pound, Pidgeons Dung as much, Galbanum half an ounce, Nitrum one ounce one quarter, Spuma Nitri three quarters of an ounce, Ladanum a full quarter of a pound, Perethrum, and Bay-berries, of each three q arters of an ounce, Cardadum two ounces, Seed of Rue half a quarter of a pound, Seed of Agnus Caſtus one Ounce, Parſley half an ounce, dried Roots of Ireos, or Flower-de-Luce, one ounce one quarter, Hyſop and Carpobalſamum a quarters of a pound, Oyl of Flower-de-Luce a quarter of a pound, and half a quarter, Oyl de Bay as much, Oyl of Spicknard three quarters of a pound, Oleum Cyprinum three quarters of a pound, and half a quarter, the oldeſt Oyl Olive one pound and a half, Pitch a quarter of a pound and two ounces, Turpentine a quarter of a pound, melt every one of theſe that will melt, ſeverally by themſelves, and then mingle them together with the reſt of the Simples beaten into fine Powder: and after that they have been a little boyled on the fire, take it off, and ſtrain it into a fair Veſſel, and whenſoever you will give your Horſe any thereof, give it him with Wine, or four or five ſpoonfulls with a pint of Sack or Muskadine: and if with long keeping it waxeth any thing ſtiff or hard, then ſoften it with the Oyl of Cipreſs, ſo that it may be good and thick.

This Confection is both a Medicine and an Oyntment, if you put it in the Horſes Noſtrils, it will draw out all noyſome humours, and diſcharge his head of all grief: if you anoynt his body therewith, it healeth all Convulſions, Colds, and Drineſs, or Withering of the Body; and if you bathe his Limbs therewith, it driveth away all wearineſs and tiring; and if you give it him with wine to drink, it cureth all kind of inward Maladies.

CHAP. CVIII.

How to make the Oyl of Oats.

TAke of Milk two Gallons, and warming it on the fire, put thereto a quarter of a pound of burnt Allom, which will make it run of Curds, then take out the Curd and cast it away; then strain the Whay through a coarse Cloath in a clean Vessel: then take a quarter of a Peck of clean husked Oats that were never dried, and put them in the Whay, and set them on the fire till the Oats burst, and be soft; then take them off, and put them into a Cullender that is full of holes, so that the Whay may go gently from them without any pressing (for you must keep the Oats as moist as may be:) this done, put the Oats in a frying Pan, and set them over the fire, stirring them continually, till you see the Vapour or smoak of them not ascend upwards, but as it were run about the Pan, then suddenly take them off, and putting them into a press, press them most exceedingly, and look what commeth from them, is only the Oyl of them, which you must save in a close glass. Now there are other more artificial and curious wayes to distill and extract this Oyl, but this of all other is the most easiest and surest for every mean capacity. This Oyl of Oats is of all Medicines and Simples whatsoever, the most excellent and Soverain for a Horses Body, as being extracted from the most natural, wholesom, and best food which doth belong unto a Horses Body. This Oyl being given by four or five spoonfulls at a time in a pint of sweet Wine, or a quart of strong Ale, and some of the whay powred into the horses Nostrils, doth Cure the Glaunders before all other Medicines. It is also (given in the same manner) the best of all Purgations; for is purgeth away all those Venemous and filthy Humours, which feedeth the most incurable Farcy whatsoever. And for mine own part, as long as I can conveniently come by this Oyl of Oats, so long will I never in any Medicine whatsoever, use any Oyl or Unctuous matter than it only: I having found by experience, that it is the Soverain of all Simples of that kind, whatsoever they be.

CHAP.

CHAP. CIX.

Certain brief Obſervations to be obſerved at home and abroad, whilſt the Horſe is in health.

THeſe Obſervations now following, are gathered from the moſt exact Principles, and unfallible grounds of all the beſt and ſureſt approved Horſ-men, either of this Kingdom, or of any other Nation within Chriſtendom.

Firſt then, for the general feeding of your Horſe when he is in health, you ſhall feed him with Straw, Hay, Oats, fine little Wheat, Beans, Barley, Bread made of Beans, Peaſe, or Fitches, or any other Meat that ſwels not in the Horſes body,

It is the opinion of *Camerarius*, firſt to give Provender, then Hay, and laſtly water; but our Engliſh cuſtom is, firſt Hay, then water, and laſtly Provender.

In your travel feed your Horſe betimes for all night, that thereby the Horſe may ſooner take his reſt.

The quantity of Provender which you ſhall give your Horſe at one time, ſhall be as much as you can hold in the palm of both your hands at ſix times, or three pints by meaſure.

Horſe bread which is made of clean Beans, clean Peaſe, or clean Fitches, feedeth exceedingly.

Let your Horſes Meat and Drink be exceeding ſweet and clean, yet his Water by no means extreme cold running water from the Rock; for it pierceth too much.

To rub your Horſes mouth with Salt and Wine, will make him both eat and drink with a much better appetite.

Let your Horſe neither eat when he is hot, nor drink when he is hot, neither preſently after his travel.

Labour your horſe moderately, when the weather is either extreme hot, or extreme cold, that ſo you may avoid extreme heats, or ſudden colds.

Travel not your Horſe too late, that your own eye may ſee him well dried, and well fed before you take your own reſt.

Never take your Saddle from your Horſes back ſuddenly.

Lend not your Horſe, leſt your ſelf walk on foot.

Let your Horse lye clean and dry, keep your Stable sweet, let no swine lye neer it, nor let any pullen come within it.

Let your Horse be ever tied with two Reins.

Let the light of your Stable be ever towards South and North, yet so as the North Windows may in the Winter be shut close at pleasure, and opened in the Summer to give fresh air.

Ride your Horse oft a little on stony wayes, that he may the better feel his feet, and harden his Hoofs.

Have ever near your Stable some close plain Green, that your horse being let loose, he may oft tumble himself thereon.

Let your Horses bed be of soft sweet Straw, somewhat above his knees, of which, Wheat straw is the best: for though Barley-straw be the softest, yet a Horse will covet to eat it, and it is unwholesom, and Wheat-straw is not unwholesom to eat, yet it is hard to lye upon: as for Oat-straw it is the best in the Superlative, for it is both wholesom to eat, and soft to lie upon.

Curry or dress your Horse twice a day, that is, before water, and when he is curried, rub him with your hand, and with a Rubber; his head would be rubbed with a Wet-cloath, and his Cods made clean with a Dry-cloath: his Fore-top, his Main, and his Tail, would be often wet with a wet Main-comb, and ever where the horses hair is thinnest, there curry the gentlest.

Let the plaunchers of your stable lye even, and Level, that your Horse may stand at his ease, and not prove lame by too much oppressing his hinder parts.

Let not any Mud-wall be within your horses reach, for he will naturally covet to eat it, and nothing is more unwholesom.

Give your Horse plenty of Garbage (which is chopt Wheat-straw) both with his Provender, and without.

Let your Hay bottles be very little, and tied very hard: for so your Horse shall eat with the best stomach, and make least waste.

To sprinkle water upon your Hay, is most wholsom, and to sprinkle Fenugreek upon your Provender, is as Soverain: the first is good for the Wind, the latter for Worms.

Give your Horse daily exercise, for that gets the best stomach to his meat.

Purge your Horse once a year with Grass, or with green blades of Corn, called Forrage, for fifteen dayes together; yet before you purge

purge him, in any caſe let him blood; and whilſt he is in Purging, by no means let him have any Provender.

A Horſe after travel hath ever more blood than any beaſt whatſoever.

Green Graſs or Forrage cleanſeth the blood, encreaſeth ſtrength, healeth Diſeaſes, avoideth Melancholy, helpeth the Horſes growth, and maketh the skin ſmooth: whilſt the Horſe is at ſoyl, by no means let him take cold.

The Northern man watereth two hours before he rideth at the leaſt, then lets the Horſe eat a little Hay, then gives Provender, but not much, and bridleth the horſe up a quarter of an hour before he rideth: At night he watereth two miles before he taketh his Lodging, then rideth eaſily; he neither walketh his horſe, nor ſtuffeth him, nor looſeth any Girt, but only rubbeth him very clean, and ſo lets him bite upon his Bridle half an hour after, with good ſtore of of Litter under him; then he gives the Horſe Hay, and after Provender, before he goeth to water again, (yet but a little) then ſeeth the horſe throughly well dreſſed and rubbed, well Littered, and moſt ſufficiently meated.

There be others which walk after labour, then rub well, Littereth and unbridleth: both which be good, ſo that the one have not too much walking, nor the other too cold a Stable. But howſoever, ſtuff not your Horſe backwards, but betwixt his forelegs, and formoſt girt: for backward ſtuffing is periſous, leſt drawing his yard when he would ſtale, he draw back in his ſheath any of the Litter that ſtop him. The Northern man's uſe agreeth with the French principles, which ſaith: uſe no other walking than your ſelf on your horſ-back, by riding him gently till you come at your Inn, and ſo make him cold, then ſhake litter under him, rub his Leggs, his Belly, and every part of his body well, till he be dry, then unbridle him, rub his head well, and give him Hay; ſlack no Girt till it be night, that the Windows be ſhut; ſuffer the Horſe to drink but a little at once, to avoid ſudden cooling of the Stomach, or driving the horſe into a ſhaking Fever: At night rub and curry well, and feed according to the Horſes ſtomach.

Other good Farriers ride gently till the Horſes ſinews be chafed, and never water in travel till the horſe have ſtaled, and forbear to travel him faſt before he hath drunk, that he may not drink in his great

great heat, and they hold the ſtanding water the beſt; after water for a Mile they ride ſoftly till his water be warmed in his Belly, and before they come to their Inn they do not water, nor of an hour after they have unbridled: then they Cloath well, and give Provender, having a care that their horſes ſtand not in the Wind, and that they have been rubbed dry and clean. Now all theſe principles are exceeding good, yet I would wiſh every traveller to learn how his horſe hath been uſed, and that cuſtom (if it be not too much againſt reaſon) ſtill to follow.

If you come late to your Inn, and that your journey be great and earneſt, ſo that your Horſe will not eat till he have drunk, and yet is hot notwithſtanding, then let his drink be Milk given in the dark, leſt the whitneſs make him refuſe it: this is both Cordial and pleaſant: if you cannot get Milk enough, then mingle Milk with water luke-warm, for no drink would be given a horſe hotter.

If your Horſe either by labour or any ſurfeits be brought low, lean, and weak, you ſhall give him Mares Milk to drink many dayes together, and it will make him ſtrong.

It is not good to waſh your Horſe, eſpecially if he be either hot or very fat: otherwiſe you may waſh his Leggs above his knees, ſo that in no caſe you waſh his Belly, and that you ride him a good round pace after his waſhing, then by no means walk him, but ſet him up and dreſs him: The purer the water is wherein you waſh your Horſe, the more wholeſome it is, ſo that it be not too extreme cold.

The beſt hours to water your Horſe in, (when he lives at reſt) is betwixt ſeven and eight in the morning, and four or five in the evening.

When you travel, at every ſteep Hill light, both to refreſh your Horſe and your ſelf.

Let a fat or hot Horſe have his water at four times, and not ſo much as he will drink at once; give him Provender twice at night, and but once in the morning: let his Cloath neither be too hot, nor with Straw too much ſtuffed: when he eateth good Hay, let him have leſs Provender than when he eateth Straw: give his Meat by little at once to avoid glutting of him, and let him ſtand two hours every day without meat.

Rubbing much, hard, and well, doth profit, preſerve, and doth keep

great heat, and they hold the ſtanding water the beſt; after water for a Mile they ride ſoftly till his water be warmed in his Belly, and before they come to their Inn they do not water, nor of an hour after they have unbridled: then they Cloath well, and give Provender, having a care that their horſes ſtand not in the Wind, and that they have been rubbed dry and clean. Now all theſe principles are exceeding good, yet I would wiſh every traveller to learn how his horſe hath been uſed, and that cuſtom (if it be not too much againſt reaſon) ſtill to follow.

If you come late to your Inn, and that your journey be great and earneſt, ſo that your Horſe will not eat till he have drunk, and yet is hot notwithſtanding, then let his drink be Milk given in the dark, leſt the whiteneſs make him refuſe it: this is both Cordial and pleaſant: if you cannot get Milk enough, then mingle Milk with water luke-warm, for no drink would be given a horſe hotter.

If your Horſe either by labour or any ſurfeits be brought low, lean, and weak, you ſhall give him Mares Milk to drink many dayes together, and it will make him ſtrong.

It is not good to waſh your Horſe, eſpecially if he be either hot or very fat: otherwiſe you may waſh his Leggs above his knees, ſo that in no caſe you waſh his Belly, and that you ride him a good round pace after his waſhing, then by no means walk him, but ſet him up and dreſs him: The purer the water is wherein you waſh your Horſe, the more wholeſome it is, ſo that it be not too extreme cold.

The beſt hours to water your Horſe in, (when he lives at reſt) is betwixt ſeven and eight in the morning, and four or five in the evening.

When you travel, at every ſteep Hill light, both to refreſh your Horſe and your ſelf.

Let a fat or hot Horſe have his water at four times, and not ſo much as he will drink at once; give him Provender twice at night, and but once in the morning: let his Cloath neither be too hot, nor with Straw too much ſtuffed: when he eateth good Hay, let him have leſs Provender than when he eateth Straw: give his Meat by little at once to avoid glutting of him, and let him ſtand two hours every day without meat.

Rubbing much, hard, and well, doth profit, preſerve, and doth keep

keep doth ſtrength of Body and Leggs: for in rubbing and combing, a Horſe doth take much delight, and it doth better than much meat.

To feed with Barley (according to the opinion of the antient Italians) Ingendreth good blood, encreaſeth ſtrength and courage, and maintaineth health; but with us here in England, we find Oats to be much better feeding.

In the Dogg-dayes it is not wholeſome to ride your Horſe oft in the water to allay his natural heat.

The Maſters eye to ſee his Horſe well curried, and with the hand well rubbed, and well meated, and the Stable ſweet and clean kept, preſerveth health, and wonderfully feedeth the horſe.

Cleanſe and pick the ſoles and bottoms of your Horſes feet oft, and ſtuff them well with Ox Dung, anoynt his hoofs with freſh Greaſe, Tar, or Turpentine.

Much reſt is the Mother and the Nurſe of many Diſeaſes.

When you ride, look often to your Saddle, and your Horſes ſhooes; and you ſhall find much more eaſe in journey.

CHAP. CX.

Certain ſpecial Principles in Foals and in Horſes.

THe Foals whoſe Legs be long, will ever be tall, for of all beaſts their Legs in length ever grow the leaſt, and by the bigneſs of their Legs you ſhall gueſs the ſtrength and greatneſs of their bodies.

Let your Colts, if you can poſſibly, never be houſed till they be paſt three years old.

The Greek Horſe (which we call the Turky Horſe) is a moſt excellent horſe, ſwift, bold, well headed, tall, and ſtrong; many of them be White, ſome Bay, ſome Sorrel, and ſome Black.

The Arabian Horſe is moſt ſwift, and moſt beautifull.

The Horſe of Africa, which we call the Barbary horſe, is of good courage, ſwift, and nimble, and therefore both the Turky horſe, and he muſt be uſed with all lenity and gentleneſs, and not with beating.

The Frizeland Horſe is fiery, yet the worſt of any.

The Flemiſh Horſe is worſe than the Frizland.

The

The Spaniſh Jenet is good, ſwift, and light.

The Neapolitan Courſer for all uſes is moſt excellent and beautifull.

And the Engliſh Horſe is beſt both for great burthens or Long travel.

Obſerve to win your Horſe by patience and gentleneſs, and never be angry or mad with your horſe, if he be of great metal; only the dull horſe muſt with much beating be quickned and enflamed.

Anoint your Bit when you put it firſt into your Horſes mouth, with honey, and the Powder of Liquoriſh, or elſe with honey and Salt: and at no time put any Bit or Snaffle into your Horſes mouth before you have waſht it.

Never take your Horſes back before you have the Bridle Reins faſt in your hands; and when you walk down any Hill, by no means drive your horſe looſe before you.

If your Horſe have a long back, let him have a large Saddle, and if he have a low back, let the Saddle have a high ſear, and if his back be ſhort, let the Boulſters ſtand the neerer and cloſer together.

If your Horſe be dull, you muſt ſpur him ſoundly, and after ſuch ſpurring, rub his ſides with Salt.

CHAP. CXI.

Certain general Obſervations concerning Mares.

IN length and height, a Mare groweth till ſhe be five years old, and a Horſe till he be ſix.

When a Mare is paſt two years old ſhe may be covered, but the beſt time is after four year old.

Common Mares may bring Foals every year, but let your beſt Mares bring but every ſecond year, eſpecially if they bring Horſe Colts.

After covering by no means travel your Mares.

To get Horſe Colts, cover before the full of the Moon, and when the ſign is a Female: and to get Mare Colts cover after the full, and in the Male ſigns: for note it, there be twelve ſigns, ſix Male, and ſix Female.

To

To make a Mare ſtand to her Horſing, ſet her by the horſe two or three dayes, that he may much deſire, and be acquainted before he cover her: After bring them out, and let him ſerve her, and have ready a pail of water, which, when the horſe ſhrinketh from her, powr upon the ridge of the Mares back: then ſet them ſo far aſunder as that the one may not hear the other: Do this three mornings, and three evenings together, then let her not come neer the horſe after, till ſhe be knit, leſt the deſire of him again, make her to ſhoot out that which ſhe kept before:

To know whether your Mare be with Foal about Chriſtmas, or no, powr a little Water into her ear, and if ſhe only ſhake her head, ſhe is then with Foal, but if ſhe ſhake both head and body alſo, ſhe is not with Foal.

When you wean your Foals, take them from the Mares four dayes before the full of the Moon, and after the Foals have ſo remained four and twenty hours, let them again ſuck till they wax very full: then remove them for altogether, and the next morning give every one three ſlips of Saven, and ſo after let them have till they be three years old, all plenty of meat abroad, rather than in the Stable.

Let your Stallion for Trotters be either Neapolitan Courſer, or Arabian, Turk, or Barbery, and for Amblers, either the Spaniſh Jenet, or the Iriſh Hobby.

Put your Mares to the Horſe, from middle March till middle May, or middle June, the Moon having newly changed.

It is good to put the Horſe and the Mare for three or four nights together in ſome vaſt empty houſe, and in the morning take the horſe away, and feed him well; but feed your Mare ſparingly, eſpecially give her little water.

At the end of ſix moneths, by no means chaſe your Mares; or then they are in quickning, and may eaſily be made to caſt their Foals.

The Wall-eye either in Mare or Horſe, doth never ſee perfectly, eſpecially when there is any Snow on the ground.

A Mare goeth with Foal eleven moneths and ten dayes.

Let your Mare be of a mean ſtature, large, and broad, and of good ſhapes; and the Stallion of like ſhape, but ſomewhat taller; and temper their Natures thus: Put unto the hot Horſe the cool Mare, and to the hot Mare the cool Horſe: and let your grounds wherein you breed, be Dry, Hilly, and with running ſtreams in it.

CHAP. CXII.

Certain special Notes to be observed in the buying of a Horse.

FIrst, mark his colour and his shape, that is to say, a comely well proportioned head, with an out looking eye, good well raised shoulders, and a thick large breast, broad brawn, large and broad flat Leggs, short Pasterns, and little feet: for long Pasterns shew weakness, and broad feet shew dulness; feel if he have no Glanders between his Chaps, no Splents, Curb nor Spaven, look he be not Pursick or broken-winded: put your hand before his Eyes, to know if he see well. Look into his mouth for his age: if he be past eight years old, feel all down the strunt of his Tayl with your hand, and if you feel that it be smooth, then the horse is not very old, but if it have any rough knobs towards the end, buy him not, for his good dayes are past. Let him run at the Halters end, for if he be lame (having that liberty) he would favour that Leg which is amiss, and not lean upon it. If he turn up the white of his Eye, or lay his Ear to his Neck when he is ridden, he is a sullen Jade, and full of naughty qualities: if when you stir him in the Stable, he stare and look back upon you with a stout Countenance, it is a token of a good stomach in him; and great aptness to be taught: if he stir the end of his Tayl as he passeth out, and is ridden, and yet doth not wisk it, it sheweth that his pace is unperfect: be sure to see him turn as short as may be, that you may know whether he be swayed in the back or no: the middle stature is the best, and the short knit Horse is the strongest. The Wall Eye ever seeth the worst.

The Horse that is of nature Gentle, swift, light, nimble, of easie pace, ane good colour, strong feet, good Loyns, speedy in eating, and good at his Provender, is ever the best for use, and the readiest money in the Market at all times. See if the hair in the spurring place be white, for it argueth slowness and spur-galling.

The Horse that will paw and beat the ground with his foot when he is stayed from going forwards, is ever like to be good and durable in travail.

Many other notes there are that are needless to rehearse, which by the observing of these will easily come into your memory.

CHAP.

CHAP. CXIII.

General notes concerning some Simples already spoken of.

ALL manner of Marrows or Piths, of what kind soever they be, must be kept by themselves in a dry cool place, and preserved from all filth or uncleanness, and from the annoyance either of wind or fire, and so they will last fully out a whole year.

You shall keep no Syrrups, nor sweet Electuaries, nor Pills, nor Powders, nor Conserves of Flowers, nor any Oyntments, Suets, or Emplaisters, above one whole year, only bitter Electuaries, or Conserve of Fruitors Roots, will last fully out two years.

Of Oyls, some will last long, some must be new made: Oyls extracted out of Wood or Metals, will last long.

Gather Roots in Autumn, but take the small sprigs from them, and make them clean and dry.

Dry small Roots in the shade and Wind, and great Roots either in the Wind and Sun, or by the fire: lay them in a dry place towards the South, and they will keep long, provided that neither Sun nor moisture injure nor hurt them.

Gather all manner of Herbs when they do most flourish, and dry them in the shade, except they be very moist and apt to putrifie; they last for the most part a whole year.

Gather Seeds and Fruits when they be fully ripe; they also last but one whole year.

Gather the Rind or Bark of any Simple when the Herb is ripe: drie them, and they will last many years.

The end of the first Book.

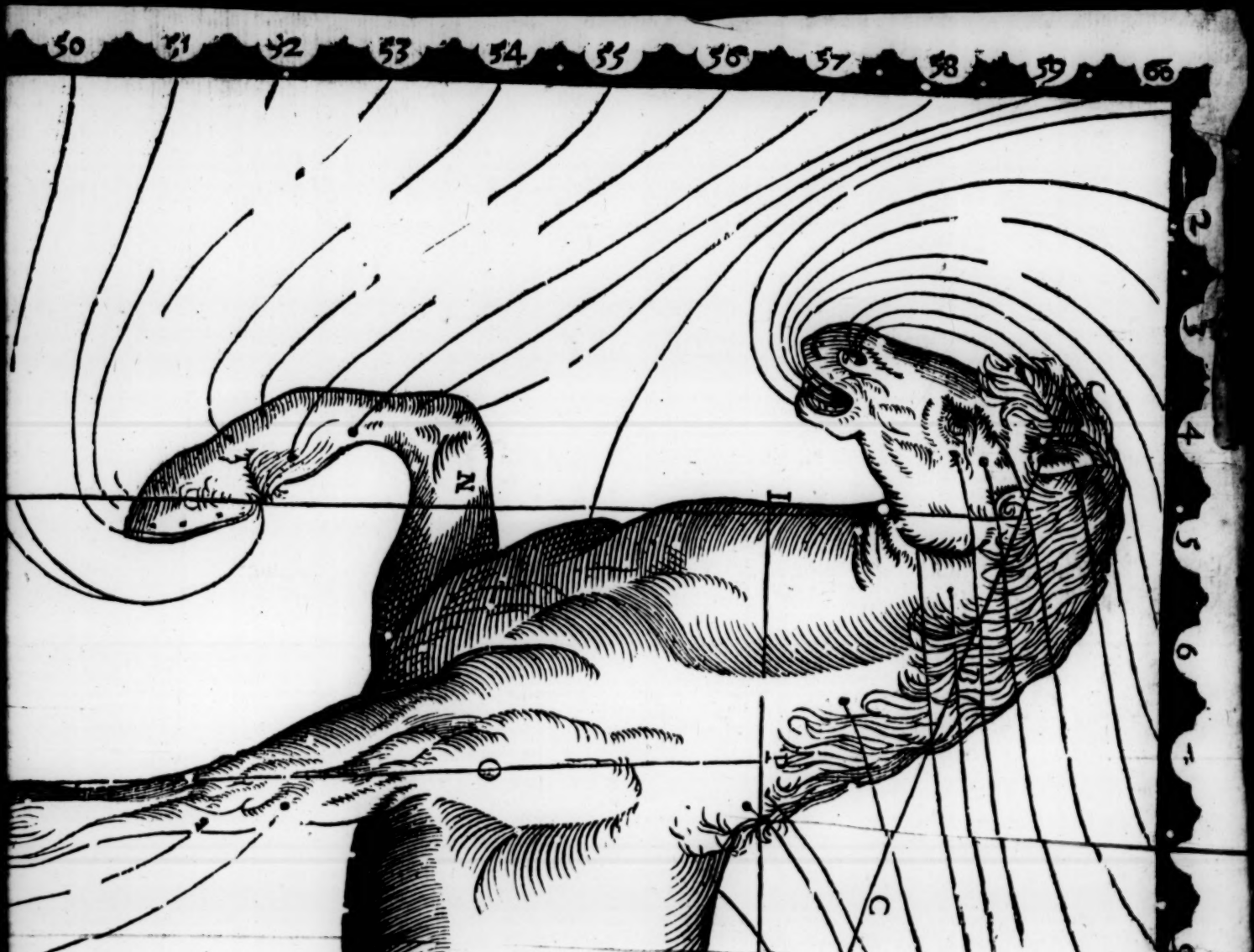
Markham's Maſter-Piece.

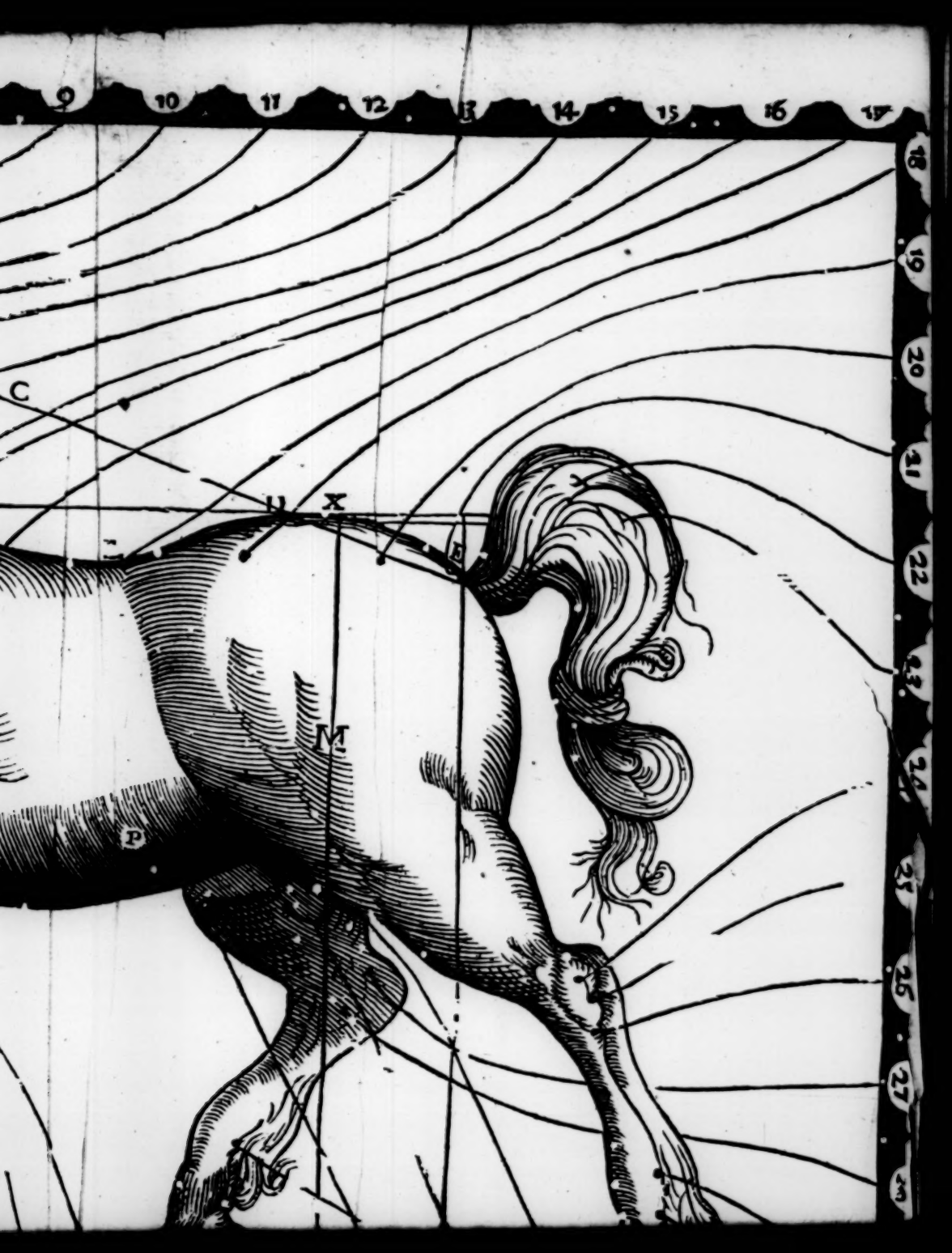
THE SECOND BOOK, CONTAINING All Cures Chirurgical, OR Such Infirmities as being only outward, crave the Uſe of *Chirurgery*, and are called in Horſleech-Craft, HORSES SORANCES.

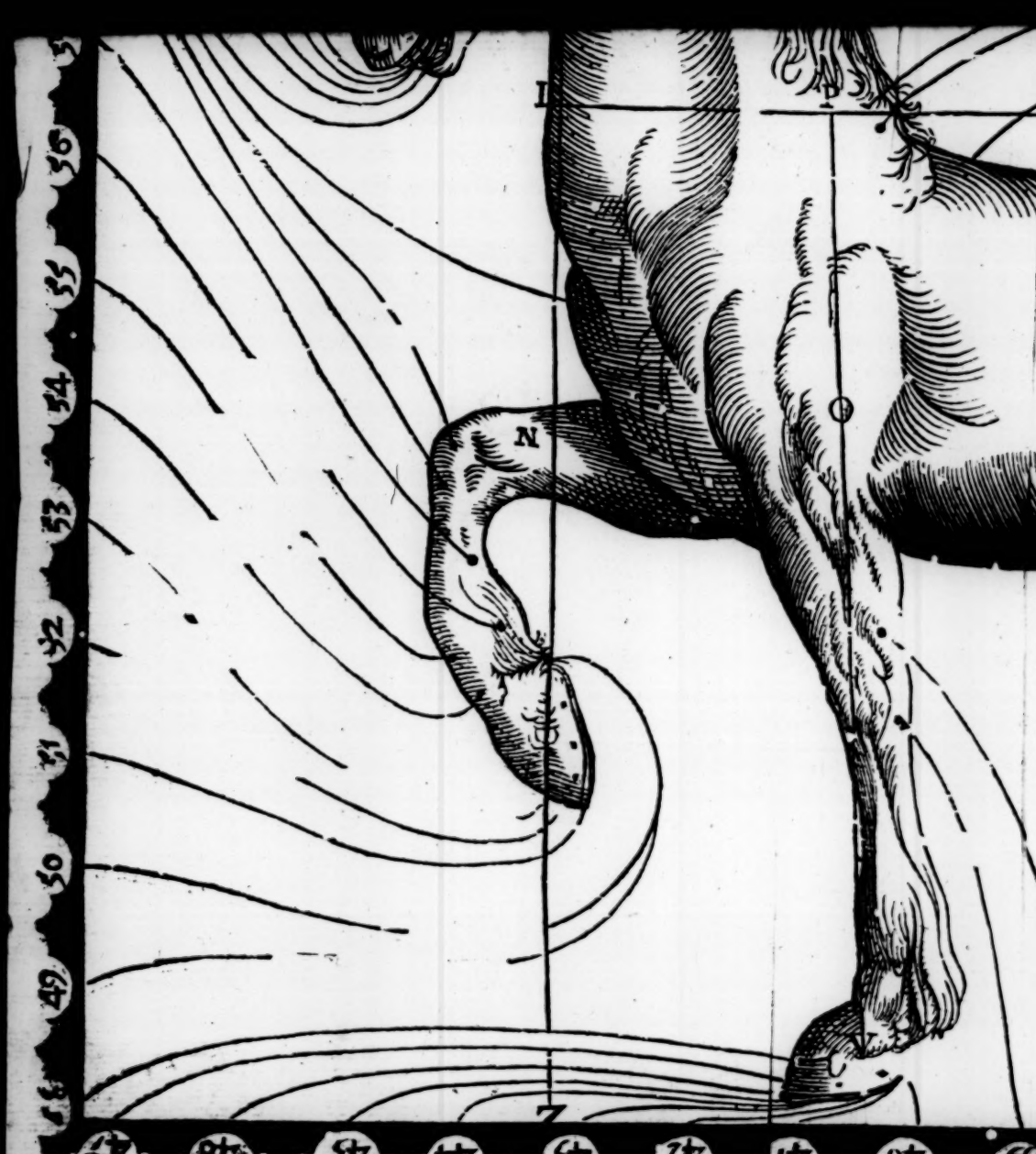
Newly Imprinted, Corrected, and Enlarged with many notable Additions, and moſt certain approved Medicines, never revealed before this Impreſſion.

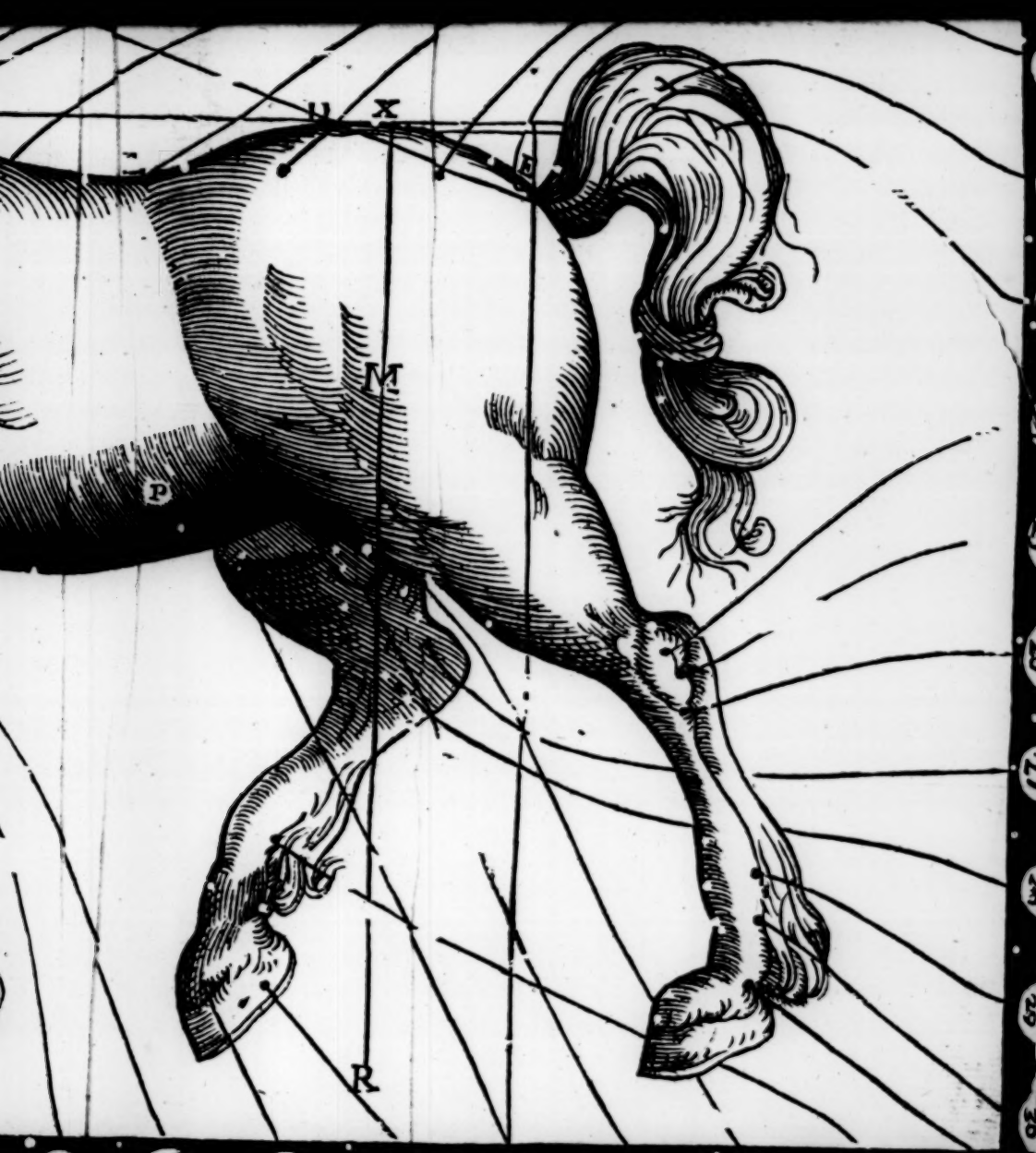
Written by *Gervaſe Markham*, Gent.

LONDON,
Printed by *Andrew Clark*, for *Thomas Paſſinger* at the three Bibles on *London Bridge*, 1675.


50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
60
2
3
4
5
6
N
C


9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
C
X
M
P


N
Z
Place this Portractu



tractum before Follio 159

10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18

Markham's Maſter-Piece.

THE SECOND BOOK.

CONTAINING

All Cures Chirurgical, or ſuch Infirmities as, being only outward, crave the uſe of Chirurgery, and are called in Horſe-Leach-craft, *Horſes Sorances.*

CHAP. I.

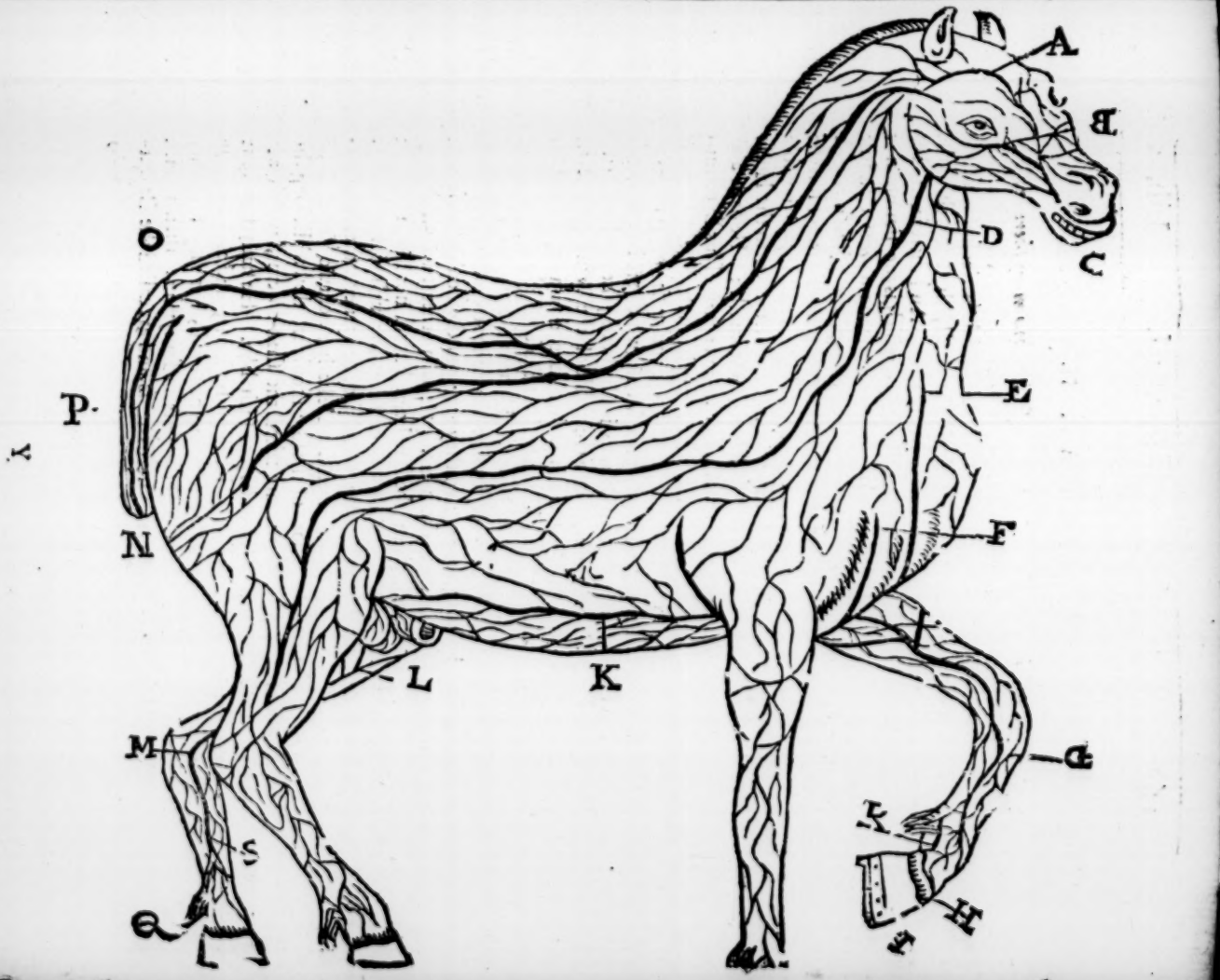
What proportion of meaſure is required in every member of a well ſhapen Horſe.

FOraſmuch as the great ſubſtance of this Art of Chirurgery, or ſecond part of Horſ-leach-craft, applied only unto outward infirmities, conſiſteth of Inciſions, Cauterizings, Corrodings, and Diſmembrings, as well as of Comfortings, Incarnating, Cleanſing, Conglutinating, and binding up Members in their true form, and that all joyntly together, go but about to make a true and well-formed Body: I think it meereſt that I begin with the true proportion and meaſure which is required in every Member of a well ſhaped Horſe, that the careful Farrier thereby underſtanding how, and in what faſhion every Lineament ſhould be placed, or what proportion and quantity they do contain, he may at no time through ignorance either diſmember or diſgrace the ſame: as I have

have many times ſeen ſimple Farriers do, when contrary to all Art and Rule, they have cut in ſunder the main Cords, Sinews, and Tendons, by which a horſes Limbs are governed.

To begin then, you ſhall underſtand, that, according to the Deſcription of the moſt antient and worthy Farriers: there are in a Horſes Palate of his mouth twelve bars or degrees like ſteps, one above another, ſtanding (when his mouth is turned upwards) like a pair of ſtairs: his tongue would be half a foot long, his upper lip ſix inches, and his neather lip five inches long; each of his Jaws would be ten inches long, his head from his Eyes down-ward full twelve inches long, his Ears five inches long, the circuit or compaſs of his Eye four inches about, his Neck from the nape of his Head unto the Withers would be ſeven handfulls, from the Withers to the Fillets twelve handfulls, and from the Fillets to the ſetting on of the Tayl ſix handfulls; The Length of the ſhoulder would be twelve inches, and the Length of his Shank ſix inches, the Length of his hinder Hoof would be twelve inches, and his Cambrel five inches, and the Length of the whole Body from the head to the Tayl would be an hundred inches. Now as horſes are bigger or leſſer, ſo theſe meaſures either exceed, or are leſs; neither do I confidently build upon theſe inch quantities of the antient Farriers, becauſe, I having my ſelf meaſured many horſes, I never yet could find any certainty in the proportions: only this is the moſt certaineſt rule that ever I could find, that look what quantity is between the Nape of the Horſes Neck, and the uttermoſt part of the Withers, there muſt ever be twice ſo much between the Withers and the ſetting on of the Tail; and look what quantity is between the top of the ſhoulder-blade, or top of the Withers, to the Elbow of the Horſe, it muſt be twice ſo much from the Elbow to the ſetting on of the Hoof: And look how much it is from the top of the Hip to the ſtifling place, it muſt be twice ſo much from the ſtifling place to the ſetting on of the hinder hoof: And this is the certaineſt rule that ever I could find for a Horſes trueſt proportion. And therefore for your better ſatisfaction, behold this Picture that is now here placed, which is the Anatomy of a moſt perfect horſe, with lines drawn from every member, directing and ſhewing all the outward Diſeaſes or Sorances belonging to a horſes body.

CHAP.


A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
S

CHAP. II.

Of the Veins belonging to a Horſe, and how many there be.

IT is moſt neceſſary, that every good careful Farrier know all the principle Veins in a Horſes body, eſpecially thoſe which in the time of need, or in ſickneſs are to be opened: And therefore to begin, you ſhall know that from the Liver, which is the Fountain of blood, both in Man and Beaſt, doth ariſe one main great Conduit or large Vein, which aſcending into the body, doth divide it ſelfe into thus many ſeveral branches, or leſſer Rivers. Firſt, within the Palate of his mouth, above the firſt and third bars, are two notable Veins, which the beſt Farriers do touch and ſtrike when the Horſe ha h any Diſeaſe in his Head, Brain, or Stomach: He hath alſo other two which deſcend down from the lower parts of his Eyes unto his Noſtrils, and are ever opened for any grief in the Eyes: He hath two others which are above his Eyes, and run croſs the Temples of his head, and are called the Temple Veins, which are likewiſe opened for all manner of cold Diſeaſes in the head; he hath alſo two great main Veins running along each ſide of the Wind-pipe, even from the uppermoſt joynt of his nether chap down to the Breaſt, which are called the Neck Veins, and are thoſe which are ordinarily opened for any Diſeaſe whatſoever. He hath then two Veins which ariſe upwards from between his fore Legs to the top of his breaſt and are called the Breaſt-veins, and they are opened when the horſe hath any Fever, or is ſick at the heart. He hath other two which likewiſe aſcend from between the fore Legs, but do not mount ſo high as the Breaſt-veins, but reſt upon the formoſt bough of the fore leg, and they be called the Flat-veins, and they be opened either for foundring, or other grief in the Limbs. He hath other two Veins which run down from the Elbow of the fore ſhoulder, down all along the inſide of the fore legs, and are called the ſhank Veins, which are opened for Splents, Malander, or ſuch like. He hath then four Veins which run along the fetlocks of the horſe, and are called the ſhakle-veins, which albeit, they are but ſmall, yet they are many times opened for ſtiffneſs in the Joynts, or for tyring: then he hath four Veins about the Cronets in his hoofs, and are called the Cronet-

Veins,

Veins, and are opened for foundring in the Feet, or for Ring bones: then he hath four Veins within his four Hoofs, running about his Toes, and are called the Toe-veins, and are only opened for foundring or frettizing in the Feet: he hath then two main great Veins which deſcend down from his ſtones alongſt the inſide of his Thighs to his Cambrel, and are called the Kidney-veins, which are onely opened for Diſeaſes in the Kidneys: He hath then two other Veins which deſcend from above the hinder Cambrel, all alongſt the inſide of the hinder Legs down to the Feet locks, and are called the Spaven-veins, which are opened for the blood ſpaven only: He hath then two veins in his Flanks, which are called the Flank-veins, and are opened for any grief in the Reins or Fillets: he hath then two veins in his hinder Hanches called the Hanch-veins, and are opened for any manner of Conſumption of the fleſh, or ſuch like: Then he hath two Veins which run alongſt his ſide, even from the Elbow of the fore-leg unto the flank, and are called the Spur-veins, and are opened for foundring or Spur-galling. Laſtly, he hath one ſingle Vein in his Tayl, which is called the Tayl-vein, and is opened for the ſhedding of the hair or any mangineſs. So there is in a Horſes body of principal Veins, which upon occaſion muſt be opened, juſt thirty ſeven, as you may perceive by this Figure, which is the true Anatomy of all the principal Veins and others within a horſes body; where you are to underſtand, that the Letter *A* ſheweth the Temple-vein. *B* the Eye-veins, *C* the Palat-veins, *D* the Neck-veins, *E* the Breaſt-veins, *F* the Plat-veins, *G* the Shank-veins, *H* the Cronet-veins, *I* the Hoof-veins, *K* the Spur-veins, *L* the Kidney-veins, *M* the Spaven-veins, *N* the Flank-veins, *O* the Hanch-veins, *P* the Tayl-veins, *Q* and *R* the Fet-lock-veins. Now for the other ſmall Threds, or Veins, which as it were, over-ſpread the whole body, becauſe nature will allow no part or Member to be empty or void of blood, they be alſo veins, derived from the other main great Veins, yet of no efficacy or force, but ſuch as upon any neceſſary incition may very well be cut aſunder without any flux of blood, or other danger: but for the other Maſter veins, they may not be cut but with great peril. And thus much for Veins, which are the inſtruments of heat.

CHAP. III.

Of the Sinews in a Horſes Body.

TOuching the Sinews within a Horſes Body, you ſhall underſtand, that from the Brain, which is the principal Fountain or Well-ſpring of Sinews whatſoever, there is derived one great main Sinew or Tendon, which paſſing through the hollowneſs of the Neck and Back bone, doth extend it ſelf even to the nethermoſt Joynt of the Horſes ſtrunt: From his main Sinew is derived two ſmall Branches, which paſſing through certain holes in the top of the Horſes ſkull, run down alongſt the horſes Cheeks, even to the point of his Noſtrils: Then hath he two other branches, which paſſing through certain holes in his nether Chap, knit that and the upper together, and ſo run down by his great Teeth, and meet juſt below his nether Lip: then hath he twenty eight ſmall Threds, which running through ſo many ſmall holes in the ſeven bones of his Neck, knit them faſt together: So likewiſe to Knit all his Chine even to the very nether end of his Strunt faſt together, the number whereof is infinite, and uncertain: Then hath he two main great Sinews, which extending themſelves over both the Spade-bones, are divided into many branches, and run down into the Fore-legs, even into the Coffins of the Hoofs, and Knit every Joynt faſt and ſubſtantially together: then hath he two other main Sinews, which coming through two holes to the great Columel or flat bones of the Hips or Huckle, do extend themſelves (being divided into many branches) down both the hinder Legs, even within the Coffins of the hoof alſo, & bind all theſe ſeveral Joynts faſt & ſtrongly together. Now laſtly, you ſhall underſtand, that from the ſetting on of the horſesneck, unto the flat Columel or Huckle bone, doth extend one great broad Sinew of three inches broad, being of one only thick and ſmooth ſubſtance, without any one Thred or Branch derived from it, which not only holdeth together the ſhoulder-blades, but alſo covereth all the horſes Chine quite over, and this of the common Farriers is called Pax-wax: So that a Horſe hath in all of main and principal Sinews, from whence a World of other Sinews are derived, juſt thirty eight, as you may more plainly perceive by the Picture aforegoing, which is the perfect

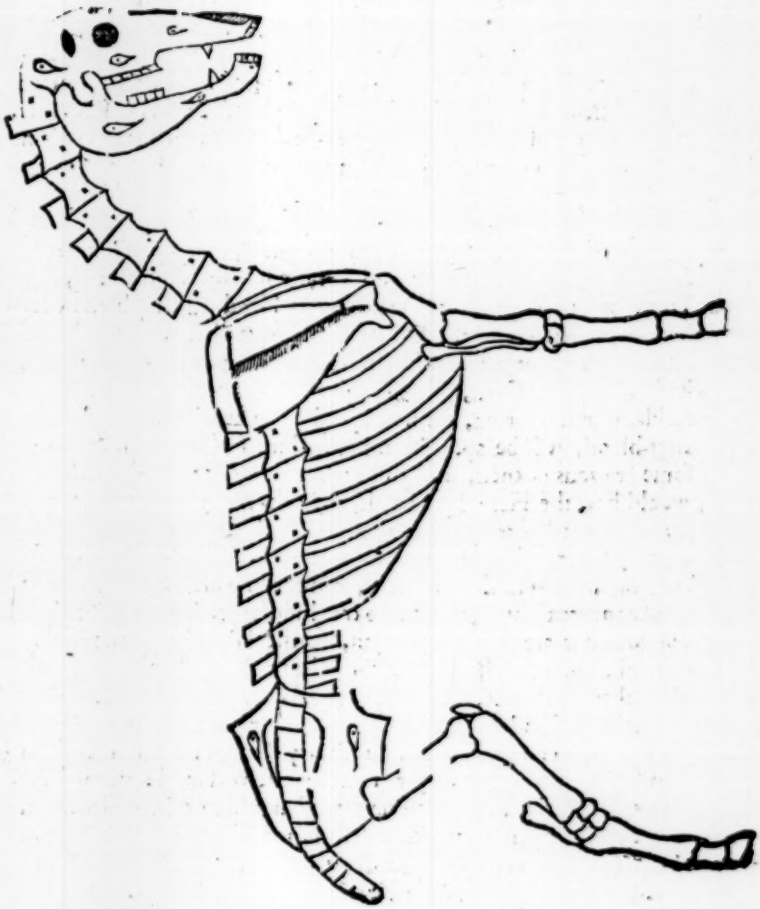
perfect Anatomy of all the Sinews within a horſes body, and how they are divided.

CHAP. IV.

Of the number, and ſituation of Bones in a Horſes Body.

FIrſt, you ſhall underſtand, that every Horſe or Ox, hath in his whole Body, juſt one hundred and ſeventy ſeveral bones, and no more: that is to ſay, in the upper part of his head two bones, from the Fore head to the Noſe two bones, his nether Jaws two bones, of fore Teeth Twelve, of Tuſhes four, of Grinders twenty four, from the Nape of the Neck to the points of the Spade bones, ſeven; from the Spade bones to the Huckle bones, eight; from the Huckle bones to the end of the Tail, ſeven: Then is there the great broad hinder bone, which hath twelve Seams or Joynts in it; then is there the two Spade bones, and from thence to the Forcels or Canal bones, other two bones called the Marrow bones, and from thence to the firſt joynt above the Legs other two bones, and from thence to the knees, two called the Thigh bones, and from thence to the Paſterns other two called the ſhank bones, and from thence downward into the hoofs be in all 16 little bones. Then there is a great bone in the Horſes Breaſt, whereunto are faſtned 36 Ribs great and ſmall, and to the Columel behind be two bones, and from the Molars to the Joynts other two bones; and alſo two bones towards the Ribs, from the bending of the Hoof unto th Leg, are two ſmall bones, and from the Legs to the two focils of the Leg other two little bones, and from the Paſterns into the Hoof, ſixteen little bones: all which, and their ſeveral ſituations you ſhall more plainly behold in this Picture, which is the moſt perfect Anatomy of the bones of a Horſe, being ſimply compounded together, that can be by demonſtration.

CHAP.



CHAP. V.

How, and when a Horſe ſhould be let blood, the end whereof, and the ſigns of the neceſſity.

THe antient Farriers, and thoſe of theſe preſent times, are at great difference touching the letting of a Horſe blood: For ſome would have him let blood four times in the year; that is to ſay, in the Spring, in the Summer, in Autumn, and in the Winter. Others would only have him let blood three times in the year: namely, in May, when he is turned to Graſs, becauſe the blood then beginneth to encreaſe. Secondly, in September, that blood if it be inflamed, may then evacuate and breath forth. And thirdly, in December, to let go the groſs and knotty blood which is bred by labour or carteleſs keeping. Others would have a horſe to be let blood but once in the year: namely, in the beginning of May only, when he is to be put to Graſs, alleging this reaſon, that if the Horſe be not let blood in the Spring, the new blood being mixt with the old corrupt blood, will be apt to be inflamed and ſo draw upon the horſe ſome grievous ſickneſs, and this reaſon is excellent good. Others would have the Horſe to be let blood in the Vein not above once in a year; namely, at the beginning of May: but in the Palate of the mouth they would have him let blood at leaſt once every moneth, alleging that it will clear the ſight, comfort the brain, and give him good appetite to his meat: but to conclude, there is not any of theſe opinions but are ſound and good, ſo the Horſe be young and in ſtrength, his blood increaſing; but if he be old, and his blood in the Ebb, then you cannot let blood too ſeldome. Now that it is fit a young horſe ſhould be let blood, is proved by the daily experience of the Polander Horſes, who being at liberty (out of natural inſtinct in themſelves) fail not once a year to let themſelves blood; yet we have divers of our beſt Farriers, who would not have a Horſe let blood before there be urgent neceſſity, leſt the uſe of letting blood bring a Horſe to an evil cuſtom, and draw on ſickneſs unexpected; but with that opinion I cannot agree, becauſe I hold it more vertue to prevent a danger before it come, than to drive it away being preſent. Now that oft letting of blood breedeth in a Horſe weakneſs, and maketh

maketh the blood to reſort to the inward parts, cloying the Heart and Intrails, and making the outward parts fat and unweldly, there is no queſtion but that the letting a horſe blood twice in the year, namely, at beginning of May, and the end of December, (at which times only I would have a Horſe let blood and no other) ſhould be accounted oft, I ſee no reaſon. Now for Stallions, the antient Farriers would by no means have them let blood, becauſe ſay they the covering of Mares is as great an expence of blood as may be, affirming that one ounce of Seed doth countervail five ounces of blood, and truely I am of that opinion too: but whereas they likewiſe adviſe by no means to let Geldings blood, becauſe the loſs of their ſtones is the loſs of their natural heat; to that I am much contrary, becauſe I have found it by continual experience, that Geldings do as oft dye through the Corruption and abundance of blood as Horſes; Nay, and much more oftner, in as much as they want the helps which Horſes have for Purging their bloods from uncleanneſs. Now in the letting of Horſes blood, every careful Farrier is firſt to reſpect the Climate under which the horſe is bred, knowing that thoſe Horſes which are bred in cold Countreys, have ever more blood than thoſe which are bred in the hot: then he muſt conſider the time of the year, which would ever be the Spring, or the fall of the Leaf, both theſe times being moſt temperate, neither exceeding in heat nor in cold. Next he muſt regard the time of the day, which would ever be in the morning faſting, ſo it be not at the Horſes waking from ſleep, but at leaſt an hour or two after; then he muſt look unto the ſtate of the Moon, that the ſign be not in that part of the body where he intendeth to let blood. Next he muſt look to the Horſes age, if he be young, and not come to his growth, it will hinder his waxing; and if he be old and come to decrepitneſs, his blood had more need be repaired than waſted. Laſtly, he ſhall look to the Horſes ſtrength and antient cuſtom, and ſo accordingly he ſhall deal with him, obſerving that ſome horſes may better ſpare two or three pound of blood, than other ſome one pound. Now thus much I have ſpoken touching ordinary and natural letting of blood, without compulſion of any ſickneſs or Diſeaſe; but in caſe where ſickneſs or infirmity craveth this office of letting blood, there you ſhall neither reſpect Climate, Seaſon of the year, time of the Day, Sign, Age, ſtrength nor cuſtom, but ſetting all aſide, apply your ſelf onely to the re-

removing of the infirmity. Now the ſigns to know if a Horſe ſtand in need to be let blood are theſe: his Eyes will look red, and his Veins will ſwell more than ordinary: alſo he will have a certain itch about his Main and his Tayl, and ſtill be continually rubbing them; and ſometimes will ſhed ſome of his hair alſo: he will now and then pill about the Roots of his Ears, or in thoſe places where the head-ſtall of the Bridle lies: his Urine will be red and high coloured, and his dung will be black and hard: alſo if he hath red inflammations, or little bubbles on his back, or doth not digeſt his meat well, it is a ſign the Horſe would be let blood: or if he have any apparent ſign or yellowneſs in the whites of his Eyes, or in the inſide of his Lips, either upper or nether, it is a ſign he would be let blood: for after any of theſe ſigns doth moſt commonly follow ſome one or other grievous ſickneſs, which to prevent is the true Art of a skilful Farrier. Now it is meet that when you intend to let a Horſe bleed (having leaſure to do the ſame) that you ſuffer him to be thinly dyeted a day or two before he be let blood, to the end that his body may be quiet, and not troubled with digeſtion. Now for the manner of letting a horſe blood, you ſhall as near as you can, let him ſtand upon even ground, and if it be the Neck-vein which you would ſtrike, you ſhall take a long ſmall Cord with a nooſe, and putting over to the horſes Neck, as cloſe to the ſetting on of the ſhoulder as you can, there draw it as ſtraight as is poſſible, and then faſten it with a running knot, and preſently you ſhall ſee the Veins to appear as big as a mans little finger, even from the nether Chap down to the Neck. Now you are to obſerve that the place where you are to ſtrike the Vein in, is, even within three fingers or four fingers at the moſt of the nether Chap: as thus; if your Horſe have a Long, fine, thin Neck and skin, then you may ſtrike the Vein within three fingers, or leſs of the Chap, (ſith the higher is ever the better) but if he have a ſhort chub Neck, with a thick skin, and many wreaths or rouls about the ſetting on of his Chaps, then you ſhall ſtrike the Vein at leaſt four fingers from the Chap, leſt thoſe wreaths together with the thickneſs of the skin, do ſo defend the Vein that your Fleim cannot reach it. When you have thus raiſed the Vein up, you ſhall cauſe one to ſtand on the contrary ſide of the Horſe, and with his fiſt to thruſt the Vein forth hard againſt you: then you ſhall either with a wet Spunge, or with a little ſpittle, wet the part of the vein which

you

you mean to ſtrike, and then ſeparating the hair, ſet your Fleim even and directly upon the Vein; and then with a good ſmart blow ſtrike it into the Vein: Which done, you ſhall cauſe one to put his finger into the Horſes mouth, and tickling him in the roof thereof, make him chaw and move his Chaps, for that will force the blood to ſpin forth: now the blood which you take from the horſe, it is very neceſſary that you ſave in divers Veſſels, for divers cauſes: as firſt, that you may ſee when all the corrupt blood is come forth, and that when the colour thereof is grown pure, and ſo remaineth being cold, that then you ſuffer the Horſe to bleed no more; or elſe that you ſave it to bathe the Horſes body therewith, which is moſt wholeſome; or elſe to make a Medicine therewithall by mingling with the blood Vinegar and Oyl, and ſo bathe the Horſes body therewith, eſpecially that place which was let blood. For the antient Farriers hold an opinion, that it is endued with a certain natural vertue, and power to comfort the weak and feeble Members of a Horſe, and to dry up all evil humours. Now as ſoon as your horſe hath bled ſufficiently, you ſhall Let looſe the Cord, and immediately the vein will ſtop; then with that Cord you ſhall ſtroak down the Vein juſt over the Orifice twice or thrice, which will both cloſe up the hole, and alſo turn the courſe of the blood: this done, ſet the Horſe up in the Stable, and let him ſtand faſting two or three hours after, and then after dyet him according as in your diſcretion you ſhall think meet, that is to ſay, if he be a ſick Horſe, then like a ſick horſe with good Provender and warm Maſhes: but if he be a ſound Horſe, then like a ſound Horſe, either turn him to Graſs, or keep him in the Stable after his antient cuſtom.

Now if you would let your Horſe blood either in the Temple-veins or the Eye veins, you ſhall then Cord him hard about the midſt of the Neck, and not near his ſhoulders, having a care that you touch not his Wind-pipe, and ſo throttle him: for it will make both theſe Veins ſhew moſt apparently. If you intend to let the Horſe blood in the Breaſt-veins, or Plat-veins, of ſome called the fore Thigh-veins, you ſhall then Cord him behind the ſhoulders, cloſe to the Elbows of the horſe, and over-thwart his Withers, and that will make theſe two Veins ſhew. Now you ſhall underſtand, that not any of theſe veins laſt ſpoken of, as about the Head or the Breaſt, muſt be let blood by ſtriking them with a Fleim, (though it be the manner of

our common Smiths) for it is moſt beaſtly and butcherly, and alſo full of much danger by ſtriking through the Vein, (if he be not skilfull:) but you ſhall with a fine ſharp Lancet open the Vein, even in ſuch ſort as you ſee a skilfull Chirurgeon open the Vein in a mans Arm. Now for the Letting a Horſe blood in the Palat of the mouth, you ſhall but only with a ſharp pointed Knife, prick the Horſe between the ſecond and third bar, as deep as a Barley Corn is Long, and he will bleed ſufficiently: as for all other Veins in a Horſes Body whatſoever, which are to be opened, you ſhall underſtand, that whenſoever it is needful that they bleed, that then they muſt be taken up, and not Corded at all. Now touching the taking up of Veins, and the manner how to do it, you ſhall read more at Large in particular Chapters towards the end of this book.

CHAP. VI.

Of outward Sorrances what they are, and of certain general Obſervations in the Cure of them.

OUtward Sorrances, according to my meaning in this place, are taken two manner of wayes, that is to ſay, either it is an evil ſtate and compoſition of the body, which is to be diſcerned either by the ſhape, number, quantity, or ſight of the Member evil affected and Diſeaſed: or elſe it is the looſning and diviſion of any unity, which as it may chance diverſly, ſo it hath divers names accordingly. For if ſuch a diviſion or looſing be in the Bone, then it is called a Fracture: If it be in any fleſhly part, then it is called a Wound, or an Ulcer: If it be in the Veins, then a Rupture: if in the Sinews, then a Convulſion or Cramp; and if it be in the Skin, then it is called an Excoriation: and of all theſe ſeverally I intend to treat in the following Chapters. Now for as much as in this general Art of Chirurgery, or Sorrances, there are certain general Obſervations or Caveats to be held inviolate, I will, before I proceed any further, give you a little taſte thereof.

Firſt, you ſhall therefore underſtand, that it is the duty of every good Farrier, never to burn or Cauterize with hot Iron, or with Oyl, nor to make any inciſion with knife, where there be either Veins, Sinews, or Joynts, but either ſomewhat lower, or ſomewhat higher.

Item,

Item, You ſhall never apply to any joynt or Sinewy part, either Roſalgar, Arſnick, Mercury, Sublimate, nor any ſuch violent Corroſive.

Item, It is ever better to Launce with a hot Iron than a cold, that is, it is better to Cauterize than to inciſe.

Item, Blood doth ever produce white and thick matter, Choler a watriſh thin matter, but not much, ſalt Flegm, great abundance of matter, and Melancholy many dry Scabs.

Item, When you Let blood, you muſt take but the fourth part from a Colt, which you take from a grown Horſe.

Item, You muſt never Let blood, except it be either to divert ſickneſs, and preſerve health, or to refreſh and cool the blood, or elſe to diminiſh blood, or to Purge bad humours.

Item, In all Impoſtumes or ſwelling Sores, called Tumors, you muſt obſerve the four times of the ſickneſs, that is to ſay, the beginning of the grief, the increaſe of the grief, the perfection and ſtate of the grief; and laſtly, the declination and ending of the grief.

Item, In the beginning of every ſuch ſwelling Apoſtumes (if you cannot quite deſtroy them) uſe repercuſſive Medicines, if they be not near ſome principal part of the body; but then not, for fear of indangering life; and in augmentation, uſe mollifying Medicines, and ſuppling to ripe them; and when they are ripe, Launch them, and let them out, or dry them up, and in the declination of them, uſe cleanſing and healing Medicines.

Item, All ſwellings are either hard or ſoft, the hard commonly will Corrode, the ſoft will continue Long.

Item, If you thruſt your finger upon any ſwelling upon a Horſes Legs, then if it preſently riſe again, and fill, then is the hurt new and recoverable, but if the dent do remain and continue ſtill behind, then is the hurt old, and cometh of cold humours, and asks great Art in healing.

Item, When Sores begin to matter, then they heal, but if the putrifaction be great, then beware they rot not inwardly.

Item, All Cauterizing or Burning with hot Irons, ſtraineth things inlarged, drieth up what is too much moiſtened, diſſolveth things gathered together or hardned, draweth back things which are diſperſed, and helpeth old Griefs: for it ripeneth, diſſolveth, and maketh them to run and iſſue forth matter.

Item,

Item, You muſt ſometimes burn under the Sore, to divert Humours, and ſometimes above, to defend and withhold humours.

Item, It is ever better to burn with Copper than with Iron, becauſe Iron is of a malignant nature, Steel of an indifferent vertue betwixt both.

Item, All actual burnings is to burn with inſtruments, and potential burning is to burn with Medicines, as are Cauſticks and Corroſives.

Item, If you uſe to blow Powders into a Horſes eyes, it will make him blind.

Item, By no means take up any Veins in the forelegs, unleſs great extremity compel you: for there is nothing that will ſooner make a Horſe ſtiff and lame. Many other obſervations there are, which becauſe they are not ſo general as theſe be, and that I ſhall have occaſion to ſpeak of them in other particular Chapters, I think it here meet to omit them, and the rather, becauſe I would not be tedious.

CHAP. VII.

Of the Diſeaſes in the Eyes, and firſt of the weeping and watering eye.

THe Eyes of a Horſe are ſubject to many infirmities, as firſt to be Rhumatick, or watry, then to be blood-ſhotten, to be dim of ſight, to have the Pin and Web, the Haw, the Wart in the Eye, the Inflammation of the Eyes, the Canker in the Eye, or a ſtroak in the Eye: of all which, ſome come of inward cauſes, as of humours reſorting to the Eyes; and ſome of outward cauſes, as Heat, Cold, or elſe by ſome ſtripe or blow.

And firſt to begin with the Rhumatick, or watry Eye, you ſhall underſtand, that, according to the opinion of the antient Farriers, it doth proceed many times from the Flux of Humours diſtilling from the Brain, and ſometimes from the anguiſh of ſome blow or ſtripe received. The ſigns are, a continual watering of the Eye, and a cloſe holding of the Lidds together, accompanied ſometimes with a little ſwelling. The cure, according to the opinion of ſome Farriers, is, to take of Bolearmonick, of Terra ſigillata, and of Sanguis Draconis, of each a like quantity; make them into Powder, and then add unto them

them as much of the white of an Egg and Vinegar, as will make them moiſt: and then ſpread it Plaiſter-wiſe upon a Cloath, and lay it to the Horſes Temples of his Head above his Eyes: and do this three dayes together. Others uſe to let the Horſe blood in the Veins under his Eyes: then to waſh the Eye twice or thrice in the day with white Wine, and then to blow into the ſore Eye with a Quill, the Powder of Tartar, Salgemma, and Cuttle bone, of each like quantity: or elſe take the yolk of an Egg roaſted hard, and mix therewith the Powder of Comen, and bind it hot to the Eye, and ſo let it reſt a night more. Other Farriers uſe to take of Pitch and Rozen, and of Maſtick a like quantity, melt them together: Then with a little ſtick, having a Clout bound to the end thereof, and dipt therein, anoynt the Temple-veins on both ſides a handfull above the Eyes, as broad as a twelve pence, and then clap unto it immediately a few flocks of like colour to the Horſe, holding them cloſe to his head with your hand, untill they ſtick faſt to his head, then let him blood on both his Eye-veins, if both Eyes be ſore, and then waſh his Eyes with white Wine.

Others uſe only to take a pretty quantity of life Honey, and to diſſolve it in white Wine, and to waſh the Horſes Eye therewith: and ſure if it proceed from any blow, it is Medicine ſufficient enough; but if it proceed from any Rhume, or inward cauſes, Then you ſhall take ground Ivy beaten in a Morter, and mixt with Wax, and ſo laid to the Eyes like a Plaiſter, or elſe boyl Worm-wood in white Wine, and waſh the Horſes Eyes therewith: alſo to ſpurt Beer or Ale now and then into the Horſes Eyes, will clear the ſight paſſing well.

CHAP. VIII.

Of the Blood-ſhotten Eye, proceeding from any cauſe whatſoever.

FOr any Blood-ſhotten Eye, proceeding from any cauſe whatſoever, either outward or inward, you ſhall take (according to the opinion of the moſt antient Farriers) of Roſe-water, of Malmſey, and of Fennel water, of each three ſpoonfulls, of Tutty as much as you can eaſily take up between your Thumb and your Finger, of Cloves a dozen beaten into fine Powder, mingle them well together, and

and being luke-warm, or cold, if you pleaſe, waſh the inward parts of the Eye with a feather dipt therein twice a day untill the Eye be well: or inſtead thereof, waſh the Eye either with the white of an Egg, or with the juyce of Selladine. Others uſe to take the tops of Hawthorns, and boyling them in white Wine, waſh the Eye therewith. Other Farriers take a Dram of Synoper, and as much life Honey, as much of Wheat-flower, mix them with fair running water, ſo they may be liquid and thin, then ſeeth them with a very ſoft fire till they be thick like an Oyntment, and therewith annoynt the Eye.

☞ But the beſt receipt that ever I found for this grief, is, to take the Whites of two Eggs, and beat it till it come to an Oyl, then put to it two ſpoonfulls of Roſe-water, and three ſpoonfulls of the juyce of Houſleek, mix them well together, then dip therein little round Plegants or flat Cakes of ſoft tow, as big as a Horſes Eye, and lay them upon the Horſes Eye, renuing them as oft as they grow hard, and in a day or two it will make the Horſes Eye ſound again.

CHAP. IX.

Of Dimneſs of ſight, or blindneſs.

DImneſs of ſight, or blindneſs, may happen to a Horſe divers wayes, as by ſome ſtrain, when the inward ſtrings of the Eyes are ſtretched beyond their powers, or by the violence of great labour, or by the ſupporting of a great burthen beyond the Horſes ability, or by ſome blow or wound: any of theſe are mortal enemies to the Eyes or Sight. The ſign is the apparent want of ſight, and an evil affected colour of the Eye. Now for the Cure, it is thus:

☞ If the ſight be gone, and yet the ball of the Eye be ſound, then you ſhall take, according to the opinion of ſome Farriers, a pretty quantity of May Butter, with as much Roſemary, and a little yellow Rozen with a like quantity of Selladine, then ſtamp them and fry them with the May Butter, then ſtrain it and keep it in a cloſe Box (for it is a Jewel for ſore Eyes) and anoynt your Horſes Eyes therewith at leaſt twice a day; it is alſo good to heal any wound. Other Farriers do uſe to let the Horſe blood in the Eye-veins, and then waſh his Eyes with red Roſe-water. Others uſe to take the Gall of a black

black Sheep and beat it, and ſtrain it, then to waſh the Eyes therewith: others uſe to burn the Horſe under the Eye that the ill Humors may diſtil forth, and then to annoint his Eyes either with the Marrow of a Sheeps-ſhank, and Roſe-water mixt together, or elſe with the juyce of ground ivy. Other Farriers uſe to take a Mould-warp, and lapping her all over in Clay, burn her to aſhes, and then to take of that Powder and blow into the Horſes Eyes. Others uſe to take an empty Egg-ſhell, and fill it with bay Salt, then burn it till it be black: Then add to it of burnt Allom the quantity of your Thumb, beat them together to fine Powder, then mix ſome of this Powder with freſh Butter, and wipe it into the Horſes Eye with a feather, then clap the white of an Egg dipt in Flax, over his Eyes: do this once a day for a ſeven-night, and after but once in two dayes: This is moſt excellent for any film, and alſo for a Pearl. Others uſe to take two dry Tile-ſtones, and rub them together, and blow the Powder of it with a Quil into the Horſes Eyes four dayes together.

CHAP. X.

A moſt rare approved Medicine for any deſperate blindneſs in a Horſe, proceeding from any Rhumatick cauſe, Surfeit, Strain, Stroak, or ſuch like.

TAke of Vermilion, Betony, and lavender, and beat them in a Morter with the beſt Venice Turpentine, till they come to a thic Salve like Paſte: then make it into Cakes or Troches, each as broad as a Groat, and dry them: then lay one or two of them upon a Chafing diſh and Coals: And then covering them with a Tunnel, let your Horſe receive the ſmoak up into his Noſtrils, and this do Morning and Evening: and every time you thus Fume him, you ſhall alſo waſh his eyes inwardly, either with the water of Eye-bright ſimply, or with the water of Eye-bright, and the juyce of Ground Ivy mixt together. Now I have known many do miſtake this ground Ivy, and ſuppoſe that the Ivy which is common, and runs along on the ground to be Ground Ivy, but it is not ſo: for Ground Ivy is a Weed which commonly grows in bottoms of Hedges, by Ditch ſides, in good big tufts, it hath a little round rough leaf, and

is jagged on the edges, and of all Simples none is more Soverain for the eyes.

CHAP. XI.

Another moſt excellent and approved receit for any deſperate blindneſs in a Horſe or any beaſt whatſoever.

TAke the ſhells of half a dozen Eggs, and cleanſe away the inner film from them ſo clean as may be, then lay thoſe ſhells between two clean Tyles, and ſo lay them in hot glowing Embers, and cover them all over, and on every ſide, and ſo let them lye a good ſpace till the ſhells be all dried, then take them up, and beat the ſhells to fine powder, then ſearce it through a Laun to fine duſt, then with a Gooſe quill blow this powder into the Horſes eye that is offended with Pin, Web, Film, or any thickneſs or foulneſs, and it is a certain Cure, and this do morning, noon, and night.

But if it be for any watered or inflamed eye, for any Bruiſe, Stripe, Lunatick, or deſcending humours, then take a ſpoonfull and a half of fine ſearced powder of white Sugar-Candy, and mix it with the former powder of ſhells: then with as much May Butter, (if you can get it) or for want thereof the beſt ſweet Butter without Salt, work all into a gentle Salve, and therewith anoynt the Horſes Eye morning, noon, and night, for it cleanſeth, purgeth, comforteth, and cooleth.

CHAP. XII.

Of the Pearl, Pin, Web, or any ſpot in a Horſes Eye.

THe Pearl, the Pin, the Web, or any unnatural ſpot, or thick Film over a Horſes Eye, proceedeth, for the moſt part, from ſome ſtroak received: Yet the Pearl, which is a little round, thick, white ſpot like a Pearl, growing on the ſight of the Horſes Eye, comes many times from natural cauſes, and even from deſcent of Syre and Dam, as I have often found by experience. The ſign is, the apparent ſight of the infirmity, and the Cure, according to the opinion of the moſt antient Farriers, is, to take ſix Leaves of ground Ivy, and a branch of Selladine, and

and bray them in a Morter, with a ſpoonfull or two of Womans Milk, and then ſtrain it through a clean Linnen Cloath, and put it into a Cloſe Glaſs, and then drop of it as much into the Horſes Eye at a time, as will fill half a Haſel-nut-ſhel; and it is the fitteſt to be done at night only. Do this thrice at the leaſt, and for three dayes after keep the Horſe as much as may be from any light. Other Farriers uſe to annoynt the Horſes Eyes with the Marrow of Goats Shanks, and Deers Shanks and Roſe-water mixt together, or elſe to waſh his Eyes with the juyce of the Berries and Leaves of ground Ivy, or other Ivy mixt with white Wine; and to blow into his Eyes the Powder of black flint, or of Land Oyſters: but that Powder muſt be made ſo exceeding fine, as by Art of ſearcing can any ways be brought to paſs: And for the taking away of any Film or Pearl, there is no Medicine more Soverain. There be other Farriers which uſe to take the lean of a Gammon of Bacon, and dry it, and thereof make a Powder, and blow it into the Horſes Eye. Others uſe to take white Ginger made into very fine Powder, and blow it into the Horſes Eyes; yet before you do ſo, if the Web have continued any long time, it ſhall not be amiſs, firſt to annoynt the Horſes Eye with Capons greaſe. Others uſe to blow into the Horſes Eye, the Powder of Elder Leaves dryed, or elſe the Powder of mans Dung dryed: or the Powder of a gray Whet-ſtone mixt with the Oyl of Hony, and put into the Horſes Eye: others uſe to take the yalk of an Egg with Salt burnt and beaten to Powder, and blow into the Horſes Eye: Or elſe the Powder of the Cuttle-bone. Others uſe to take either Elder Leaves dryed, or Mans Dung dryed, and mix it with the Powder of the ſhell or bone of the Crab fiſh, and blow it into the Horſes Eye. Others take Tutte beaten to Powder, and with a Quill blow it juſt upon the Pearl.

Other Farriers uſe to take (and ſure it is not inferiour, but better than any Medicine whatſoever) a good quantity of white Salt, and lapping it round up in a wet Cloath, put it into the fire, and burn it to a red Coal: then taking it forth and breaking it open you ſhall find in the midſt thereof a white Coar as big as a Bean, or Bigger: Then pick out that Coar and beat it to Powder, and mix with it a little white Wine, then after it hath ſtood a while, take the thickeſt of that lieth in the bottom, and put it into the Horſes eye, and with the thin waſh his eye, do thus once a day till the Pearl be conſumed.

Others uſe to take the juyce of Rue, and put it into the Horſes eye, or elſe to make a hole in an Egg, and put forth all that is within it, and fill the Shell with Pepper, and cloſing it in an earthen pot, put it into a hot burning Oven till it be quite hot, then take it forth, and beat the Pepper to powder, and blow thereof into the Horſes eye. Others uſe to take of Pummiſtone, of Tartarum, and Salgemma of each like weight, and being beaten into very fine powder, to blow a little of that into the Horſes eye, continuing ſo to do till the eye be well. Others uſe only to blow the powder of Sondevoire into the Horſes eye, affirming that it alone hath ſufficient force and vertue to break any Pearl or Web in a very ſhort ſpace, without any other compoſition: but ſurely I have found the powder of Flint, and the powder of white Salt burnt, to be much ſtronger.

CHAP. XIII.

A moſt excellent and infallible Cure for any Pin, Web, Pearl, or ſpot in a Horſes Eye.

☞ TAke an Egg, and make a hole in the top, put out half the white, then fill up the empty place with Salt and Ginger finely mixt together, then roaſt the Egg extreme hard, ſo as you may beat it to fine powder, having formerly lapt it in a wet Cloath, then morning and evening, after you have waſht the Horſes eye with the juyce of ground Ivy, or Eye-bright water, you ſhall blow of this powder therein, and it is a certain remedy.

CHAP. XIV.

Of the Haw in a Horſes Eye.

THe Haw is a Griſtle growing betwixt the nether eye-lid and the eye, and it covereth ſome times, more than the one half of the eye. It proceeds of groſs and tough Flegmy humours, which deſcending down from the Head, and knitting together, do in the end grow to a Horn or hard Griſtle. The ſigns thereof are a watering of the eye, and an unwilling opening of the nether lid, beſides an apparent ſhew of the Haw it ſelf, if with your Thumb you do put down the

the nether lid of the Horſes eye. The Cure is, take a Needle and a double Thred, put it through the tip of the Horſes ear, which done, put the Needle likewiſe through the upper Eye-lid of the Horſe upwards, and ſo draw up the Eye-lid, and faſten it to the Ear, then with your Thumb put down the nether lid, and you ſhall plainly ſee the Haw: then thruſt your Needle through the edge of the Haw, and with the Thred draw it out, ſo as you may lap it about your finger, then faſten the Thred about your little finger, to hold it conſtantly, and then with a very ſharp knife cut croſs the Griſtle of the inſide next the Horſes Eye, and ſo ſeparating the skin and the fat from the Griſtle, cut the Griſtle quite out; then cutting your threds draw them clean out, both of the Eye-lids, and out of the Haw: then waſh all the Horſes Eye either with Ale, Beer, or white wine, and pluck away all the long hairs from about the Horſes Eyes, being ſure to leave no blood within the Horſes Eye. And in this manner of Cure you muſt obſerve, that by no means you cut away too much of the waſh or fat by the Haw, or any part of the black that groweth about the end of the Haw, for that will make the Horſe blear-eyed. There be other Farriars which uſe after they have cut out the Haw, to annoint the Eye ſix dayes after with Sallet Oyl, the Marrow of Sheeps ſhanks and Salt mixt together.

Others do take the juyce of ground Ivy ſtampt in a Morter, with the juyce of Ivy berries, and mix them either with water or white Wine, and ſo Plaiſter-wiſe lay it to the Horſes Eye, renewing it morning and evening, and it will eat away the Haw. Others uſe after the Haw is cut away, to lay to the Eye a Plaiſter of Camomill and of Honey beaten together; and of all which is ſufficient enough. Now you are to note by the way, that the Horſe which hath one Haw, commonly hath two, for they continually go together.

CHAP. XV.

Of Moon-Eyes, or Lunatick-Eyes.

THe Moon-eyes, or Lunatick-eyes, are of all ſore eyes the moſt dangerous and noyſome, and do proceed from hot humours, deſcending from the head, and ſtirred up by the extremity of over-riding, or compelling a Horſe to do more than nature will give him leave:

leave: as I have ſeen a ſlothfull and heavy Horſe brought to be Moon-eyed by the folly of his Rider, who would force him to ſtand and Trot, contrary to the vigour of his ſpirit: So likewiſe I have ſeen delicate metal'd Horſes brought to be Moon-eyed, when the Riders would not temper the freeneſs of their natures, but have given them leave to run into all violence. Now they be called Moon-eyes, becauſe if the Farrier do obſerve them, he ſhall perceive that at ſome times of the Moon the Horſe wi l ſee very prettily, and at ſome times of the Moon he will ſee nothing at all. Now the ſigns hereof are, when the Horſes eyes are at the beſt, they will look yellowiſh and dim, and when they are at the worſt, they will look red, fiery, and angry.

The Cure is, to lay all over the Temples of the Horſes head, the plaiſter of pitch, Rozen, and Maſtick, mentioned in the Chapter of watry eyes: then under each of his eyes with a ſharp knife make a ſlit of an inch long about four fingers beneath his eyes, and at leaſt an inch wide of the eye Veins; then with a Cornet looſen the skin about the breadth of a Groat, and thruſt therein a round piece of Leather as broad as a two pence with a hole in the midſt, to keep the hole open: and look to it once a day, that the matter may not be ſtopped, but continually run the ſpace of ten dayes: then take the Leather out, and heal the Wound with a little flax dipt in this Salve. Take of Turpentine, of Honey, and of Wax, of each a like quantity, and boyl them together, which being a little warmed, will be liquid to ſerve your purpoſe; and take not away the plaiſters which are upon his Temples untill of themſelves they fall away; which being faln, then with a ſmall hot drawing Iron make a Star in the midſt of each Temple-vein, where the plaiſters did lye, which Star would have a hole in the midſt, made with the button end of your hot drawing Iron in this ſort

Now there be other Farriers, which inſtead of the ſlits under the eye, and the pieces of Leather, which is a plain Rowel, only do take a ſmall blunt hot Iron, and about an inch and an half beneath the nether lid, to burn ſome five holes all of a row, according to the compaſs of the Horſes eye, and to burn thoſe holes even unto the bone, and then once a day to anoynt them with freſh Greaſe, or ſweet Butter.

CHAP.

CHAP. XVI.

Of the Canker in the Eye.

A Canker in the Eye cometh of a rank and corrupt blood, deſcending from the Head into the Eye, where it congealeth and breedeth a little Worm in manner as it were the head of a Piſmire, which groweth in the nether end of the Horſes Eye next to his Noſeward: it proceedeth many times into the Griſtle of the Noſe, which if it chance to eat through, it will then paſs into the head, and ſo kill the horſe. The ſigns hereof are, you ſhall ſee red Pimples, ſome great and ſome ſmall, both within and without the eye, upon the Eye-lids, and alſo the eye it ſelf will look red, and be full of very corrupt matter. The Cure, according to the antient Farriers, is, to take as much burnt Allom as an Hazel Nut, and as much of green Copperas, and bake them both together upon a Tile-ſtone, and then grind them into Powder, and put thereto a quarter of a ſpoonfull of Honey, and mix them all together, and then with a Clout dipt therein, rub the ſore till it bleed: and do thus ſeven dayes together, and it will Cure the Canker. There be other Farriers which for this Canker in a Horſes eye, will firſt let the Horſe blood in the Neck-vein of the ſame ſide the ſore Eye is, and take away to the quantity of a pottle of blood: then take of Roch-Allom, and of green Copperas, of each half a pound, of white Copperas one ounce, and boyl them in three pints of running Water, untill the half be conſumed: then take it from the fire, and once a day waſh his Eye with this water, being made luke-warm, with a fine Linnen Cloath, and clenſe the eye therewith, ſo as it may look raw, and do this till the Eye be whole.

CHAP. XVII.

For a Stripe or blow upon a Horſes Eye.

IF a Horſe ſhall catch any ſtripe or blow upon his Eye, either with Whip, Rod, Cudgel, or any ſuch like miſchance, or by one Horſes biting of another when they either play or fight: Then for the

the Cure, thereof (if you take it when it is new done) you ſhall only blow into his eye either the Powder of Sandevoire, or the fine Powder of white Salt, after the Eye hath been waſht with a little Beer; but if the eye be more ſore, and have continued longer, then you ſhall take a ſmall Loaf of Bread, and pull out all the Crums; then fill the Loaf full of burning Coals, untill it be well burned within, then take off that Cruſt and put it in white Wine, and after it is well ſoaked lay it to the ſore, then take Sope-water and cold water mixt together, and waſh all the Eye-brows therewith, and if for all that it go not away, then you ſhall let him blood on the Temple-veins; and if he do rub or chafe his eye, you ſhall let him blood on the Veins under his Eyes, and waſh his eyes with cold Sope-water; but if his Eyes do chance to look red with the blow, then you ſhall lay unto them a Plaiſter of red Lead and Sallet-Oyl beaten well together. Others uſe to take the juyce of Plantain, ſtampt and mixt with white Wine, and ſo laid to the ſore Eye. Others uſe both for this Diſeaſe, or any other ſore eye, to ſtamp ſtrong Nettles with a little Beer, and then ſtraining it to ſquirt thereof into the Horſes eye, twice or thrice together: then to put of the fine Powder of Sandevoire a little into his Eyes, and then be carefull to keep the Horſes Eye from Wind or Cold: but if you muſt needs ride him, then put a Woollen Cloath before the Horſes Eye; alſo it is not amiſs to let him blood on his Eye-veins, and then twice dreſſing will be ſufficient.

☞ Others Farriers uſe firſt to annoynt the ſore eye three dayes together with Hens or Capons greaſe, to mollifie it: then take a little live Honey, and warming it, wipe it into the Horſes Eye with a feather. Others take the juyce of Plantain mixt with Honey, or elſe the juyce of Time mixt with Honey, and put it into the Eye. Others uſe to take the aſhes of an old ſhooe-ſole burnt in an Oven, and put it into the Horſes Eye; or elſe the Powder of a gray Whetſtone blown into the ſore eye; both are ſpeedy remedies. Others uſe to take the juyce of Smallage, and of Fennel, and mixing them with the white of an Egg, put it into the Horſes Eye once a day till the eye be whole.

CHAP.

CHAP. XVIII.

For a Wart in the Eye.

A Wart in a Horſes Eye, is a fleſhy excreſcion, or a fleſhy knot growing either upon the Eye, or upon the edge or inſide of the Eye-lids, it proceedeth from a thick Flegm, which deſcendeth to the eye, by means that the Horſe is too much kept in a dark Stable without light: and this infirmity will make a Horſes eye conſume and grow little. The Cure is, to take Roch Allom, and burn it on a Tile-ſtone, and then put as much white Copperas thereunto not burnt, and grind them to Powder, then lay ſome of that Powder juſt upon the head of the Wart, and do this once a day till the Wart be conſumed away.

CHAP. XIX.

For an Inflammation in a Horſes Eye.

HOrſes may diverſly have Inflammations in the Eyes; as by long ſtanding in the Stable, with foul feeding and no exerciſe, or by Moats falling into his eyes, or by rankneſs of Blood, and ſuch like, any of which will breed an Inflammation or ſoreneſs in the eye. The ſigns are itching and rubbing of the Eyes, and a little ſwelling, with ſome loathneſs to open the Eye-lids. The Cure is, firſt to let him blood upon the Temple-veins, and upon the Eye-veins, and then to waſh his Eyes in Milk and Honey mixt together. Others after blood-letting, will waſh the Horſes Eyes with Honey and Aloes Epatica mixt together: And others will waſh his Eyes with Aloes diſſolved in white Wine, any of which is approved to be moſt excellent for any ſore Eye.

CHAP. XX.

Of the Impoſtume in the Ear of a Horſe.

IMpoſtumes which breed in the Ear of a Horſe proceed from divers cauſes, as from ſome great blow about the head, or from Wringings with a hard halter, or from ſome evil humours congealed in the ears by ſome extreme cold. The ſigns whereof appear plainly by the burning and painfull ſwelling of the roots of the ears, and the other parts thereabout. The cure thereof, is firſt to ripe the Impoſtume with this plaiſter: take of Linſeed beaten into powder, and Wheat-flower, of each half a pint, of Honey a pint, of Hogs greaſe, otherwiſe called Barrows greaſe, one pound; warm all theſe things together in an earthen pot, and ſtir them continually with a flat ſtick or ſlice, untill they be throughly mingled and incorporated together, and then ſpread ſome of this plaiſter being warm upon a piece of linnen cloth or ſoft white leather, ſo broad as the ſwelling and no more, and lay it warm unto it, and ſo let it remain one whole day, and then renew it again, continuing ſo to do, untill it either do break, or elſe grow ſo ripe that you may launce it downwards, ſo that the matter may have paſſage out, then tent it with this tent of flax dipped in this ſalve even to the bottom, that is to ſay, take of Mel roſatum, of Sallet oyl and Turpentine, of each two ounces, and mingle them together, and make the horſe a biggen of Canvaſe to cloze in the ſore, ſo as the tent with the oyntment may abide within the ſore, renewing the tent once a day untill it be whole: but if the Horſe have pain in his ears, without any great pain or Inflammation, then thruſt into his ear a little black Wool, dipt in the oyl of Camomile, and that will eaſe him: but if the Impoſtume be broken before you perceive it, and that you ſee matter run from the Horſes ears, then you ſhall take of oyl of Roſes, of Venice Turpentine, and Honey, of each like quantity, and mixing them well together, warm it luke-warm upon a few coals, and then dipping black wool therein, thruſt it down into the Horſes ear that runneth, renewing it once a day till the ear leave running.

CHAP

CHAP. XXI.

Of the Pole-evil.

THe Pole evil is a great ſwelling inflammation, or Apoſtume in the nape of the Horſes neck, juſt between his ear, towards his main, and proceedeth ſometimes from the Horſes ſtruggling or ſtriving in his halter, eſpecially if the halter be of hard new twound Hemp; ſometimes it proceedeth from evil humours gathered together in that place, or elſe from ſome ſtripe or blow given to the Horſe by ſome rude Keeper, Carter, or Man of little diſcretion: for that part being the weakeſt and tenderest part about the head, is the ſooneſt offended and grieved with Sorances. The ſigns of this diſeaſe is a apparent ſwelling between the Horſes ears, and on each ſide his neck, which in continuance of time, will break of its own accord, yet doth ever rot more inwardly than outwardly, from whence it comes that this diſeaſe is more commonly called of our common and ignorant Farriers, the Fiſtula in the neck, than the Pole-evil; and in truth it is an Ulcer ſo hollow and ſo crooked, and ſo full of ſharp matter, like unto like, that it differeth very little from a Fiſtula, and is of all Impoſtumes, except the Fiſtula it ſelf, the hardeſt to cure: therefore I would wiſh every carefull Farrier to take this cure in hand ſo ſoon as is poſſible, that is to ſay, before it break, if it may be.

Now for the general cure (according to the opinion of the antient Farriers) it is thus: Firſt, if it be not broken, ripe it with a plaiſter of Hogs greaſe, laid unto it ſo hot as may be, and make a biggen for the pole of his head to keep it from could, which biggen would have two holes open, ſo as his ears may ſtand out, and renew the plaiſter every day once untill that break, keeping the ſore place as warm as may be; and if that you ſee it will not break ſo ſoon as you would have it, then look where it is ſofteſt, and moſt meeteſt to be opened, take a round hot Iron or a Copper-Iron (for that is the better) as big as a mans little finger, and ſharp at the point, made like an Arrow head, and then about two inches beneath the ſoft place, thruſt it in a good deepneſs upwards, ſo as the point of your Cauterizing Iron may come out at the ripeſt place, to the intent that the

matter may deſcend downward, and come out at the nether hole, which would alwayes be kept open: And therefore tent it with a tent of flax dipt in hogs greaſe warm, and lay alſo a plaiſter of hogs greaſe upon the ſame, renewing it every day once for the ſpace of four daies, which is done chiefly to kill the heat of the fire: then at the four dayes end, take of Turpentine half a pound, clean waſhed in nine ſundry waters, and after that throughly dryed, by thruſting out the water with a ſlice on the diſhes ſide; then put thereunto two yolks of eggs, and a little Saffron, and mingle them well together. That done, ſearch the depth of the hole, either with a quill or a probe, and make a tent of a peice of dry ſpunge never wet, ſo long as it may near reach the bottom, and ſo big as it may fill the wound, and annoint the tent with the afore-ſaid oyntment, and thruſt it into the wound either with that quill, or elſe by winding it up with your finger and thumb by little and little, until you have thruſt it home, and then lay on the plaiſter of hogs greaſe made luke-warm, renewing it every day once until it be whole: but if the ſwelling ceaſe, then you need not uſe the plaiſter, but only to tent it; and as the matter decreaſeth, ſo make your tent every day leſſer and leſſer, until the wound be perfectly cured.

Now if this diſeaſe of the Pole-evil have broken of it own ſelf, and by neglecting looking unto, have continued ſo long that it is turned to a Fiſtula, which you ſhall know both by the great and crooked hollowneſs inwardly, and by a ſharp thin water which would iſſue out there outwardly, then you ſhall take (according to the opinion of the Farriers) of unſlakt Lime, and of Arſnick, of each like quantity, beat them together into very fine powder, put thereto of the juyce of Garlick, of Onions, and of Wall-worr, of each alike quantity, and of Holly as much as all the reſt, boyl them upon a ſoft fire, and ſtir them all well together until they be as thick as an Oyntment; then waſh the ſore with very ſtrong Vinegar, and fill the hole full of the afore-ſaid Oyntment, by dipping a tent therein twice a day; then lay a plaiſter of Hogs greaſe upon the Tent to make it keep in, and uſe this until the Horſe be whole.

Other Farriers uſe to take Orpiment, unſlackt lime, and Verdigreaſe, of each like quantity, temper them with the juyce of Pellitory, black Ink, Honey and ſtrong Vinegar, of each like quantity,

tity, boyl them and ſtir them well together, untill they be very thick, then make thereof ſmall rouls, and put them into the hollow place of the ſame ſorrance. Now you are to note, that both theſe and the laſt recited ſalve before this, are only to kill the rankerous and ſharp humour which brings the ſore unto a Fiſtula, which as ſoon as you have killed, which you ſhall know by the matter which will be white and thick, then you ſhall heal up the ſore either with the powder of Savin, or the powder of honey and lime baked together, or elſe by annointing it with tarr and ſallet oyl, or freſh hogs greaſe mixt together. There be other Farriers which for this ſorrance do firſt open the ſore with a hot Iron, and then take red lead and black ſope, and mixing them well with water till it be good and thick, tent the Horſe therewith till he be whole.

Others uſe to take a quart of water, half a pound of roch allom, four penny-worth of Mercury, a quarter of a pound of Verdigreaſe, and mixing them well together, waſh the horſes ſore with this water till it begin to dry up, and then heal it with the powders before named. See further in the new Additions for the Fiſtula, marked thus ☞.

CHAP. XXII.

A true and certain approved Cure for any Pole-evil whatſoever.

FIrſt ſhave off the hair from the ſwelling, then lay on a plaiſter of ☞ black Shoo-makers Wax, ſpread upon white Allom'd leather, and let it lye till it have ripened and broke the Impoſtume: then take a pint of Wine vinegar, and when it is boyling hot, mix with it as much clay lome with the ſtraws and all in it, as will bring the vinegar unto a thick poultes, then apply this as hot as the horſe can ſuffer it to the ſore, and renew it once a day till the impoſtume be whole.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXIII.

Of a Horſe that is Lave-eard, and how to help him.

FOr a Horſe to be Lave-eard, is as foul a diſgrace and as much deformity to his beauty, as to want the true proportion and uſe of any outward member whatſoever. It proceedeth from a natural infirmity, and is ingendred even from the firſt conception, and although few of our Farriers either have endeavoured themſelves, or know how to help it; yet there is nothing more certain than that in this ſort it may be cured. Firſt, take your horſes ears, and place them in ſuch manner as you would have them ſtand, and then with two little boards, or pieces of Trenchers three fingers broad, having long ſtrings knit unto them, bind the ears ſo faſt in the places where they ſtand, that by no means or motion they may ſtir, then betwixt the head and the root of the ear, you ſhall ſee a great deal of empty wrinkled skin, which with your finger and your thumb you ſhall pull up, and then with a very ſharp pair of Sizers you ſhall clip away all the empty skin cloſe by the head: then with a needle and red ſilk you ſhall ſtitch the two ſides of the skin cloſe together, and then with a ſalve made of Turpentine, Deers ſuet, and Honey, of each li e quantity melted together, and made into an oyntment, heal up the ſore; which done, take away the ſplents which held up his ears, and you ſhall ſee within a ſhort time that his ears will keep the ſame place ſtill as you ſet them, without any alteration: And this you ſhall ever find to be as certain and true, as the healing of a cut finger.

CHAP. XXIV.

Of the Vives or hard Kirnels between the Chaps and the Neck.

THe Vives are certain great Kirnels which grow from the root of the Horſes ears, down to the lower part of his nether jaw, between the chap and the neck, they are in proportion, long, narrow and round, and are natural things, proper and due to every Horſe: but when either through rankneſs of blood, or abundance of corrupt humours

humours reſorting to that place, they begin to be inflamed, then they become very foul Sorrances and Impoſtumations moſt dangerous: they are inwardly very full of little white ſalt Kirnles, and they breed great pain in the Horſes throat. This diſeaſe as far forth as I can find by any demonſtration, is the diſeaſe which in men we call the Squinanſie, or Quinzie, and not as ſome of the old Farriers ſuppoſe, the Strangle, for that hath no coherence with the infirmity. For the ſigns of the diſeaſe, there needs ſmall repetition, inſomuch as the grief is apparent to the eye: and the cure, according to the opinion of the oldeſt Farriers, is thus; If you ſee the Kirnels begin to rankle and ſwell, you ſhall take the Horſes ear, and laying it down alongſt the neck of the Horſe, at the very end or tip of the ear, cut a hole through the skin of the neck, the length of an Almond, or better; and then with a crooked Wire, pick our all thoſe Kirnels which you find inflamed: Which done, fill the hole full of Salt: then about the end of three dayes, you ſhall find the ſore begin to matter: then waſh it either with bark water, or with the juyce of Sage: then take of Honey, of ſweet Butter, and of Tar, of each half a ſpoonfull, and melt them together, and as ſoon as you have waſht the ſore clean, put into it of this oyntment the quantity of a bean, and ſo dreſs the Horſe once a day until it be whole.

There be others of our moſt ancient Engliſh Farriers, which for this Sorrance uſe firſt to draw the ſore right down in the midſt with a hot Iron from the root of the ear, ſo far as the tip of the ear will reach, being pulled down, and under the root again draw two ſtrikes on each ſide, like an Arrow head in this form: then in the midſt of the firſt Line, launce them with a Launcet, and taking hold of the kirnels with a pair of fine thin Pinſons, pull them ſo far forwards as you may cut the Kirnels out without hurting the vein: that done, fill the hole with ſalt, and heal it up as is afore ſaid. Now moſt of the Italian Farriers uſe this cure: Firſt, take a ſpunge ſteeped well in ſtrong Vinegar, and bind it unto the ſore place, renewing it twice a day untill the Kirnels be rotten: That done, launce it then in the nethermoſt part, where the matter 'yeth, and let it out, and then fill up the hole with ſalt finely brayed, and the next day waſh all the filth away with warm water and a ſpunge, and then annoynt the place with Honey and Fitch flower mixt together; but in any caſe

caſe beware, during this cure, you touch not the Kirnels with your bare finger, for fear of venoming the place, which is very apt for a Fiſtula to breed in. Now there be other Engliſh Farriers, which uſe either to ripen the ſore by laying to a plaiſter of hot hogs greaſe, or a plaiſter of Barley meal mixt with three ounces of Raiſons, ſod well together in ſtrong Wine; or elſe they cut out the Kirnels. Now whether you cut them out, burn them out, or rot them out, (of all which I hold rotting the beſt,) you ſhall ever fill the hole with nettles and ſalt being chopt and mixt together, or elſe rent it with tents dipt in water and mixt with ſalet oyl and ſalt. Others uſe to burn them downwards with a hot iron in the middeſt, from the ear to the Jaw bone, drawing two croſs ſtroaks, and then launch it in the middeſt, and pluck out the Kirnels, and fill the hole with bay Salt, and the crops of nettls well chopt and mixt together: or elſe put only Salt into the hole, and take the crops of nettles well chopt and mixt with bay Salt, and two ſpoonfull of ſtrong vinegar, and ſtrain it, and put in either ear a ſpoonful thereof, and put ſome black wool after it, and ſo bind up his ears.

Others uſe to ripen them, either by laying to the ſore wet hay, or wet horſe litter: And as ſoon as they are ripe, (which you ſhall know by the ſoftneſs) to launch the skin, and take out the Kirnels, and then fill the hole with the powder of honey and unſlaked lime mixt together, and burnt upon a Tile-ſtone. Others uſe likewiſe after the Kirnels are ripened and taken out, to take of Agrimony, Honey, and Violet leaves, of each like quantity, and ſtamping them well together, to plaiſter the ſore therewith, till it be whole. Others uſe after the Kirnels are taken out, to waſh the ſore with Copperas-Water, and then to rent the hole with flax dipt in the white of an Egg, and after to heal it with Wax, Turpentine, and Hogs greaſe molten well together.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXV.

A more rare and certain approved Medicine, which will cure the Vives, without either burning, melting, rotting, or any ſuch violent extremity.

TAke a peny-worth of Pepper beaten to fine powder, of Swines greaſe one ſpoonful, the juyce of a handful of Rue, of vinegar two ſpoonful, mix them all well together, and put it equally into both the horſes ears, and tye them up with two ſtrings, or elſe ſtitch them together: Then ſhake the ears that the Medicine may ſink downwards: Which done, you ſhall let the Horſe blood in the neck-vein, and in the temple-veins. And this cure is infallible.

CHAP. XXVI.

Another cure for the Vives, moſt certain and approved.

IF in any of the former receipts you can find either difficulty or doubt, then to make certain and ſpeedy Work: firſt, ſhave off the hair from the ſweld place, and then clap upon it a plaiſter of Shoo-makers Wax, and remove it not till the ſore break, then renew the plaiſter and it will both heal and dry it.

CHAP. XXVII.

Of the Strangle.

THE Strangle (howſoever our old Farriers make a long diſcourſe thereof) is not (as they ſuppoſe) a kind of Quinzy, but a mean inflammation of the throat, proceeding from ſome Cholerick or bloody fluxion, which comes out of the branches of the Throat veins into thoſe parts, and there breedeth ſome hot inflammation, being ſtirred up either by ſome great Winter cold, or cold taken after Labour: It is a great and a hard ſwelling between the Horſes nether chaps, upon the roots of the Horſes tongue, and about his throat, which ſwelling, if it be not prevented, will ſtop the horſes

windpipe, and ſo ſtrangle or choak him: from which effect, and none other, the name of this diſeaſe took his derivation. The ſigns of this diſeaſe, beſides the apparent ſign thereof, and the palpale feeling of the ſame, is, the Horſes temples of his head will be hollow, and his tongue will hang out of his mouth, his head and eyes will be ſwoln, and the paſſage of his throat ſo ſtopt, that he can neither eat nor drink, and his breath will be exceeding ſhort. The cure thereof, according to the moſt antient Farriers, is, with a round ſmall hot Iron to thruſt a hole through the skin on both ſides the weſſand, and then after it beginneth to matter, to mix butter, Tanners water, and Salt together, and every day annoynt the ſore therewith till it be whole. Others of the ancient Farriers uſe firſt to bathe the Horſes mouth and tongue with hot water, and then annoynt the ſore place with the gall of a Bull, that done, give him this drink. Take of old Oyl two pounds, of old Wine a quart, nine Figs, and nine Leeks heads well ſtamped and brayed together, and after you have boyled theſe a while, before you ſtrain them, put unto them a little Nitrum Alexandrinum, and give him a quart of this every morning and evening. Alſo you may if you will, let him blood in the Palate of the mouth, and pour wine and oyl into his Noſtrils, and alſo give him to drink the decoction of Figs and Nitrum ſodden together, or elſe to annoint his throat within with Nitre, Oyl, and Honey, or elſe with honey and hogs dung mixt together. Other Farriers uſe to rowel the horſe under the throat, and to draw the Rowel twice or thrice a day, annointing it with freſh butter, and keeping his head warm. Other of our later and better experienced Farriers, uſe firſt, (if his years will permit him) to let the Horſe blood in the Neck-vein, then to lay to the ſore this ripening plaiſter: Take of Mallows, Linſeed, Rue, Smalage and ground Ivy, of each like quantity, boil theſe together in the grounds of Beer: then put to it ſome Oyl de Bay, and a little Dia Althea, then take it off the fire, and make of it a plaiſter, and lay it to the ſore, ſuffering the horſe to drink no cold water: after the ſore is broken, lay bran ſteept in Wine unto it, till it be whole. Others uſe to cut the kirnels out between the jaws, and then to waſh the ſore with butter and beer, giving the horſe to drink new milk and garlick, and the juyce of the leaves of Birch, or in winter the bark of Birch, or elſe to anoynt it with tar and oyl till it be whole. Now, for mine own part, the beſt cure that ever I found for the Strangle, was this.

As

As ſoon as I found the ſwelling begin to ariſe between his chaps, to take a Wax-candle, and holding it under the Horſes chaps, cloſe unto the ſwelling, burn it ſo long till you can ſee the skin be burnt through, ſo that you may as it were raiſe it from the fleſh; that done, you ſhall lay unto it either wet hay, or wet horſe litter, and that will ripen it, and make it break: then lay a plaiſter unto it only of Shoomakers Wax, and that will both draw and heal it. Now if it break inward, and will not break outward, and ſo avoideth only at his Noſe, then you ſhall twice or thrice every day, perfume his head by burning under his noſtrils, either Frankincenſe or Maſtick, or elſe by putting a hot coal into wet hay, and ſo making the ſmoak thereof to aſcend up into the Horſes head: or elſe to blow the powder of Euforbium, with a quill into his noſe; and ſo note that whatſoever cureth the Vives, cureth the Strangle alſo.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Of the Cankerous Ulcer in the Noſe.

THat which we call the Cankerous Ulcer in the Noſe, is only a fretting humour, eating and conſuming the fleſh, and making it all raw within, and not being holpen in time will eat through the Griſtle of the noſe. It commeth of corrupt blood, or elſe of a ſharp hunger ingendred by means of ſome extreme cold.

The ſigns are the horſe will oft bleed at the noſe, and all the fleſh within his noſe will be raw, and filthy ſtinking ſavours, and matter will come out at the noſe.

The cure thereof, according to the antient Farriers, is: Take of green Copperas and of Allom of each a pound, of white Copperas one quartern, and boyl theſe in a pottle of running water untill a pint be conſumed: then take it off, and put thereunto half a pint of honey, then cauſe his head to be holden up with a drenching ſtaff, and ſquirt into his noſtrils with a ſquirt of Braſs or Pewter, ſome of this water being luke-warm, three or four times one after another; but betwixt every ſquirting give him liberty to hold down his head, and to ſnort out the filthy matter: for otherwiſe perhaps you might choak him: and after this it ſhall be good alſo without holding up his head any more, to waſh and rub his noſtrils with a

fine clout bound to a ſticks end and dipt in the fore-ſaid water, and do thus once a day untill the Horſe be whole. Other Farriers uſe if they ſee this Canker to be of great heat, and burning in the ſore with exceeding great pain, then you ſhall take the juyce of Purſlane, Lettice, and Nightſhade, of each like quantity, and mix them together, and waſh the ſore with a fine cloth dipt therein, or elſe ſquirt it up into his noſtrils, and it will allay the heat.

☞ Others take of Hyſſope, Sage, and Rue, of each a good handful, and ſeeth them in urine and water to the third part of them: then ſtrain them out, and put in a little white Copperas, Honey, and Aquavitæ, and ſo either waſh or ſquirt the place with it; then when the Canker is killed, make this water to heal it: Take of Rib-wort, Betony, and Daiſies, of each a handful: then ſeeth them well in Wine and Water, and waſh the ſore three or four times a day therewith untill it be whole. Others uſe alſo to take Chryſtal, and beating it into fine powder, to ſtrow it upon the Canker, and it will kill it.

CHAP. XXIX.

Of Bleeding at the Noſe.

MAny horſes, (eſpecially young horſes) are oft ſubject to this bleeding at the Noſe, which I imagine proceedeth either from the much abundance of blood, or that the vein which endeth in that place is either broken, fretted or opened. It is opened many times by means that blood aboundeth too much, or that it is too fine, or too ſupple, and ſo pierceth through the vein. Again, it may be broken by ſome violent ſtrain, cut, or blow; And laſtly, it may be fretted and gnawn through by the ſharpneſs of the blood, or elſe by ſome other evil humour contained therein. The cure is, according to the ancient Farriers, to take the juyce of the roots of Nettles, and ſquirt it up into the horſes noſtrils, and lay upon the nape of the horſes neck a wad of Hay dipt in cold water, and when it waxeth warm, take it off, and lay on a cold one. Other Farriers uſe to take a pint of red Wine, and put therein a quartern of Bole-armonick beaten into fine powder, and being made luke-warm, to pour the one half thereof the firſt day into his Noſtril that bleedeth, cauſing his head

head to be holden up, ſo as the Wine may not fall out, and the next day to give him the other half.

Others uſe to let the Horſe blood on the breaſt-vein, on the ſame ſide that he bleedeth, at ſeveral times: then take of Frankincenſe one ounce, of Aloes half an ounce, and beat them into fine powder, and mingle them throughly with the whites of three Eggs until it be as thick as honey, and with ſoft Hares hair thruſt it up into his noſtrils, filling the hole full of Aſhes, Dung, or Hogs dung, or Horſes dung mixt with Chalk and Vinegar.

Now for mine own part, when none of theſe will remedy or help, (as all have failed me at ſome times,) then I have uſed this, take two ſmall whip-coards, and with them garter him exceeding hard about ſome ten or twelve inches above his knees of his fore-legs, and juſt beneath his elbows, and then keep the nape of his neck as cold as may be, with moiſt cloaths, or wet hay, and it will ſtaunch him preſently.

CHAP. XXX.

Of the bloody rifts, or chops in the palat of the Horſes mouth.

THeſe Chops, Clefts, or Rifts, in the palat of a Horſes mouth, do proceed (as ſome Farriers ſuppoſe,) from the eating of rough Hay, full of of whins, thiſtles, or other prickling ſtuff, provender full of ſharp ſeed, which by continual pricking and fretting the furrows of the mouth, do cauſe them to rankle, ſwell, and breed corrupt blood and ſtinking matter, and without ſpeedy prevention, that Ulcer will turn to the fouleſt Canker.

The Cure thereof is, (according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers) to waſh the ſore places very clean with Salt and Vinegar mixt together, then to anoynt it with Honey and Allom mixt together. Other Farriers uſe (eſpecially if the palat be much ſwelled,) to prick the roof of the mouth with a hot Iron, that the humours may iſſue out abundantly, and then to anoynt the place with Honey and Onions boyled together, till they be whole.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXI.

Of the Giggs or Bladders in a Horſes mouth.

THeſe Giggs, Bladders, or Flaps in a Horſes mouth, are little ſoft ſwellings, or rather puſtules with black heads, growing in the inſide of the Horſes lips, next under his great jaw-teeth: they will ſometimes be as great as a Wal-nut, and are ſo painful unto him, that they make him let his meat fall out of his mouth, or at leaſt keep it in his mouth unchawed, whereby the Horſe can in no wiſe proſper: they do proceed either of eating too much graſs, or naughty rough pricking Hay or Provender, they are moſt apparently to be felt: and the Cure is, (according to the opinion of the oldeſt and moſt experienced Farriers) firſt to draw out the Horſes tongue of the one ſide of his mouth, and then take a Lancet and ſlit the ſwellings the length of a Date, and then with a Probe pick out all the Kirnels like Wheat corns very clean: then take the yolk of an Egg, and as much ſalt as will temper it thick like leaven: then make it into little Balls, and thruſt into every hole, and fail not to do ſo once a day untill it be whole.

Other Farriers uſe after they have ſlit them with an inciſion Knife, and thruſt out the corruption, only to waſh the ſore places either with Vinegar and ſalt, or elſe with Allom water. Others uſe with a ſmall hot Iron to burn the ſwellings, and then waſh them with Beer and Salt, or Ale and Salt, and it will heal them. Now that you may prevent this Diſeaſe before it come, it ſhall be good to pull out the Horſes tongue often, and to waſh it with Wine, Beer, and Ale, and ſo ſhall no Bliſters breed thereon, nor any other Diſeaſe.

CHAP. XXXII.

Of the Lampaſs.

THe Lampaſs is a ſwelling or growing up of the fleſh, which over-groweth the upper teeth, which are the ſhears in the upper chap, and ſo hindreth the Horſe from eating. They do proceed

ceed from abundance of blood, reſorting to the firſt Furrow or bar of the mouth, I mean that which is next to the upper fore-teeth; it is moſt apparent to be ſeen, and therefore needeth no other ſigns. The cure is, (according to the cuſtom of the oldeſt Farriers,) firſt with a Lancet to let him blood in divers places of the ſwelling fleſh: then take an Iron made at one end broad and thin, and turned up

according to this Figure, and heating it red hot, burn out all that ſuperfluous ſweld fleſh which overgrows the fore-teeth, and then annoynt the ſore place with freſh butter until it be whole. Others uſe after it is burnt out, only to rub the ſore place with Salt only, or waſh it with Salt and Vinegar till it be whole. Others uſe to take a hooked Knife made very ſharp and very hot, and therewith cut the ſwoln places in two parts, croſs againſt the teeth; but if they be a little ſweld, then cut but the third rank from the teeth, and ſo let him bleed well: then rub it with a little Salt, and the Horſe will be well: but if you find afterwards that either through too much burning, or cutting, or through the eating of too coarſe meat, that the wound doth not heal, but rather rankle, then you ſhall take a Saucer full of honey, and twelve pepper-corns, and bray them together in a morter, and temper them up with Vinegar, and boyl them a while, and then once a day annoint the ſore therewith till it be whole.

CHAP. XXXIII.

Of the Camery, or Frounce.

THe Camery, or Frounce in Horſes, are ſmall Pimples, or warts in the midſt of the palat of the mouth above, and they are ſoft and ſore, they will alſo ſometimes breed both in his Tongue and in his Lips: it proceedeth ſometimes from the eating of frozen graſs, or by drawing frozen duſt with the graſs into their mouths: ſometimes by eating of moiſt hay, that Rats or other Vermine have piſt upon, and ſometimes by licking up of venom. The ſigns are, the apparent ſeeing of the pimples, or whelks, and a forſaking of his food, both through the ſoreneſs of them, and through the unſavourineſs and rankneſs of the food that he hath eaten before.

The Cure (according to the opinion of the oldeſt Farriers) is, firſt

firſt to let him blood in the two greateſt veins under his tongue, and then waſh all the ſore places with vinegar and Salt: Then get the Horſe new bread, which is not hot, and give it him to eat, and the Horſe will do well enough. But take heed you give but a ſmall quantity of ſuch bread for fear of Surfeit, which is both apt and dangerous.

Others uſe with a hot Iron to burn the pimples on the head, and then waſh them with Wine and Salt, or Ale and Salt untill they bleed, and they will ſoon heal. Other Farriers uſe to take out his tongue, and to prick the veins thereof in ſeven or eight places, and likewiſe under his upper Lip alſo, and let him bleed well: then rub every ſore place with Salt well: then the next day waſh all the ſore places with white Wine warm, or elſe with ſtrong vinegar, and rub it again with Salt: then for two or three dayes let the Horſe drink no cold water, and he will do well.

CHAP. XXXIV.

Of the Canker in the mouth.

A Canker is ſaid of the ancient Farriers to be nothing but the rawneſs of the mouth and tongue, which is full of very ſore blifters, from whence will run a very hot and ſharp lye, which will fret and corrode, or rot the fleſh whereſoever it goeth. The ſigns are, the apparent ſight of the ſore, beſides the forſaking of his meat, becauſe he cannot ſwallow it down, but lets it lye half chewed between his jaws, and ſometimes when he hath chewed his meat, he will thruſt it out of his mouth again, and his breath will ſavour very ſtrongly, chiefly when he is faſting.

☞ This diſeaſe proceedeth oftenſt from ſome unnatural heat coming from the ſtomach, and ſometimes from the venom of filthy food.

The Cure is (as the eldeſt Farriers inſtruct us) to take of Allom half a pound, of Honey a quarter of a pint, of Collumbine leaves, of Sage, of each a handful, boyl all theſe together in three pints of running Water, untill one pint be conſumed, and waſh all the ſore places therewith, ſo as they may bleed, and do thus once every day untill it be whole. Other Farriers uſe firſt to caſt the Horſe, and with a roling pin to open his mouth, then with a crooked Iron

wrapt

wrapt about with Tow or Flax, to take out all the ſtinking graſs, or other meat that lyeth in his jaws, and under the root of his tongue: then when you have cleanſed it thus, you ſhall heat ſtrong wine Vinegar ſomewhat warm, and then with the ſame Iron wrapt in Tow, and dipt in wine Vinegar, you ſhall waſh all the ſore places till they bleed: then waſh all his tongue and lips with the ſame Vinegar, and ſo let him riſe: and then feed him at leaſt ſeven dayes with warm Maſhes and hot grains; but in no wiſe with any hay, and he will ſoon be whole.

Other Farriers uſe to take of the juyce of Daffodil-roots ſeven drams, of juyce of Hounds-tongue as much, of Vinegar as much, of Allom one ounce: mix theſe well together, and waſh the Canker therewith once a day until it be whole. Others uſe to take of Savin, of Bay-ſalt, and of Rue, of each like quantity, and ſtamp them together with as much Barrows greaſe, and annoint the ſore places therewith until the Canker be killed, which you may know by the whiteneſs, and then healing it up only with Allom water.

Others uſe firſt to waſh the Canker till it bleed with warm Vinegar, to take a good quantity of Allom beaten into very fine powder, and to mix it with ſtrong Vinegar till it be as thick as a Salve: then to annoint all the ſore places therewith, and do not fail thus to do twice or thrice a day until the Canker be whole.

Now for mine own part, the beſt Cure that ever I found for this Sorrance, is, to take of Ginger and of Allom, of each like quantity, made into very fine powder: then with ſtrong Vinegar to mix them together till they be very thick like a Salve, then when you have waſht the Canker clean, either with Allom water, or with Vinegar, annoint it with this Salve, and in twice or thrice dreſſing, the Canker will be killed, and after it will heal ſpeedily.

CHAP. XXXV.

Of heat in the mouth and lips of a Horſe.

THe unnatural and violent heat which aſcendeth up from the ſtomach into the mouth, doth not alwayes breed a Canker, but ſometimes only heateth and inflameth the mouth and lips,

making them only ſwell and burn, ſo as the Horſe can take no joy in his food, but through the grief refuſeth his meat. The cure thereof is, firſt to turn up his upper lip, or that which is moſt ſwelled, and with a Lancet jag it lightly, ſo that it may bleed, and then waſh both that and all his mouth and tongue with Vinegar and Salt.

CHAP. XXXVI.

Of the Tongue being hurt with the bit, or otherwiſe.

IF the tongue of a Horſe be either hurt, cut, or galled by any accident or miſchance whatſoever, the beſt Cure is (as the oldeſt Farriers ſuppoſe) to take of Engliſh honey, and of ſalt Lard, of each like quantity, a little unſlecked Lime, and a little of the powder of Pepper: boyl them on a ſoft fire, and ſtir them well together till they be thick like unto an Oyntment: then waſh the Wound with white Wine warmed: after that, annoint the wound with the ſaid oyntment twice a day, and by no means let the Horſe wear any bit till he be whole.

Other Farriers uſe firſt to waſh the ſore with Allom water, and then to take the leaves of a black bramble, and to chop them together ſmall with a little Lard; that done, to bind it with a little clout, making it round like a ball: Then having dipped the round end in honey, to rub the tongue therewith once a day until it be whole.

CHAP. XXXVII.

Of the Barbes or Pappes underneath a Horſes tongue.

THe Barbes are two little paps which naturally do grow under every Horſes tongue whatſoever, in the nether jaws: yet if at any time they ſhoot out, and grow into an extraordinary length, or by the over-flow of humours become to be inflamed, then they are a Sorrance, and with the extremity of their pain, they hinder the Horſe from feeding. The cure of them is, both according to the opinion of the ancient and late Farriers, abſolutely to clip them away

away with a pair of ſhears cloſe to the jaw, and then to waſh the ſore either with water and ſalt, or elſe with Tartar and ſtrong vinegar mixt together, or elſe with vinegar and ſalt. Any of all which will heal them.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

Of the pain in a Horſes teeth, of Wolfs teeth, and jaw-teeth.

A Horſe may have pain in his teeth through divers occaſions, as partly by the deſcent of groſs humours from the head down unto the teeth and gums, which is very proper to Colts and young Horſes, and plainly to be ſeen by the rankneſs and ſwelling of the gums; and alſo he may have pain in his teeth, by having two extraordinary teeth, called the Woolfs teeth, which be two little teeth growing in the upper jaws, next unto the great grinding teeth, which are ſo painful to the Horſe, that he cannot indure to chaw his meat, but is forced either to let it fall out of his mouth, or elſe to keep it ſtill half chewed. Again, a Horſe will have a great pain in his teeth, when his upper jaw-teeth be ſo far grown, as they over-hang the nether jaw-teeth; and therewith alſo be ſo ſharp, as in moving his jaws, they cut and raze the inſides of his cheeks, even as they were razed with a Knife. Laſtly, a Horſe may have great pain in his teeth, when either by corruption of blood, or ſome other natural weakneſs, the Horſes teeth grow looſe and ſore, in ſuch manner, that through the tenderneſs thereof, he is not able to chaw or grind his food. Now for the ſeveral Cures of theſe infirmities, you ſhall underſtand, that firſt as touching the general pain in a Horſes teeth, which do come by means of the diſtillation of humours, it is thought fit by the ancienteſt Farriers, firſt to rub all the outſide of the Horſes gums with fine Chalk and ſtrong Vinegar well mixt together.

Other ancient Farriers uſe after they have ſo waſhed the gums, to ſtrow upon them the powder of Pomegranate Pills, and to cover the temples of the head with the plaiſter of Pitch, Rozen, and Maſtick molten together, as hath been before ſufficiently declared.

Now for the Cure of Woolfs teeth, or the jaw-teeth (according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers) it is thus. Firſt, cauſe the

Horſes head to be tyed up high to ſome poſt or rafter, and his mouth to be opened with a coard ſo wide, that you may eaſily ſee every part thereof: Then take an inſtrument of Iron, made in all points like unto a Carpenters Gouge, and with your left hand ſet the edge of the tool at the foot of the Woolfs teeth, on the outſide of the jaw, turning the hollow ſide of the tool downwards, holding your hand ſteadily, ſo as the tool may not ſlip nor ſwerve from the aforeſaid teeth: Then, having a mallet in your right hand, ſtrike upon the head of the tool a good ſtroak wherewith you may looſen the tooth, and make it bend inward, then ſtraining the midſt of your tool upon the Horſes nether jaw, wrinch the tooth outward with the inſide or hollow ſide of the tool, and thruſt it clean out of his head; Which done, ſerve the other Woolfs teeth on the other ſide in like manner, and then fill up the empty holes with Salt finely brayed.

☞ Other ancient Farriers uſe, (and I have in mine experience found it the better practice) only when the Horſe is either tyed up or faſt, and his mouth opened, to take a very ſharp file, and to file the wolfs teeth ſo ſmooth as is poſſible, and then waſh his mouth with a little Allom water. Now if the upper jaw-teeth over-hand the nether jaw-teeth, and ſo cut the inſide of the mouth as is aforeſaid, then you ſhall take your former tool or gouge, and with your Mallet ſtrike and pare all thoſe teeth ſhorter by little and little degrees, running alongſt them even from the firſt unto the laſt, turning the hollow ſide of your tool towards the teeth, by which means you ſhall not cut the inſides of the Horſes Cheeks: then with your file, file them all ſmooth without any raggedneſs, and then waſh the Horſes mouth with Vinegar and Salt. Laſtly, if the pain do proceed from the looſeneſs of the teeth, then the Cure is, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, firſt to caſt the Horſe, and prick all his Gums over with a Lancet, making them bleed well, then rub them all over with Sage and Salt, and it will faſten them again.

Others uſe to let the Horſe Blood in the vein under the Tail, next the Rump, and then to rub all his Gums with Sage, and to give him in his provender, the tender crops of black briers: or elſe waſh all his mouth with Honey, Sage, and Salt beaten together, and by no means let the Horſe eat any moiſt meat, for cold, moiſt,

and

and marriſh feeding in the Winter, only breedeth this diſeaſe of looſeneſs in the teeth, and it is of all other, moſt proper to the Sorrel Horſes.

CHAP. XXXIX.

Of diſeaſes in the neck and Withers, and firſt of the crick in the neck.

THe Crick in the neck of the Horſe, is, when he cannot turn his neck any way, but holds it ſtill right forth, in ſo much that he cannot bow down his head to take up his meat from the ground, but with exceeding great pain; and ſurely it is a kind of convulſion of the ſinews, which proceedeth from cold cauſes, of which we have ſpoken very ſufficiently before, it alſo proceedeth ſometimes from over-heavy burthens that be laid upon a Horſes ſhoulders, or by over-much drying up of the ſinews of the neck. The Cure thereof, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, is, firſt to thruſt a ſharp hot Iron through the fleſh of the neck in five ſeveral places, every one diſtant from the other three inches, (but in any caſe beware of touching any ſinew) then rowel all the aforeſaid places either with Horſe hair, flax, or hemp, for the ſpace of fifteen dayes, and annoynt the rowels with Hogs greaſe, and the neck will ſoon be reſtored. Others uſe if the crick cauſeth the Horſe to hold his neck ſtraight forward, which ſheweth that both ſides are equally perplexed, to take a hot drawing Iron, and draw the Horſe from the root of the ear, on both ſides the neck, from the midſt of the ſame, even down the breaſt, a ſtraw deep, ſo as both ends may meet on the breaſt: then make a hole through the skin of the fore-head, hard under the fore-top, and thruſt in a cornet upward betwixt the skin and the fleſh, a handful deep: then either put in a Gooſe feather doubled in the midſt, and anoynted with Hogs greaſe: or elſe a rowel of either Horn or Leather, with a hole in the middeſt: any of which will keep the hole open, to the intent the matter may iſſue forth: And this you ſhall keep open the ſpace of ten dayes, but every day during the time, the hole muſt be cleanſed once, and the feather or rowel alſo cleanſed, and freſh annoynted, and put in again: and once a day let him ſtand upon the bit

bit an hour or two, or elſe be ridden abroad two or three miles, by ſuch an one as will beat the Horſes head, and make him bring it in: but if the crick be ſuch that it maketh the Horſe to hold his head awry upon the one ſide, which ſheweth that but one ſide of the neck is troubled, then you ſhall not draw the Horſe with an hot Iron on both ſides of the neck, but only on the contrary ſide, as thus: If he bend his head towards the right ſide, then to draw him, as is aforeſaid, only on the left ſide, and to uſe the reſt of the Cure as is above ſaid, and if neceſſity do require, you may ſplent the Horſes neck alſo ſtraight with ſtrong ſplents of wood.

I have Cured this Crick in the neck only by bathing the Horſes neck in the oyl of Peter, or the oyl of Spike very hot, and then roling it all up in wet Hay, or rotten Litter, and keeping the Horſe exceeding warm, without uſing any burning, wounding, or other violence.

CHAP. XL.

Of the Wens in the neck.

A Wen is a certain Bunch or Kirnel upon the skin, like a tumor or ſwelling: the inſide whereof is ſometimes hard like a Griſtle, and ſpongious like a skin full of ſoft Warts; and ſometimes yellow like unto ruſty Bacon, with ſome white grains amongſt. Now of Wens, ſome are great, and ſome be ſmall, alſo ſome are very painful, and ſome not painful at all. They proceed, as ſome imagine, of naughty, groſs, and flegmatick humors, binding together in ſome ſick part of the body. And others ſay, they proceed from taking of cold, or from drinking of waters that be moſt extreme cold; but I ſay, that albeit, they may proceed from theſe cauſes, yet moſt generally they proceed from ſome pinching, bruiſing, biting, ripping or galling, either of girths, halter, coller, or any other thing whatſoever.

The certain'ſt Cure thereof is this, take of Mallows, Sage, and red Nettles, of each one handful: boyl them in running water, and put thereunto a little butter and honey, and when the herbs be ſoft take them out, and all to bruiſe them, and put thereunto of Oyl de Bay two ounces, and of Hogs greaſe two ounces, and warm them together over the fire, mixing them well together: that done, plaiſter it upon a piece of Leather, ſo big as the Wen, and lay it to

ſo

ſo hot as the Horſe can endure it, renewing it every day in ſuch ſort the ſpace of eight dayes, and if you perceive it will come to no head, then launce it from the midſt of the Wen downward, ſo deep that the matter in the bottom may be diſcovered and let out: which done, heal it up with this Salve: Take of Turpentine a quartern, and waſh it nine times in fair water, then put thereunto the yolk of an Egg, and a little Engliſh Saffron beaten into powder, and make a tent or role of flax, and dip it in that oyntment, and lay it to the ſore, renewing the ſame every day once or twice, until the Wen be cured.

Others uſe in this caſe, with a hot Iron to burn and ſear away all the ſuperfluous fleſh, and then to heal up the ſore either with the Oyntment laſt rehearſed, or elſe with the powder of Honey and Lime mixt together; and this manner of Cure is by much the ſpeedier.

CHAP. XLI.

Of ſwelling in the neck after blood-letting.

THe ſwelling of a Horſes neck after blood-letting may come, through divers occaſions, as namely, by ſtriking through the vein, ſo as ſome of the blood being gotten betwixt the fleſh and the vein it there corrodeth and turneth to an impoſtume, or elſe by ſtriking the vein with a ruſty fleagm, whereby the vein rankleth, or by ſome cold wind ſtriking ſuddenly into the hole, or laſtly, by ſuffering the Horſe too ſoon to thruſt down his head, and graſe or feed, whereby humours reſorting to that place, breeds a great Impoſtumation: The Cure is, according to the opinion of ſome Farriers, to take Hemlock and ſtamp it, and then to mingle it with Sheeps dung and wine Vinegar, and ſo making a plaiſter thereof to lay it to the ſwelling, renewing it once a day until it be whole. Other Farriers uſe firſt to annoint the place with the Oyl of Camomile warmed, and then to lay upon it a little hay wet in cold water, and bind it about with a cloath, renewing it every day for the ſpace of a week, to ſee whether it will grow to a head, or elſe vaniſh away: if it grow to a head, you may then launce it, and thruſt out the

matter:

matter: then heal it up by tenting it with flax dipt in Turpentine and Hogs greaſe molten together, dreſſing it once a day until it be whole.

CHAP. XLII.

How to ſtanch blood.

IF your Horſe either by wound or other accident, or by the ignorance of any unskilful Farrier that letteth him blood when the ſign is in that place, bleedeth ſo exceedingly that he will not be ſtanched, you ſhall then according to the opinion of old Farriers, lay unto the wound a little new Horſe dung tempered with Chalk and ſtrong Vinegar, and not to remove it from thence the ſpace of three dayes: or elſe to lay unto it burnt ſilk, burnt felt, or burnt cloath, any of which will ſtanch blood. Others uſe to pour into the wound the juyce of Coriander, or elſe to let the Horſe chew in his mouth the leaves of Periwinkle. Others uſe to take of bruiſed Nettles, and lay them to the wound: or elſe wild Tanſey bruiſed, or hot Hogs dung. Others uſe to take bruiſed Sage and lay to the wound: or elſe the coame about the Smiths forge: or elſe a clod of earth, or bruiſed Hyſſop: or the ſoft crops of Hawthorn bruiſed: or elſe to take two ounces of the Horſes blood, and boil it till it come to a powder, and then put that powder into the wound.

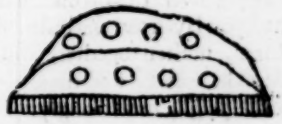
☞ But when all theſe fail, as in ſome extremities I have found them do; then for your only refuge, you ſhall take the ſoft down either of Hares skin, or of a Conies skin, and ſtop the wound well therewith, holding it to with your hand till the blood ſtanch: if it be a grievous ſore wound, then as ſoon as the blood is ſlaked, ſpread a plaiſter of Bole-armonick and wine Vinegar mixt over the wound.

CHAP.

CHAP. XLIII.

Of the falling of the Creſt.

THe falling of the Horſes Creſt, is, when the upper part of a Horſes neck which is called the Creſt, leaneth either to the one or the other ſide, and will not ſtand upright as it ought to do. It proceedeth moſt commonly from poverty and very hard keeping, and eſpecially when a fat Horſe falleth away ſuddainly upon any inward ſickneſs. The Cure (according to the oldeſt Farriers) is, Firſt to draw his Creſt well a full ſtraws breadth deep on the contrary ſide with a hot Iron, the edge of which Iron would be half an inch broad, and make both your beginning and ending ſomewhat beyond the fall, ſo as the firſt draught may go all the way hard upon the edge of the main, cloſe by the roots of the ſame, bearing your right hand down-ward into the neck-ward: Then anſwer that with another draught beneath, and ſo far diſtant from the firſt, as the fall is broad, compaſſing as it were all the fall: but ſtill on the contrary ſide, and betwixt thoſe two draughts, right in the middeſt, draw a third draught: then with an Iron button of almoſt an inch about, burn at each end a hole, and alſo in the ſpaces betwixt the draughts, make divers holes diſtant three fingers one from another, as this figure doth plainly ſhew you. That done, to kill the fire, annoint it every day once with freſh butter for a week or more: Then take of Mallows and of Sage, of each one handful, boyl them well in running water, and waſh the burning away till it be raw fleſh, and then dry it up with the powder of Honey and Lime.



Other Farriers uſe for this infirmity, firſt to caſt the Horſe upon ſome ſoft Dung-hill, or other eaſie place, and with a Knife to cut away the fleſh on the hanging or under ſide of the Creſt, even frome the fore-end thereof to the hinder end, ſix inches broad and two inches thick, or ſomewhat more in the middle thereof where it is thickeſt: then groping the Creſt with your hands, to pare the

thickeſt part thereof, till it come all to one thinneſs, then holding the Horſe ſtill faſt bound, to cover all the place with great handfuls of Swines dung prepared for the purpoſe, and hold it to the ſore place an hour together, until the blood be ſtanched: Then let the Horſe ariſe, and lead him into the Stable, tying him in ſuch ſort, that he may neither rub his neck nor lye down: then the next morning take good ſtore of burnt Allom beaten to powder, and ſtrow it all over the ſore place, and ſo let him ſtand for two dayes after without any ſtirring, leſt the wound ſhould bleed again: then at the end of theſe two dayes you ſhall bathe the ſore gently with a fine Linnen cloath, dipt in warm Urine, and then drying the ſore, again throw more burnt Allom upon it, and after annoint all about the out-ſide of the edges of the ſore with Unguentum Album Camphoratum, more than an inch broad: thus you ſhall dreſs him every day once on that ſide of the Creſt which did fall: then for the contrary ſide you ſhall draw his main thereon, and plat it in many plats: which done, you ſhall to thoſe plats with thongs of Leather, faſten a cudgel of a foot and a half long: then to the middeſt of that cudgel you ſhall hang a piece of Lead with a hole in it, of ſuch weight as will poize the Creſt up even, and hold it in his right place: then ſhall you draw his Creſt on that ſide the weight hangs with a hot drawing Iron, even from the top of the Creſt, down to the point of the ſhoulder, making divers ſtroaks one an inch and an half from another: Then ſhall you lay upon the burnt places a plaiſter of Pitch, Tar, and Rozen, molten together, and ſo let the weight hang till all the ſore places be healed, and there is no queſtion but the Creſt will ſtand both upright and ſtrongly.

CHAP. XLIV.

A certain and approved way, how to raiſe up the Creſt that is faln.

☞ THe moſt infallible and certain way to raiſe up, and to keep when it is ſo riſen, a Creſt that is faln: Is firſt to raiſe up the faln Creſt with your hand, and to place it in ſuch wiſe as you would have it, and it ought to ſtand: then having one ſtanding

on the ſame ſide the Creſt falleth from, let him with one hand hold up the Creſt, and with the other thruſt out the bottom or foundation of the Creſt, ſo as it may ſtand upright: then on that ſide to which it falleth, with an hot Iron (ſomewhat broad on the edge) draw his neck firſt at the bottom of the Creſt, then in the midſt of the Creſt, and laſtly, at the ſetting on of the hair, and be ſure to draw it through the skin, but be ſure no deeper, for this will inlarge and open the skin.

Then on the other ſide (from whence the Creſt falleth) gather up the skin with your hand, and with two plaiſters of Shoo-makers Wax laid one againſt another at the edge of the wound, and with ſmooth ſplints to ſtay the skin, that it may ſhrink neither upward nor downward, then with a pair of ſharp Sizers clipt away all the ſpare skin which you had gathered up with your hand, then with a needle and ſome red ſilk, ſtitch the skin together in divers places, and to keep the skin from breaking, ſtitch the edges of the plaiſter together alſo, then annoint the ſore with Turpentine, Honey and Wax molten together, and the places which you drew with the hot Iron, with peece-greaſe made warm. And thus do twice a day till all be whole, and have great care that you ſplints ſhrink not.

CHAP. XLV.

Of the Mangineſs in a Horſes Main.

THe Mangineſs which is in the Main of a Horſe, and maketh him ſhed his hair, proceedeth either from the rankneſs of blood, poverty, or louſineſs, or elſe of rubbing where a mangy Horſe hath rubbed, or elſe of fretting duſt lying in the Main for want of good dreſſing. The ſigns are, the apparent rubbing and itching of the Horſe about the Main and Neck, and the ſcabs fretting both the fleſh and skin, beſides the ſhedding and falling away of the hair. The cure (according to the opinion of ſome of our old Farriers) is, firſt let him blood on the Neck-vein, and cut away all the hair from the ſcabs, then with a hot Iron as big as a mans finger, ſear all the ſore place even from the one end to the other: Then annoint all the place you ſo burnt with black Sope,

and now and then waſh it with ſtrong Lye and black Sope mixt gether.

☞ Other good Farriers for this Mangineſs only take of freſh greaſe one pound, of Quickſilver half an ounce, of Brimſtone one ounce, of Rape oyl half a pint, mingle them together, and ſtir them continually in a pot with a ſlice, until the Quick-ſilver be ſo wrought with the reſt, as you ſhall perceive no Quick-ſilver therein: that done, take a blunt Knife, or an old Horſe-comb, and ſcratch all the mangy places therewith until it be raw and bloody, and then ☞ anoint it with this oyntment in the Sun-ſhine, if it may be, to the intent the oyntment may ſink in, or elſe hold before it either a hot fire pan, or a hot bar of Iron, to make the oyntment melt into the fleſh, and if you ſee that within three dayes after thus once annointing him he leave not rubbing, then mark in what place he rubbeth, and dreſs that place again, and queſtionleſs it will ſerve.

CHAP. XLVI.

Of the ſhedding of hair in the Main.

HAir, for the moſt part ſheddeth or falleth from the Main of a Horſe, by reaſon of certain little Worms which eat and fret the roots of the hair aſunder. The cure whereof is, firſt, to annoint the Main and Creſt with black ſope, and then to make a ſtrong lye either of running water and Aſh-aſhes, or elſe of Urine and Aſh-aſhes, and with that to waſh the Main all over, and it will help him.

CHAP. XLVII.

Of the pain and grief in a Horſes Withers.

BOth to a Horſes Withers, and alſo to his back, do happen many infirmities and Sorrances, ſome proceeding from inward cauſes, as of the corruption of humours, and ſometimes of outward cauſes, as through the galling, pinching, and wringing of ſome naughty Saddle, or ſome heavy burthen laid on the Horſes back,

back, or ſuch like: And of theſe griefs ſome be ſmall, and ſome be great: The ſmall are only ſuperficial Bliſters, Swellings, Light-galls, or bruiſings, and are eaſily cured; but the great are thoſe which pierce to the very bone, and be moſt dangerous, eſpecially if they be nigh to the back bone. Then to ſpeak firſt of the ſmaller gallings, whenſoever you ſhall ſee any ſwellings to ariſe, either about your Horſes Withers, or any other part of his back, the Cure is (according to the opinion of ſome of the old Farriers) firſt of all if the place be much ſwoln and feſtered, then to pierce it with a ſharp hot Iron in many parts on both ſides of the neck, and then put into the ſame tents of Linnen cloath, dipt in warm Sallet Oyl, and then after to dry and heal it up with the powder of Honey and Lime mixt together.

Others uſe to take Butter and Salt, and to boyl them together until they be black, then to pour it hot on the ſwelling: and then to take warm Horſe-dung, and lay it on the ſore back untill it be whole, dreſſing it once a day.

Others (eſpecially thebeſt of the ancient Farriers) uſe as ſoon as they ſee any ſwelling to ariſe, to bind unto it a little hot Horſe-dung, to ſee if that will aſſwage it; which if it will not, then to prick it round about the ſwelling with a Fleim, Knife, or Lancet, yet not too deep, but ſo as it may pierce the skin, and make the blood iſſue forth: that done, take of Mallows, or Smallage, two or three handfulls, and boyl them in running water until they be ſo ſoft as pap: then ſtrain the water ſoftly from it, and bruiſe the herbs in a treen diſh, putting thereunto a little Hoggs greaſe, or elſe Salet oyl, or Sheeps ſuet, or any other freſh greaſe: boyl them and ſtir them together, nor frying them hard, but as they be ſoft and ſupple: and then with a clout lay it warm upon the ſore, renewing it every day once until the ſwelling be gone, for it will either drive it away or bring it to an head, which lightly chanceth not in theſe ſmall ſwellings, except ſome Griſtle or bone be periſhed. Others of the ancient Farriers uſe, when they ſee any ſwelling to ariſe about a Horſe back, firſt to ſhave the place with a Razor, and then to lay thereunto this plaiſter: take a little Wheat-flower, and the white of an Egg beaten together, and ſpread it on a linnen cloath, which being laid unto the ſwelling two or three dayes, and not removed will bring it to an head, and when you come to take it off, pull it away

away ſo ſoftly as you can poſſible, and where you ſee the corruption gathered in a head together, then in the loweſt place thereof, pierce it upward with a ſharp Iron ſomewhat hot, that the matter or corruption may come out, and forget not to annoint the ſore place every day once with freſh Butter and Hoggs greaſe until it be whole.

☞ Others of our later Farriers uſe, when they ſee any ſwelling, only to lay wet hay unto it, for that will either drive it away, or bring it unto a head, and then when it is broken, you ſhall lay upon it a plaiſter of Wine lees, renewing it as often as it grows dry, and if your Lees be too thin, you may thicken them with Wheat-flower: or if you like not this medicine, then you may make a plaiſter of thick Barm, as great as the ſore, and renew it once a day until the ſwelling be aſſwaged: but if you ſee that any corruption be knit together, then you ſhall Lance it in the nethermoſt part, and let out the matter: then waſh the ſore either with Urine, Ale, or Beer, made ſcalding hot; then dry up all the moyſture from the ſore either with a linnen cloath, or with a ſpunge: then cover all the ſore over with burnt Allom beaten to powder: And thus dreſs the Horſe once a day until the fleſh be grown up ſo high as you would have it, then ſhall you dreſs the ſore but once in two or three dayes. But if you ſee it skinneth but ſlowly, then may you annoynt the edge of the ſore all about after it hath been waſhed as aforeſaid, with Unguentum Album, for that will make the skin to come faſt: but if you do perceive that by dreſſing it too ſeldome there doth begin to grow any proud fleſh, then ſhall you take a dram of Mercury, and mingle it with an ounce of Unguentum Album, and annoynt all the ſore places therewith once in two dayes: this will correct the proud fleſh, and cauſe it to skin and heal ſuddenly.

Others uſe for the abating of theſe ſwellings, to boyl Mallows in the grounds of Ale, and to clap it hot to the ſwelling; and if the ſwelling do break, waſh it with piſs, and pour hot molten Butter upon it. Others uſe to ſhave away the hair, and then to lay very hot unto it a handful of Leeks ſtampt and mixt with Boars greaſe, or elſe to take a turf of earth burned red, and laid ſo as hot as the Horſe can ſuffer it. Others uſe to take nettles beaten to pieces, and mixt with hot Urine, and ſo lay it on hot, and then ſet on the ſaddle: and then if after two or three dayes dreſſing the ſwelling break, then look

look if there be any dead fleſh within the ſore, and either eat or cut it out: then take a pound of freſh greaſe, and a pound of Salet oyl, three ounces of white Wax, one once of Turpentine, and three drams of Verdigreaſe, melt all theſe together, and tent the ſore therewith till it be whole: for this will both eat away the ill fleſh, and incarnate good. Others take green Cole-worts and ſtamp them in ſwines greaſe, and then lay it plaiſter-wiſe on the ſore, and it will aſſwage it, eſpecially if you ride the Horſe a little to make the medicine enter in. Now if there be no great ſwelling, but only the skin chafed off, then you ſhall waſh the raw place with Water and Salt, or elſe with warm Wine, and ſprinkle upon it the powder of Honey and Lime: or elſe the powder of Myrrh, or the powder of burnt ſilk, or felt, or cloath, or of any old poſt.

Other Farriers uſe when only the skin is galled off, to take a ſpoonful of thick Cream, and to put as much Chimney ſoot into it as will make it thick like an oyntment, and then to lay it upon the ſore, and queſtionleſs it will heal it preſently if the wound be not very deep.

CHAP. XLVIII.

Of any galled back or Withers how great ſoever the ſwelling or inflammation be.

IF the ſwelling, pinch, wringing, or gall, either upon the Withers, or any part of the back of a Horſe be extraordinary great, and much inflamed, ſo that there is now no apparent hope that it can be got away without much Apoſtumation: Then the Cure, according to the opinion of the ancienteſt Farriers, is, to take Barm, and mix it with ſo much Soot of a Chimney, and make it ſo thick therewith, that it ſhall ſeem like Tarr, and with that make a plaiſter, and lay it to the ſore place, renewing it twice a day, and it will very ſuddenly both draw and heal it perfectly.

Others uſe to take a handful of bay Salt, and a handful of great and ſmall Oat-meal, and put a quantity of old ſtale Urine thereto, and ſtir them all together, and temper it like pap or paſte, and then make round balls thereof, then throw them in a fire, and make them red hot, then take them forth and beat them to fine powder, and then

then ſtrow of that powder all over the ſore, ſo oft as you ſhall ſee any part thereof bare, and it will heal it. Other Farriers uſe if they ſee the ſwelling to be any thing great, firſt to draw round about the ſwelling with a hot Iron, and then croſs him with the ſame Iron, in manner of this figure: then take a round hot Iron, having a ſharp point, and thruſt it up into the ſwelling on each ſide upwards towards the point of the withers, or top of the back, to the intent that the matter may iſſue downwards at both the holes: that done, tent both the holes firſt with a tent dipt in Hoggs greaſe to kill the fire, and alſo annoint all the burnt places therewith, continuing ſo to do until the ſwelling be aſſwaged, renewing the tent every day once until the fiery matter be fallen away: then tent him again with waſhed Turpentine, mingled with the yolks, of three or four Eggs and Safron, renewing the tent every day once until it be whole.

☞ But if for all this the ſwelling do not go away, then it is a ſign of ſome inward impoſtumation, and then it ſhall be good that you lance it, and let out the corruption: then take of honey half a pint, of Verdigreaſe two ounces beaten to powder, and mix it together with Honey, then boyl them in a pot until they look red, then being lukewarm, make either a tent or a plaiſter, according as the wound ſhall require, renewing the ſame every day once until it be whole. But the ſore may be ſo vehement, that for want of looking to in time, if it be on the Withers, it will pierce downwards betwixt both the ſhoulders, even into the body, which is moſt dangerous and very mortal: therefore whenſoever you ſhall fear any ſuch hollowneſs, you ſhall tent the hole with the Salve laſt mentioned, and thruſt after it a good piece of dry ſponge, as well to keep the hole open, as alſo to ſuck out the corruption, and this you ſhall renew once a day until the ſore be whole.

Others of our late Farriers uſe to take Butter, Vinegar, and bay Salt, and melting them together, lay it to the ſore warm until it break, then ſtrow upon it either Soot, or the powder of Clay Wall; but if it be much feſtred, then take a pottle of verjuyce, two pennyworth of green Copperas, and boyl it unto a pint and a half: then waſh and ſearch the hollowneſs therewith, then fill the hole with red Lead, and ſo let it remain three dayes untouched, then waſh it with

with the ſame water again, and fill the hole again with red Lead, and ſo every other day waſh it with that Water, and lay red Lead thereon, and it will heal the foreſt back whatſoever. Now all theſe medicines already rehearſed are ſufficient enough for the healing of any galled back whatſoever; yet foraſmuch as divers Farriers hold divers opinions, and think what they know to be only beſt approved, and in aſmuch as you ſhall not be ignorant of any mans skil or Knowledge, which beareth any ground of reaſon in it; I will repeat you a Catalogue of other medicines, which aſſuredly are all good in their kinds and you may uſe them as occaſion ſhall be adminiſtred.

Firſt then know, that the powder of Brier leaves will dry and heal up any gall'd back. Alſo Rye flower, the white of an Egg, Honey, Barley ſtraw burnt, and Soot, will dry up, and heal a ſore back: The powder of Honey and unſleckt Lime will skin any gall: the powder of wild Cow-cumbers dryed in an Oven, will heal any gall, provided the ſore be firſt waſhed with Vinegar. Onions boyled in Water, and laid hot to a ſwoln Horſes back, will aſſwage the ſwelling: and the yolk of an Egg, Salt, and Vinegar beaten together, will heal it when it is broken, provided that you waſh the ſore firſt with Ale, wherein Roſemary hath been ſod. The Soot or grime of a braſs pot, the powder of the bone of a Crab-fiſh, or the powder of Oyſter-ſhels, any of theſe will dry and skin a gall'd back.

Laſtly, (and beſides it, a man needeth no more medicines) for this purpoſe, take hay and boyl it in ſtrong Urine, and lay it to the ſwelled place, and it will either aſſwage it, or bring it to a head, then launce it, and let out the matter, then ſtop the whole with Rozen, Wax, and freſh greaſe molten together; but if you find any dead fleſh to grow within the ſore, then eat it out either with Verdigreaſe beaten to powder, and ſtrowed thereon, or elſe with Mercury calcined, called of ſome precipitate, being likewiſe ſtrowed on the proud fleſh; and when the proud fleſh is gone, you may dry up the ſore only with the powder of Rozen, and nothing elſe. See further of this diſeaſe in the new Addition for the Fiſtula marked thus ☜.

CHAP. XLIX.

Of a Canker in the Withers of a Horſe.

IF a Horſe after he hath been violently wrung upon the Withers, be ſuffered to go unlooked to, and that the ſore breaketh upwards through its own violence, yet the great ſubſtance of the matter or corruption deſcending and rotting ſtill downward, it cannot chuſe but breed to a Cankerous and vile Ulcer, as dangerous as is any Fiſtula, which you ſhall know by theſe ſigns: Firſt, the matter that iſſueth from the ſore, will be ſharp, hot, and watriſh, lye fretting the hair away where it runneth down, and about the hole of the ſore will be a kind of ſpongious proud, dead fleſh, which ſtoppeth the paſſage of the groſs matter. Now the Cure of this cankerous ſore, is, according to the opinion of the old Farriers, to take a Razor, and cut open the hole of the Ulcer, ſo that you may ſee into the hollowneſs; then cut out all the dead fleſh till you come to the quick, then take a quart of old ſtale Urine, and put thereto a handful of Salt: then boyl it well on the fire, then having cleanſed the ſore either with a cloath, or a wiſp of Hay, waſh it well with the Liquor: then take the yolks of four Eggs, and a peny-worth of Verdigreaſe, and a ſpoonful of flower, and make a plaiſter thereof, and lay it to the ſore, dreſſing him in this ſort once a day until it be whole.

☞ Others of our ancient and latter Farriers uſe to take of the ſtrongeſt Beer a pint, put into it a quarter of a pound of Allom, and half a handful of Sage, ſeeth it to the one half, then take out the Sage-leaves and with the reſt dreſs the Horſe once a day, and it will heal any cankerous ſore in that part whatſoever.

CHAP.

CHAP. L.

Of the Stickfaſt, or Sit faſt, horns, or hard bones growing under the Saddle.

THeſe ſtickfaſts, ſitfaſts, or horns that grow in a Horſes skin under the Saddle, is a certain dead skin like a hard piece of Leather, growing faſt in the fleſh: it commeth of ſome old bruiſe, which not impoſtumating, the skin falleth dead, and ſticketh hard and faſt to the fleſh.

The cure is, take either a ſharp crooked inſtrument made for the purpoſe, or elſe a long nail with the point turned inward, and catching hold on the edge of the dead skin, or horn, which will clap or riſe from the ſound skin, and with a ſharp knife cut away all the dead hard skin from the ſound fleſh: and if when it is cut out, the hollowneſs be ſomewhat deep, then you ſhall heal it up by pouring hot molten Butter into it evening and morning: then when the fleſh is made even, dry and skin it either with the powder of Honey and Lime, or with Soot and Bream mixt together. Others uſe firſt to annoint the ſtick-faſt or hard skin with freſh butter or Hoggs greaſe, until it be mollified and made ſoft, ſo as you may either cut them or pull them away, and then waſh the wound either with mans Urine, or with white Wine, and then dry it up with the powder of Oyſter-ſhels, or of Bole-armonick.

CHAP. LI.

Of Wenns or knobs growing about the Saddle skirts.

THe Wenns or knobs which grow about the Saddle skirts, do moſt commonly grow betwixt two Ribs, and do ever proceed of old bruiſes. And the cure is, firſt to mollifie them by annointing them twice or thrice a day with Hoggs greaſe, for more than a week together, and ſometimes to bathe them with hot Wine lees: but if in that ſpace it will come to no head, then lance it from the middle downward, and tent it, with waſhed Turpentine, yolks of Eggs, and Saffron mingled as well together as is before ſhewed, renewing

the tent every day once, until the ſore be ſufficiently and perfectly healed. Look unto the cure for the ſplent, and what cureth that, helpeth this.

CHAP. LII.

Of the Navel-gall.

THe Navel-gall is, when a Horſe at any time is bruiſed on the top of the Chine of the back, behind the Saddle, right againſt the Navel, whence it taketh the name: it commeth either by ſplitting of the Saddle behind, or for lack of ſtuffing, or by means of the Crupper buckle ſitting down in that place, or through ſome hard Weight or knobs lying directly behind the Saddle: of all bruiſings on the back, it is the moſt vile and dangerous, and you ſhall perceive it by the puffed up and ſpungy fleſh, looking like old rotten Lights about the mouth of the ſore. The cure thereof is, according to ſome of the ancient Farriers, firſt to cut away all the dead or proud fleſh even to the bone, then burn a hole four inches lower then the Navel-gall, and put a Rowel of Horſe hair through it: then take the powder of Oyſter-ſhells, or of any old ſhooe-ſole burnt, and ſtrow it on the ſore, and ever as it waxeth moiſt, put on more powder.

Other Farriers for the Navel-gall, do take the white of an egg, wheat-flower, honey, muſtard, and ſope, of each like quantity, and mixing them together, make a plaiſter thereof, and after the dead fleſh is taken out, and the ſore waſht with Ale, Butter, and Urine, then lay on the plaiſter: and if the proud fleſh begin to grow again, then the powder of an old burnt ſhooe, or Nerve oyl, or Verdigreaſe, will kill it, and the powder of Oyſter-ſhels will skin it. Other of the antient Farriers uſe, after they have cut out all the Rotten and dead fleſh, to take the white of an Egg and Salt beaten together, and lay that plaiſter-wiſe to the ſore upon a little Tow, renewing it once a day, the ſpace of two dayes; then take of Honey a quarter of a pint, and of Verdigreaſe one ounce beaten into powder, and boyl them together in a pot, ſtirring it ſtill until it look Red, and being luke-warm, make a plaiſter with tow, and clap it to the wound, waſhing and cleanſing well the Wound firſt with a little warm Vinegar

Vinegar or white Wine, continuing ſo to do once a day until it begin to heal and to skin; then dry it up with ſprinkling thereon this powder following: Take of honey a quartern, and as much of unfleckt Lime as will thicken the honey, and make it like a paſt, and in a fire-pan over the Fire, ſtirr it ſtill until it be hard baked, ſo as it may be beaten into powder: but ever before you throw on the powder, waſh the wound firſt with warm Vinegar, continuing ſo to do until it be perfectly skinned. Others uſe to heal this gall by laying on the ſore, a plaiſter of Chimney ſoot and barm mixt together, or elſe mix nettle ſeeds and Salet oyl together, and annoint the ſore therewith.

There be others which uſe only to waſh the ſore with warm Urine and Salt, and then to annoint the place with freſh greaſe and ſalt mixt together, or elſe to take of Betony, powder of Brimſtone, Elibor, pitch, and old greaſe, of each like quantity, and ſtamp them together, and when you have waſhed the ſore with old Urine, then annoint it with this oyntment until it be whole. See alſo for this diſeaſe in the new Additions for the Fiſtula, thus marked ☜.

CHAP. LIII.

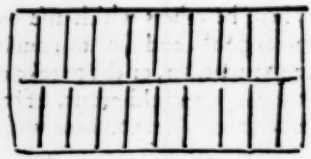
Of the ſwaying in the back.

A Horſe is ſaid to be ſwayd in the back, when either by too great a burthen, or by ſome ſlip, ſtrain, or over-haſty and ſtraight turning, he hath taken an extreme Wrinch in the lower part of his back below his ſhort Ribs, and directly between his fillets: the ſigns whereof are a continual reeling and rouling of the Horſes hinder parts in his going, and alſo he will falter many times, and ſway ſometimes backwards, and ſometimes ſide-long, and be ready to fall even to the ground, beſides, the Horſe being laid, will with a great deal of difficulty riſe up again.

The cure, according to the opinion of the old Italian Farriers, is, to take of the fat of the fruit of the Pine-tree two ounces, of Olibanum three ounces, of Rozen four ounces, of Pitch four ounces, of Bolearmonick one ounce, and of Sanguis Draconis half an ounce: incorporate all theſe well together, and lay it plaiſterwiſe all over the Reins of the Horſes back not taking it by any means away until it fall off.

Others

☞ Others of our own Farriers uſe firſt to cover the Horſes back with a ſheeps skin comming hot from the Sheeps back, laying the fleſhy ſide next to his back, and then lay a warm houſſing cloath upon the ſame, to keep his back as hot as may be, and ſo let it continue until it begin to ſmell: then take the old skin away, and apply a new unto it, continuing ſo to do the ſpace of three weeks, and if he amend not with this, then draw his back with a hot Iron right out on both ſides of the ridge of his back, from the pitch of the buttock, unto a handful within the ſaddle: and then again over-thwart, according to this figure, and let every Line be an inch one from another, neither let the ſtroke be deep, and burned no more than that every one may look yellow: then lay upon the burning this charge or plaiſter: take of pitch one pound, of Rozen half a pound, of Bole-armonick half a pound made into powder, and half a pint of Tarre, and boyl all theſe together in a pot, and ſtir it till every thing be molten and throughly mingled together, then being luke-warm, daub all the burning therewith very thick, and thereupon clap as many flocks of the Horſes colour as you can make to abide on, and remove it not before it fall away of it ſelf: and if it be in Summer you may turn the Horſe to graſs.



CHAP. LIV.

Of ſpecial weakneſs in the back.

ACcording to the opinion of our oldeſt Farriers, (though my ſelf have taken little notice of the infirmity) there is another kind of weakneſs belonging to a Horſes back, which they call the fretting or biting of the Reins, which do proceed from abundance of humours reſorting to that place, whereby all the hinder parts of the Horſe do loſe their feeling and ſtrength, and ſuch a Horſe falleth down to the ground: yea, and the humours many times reſorting to the heart, do ſuffocate the ſame, and in two or three hours do cauſe

cauſe the Horſe to dye. The cure, according to the opinion, is, firſt to let the Horſe blood abundantly in the neck vein, and to draw his back with a hot Iron, in ſuch ſort, as is declared in the laſt Chapter, and then to make him ſwim a pretty while in ſome River: then Rowel him upon the haunches near unto the huckle bones, and then to annoint the ſore place with Hoggs greaſe, and three leaved Graſs ſtamped together, until he be whole.

CHAP. LV.

Of the ſwelling of the Cods or Stones.

THis kind of ſwelling or inflammation of the Cods commeth either by ſome wound received, or by the ſtinging, or elſe biting of ſome venemous beaſt, or elſe by ſome great ſtrain either in running or leaping, or by the biting of one Horſe with another. The cure is, according to the opinion of the moſt ancient Italian Farriers, firſt to bathe the Cod with water, wherein hath been ſodden the roots of wild Cowcumbers and Salt, and then to annoint it with an oyntment made of Oyl, Goats greaſe, and the white of an Egg, or elſe to bathe the Cod in warm Water, Nitrum, and Vinegar mingled together, and alſo to be annointed with an oyntmet made of Chalk, or of Potters earth, Ox-dung, Comin, Water and Vinegar mingled together: or elſe to be annointed with the juyce of the Herb called Night-ſhape, or with the juyce of Hemlock, which grows on Dunghils: and if need require, to let him blood on the flank-veins. But our latter Farriers, who hold that this Diſeaſe commeth oftest after ſome ſickneſs, or ſurfeit with cold, being a ſign of amendment from that ſickneſs, do cure it in this ſort: take of Bean-flower, Wheat-meal, Comin, and Hoggs greaſe, of each like quantity, and making a plaiſter thereof, ſpread it all over the Horſes cods and ſtones. Others boyl Groundſel in Wine Vinegar, and ſo bath the Horſes cods therewith: or elſe take a quart of good Ale-wort, and ſet it on the fire with crumms of brown Bread ſtrongly leavened, and better than a handful of Comin made into powder: then with Bean-flower make a plaiſter of them all, and apply it to the grief as hot as can be ſuffered: or if this help not, take Cows dung, and ſeeth it in milk, and lay it upon the

ſwel-

ſwelling as hot as may be, and it will aſſwage it. But if this inflammation proceed from rankneſs of Seed, which you ſhall ſee by the much moiſt ſlimineſs of his yard, then you ſhall firſt make him cover a mare, then keep him without Provender, and let him blood above the great Vein, which is between his Lips, and lay thereto hard Eggs beaten in his own Dung, and make a plaiſter of the ſame, and lay it to his Cods, and once a day waſh his Cods with cold water.

Other ancient Farriers uſe to let the Horſe blood in his flank-veins, and then take of oyl of Roſes and of Vinegar, of each half a pint, of Bole-armonick half a quartern beaten to powder, mix them together in a Cruze, and being luke-warm annoint the Cods therewith, with two or three feathers bound together: and the next day ride him into the water, ſo as his Cods may be within the water, giving him a turn or two therein; and ſo return fair and ſoftly home unto the ſtable: and when the Horſe is dry, annoint him again as before, and do this every day until the Horſe be who'e.

Now there be other Farriers, which hold that this Diſeaſe may come by means of evil humours and corrupt blood, which reſort unto the Cods, and then the Cure is, to cover all the Cods over with a charge made of Bole-armoniek and Vinegar wrought together, renewing it every day once until the ſwelling go away, or that it break of it ſelf, and if it break, then to tent it with Mel Roſatum, and make him a breech of Canvaſe to keep it in, renewing the tent every day once until it be perfectly well.

CHAP. LVI.

Of incording, or burſting, or the rupture in Horſes.

THis Rupture, as our old Farriers call it, this incording or burſtneſs in Horſes, is, when the rim or thin film which holdeth the guts up in a Horſes body is broken, ſo that the guts fall down either into the Cods of the Horſe, or into the Horſes flank, as I have ſeen divers: Now this burſtneſs commeth either by ſome ſtripe or blow of another Horſe, or elſe by ſome ſtrain in leaping over a Hedge or a Ditch, or by teaching a Horſe to bound when he is too young, or when a horſe goreth himſelf upon ſome pole or ſtake, or by forcing a Horſe when he is full to run beyond his ſtrength, or by ſtopping

ſtopping a Horſe too ſuddainly upon naughty and hollow ground, whereby the ſtradling and ſlipping of his hinder feet, may ſtretch or tear the rim.

The ſigns to know this Sorrance before it be apparent to the Eye, are; the Horſe will forſake his meat, and ſtand ſhoaring or leaning alwayes on that ſide that he is hurt, and on that ſide, if you ſearch with your hand, betwixt the ſtone and the thigh, upward to the body, and ſomewhat above the ſtone, you ſhall find the gut it ſelf big and hard in the feeling: Whereas on the other ſide you ſhall find no ſuch thing.

Now for the Cure, although for mine own part I both do and ſhall ever hold it uncurable, as long as a Horſe is a beaſt without reaſon, yet for your ſatisfaction I will not ſtick to repeat what the beſt Farriers, and my ſelf have practiſed, in as much as it worketh much good, though no abſolute Cure.

The cure then is, to bring the Horſe into ſome houſe or place which hath over head a ſtrong baulk or beam going over-thwart, and ſtrow that place thick with ſtraw, then put on four ſtrong paſterns with four rings on his feet, and faſten one end of a long rope to one of thoſe rings, then thread all the other rings with the looſe end of the rope, and ſo draw all his four feet together, and caſt him on the ſtraw, that done, caſt the rope over the baulk, & hoyſt the horſe ſo as he may lye flat on his back, with his leggs upward without ſtrugling; then bathe his ſtones well with warm water and butter molten together, and the ſtones being ſomewhat warm and well mollified, raiſe them up from the body with both your hands, being cloſed by the fingers cloſe together, and holding the ſtones in your hands in ſuch manner, work down the gut into the body of the horſe, by ſtriking it downwards continually with your two thumbs, one labouring immediatly after another, until you perceive that ſide of the ſtone to be ſo ſmall as the other: and ſo having returned the gut into his right place, take a liſt of two fingers broad, throughly annointed with freſh Butter, and tye his ſtones both together with the ſame, ſo nigh the body as may be, yet not over hard, but ſo as you may put your finger between: that done, take the Horſe quietly down, and lead him gently into the ſtable, where he muſt ſtand warm, and not be ſtirred for the ſpace of three Weeks: but forget not the next day, after you have placed his gut in his true

place, to unlooſen the Liſt and take it away, and as well at that time, as every day once or twice after, to caſt a diſh or two of cold water up into his cods, and that will make him to ſhrink up his ſtones, and thereby reſtrain the Gut from falling down; and at the three weeks end, to make your Cure ſo much the ſurer, it were not amiſs to geld the ſtone on that ſide away, ſo ſhall he hardly be burſten again on that ſide: and during the cure, let him not eat much, nor drink much, and let his drink be alwaies warm.

CHAP. LVII.

Of the botch in the groins of a Horſe.

IT is the opinion of the beſt Horſe-leaches, that if a groſs Horſe which is full of humours, be ſuddenly and violently laboured, that then the humours will reſort into the weakeſt part, and there gather togther and breed a botch, and eſpecially in the hinder parts betwixt the Thighs, not far from the Cods. The ſigns are, the hinder Leggs will be all ſwoln, ſpecially from the Cambrels or hoofs upward, and if you feel with your hand, you ſhall find a great knob or ſwelling, and if it be round and hard, it will gather to a head.

The cure according to the general practice, is, firſt, to ripen it with this plaiſter, take of Wheat-flower, of Turpentine, and of Honey of each like quantity, ſtirring it together to make a ſtiff plaiſter, and with a cloath lay it to the ſore, renewing it once every day until it break or wax ſoft: and then launce it, ſo as the matter may run downward, then tent it with Turpentine and Hogs greaſe molten together, renewing it every day once, until it be perfectly whole.

CHAP.

CHAP. LVIII.

A moſt certain and approved Cure for the Botch in the Groins, or any Impoſtumation.

AS ſoon as you perceive the ſwelling to appear, lay upon it a plaiſter of Shooe-makers Wax ſpread upon Allom Leather, and let it lye until the ſore grow ſoft: then open it with a Lancet, or let it break of it ſelf: when the filth is come out, waſh the ſore very well with ſtrong Allom water, then tent it with the oyntment called Ægyptiacum till it be whole.

CHAP. LIX.

Of the Itch, Scab, or Mangineſs in the Tail, or general falling of the hair.

HOrſes, through the corruption of blood, or the fulneſs of rank feeding, or through over-heating and labouring, or by the infection of other Horſes, do many times get the general ſcap, itch, or mangineſs in the tail, and ſometimes in the ſpring time Horſes are often troubled with the Truncheon-worms in their fundament, which will make them rub their tails, and fret the hair, yet are free both from mange and ſcurf. Wherefore if then you only rake the Horſe with your hand, annoint it with ſope, and pull out the worms, you ſhall cauſe the Horſe to leave his rubbing: but if you perceive the hair to ſhed and fall from the Tail, through ſome ſmall worms that grow at the roots of the hair, or through ſome little fretting ſcurf, then you ſhall annoint all the tail with ſope even to the ground, and then waſh it with very ſtrong lye after, and that will both kill the worms, and ſcoure out the ſcurf: but if much of the tail be faln away, then you ſhall keep the tail continually wet with a ſpunge dipt in fair water, and that will make the hair to grow very faſt. Now if in the Horſe tail ſhall grow any Canker, which will conſume both the fleſh and bone, and make the joynts to fall away one by one, then you ſhall waſh all his tail with Aqua-fortis, or ſtrong Water made in this ſort. Take of Green Copperas and

of Allom, of each one pound, of white Copperas a quartern, boyl all theſe together in three quarts of running water, in a very ſtrong earthen pot, until the one half be conſumed: and then with a little of this Water being made luke warm, waſh his tail with a little clout or flax bound to the end of a ſtick, continuing ſo to do every day once till it be whole. But if as I ſaid before, through the corruption of blood, food, or labour, this ſcab, itch, or mangineſs, ſpread univerſally into many parts of the tail, you ſhall then likewiſe waſh it with the ſame ſtrong water until it be whole.

CHAP. LX.

Of the general Scab, Mangineſs, or Leproſie, over the whole Body.

THe general Mangineſs or Leproſie, which runneth all over the Horſes body, is a cankered filthy ſcurf which covereth the ſame, proceeding from abundance of melancholy corrupt blood, ingendred by infection or unwholeſome food, or elſe by indiſcreet Labour. The ſigns whereof are, the Horſe will be all mangy, and covered over with a white filthy ſcurf, full of ſcabs, and raw plats about the neck and flancks, and ill-favoured to look on, and rubbing, ſcratching, and biting: Of all Diſeaſes there is none more infectious, nor will more certainly kill a Horſe if it be not prevented.

Now the cure, according to the opinion of skilful Farriers, is, firſt to let the Horſe blood in the one ſide of the neck-vein, and within two dayes after on the other ſide of the neck, & within two dayes after that in the flanck veins, and laſt of all in the vein under the tail: then waſh all the ſore places with Salt brine, & rubbing them hard with a whiſp of ſtraw hard twiſted, ſo as they may bleed well, and be all raw: that done, annoint the places with this oyntment, take of quick-ſilver one ounce, of Hoggs greaſe one pound, of Brimſtone beaten into powder a quartern, of Rape oyl a pint, mingle theſe things well together, until the Quick-ſilver be throughly incorporated with the reſt, and having annointed all the raw places with this Oyntment, make it to ſink into the fleſh, by holding and waving up and down over it, a hot broad bar of Iron, and then touch him no more again the ſpace of two or three dayes: during which time, if you ſee that he rubbeth ſtill in any place, then rub that place again with an old

Horſe-

Horſe-comb, or a hair cloath, to make it Raw, and annoint it with freſh Oyntment. But if all this will not help, then with a hot Iron round and blunt at the point, ſo big as a mans little finger, burn all the mangy places, making round holes, paſſing only through the skin, and no further: for which intent it ſhall be needful to pull the skin firſt from the fleſh with your left hand, holding it ſtill until you have thruſt the hot Iron through it, and let every hole be a ſpan one from another, and if need be you may annoint thoſe holes with a little Sope, and let the Horſe be very thin Dyeted, during this curing time.

Now for mine own part, I do utterly diſlike this burning, for it is a foul manner of cure, and breedeth much Eye-ſore in the Horſe, and therefore other of our latter Farriers uſe for this Diſeaſe, after the Horſe is let blood in the neck-vein, to take a good quantity of freſh greaſe, and mix it well with the powder of Chalk, then put thereto a good quantity of the powders of Brimſtone and Elicampane Roots, and ſtir them all well together, and take a pretty quantity of Quick-ſilver, and kill it with your faſting ſpittle, or Saſet Oyl, and mix it with all the reſt very well together, and ſo annoint all the ſore places about the Horſe with this oyntment. Others uſe to take of Lamp oyl, the fine powder of Brimſtone, of black Sope, of Tar, of Hoggs greaſe, and the ſoot of a Chimney, of each like quantity, and then mix them all well together, by boyling them on the fire, and then annoint all the ſore places therewith, as hot as the Horſe can indure or ſuffer it, alwayes provided that the Horſe be let blood before you uſe the oyntment.

Others uſe after the Horſe is let blood, to take of oyl de bay a pound, and of Quick-ſilver one ounce, and mixing them together, never leave ſtirring thereof, till the Quick-ſilver be killed and incorporated with the Oyl, then annoint all the ſore places therewith, after you have made them raw by rubbing them.

Other Farriers uſe firſt to let the Horſe blood, then to waſh all the ſore places within two dayes after with water wherein young Broom, or the herb of Arſmart hath been well ſodden, and ſmally chopt and mixt with a little Soot, and rub him well until the ſore places bleed; then take a pound of black Sope, a pottle of keen Muſtard, four penny-worth of Brimſtone made into powder, three penny-worth of Quick-ſilver well killed with freſh greaſe, two

penny-

penny-worth of Verdigreaſe, a quarter of a pint of greaſe, ſtir all theſe together in a Veſſel till the greaſe and other things be molten with labour, and without fire, and therewithall annoint all the ſore places, and with once anneinting, and twice waſhing, this will cure him.

Other Farriers uſe, if the Horſe be young, to let him blood on both ſides the neck, and then to cut the skin down the middeſt of his fore-head two fingers in length, then with a cornet open the skin an inch wide on both ſides the ſlit, and put therein thin ſlices of the green root of Elicampane, or Angelica, which is better: ſo let them remain under the skin till the matter rot, then cruſh it forth after two or three dayes, and in twelve dayes the roots will fall out as it healeth, and this will cure the Mange, provided that you annoint all the ſore places with the powder of Brimſtone, Verdigreaſe, and oyl Olive, mixt upon a fire very well together. Others uſe after blood-letting, to rowel the Horſe under the neck, that the evil humours may iſſue forth, then to rub all his body quite over with an hard hair cloath, or an old curry comb, until the Horſe bleedeth: after that take of Sulphur, Salt, and Tartar, of each a like quantity, beat them and temper them with very ſtrong Vinegar, and as much common Oyl, and therewith annoint all the ſore places: or elſe take very ſtrong Wine Vinegar, the Urine of a Boy under twelve years of age, and the juyce of hemlock, mix them together, and waſh the Horſe therewithall.

Other Farriers uſe after blood-letting, to annoint the Horſe with one of theſe Oyntments, the ſore having been before rubbed till it bleed, either with Brimſtone, Oyl, Vinegar, Salt, Soot, Swines-dung, and unſleckt Lime, of each like quantity, well mixt and boyled together; or elſe with brine Water ſod with nettles, or elſe with Vinegar, Allom, and Salt-niter boyled together, or elſe waſh the ſore with Beef-broath, then boyl Pepper beaten to powder, Verdigreaſe, and Chervel in freſh greaſe, and annoint the Horſe all over therewith, holding a Chaffing-diſh and coals, or a hot bar of Iron to his body, to make the oyntment ſink in.

☞ Laſtly, and as good as any of the reſt, after the Horſe hath been let blood, take an old curry-comb, or a wool card, and rub every ſore place about the Horſe till it bleed, then take of the oldeſt piſs you can get, a pottle, and of green Copperas three quarters of a pound,

pound, mix and ſtir them well together, then ſet them on the fire, and boyl them a while, then as hot as the horſe can ſuffer it waſh him with the ſame: after his waſhing is a little dried, take of oyl one ounce and a half, of Quick-ſilver two ounces, of white Elleborus one ounce, with a good quantity of Swines greaſe, mingle all theſe well together, till no part of the Quick-ſilver can be ſeen, and then annoint the horſe all therewith: and if the firſt time do not cure him, the ſecond will moſt aſſuredly, provided, that during the time of cure you keep the horſe with a very thin diet.

CHAP. LXI.

Two moſt excellent and approved Medicines, (eſpecially the latter) for the foulest Mange or Leproſie that can poſſibly happen to any Horſe.

TAke Hoggs greaſe, Bay-ſalt, Worm-wood, and Rue, of each a pretty quantity, ſtamp them together well in a morter, and when it is brought to one entire ſalve, ſtop it hard into the Horſes Ears, then either bind them up, or ſtitch them together, that the Medicine may not fall out: and do thus three or four dayes together, and it will not only cure the Mangy, but any foul Farcy whatſoever.

The ſecond Medicine, and moſt aſſured for the Mangy, is, to take freſh greaſe, and yellow or white Arſnick, and mix them very well together till it come to a pale yellow ſalve, then your horſe having been let blood, and all the ſcurf taken away, either with an old curry comb, or ſuch like hard thing, ſo as the ſore places may lye raw, then annoint them all over with this oyntment, and let the Horſe ſtand ſo tied, that he may by no means touch any part of his body with his mouth, and when he hath ſtood thus two or three hours, then take old Urine warmed, and waſh away all the oyntment, and then give the Horſe his meat: thus dreſs the Horſe twice or thrice at the moſt, and it is ſufficient for any Mange whatſoever.

CHAP.

CHAP. LXII.

How to know when a Horſe halteth before, and in what part his grief is.

THere is nothing more neceſſary for any mans underſtanding, that ſhall have occaſion at any time to uſe a horſe, eſpecially for the skilful Farrier, than to know the reaſon why a horſe halteth, and where the grief remaineth, as well becauſe thoſe griefs lye moſt concealed, as alſo becauſe our Kingdome is ſo very ful of ſubtil unconſcionable Horſe-courſers, that they are careful moſt to conceal that which may ſooneſt cozen their Neighbours: you ſhall know then that no Horſe halteth before, but his grief muſt be either in his ſhoulders, in his leggs, or in his feet: if it be in his ſhoulders, it muſt either be on the top of his ſhoulder-blades, which we call the withers, or at the bottom of the ſhoulder-blade joyning to the marrow-bone, which is the fore-pitch of the breaſt, or in the elbow of the Horſe, which joyns the nether end of the marrow-bone and the leg together.

Now for the general knowledge whether the grief be in the ſhoulder or no, look if the horſe do not lift up his leg, but traileth it upon the ground, then it is in the ſhoulder, and is a new hurt: if he caſt his leg more out in his going than the other, and that almoſt with an unbended knee, then it is alſo in the ſhoulder, and it is an old hurt: if you take him be the head-ſtall of the bridle, and turn him as ſhort as you can poſſible of both hands, if then you ſee him when he is turned on the lame ſide, to favour his legg very much (as he cannot chuſe but do) then alſo his grief is in his ſhoulder: or if when a horſe ſtandeth in the ſtable, he ſtretcheth out his fore-legg, and ſetteth it more forward than the other, it is partly a ſign the grief is in the ſhoulder, but not abſolutely.

Now when you know generally that the grief or pain is in the ſhoulder, then you ſhall learn to know in what part of the ſhoulder, as thus: if the Horſe halteth more when the Rider is upon his back, than when he is off, then the grief is in the top of the Withers: if when with your hand you gripe and handle him upon the top of the ſhoulder blades, you find that he ſhrinketh much, and offereth

to

to bite at you, (not having any galled back before, for that may deceive you) then aſſuredly the grief is on the Withers. If the horſe goeth bowing unto the ground, and tread his ſteps very thick, then it is a ſign the grief is in his breaſt, between the nether part of the ſpade-bone, and the upper part of the marrow-bone, and therefore if with your thumb you preſs him hard in that part, you ſhall ſee him ſhrink, and be ready to fall down.

Now if when you take his Elbow in your hand betwixt your finger and your thumb, and gripe it, the Horſe preſently taketh his foot from the ground and lifts up his Legg, offering therewithall to bite or ſnap at you, then the grief is only in the Elbow.

Now if the grief whereof a Horſe halteth be in his Leg, it is either in his Knee, in his Shank, or elſe in the paſtorn joynt: If it be either in his knee or paſtorn joynt, he will not bow them in his going like the other, but will go very ſtiffely upon them: If the pain or grief be in the Shank, then it is by means of ſome Splent, Screw, Windgal, or ſuch apparent grief, moſt apparent to be beheld.

Now if the grief of his halting be in his foot, then it is either in the Cronet, in the Heel, in the Toe, in the quarters, or in the ſole of the foot; if it be in the Cronet, either the grief will be apparent, the skin be broken or ſwoln ſome manner of way, or elſe laying your hand upon the Cronet it will burn and glow exceedingly, and then he hath got ſome ſtrain of the joynt within the hoof: if it be in the Heel, as by over-reach, or otherwiſe then it is to be ſeen, and he will tread altogether upon the toe: if upon any of the quarters, which is to be underſtood from the middle-hoof to the heel, then going on the edge of a bank or Hilly ground, he will halt more than on the plain ground, and by the Horſes comming towards you, and going from you upon ſuch edge or bank, you ſhall perceive whether his grief be in the inward quarter or outward quarter: Alſo he may halt upon his quarters by the pricking of a Nail, and then you ſhall with a pair of pinſons nip the head of every Nail and his Hoof together, and where he complaineth there draw the Nail, and if the Nail ſink, then there is his pain. If he halt in the toe, which is ſeldom or never ſeen, then he will tread altogether upon his heel: if his grief be in the Sole of his Foot, as by the treading upon ſome nail or ſtub, or by ſurbayting, or ſuch like, then he will halt all after one

ſort, upon any ground whatſoever, unleſs it be upon the ſtones, and then he will halt the moſt.

Now to be ſure in what part of the foot the grief is, it ſhall be good, firſt to make him go upon the plain ground, and then upon a hard and ſtony way, and after upon a Banky ground, and by taking careful notes, and careful handling him, you ſhall eaſily ſee of what member he halteth.

CHAP. LXIII.

Of halting behind, and where the grief is.

IF a Horſe halt behind, his grief of neceſſity muſt either be in his hipp, (of ſome called the huckle bone) or in the ſtiff, in the Hough, in the Hamm, in the Legg, in the nether joynt, in the Paſtorn, or in the Foot. If he halt in the hipp of any new hurt, the Horſe will go ſide-long, and not follow ſo well with that Legg as with the other, neither will he be able to turn upon that ſide without much favouring of his Legg: But if it be any old hurt, then the ſore hip will ſhrink, and be lower then the other, and it is beſt ſeen when he goeth up a hill, or upon the edge of ſome bank, ſo as the worſt Legg may go on the higher ſide, for then he will halt ſo much the more, becauſe it is very painful unto him to go ſo unevenly wrinching his Legg; if the grief be in the ſtiff, then the Horſe in his going will caſt the ſtiff joynt outward, and the bone on the inſide will be ſomewhat bigger than the other, neither can he any more than touch the ground with his toe: if his grief be in his hoof, then it is by means of ſome Spaven, which is apparent both to be ſeen and felt, or elſe of ſome ſtrain or blow, and then the ſwelling will moſt evidently appear: And the like is to be ſaid of the Hamm, wherein may be ſeen the Sellander, or ſuch like apparent Sorrance, cauſing the Horſe to halt: If the grief be either in the Legg, Paſtorn, or Foot, you ſhall find it by ſuch ſigns as have been taught you in the former Chapter.

CHAP.

CHAP. LXIV.

How to know if a Horſe have any hidden grief in him that maketh him to halt, when he commeth to travail, and whence it proceeds.

NOw for as much as there are ſome Horſes which through long reſt and running at Graſs, will wear out the worſt of their griefs, ſo that when they come to be but gently Ridden, they will cover their halting, and through a natural awe they bear unto the man, will, whilſt he his on their backs, go as if they were as ſound as might be, yet be truly of themſelves very unperfect: in this caſe, both to keep your ſelf from couzening, and to diſcover the moſt hidden infirmity, you ſhall firſt take the Horſe out of the Stable in a long ſtring, and cauſing one to run him in his hand, at the length of the halter, mark how he ſets down his Leggs, for if any be imperfect, then that he will favour: but if at firſt he go upright and favour no Leg, then take his back and ride him a while roundly up and down a rode, then light from his back, and let him ſtand ſtill an hour, then as before, let him be run in a mans hand, at the halters length, without any man on his back: and believe it is a moſt certain rule, if he have the leaſt grief that may be, he will then ſhew it, and favour that Limb which is moſt pained or grieved: for by this rule only, are many bad Horſe-courſers diſcovered.

Now to know whereof theſe griefs proceed, you ſhall underſtand, that if the grief proceed of a hot cauſe, then the Horſe halteth moſt when he travelleth or is chafed. But if it proceed from cold cauſes, then he halteth moſt when he is cold, and leaſt when he is hot and much travelled.

CHAP. LXV.

Of the grief and pinching in the ſhoulder.

THe grief or pinching of the Horſes ſhoulder, commeth either by labouring and ſtraining the Horſe too young, or by the carriage of too great burthens. It is to be known by the narrowneſs of the breaſt, and by the conſumption of the fleſh of the ſhoulders, in ſo much that the fore part of the ſhoulder-bone will ſtick out and be much higher then the fleſh, and if it be of any longer continuance, he will be very hollow upon the Briſket towards the fore-booths, and he will go wider beneath at the feet than at the knees. The cure thereof, according to the opinion of ſome Farriers, is, to make a ſlit of an inch long, with a ſharp knife, upon both ſides, an inch under the ſhoulder-bone, and blowing the skin well from the fleſh with a Swans quill, both of the one and the other ſhoulder, even up to the top of the Withers, and ſtroaking the Wind up equally with your hand into both the ſhoulders, and then when they are full, ſtick the Windy places with a Hazel ſtick over all the ſhoulder; then looſening the skin from the fleſh again, Rowel both the ſlits, either with tampins of Horſe hair, or with round pieces of the upper Leather of an old ſhooe, with a hole in the middeſt, which is called a French Rowel, for the matter to iſſue forth at, and let the tampins be at leaſt two handfulls long in the skin, and the round Rowel at leaſt three inches broad, and being ſo put as they may lye plain and flat within the cut, then once a day you ſhall turn the Rowels into the skin, and thruſt out the matter: but if the hole grow ſo ſtraight that the matter cannot eaſily come out, with a ſharp knife you ſhall enlarge it, then put a pair of Paſtorns on his fore-leggs, and ſo let him ſtand fifteen dayes, at the end whereof walk him a broad, and try how he goeth, and if he doth not go to your liking, then continue him in the ſame manner other fifteen dayes, and he will go ſound.

☞ But our beſt Farriers uſe, after they have Rowelled the Horſe, as is aforeſaid, then to lay this charge or plaiſter all over his withers, ſhoulders, and breaſt: take of Pitch and Rozen, of each a pound, of Tarr half a pint, boyl all theſe together in a pot, and when it is ſome-

ſomewhat cooled, take a ſtick with a woollen cloath bound to the end of it, and dip it into the charge, and cover or daub all the ſhoulder therewith: that done, clap flocks of the colour of the Horſe (or as near as you can get it) upon the charge, and every other day make your Rowels clean, and put them in again, continuing thus to do the ſpace of fifteen dayes; then take out the Rowels, and heal up the wounds with two tents of flax dipt in Turpentine and Hoggs greaſe molten together, renewing the ſame every day once until the Wounds be whole, but let the charge lye ſtill until it fall away of it ſelf; and if you let the Horſe run at graſs till he have had a froſt or two, there is no queſtion but he will be a great deal the ſounder.

There be other Farriers which uſe to Rowel the Horſe, as is aforeſaid, yet croſs-wiſe, that is, one over thwart the other, then draw all the ſhoulder over with a hot drawing Iron in the comlieſt wiſe you can, making many ſcratches down his ſhoulders, then annoint both them and the Rowels once a day with ſweet Butter, and walk the Horſe up and down evening and morning, that the humours may flow to the ſore places, and iſſue forth, and with your hands once a day at the leaſt, thruſt out the matter: this cure is likewiſe to be continud the ſpace of fifteen dayes, and then the horſe will be whole: yet for mine own part, in ſo much as the cure is foul, I do not much affect it.

CHAP. LXVI.

Of the Wrench in the ſhoulder.

THe Wrench or ſtrain in the ſhoulder, commeth of ſome dangerous ſlipping or ſliding, either in the Stable or abroad, or of too ſuddain ſtopping, when a Horſe gallops, or by falls, either on the planks, or on ſlippery ground, or by too ſuddain turning on unſure ground, or by going too raſhly out of ſome door, or by the ſtroak of another Horſe, you ſhall perceive it by his trailing his Legg upon the ground cloſe after him.

The cure is, to let him blood upon the plat-vein, and take away the quantity of three pints of blood, which blood you muſt ſave in a pot, and put thereunto, firſt of ſtrong Vinegar a quart, and half a dozen

dozen broken Eggs, ſhells and all, and ſo much Wheat-flower as will thicken all the Liquor; that done, put thereunto of Bole-armonick beaten into fine powder a pound, of Sanguis Draconis, two ounces, and mingle them together ſo as the flowr may not be perceived, and if it be too ſtiff, you may add a little more Vinegar; then with your hand daub all the ſhoulder from the main downward, and betwixt the fore-bowels all againſt the hair, and let not the Horſe depart out of that place until the charge be ſurely faſtned unto the skin; that done, carry him into the ſtable, and tye him up to the rack, and ſuffer him not to lye down all the day, and give him a little meat, dyeting him very moderately the ſpace of fifteen dayes, during which time he may not ſtir out of his place, but only to lye down; and every day once refreſh the ſhoulder point with this charge, laying ſtill new upon the old; and at the fifteen dayes end, lead him abroad to ſee how he goeth, & if he be ſomewhat amended, then let him reſt without travelling the ſpace of one moneth, and that will bring his ſhoulder to perfection: But if he mend nothing at all, for all this that is done, then you ſhall rowel him, as is before ſhewed in the former Chapter, juſt upon the ſhoulder point, and ſo keep him rowelled the ſpace of fifteen dayes, not forgetting to ſtir the rowel, and cleanſe the Wound each other day, and then walk him up and down fair and ſoftly, and turn him alwayes on the contrary ſide to the ſore: And when he goeth upright pull out the rowel, and heal up the Wound with Turpentine and Hoggs greaſe molten together, as is before ſaid.

☞ But if all this will not ſerve, then it ſhall be very requiſite and needful to draw him Chequer-wiſe with a hot Iron, over all the ſhoulder point, and alſo to make him to draw a Plough every day, two or three hours at the leaſt, to ſettle his joynts, for the ſpace of three weeks or a moneth: and if any thing will help, theſe two laſt remedies will ſet him ſound.

Now there be other Farriers which for this grief, firſt let the Horſe blood in the breaſt-vein, and then rowel him from the nether part of the ſpade bone down to the point of the ſhoulder, which done, you ſhall ſet a patten ſhooe upon the ſound foot, and ſo turn the Horſe to graſs for the ſpace of a moneth, not forgetting every other day to ſtir and remove the rowels, and ſo thruſt out the matter: Then as ſoon as you ſee him go ſound, you ſhall take off his patten ſhooe,

ſhooe, and pull out the Rowels, and then let him run ſtill at graſs, till he have taken a froſt or two, and no doubt but he will continue ſound.

CHAP. LXVII.

Of the Wrench in the nether joynt.

THis wrench commeth by treading his foot in ſome hole, or in ſome rough or ſtony way. The ſigns whereof are chiefly theſe; the Horſe will halt, and the top of his back upon the points of his ſhoulder will be ſwoln, and ſomewhat hard to handle.

The cure is, take of black Sope half a pound, and having made it hot in a pan, take a handful or two of Tow, and dip it into the Sope, then lay it very hot over all the Horſes Withers, then clap a plaiſter of Wax, Turpentine, and Hoggs greaſe molten together over it, then cover it with two or three warm cloaths and keep the joynts as warm as may be: thus let him ſtand twenty four hours ere you dreſs him again, and continue this manner of dreſſing for fifteen dayes, and the Horſe will go ſoundly.

Now there be other ancient Farriers, that inſtead of this black Sope will take Wine Lees, and Wheat-flower mingled together, and making a plaiſter thereof, lay it very hot to the grieved place, and ſo renew it once a day until the Horſe go ſound.

CHAP. LXVIII.

Of ſplaiting the ſhoulder, or of ſhoulder torn.

THe ſplaiting of the ſhoulder, is, when by ſome dangerous ſlip or ſlide, either upon the ſide of ſome bank, or upon the plaunchers, the Horſe hath his ſhoulder parted from his breaſt, and ſo leaves an open cliſt, not in the skin, but in the fleſh and film next the skin, whereby the Horſe halteth, and is not able to go; it is to be ſeen by the trailing of his leg after him in going.

The cure whereof is thus; firſt put a pair of ſtraight paſtorns on his fore-feet, keeping him ſtill in the ſtable without diſquieting of him; then take of Dialthea one pound, of Salet oyl one pint, of oyl de-

de Bay half a pound, of freſh butter half a pound; melt all theſe things together in an earthen por, and annoint the grieved place therewith, and alſo round about the inſide of the ſhoulder; and within two or three dayes after, both that place and all the ſhoulder will ſwell, then either prick him with a Lancet or fleam in all the ſwelling places, or elſe with a ſharp hot Iron, and then annoint it ſtill with the oyntment before ſaid; but if you ſee it will not go away, but ſwell ſtill, and gather to a head, then launce it where the ſwelling doth gather moſt, and is ſofteſt under the finger, and then tent it with flax dipt in Turpentine, and Hoggs greaſe molten together, as is before ſhewed, renewing that tent twice a day till the ſorrance be whole.

CHAP. LXIX.

Of the ſhoulder pight.

THe ſhoulder pight is, when a Horſe by reaſon of ſome great fall, ruſh or ſtrain, hath the point of his ſhoulder thruſt out of joynt, which is eaſie to be ſeen, in that the point of the ſore ſhoulder will ſtick out much further than the other, and the Horſe will halt down right. The cure whereof, as the old Farriers hold it, is, firſt to make him ſwim in a deep water, up and down a dozen turns, for that will make the joynt return into his true place, then make two tough pins of Aſhen-wood as big as your little finger, being ſharp at the points, each one five inches long; that done, ſlit the skin an inch above the point, and an inch beneath the point of the ſhoulder, and thruſt in one of theſe pins from above down-ward, ſo as both the ends may equally ſtick with the skin; and if the pin of wood will not eaſily paſs through, you may make its way firſt with an Iron pin; that done, make other two holes croſs to the firſt holes, ſo as the other pin may croſs the firſt pin right in the midſt, with a right croſs, and the firſt pin would be ſomewhat flat in the midſt, to the intent that the other being round may paſs the better without ſtop, and cloſe the juſter together; then take a piece of a little Line ſomewhat bigger than a Whip-cord, and at one end make a loop, which being put over one of the pins ends, wind the reſt of the Line good and ſtraight about the pins ends, ſo as it may lye betwixt the

pins

pins ends and the skin, and faſten the laſt end with a pack-needle and a pack-thread unto the reſt of the cord, ſo as it may not ſlip; and to do well, both the pinns and the cord would be firſt annointed with a little Hoggs greaſe; then bring him into the ſtable, and let him reſt the ſpace of nine dayes; and let him lye down as little as may be, and put a Paſtern on the ſore Legg, ſo as it may be bound with a cord unto the foot of the manger, to keep that Legg alwayes whilſt he ſtandeth in the ſtable, more forward than the other, and at the nine dayes end take out the pinns and annoint the ſore place with a little Dialthea, or with Hoggs greaſe, and then turn him to Graſs. Other of our late Farriers uſe, firſt to lay good ſtore of ſtraw under the horſe, and then put a pair of ſtrong Paſtorns on his fore-leggs, and another on his hinder, then having thrown him upon his back, to hang him up by the Leggs from the ground, with two Ropes drawn over ſome beam or bulk, which will put the bone into his true place again; then having let him down again fair and ſoftly, looſe the fore Paſtorn of the ſound Legg, and with a cord before you let him riſe, tye the ſame Legg to the foot of the manger, ſo ſhort as in his riſing he ſhall be forced to hold his Legg before him, for fear of putting his ſhoulder out of joynt, and let him ſtand ſo tyed for the ſpace of three dayes; and preſently when he is up, burn all the point of his ſhoulder with a hot drawing Iron chequer-wiſe, a ful foot ſquare at the leaſt, and let every ſtroke be no more than an inch diſtant one from another: and having burned him well, charge all theſe burned places, and all the reſt of his ſhoulder with Pitch, Rozen, and Tar molten together, and laid on ſomething hot with a cloath tyed to a ſticks end; then clap flocks of the Colour of the Horſe upon it, then charge him again over the flocks, and at the three dayes end looſe his foot, and put a pair of Paſtorns upon his feet, and let him neither lye down nor ſtir out of the ſtable for the ſpace of fifteen or twenty dayes: then may you lead him abroad, and ſee whether he go well or no, and if he be not perfect, you may then give him as much more reſt, and that will recover him.

CHAP. LXX.

A general and certain Cure for any desperate and curable strain in the shoulder, or any other hidden parts.

TAke a large earthen Vessel, and fill it full of the herb Arsmart and Brook-lime, equally mixt together, then put to them as much of the oldest and strongest Urine that can be got, as will cover the herbs all over, then cover the pot close, and keep it in some safe cool place.

Now when you have occasion to use it, take an earthen Pipkin, and put thereinto both of the Urine and the herbs, so much as shall be convenient for the grief, and boyl it well, then if it be for a shoulder strain, you shall take an old Boot and cut off the foot, that you may draw it over the Horses foot, and above his knee almost to the Elbow of his shoulder, keeping the nather part of the boot as close about his Legg as may be, but the upper part wide and spacious; into this boot thrust all your mixture as hot as the Horse can suffer it, and lay it fast and close about the shoulder, especially before and behind, then drawing up the upper part of the boot, so fasten it to the mane of the Horse, that it may not slip down, and thus do once a day till the grief depart, for this Medicine is so violent, that if there be any foul matter that must come forth, it will bring it to an head, ripen, break and heal it, if there be no such thing, then in a short time it will draw away the offending humours, and give present ease.

CHAP. LXXI.

Of the swelling of the fore-Leggs after great labour.

HOrses not much used to travil, will after great labour swell upon their fore-Leggs, because heat and violent excess will cause humours to resort down into the Leggs, especially if such Horses shall be inwardly fat; for the indiscreet labour will melt that inward grease, and make it descend down into the Leggs.

The Cure, according to the practice of some Farriers, is, to take a pound

pound of Nerve oyl, a pound of black Sope, and half a pound of Boars greaſe molten, and boyl them all well together, and then ſtrain it and let it cool, then annoint your Horſes Leggs therewith, being made luke-warm again, and then keep his Leggs clean from duſt. Other Farriers uſe to bathe his Leggs in Butter and Beer, or in Vinegar and Butter, ſome with Sheeps-foot oyl, ſome with Neats-foot oyl, ſome with Train-oyl, and ſome with Piſs and Salt-peter boyled together, of all which, Piſs and Salt-peter is the beſt; and after any ſuch bathing, you muſt roule up the Horſes Leggs with hay ropes wet in cold water, even from the Paſtorn to the knee, but in any wiſe not too ſtraight, for fear of doing hurt, ſo let him ſtand continually when he reſteth.

Now other Farriers ſomewhat more curious, uſe for the ſwelling of the Leggs this bath; take of Mallows three handfulls, a Roſe-cake, of Sage one handful, boyl them together in a ſufficient quantity of water, and when the Mallows be ſoft, put in half a pound of Butter, and half a pint of Salet-oyl, and then being ſomewhat warm, waſh the ſwelling therewith every day once, the ſpace of three or four dayes; and if the ſwelling will not go away with this, then take Wine-Lees and Cummin, and boyl them together, and put thereunto a little Wheat-flower, and charge all the ſwelling therewith, and walk him often; and if all will not ſerve, then take up the great vein above the knee on the inſide, ſuffering him not to bleed from above, but all from beneath: and it will take away the ſwelling.

CHAP. LXXII.

Of a Horſe that is foundred in his feet.

A Horſe is ſaid to be foundred of his feet, when he hath ſuch a numbneſs, and pricking or tingling within his hoofs, that he hath neither ſence nor feeling of his feet, but is in all reſpects like a man, that by hard or crooked ſitting hath both his feet aſleep (as we call it) duering which paſſion we know we can neither well go nor ſtand; and even ſo it fareth with a Horſe in this caſe, for the courſe of the blood being ſtopped, thoſe Obſtructions cauſe this torment. It commeth moſt commonly when a Horſe is very fat,

and hath his greaſe molten within him, and then ſuddainly cooled by taking his Saddle off too ſoon, or by ſtanding ſtil in the cold unſtirred, or elſe by letting him ſtand in ſome ſhallow water little higher than his feet-lock.

A Horſe alſo may be foundred by wearing ſtraight and uneaſie ſhoes, eſpecially in the Summer ſeaſon, when a Horſe travelleth upon the hard ground.

The ſigns to know it, is, the Horſe goeth crouching, and drawing all his four feet within the compaſs almoſt of a peck, and will ſtand ſo fearfully as though he ſtood upon needles.

Now you ſhall underſtand, that a Horſe will ſometimes be only foundred of his fore-feet, and not of his hinder, which you ſhall know in that the Horſe will tread only upon his hinder feet, and not on his fore feet, and go as though his buttocks would touch the ground; and ſometimes he will be foundred upon his hinder feet, and not upon his fore-feet, and that you ſhall perceive by his fearfulneſs to ſet his feet to the ground, being alſo ſo weak behind, that he will ſtand quivering and quaking, and covet alwayes to lye down, and ſometimes he will be foundred of all his four feet, the ſigns whereof were firſt declared.

Now for as much as the Cures be all of one and the ſelf ſame nature, and what cureth the firſt, cureth alſo the reſt, I will joyn them altogether, with this adviſe, that if you find the Horſe to be foundred on the fore-feet only, then to apply your Medicine to the fore-parts only, if on the hinder feet, then to the hinder parts; but if of all four feet, then to lay your Medicine to all the ſeveral parts of the body, as ſhall be preſently declared.

To come then to the Cures, (according to the opinion of a worthy Knight well experienced in this Diſeaſe) if your Horſe be foundred of all his four feet, you ſhall cauſe him to be let blood on his two breaſt veins of his two fore-Leggs, ſomewhat above his knees, alſo you ſhall let him blood on his two ſpur-veins, and on the veins of his two hinder feet a little above the hoof, between the hoof and the paſtorn: you ſhall let theſe veins bleed well, to the quantity of a quart or three pints, which blood you muſt ſave in ſome Veſſel, and ſtir it with a ſtick to keep it from clearing: and when it hath bled as above-ſaid, put it all into one veſſel, then ſtop the wounds with ſome Horſe-dung, or ſome earth, and make a charge with the blood

in

in this ſore: take as much Wheat-meal, Bran and all, as will make the blood ſomewhat thick, and put it into the blood; take eight or ten Eggs, and break them alſo into the blood, ſhells and all; take a pint of ſtrong Vinegar, and a quantity of Bole armonick brayd, and put them into the blood alſo; which done, you ſhall ſtir them all together; then ſhall you with your hand lay the ſaid charge all along upon the reins of the Horſes back, upon his buttocks and down his ſhoulders: when you have laid on this charge thus, you ſhall take two long Linnen raggs dipped in the ſame charge, with which ſo dipped, you ſhall garter the Horſe above the knees of his fore-Leggs ſomewhat hard, and likewiſe with two other like raggs ſo dipped, you ſhall garter him hard above both his hinder hoofs alſo: that done, cauſe him to be walked upon the hardeſt ground you can find for the ſpace of two or three hours: if he be loath to go, as commonly he will be, let one follow him and beat him with a ſtick or a wand to force him to go; then after his walking Let him be ſet up and tyed to the rack, that he lye not down, and there let him reſt two or three hours; which done, let him be walked again two or three hours more as afore-ſaid, then ſet him up, and let him feed, and when you give him drink, which you may do within two or three hours after his feeding, let it be a warm math of Malt and Water, then let him feed a little after it, then ride him a little; and if you let him ſtand an hour or two in a pool or ſtanding water up to the belly, and one upon his back, it is good alſo, and after that ride him again a little: then let him be ſet up well dreſſed and covered, and ſo by little and little ride him a day or two, and then you may boldly journey him, for it is Riding that bringeth the Horſe to the perfectneſs of his feet, and you ſhall find your Horſe as ſound as ever he was.

Now during this cure, you are to take theſe Obſervations into your memory.

Firſt, you ſhall not need to remove or ſtir the Horſes ſhooes; then you muſt after twenty four hours rub off the charge from the Horſes back.

Item, You ſhall take away his garters after twelve hours, and rub his knees and houghs with your hand, and with wiſps, to take away the numbneſs.

Item, If you cannot get Wheat-meal, you may take Oaten-meal.

Item,

Item, If he will not bleed in the veins before named, then you may take your blood from the neck-vein.

Laſtly, If you take the Horſe in hand to cure within twenty four hours after he is foundred, he will be ſound again within twenty four hours after; if he go longer, the cure will be longer in doing.

Now the ancient Farriers of this Kingdone, and amongſt the Italians, differ not much in their practice from this already rehearſed, only into the charge they add of Sanguis Draconis half a quartern, and as much Bean-flower as Wheat-flower, and of Turpentine half a pound; then if they did ſee that within four days the Horſe did not recover, then they did know that the hurtful humours did only lye in the Horſes feet, and there you ſhall ſearch his feet with your butteriſs, paring all the ſoles of his feet ſo thinn, that you may ſee the water iſſue through the ſole: that done, let him blood at the toes, and let him bleed well; then ſtop the vein with Turpentine and Hoggs greaſe molten together, and laid upon a little flax, and then tack on his ſhooes, and cram the place where you did let him blood hard with tow, to the intent it may be ſurely ſtopt; then fill all the ſoles of his feet with Hoggs greaſe and Bran boyled or fryed together ſo hot as is poſſible, and upon that ſtopping clap a piece of Leather, and two croſs ſplints, to keep in the ſtopping; and immediately after this take two Eggs, and beat them in a diſh, and put thereunto as much Bole-armonick and Bean-flour as will thicken the ſame, and mix them well together, and make thereof two plaiſters, ſuch as may cloſe each foot round about ſomewhat above the Cronet, and bind it faſt with a liſt or a rowler, that it may not fall away nor be removed for the ſpace of two dayes, but let the ſoles of his feet be cleanſed and new ſtopped every day once, and the Cronets to be removed every two dayes until the Horſe be ſound; during which time, let him reſt unwalked for fear of looſning his hoofs: but if you ſee that he begin to amend, you may walk him fair and ſoftly once a day upon ſome ſoft ground to exerciſe his Leggs and feet, and let him not eat much, nor drink cold water; but if his foundring break out above the Hoof, which you ſhall perceive by the looſeneſs of the Coffin above by the Cronet, then when you pare the ſole you muſt take all the fore-part of the ſole clean away, leaving the heels whole, to the intent the humours may have

have the freeer paſſage down-ward, and then ſtopp him, and dreſs him about the Croner, as is before ſaid. Now if the Horſe during this Cure chance to fall ſick, or grow ſo dry in his body that he cannot dung, then you ſhall firſt rake him, and after give him a gliſter of Mallows, three handfulls boyld in water from a pottle to a quart: then after it is ſtrained, put to it half a pound of Butter, and a quarter of a pint of Salet oyl, and ſo adminiſter it, then when the Horſe hath emptied his Belly, give him this comfortable drink. Take of Malmſey a quart, and put thereunto a little Cinamon, Mace and Pepper beaten into fine powder, and of Oyl a quarter of a pint, and give the Horſe to drink of that luke-warm; that done, let him be walked up and down a good while together if he be able to go, if not, then tye him up to the rack, and let him be hanged with canvas and ropes, ſo as he may ſtand upon the ground with his feet, for the leſs he lyeth down the better; but theſe extremities do ſeldome happen. Now there be other Farriers, which, for the foundring of a Horſe, only take Verdigreaſe, Turpentine, Salet-oyl, and Hoggs greaſe, of each like quantity, of Wax one ounce; boyl all together, and ſo dip flax or tow in it: then having pared his feet thinn, and let him blood on the toes, ſtop all his feet with that Oyntment very hot: or elſe they take the roots of Nettles, and Hemlock, with eldern peels, of each a handful, and boyl them tender in Boars greaſe, or Hoggs greaſe, ſo let him blood in the middeſt of the foot on the toe-vein, then bathe and chafe his joynt and Legg therewith all about from his knee unto the fetlock, and then clap it to, and bind a cloath faſt to it as hot as you can. So uſe this once a day till it be well.

Now for mine own part, although there is not any of theſe former recited practices but are found perfectly good in their kinds, yet I have not found any ſo abſolute either for old or new founders, as this which I ſhall rehearſe. Firſt, you ſhall with a very ſharp drawing-knife, draw every part of the ſoles of the Horſes feet ſo thinn as is poſſible, even till you ſee the very water and blood iſſuing forth, and being ſure to draw or pare every part alike, which can hardly be done with a butteriſs: then at the very ſharp end of the truſh of the Horſes foot you ſhall ſee the vein lye, then with your knife's end lift up the hoof and let the vein bleed, (which as long as you hold open the hoof will ſpin a great way forth) when it hath bled

bled better than a pint, you ſhall cloſe the hoof, and ſo ſtop the vein: then tack on his foot a hollow ſhooe made for that purpoſe: that done, clap a little tow dipt in Hoggs greaſe and Turpentine upon the vein very hard: then take two or three hard Eggs roaſted, and comming burning hot out of the fire, and buſt them in the ſole of the Horſes foot: then pour upon them Hoggs greaſe, Turpentine, and Tarr boyling hot, and as much flax dipt therein as will fill up the hollow ſhooe, then lay on a piece of Leather to keep all the reſt in, and ſplent it ſure: and in this manner dreſs his four feet, if all be foundred, otherwiſe no more than are foundred; and thus you ſhall dreſs the Horſe three times in one fort-night, and without any further trouble, you ſhall be ſure to have the Horſe as ſound as ever he was.

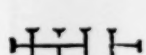
Now if the Horſe be foundred through the ſtraiting of a ſhooe, which in truth is not a founder, but a fretrizing, which is a degree leſs than foundring, then you ſhall for that ſorrance, firſt take off his ſhooe, and let him blood on the toes, then ſtopping the place with bruiſed Sage, tack on his ſhooe again, and ſtop it with Hoggs greaſe and bran boyled together, as hot as is poſſible; and to this twice in one fortnight, and it will help him.

CHAP. LXXIII.

Of the ſplent as well on the inſide of the knee, as of any other part of the legg.

A Splent is to the outward feeling a very griſtle, or rather a hard bone, ſometimes as big as a hazel nut, ſometimes as big as a wall-nut, according to the age thereof, growing upon the inſide of the fore Legg, between the knee and the upper Paſtorn joynt, and ſometimes juſt underneath, and cloſe unto the knee, which is of all other the moſt dangerous ſplent, and doth the ſooneſt make a Horſe lame: it commeth by travelling a Horſe too young, or by over-preſſing him with heavy burthens, whereby the tender ſinews of his Legg are offended. Now for the knowledge thereof, it is eaſie becauſe it is apparent unto the Eye, and moſt palpable to be felt. The Cure, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, is, to take an Onion, and picking out the core, put into it half a ſpoonful of Honey,

Honey, and a quarter of a ſpoonful of unſlackt Lime, and four peny-waight of Verdigreaſe; then cloſing up the Onion, roaſt it in hot embers until it be ſoft: then bruiſe it in a morter, and as hot as the Horſe can ſuffer it, lay it to the ſplent, and it will take it away: but in any caſe cut no skin. Other of the ancient Farriers uſe firſt to waſh the ſplent with warm water, and then to ſhave off the hair, and lightly to ſcarrifie or prick the skin with the point of a Razor, ſo as the blood may iſſue forth: then take of Cantharides half a ſpoonful, and of Euforbium as much, beaten into fine powder, and mingle them together with a ſpoonful of Oyl de Bay, and then melt them in a little pan, ſtirring them well togther, ſo as they may not boyl over, and being ſo boyling hot, take two or three feathers, and annoint all the ſore places therewith: that done, let not the Horſe ſtir from the place where you ſo dreſs him for an hour after, to the intent he ſhake not off the Oyntment: then carry him fair and ſoftly into the Stable, and tye him ſo as he may not reach with his head beneath the manger: for otherwiſe he will covet to bite away the ſmarting and pricking Medicine, which if it ſhould touch his Lipps would quickly fetch off the skin; and alſo let him ſtand without Litter all that day and night: the next day annoint the ſore place with freſh Butter, continuing ſo to do every day once for the ſpace of nine dayes: for this will allay the heat of the Medicine, and cauſe both that and the cruſt of the ſplent to fall away of it ſelf. There be other Farriers which uſe with a fine hot drawing Iron to burn the ſorrance down in the midſt, the full length of the ſplent, and then over-thwart like this figure; then four hours after ſuch burning, take Cows dung new made, and Salet oyl mixt and well beaten together, and therewith annoint all the ſore places; and this muſt be done when the ſplent is very young.



Others uſe to ſlit the Sorrance with a Knife the whole Length of the ſplent, and then with a Cornet to open the ſlit, and lay the ſplent bare, then to make about the wound a Coffin of clay all open to the top; then take Boars greaſe made ſcalding hot, and pour it into the wound until the clay Coffin be full, then let it reſt until the greaſe be cold: after that let the Horſe riſe, and this with once dreſſing will take the ſplent clean away without any blemiſh or eye-ſore. Others uſe to beat the ſplent with a ſtick, and to bruiſe it well,

then prick it with an Awl, and thruſt out the blood, then lay on a piece of white Leather, and with a hot Iron make the greaſe ſcald it, or elſe melt into it Pitch and Verdigreaſe, and then lay a plaiſter of Pitch over it, not removing it until it fall off by it ſelf; or elſe after you have beaten and prickt the ſplent, take out the core of an Onion, and fill it with bay Salt, then roaſt it ſoft, and lay it hot to the ſplent, and inſtead of the Onion, you may if you will bind to a hard roaſted Egg, being fire-hot. Others Farriers uſe to ſlit the skin the Length of the ſplent, then to dip a little piece of Linnen in warm Wine, and ſprinkle Verdigreaſe thereon, and ſo lay it to the ſlit, renewing it once a day until the ſplent be gone. Others uſe to ſhave off the hair, and to rub the ſplent twice a day with Tarr very hard, until the ſplent be gone; but this ſplent muſt be very young and tender: for faſting ſpittle is as good as Tar. Other Farriers uſe to take a black Snail and ſlit her, and put in Bay-ſalt, and lay it to the ſplent being opened, renewing it once a day until the ſplent be gone: then let the vein above the knee be taken up, and let it bleed from below, leſt it feed the ſplent again. Others uſe if the ſplent be upon the knee to burn it, as is before ſaid; then take Wormwood, Smallage, Pellitory of the wall, and Brank-Urſine ſtampt with Swines greaſe, and lay it to the burnings, provided that firſt the hair be ſhaved off, and if the ſplent be below the knee, this cure is good alſo, and much the ſafer.

☞ Now after all theſe former recited practices, you ſhall underſtand that the moſt cleanlieſt way to take away a ſplent, is, firſt, after you have caſt your Horſe, with a Hazel ſtick of a pretty poiſe and bigneſs, gently to beat the ſplent at the firſt, and then by degrees a little harder and harder, till the ſplent grow ſoft in every part, then with the point of your Launcet let out all the blood and water; then take a brickbat, and having laid it on the fire, when it is exceeding hot, fold it in a red Cloath, and therewith rub the ſplent, and ſmooth it upon the top till you have dried away the blood, and that no more moiſture cometh out; then take of Pitch, of Rozen, and Maſtick, of each a like quantity, melt them well together, and being very hot lay it over and all about the ſplent: then clap flox of the colour of the Horſes Legg upon it, and ſo let it reſt upon the ſplent until it fall away of it ſelf: and if when it is fallen away, you perceive that any part of the ſplent remain behind,

hind, which hardly will be if it be orderly beaten; then you ſhall dreſs that remainder as you did the other before, and the ſplent will be perfectly cured. Now for the ſureſt and moſt certainſt way to off a ſplent, it is thus: With the point of a ſharp knife, make a ſlit of more than a Barley corn Length, juſt upon the top in the midſt of the ſplent, and let it be ſo deep that you may be ſure that the bone of the ſplent is bare, then put into that ſlit with the point of your knife, as much Mercury Sublimat as the quarter of an Hazel nut kirnel, and within three or four dayes, it will ſo have eaten the ſplent, that it will fall out of it ſelf; then you ſhall heal up the ſore either with freſh Butter molten, or with a plaiſter of Hogs greaſe, and Turpentine mingled and melted together; only in this cure you muſt beware, that you tie the Horſe ſo, as for four and twenty hours he may not touch the ſore place with his mouth. Now in concluſion, I am to give you this ſmall precept, to bear ever in your mind, that is both for the healing of this, and for all other humours whatſoever. You muſt firſt ſtay the falling down of the new humours to the place troubled, as by binding plaiſters, as Pitch, Rozen, Maſtick, red Lead, Oyl, Bole-armonick, and ſuch like; then to draw our matter which is there gathered with drawing ſimples, as Wax, Turpentine, and ſuch like: and laſtly, to dry up the relicks with drying powders, as Honey and Lime, Oyſter-ſhels, Soot, and ſuch like; and alſo you muſt know, that all Splints, Spavens, or Knobs, muſt either be taken away at the beginning or after the full of the Moon.

CHAP. LXXIV.

An approved and certain way to take away any Splint without breaking any hair.

TAke the root of Elicampane well waſhed and cleanſed, and lap it in a brown paper, wet it and roaſt it in the hot embers, as you would roaſt a Warden; Then as hot as the Horſe can ſuffer it, (for I would not have you ſcald) after you have rubbed and chaft the excreſcion, clap this unto it, and bind it faſt on, and in two or three dreſſings it will conſume away the ſplint.

Alſo, if morning and evening you rub the ſplint with the oyl of Origanum, it will take it away.

CHAP. LXXV.

Of the Screw, or thorow Splint.

ALthough divers of our Farriers do diſtinguiſh and make a difference betwixt a Screw and a Splint, ſaying, that the ſcrew is ever of the out-ſide of the Legg, as the ſplint is of the inſide; yet it is moſt certain, that the diſeaſe and infirmity is all one, and may as well be call'd a ſplint on the out-ſide of the Legg, as a ſplint on the inſide of the Legg; and this ſplint on the out-ſide is ever leaſt dangerous. Now a Horſe many times will have both theſe ſplints at one time, and upon one Legg, nay, I have ſeen them ſo juſt oppoſite one to the other, that one would have thought they had gone through the Horſes Legg; whence it hath come to paſs, that many fooliſh Farriers being of that mind, have intitled them a thorow ſplint, and I have ſeen my ſelf, ſome well reputed Farriers, that having the cure brought unto them, have refuſed the ſame, ſaying it was a thorow ſplint, and therefore moſt incurable: but the opinion is moſt abſurd and ridiculous: for the ſhin-bone being hollow, and full of pith and marrow, there can nothing grow through it, but it muſt confound the marrow, and then the bone cannot hold, but muſt preſently break in ſunder, eſpecially, when ſuch a weak ſpungy ſubſtance as a ſplint is, ſhall poſſeſs the whole ſtrength of the leg. Now for the cure: as the ſplint and it are all one, ſo they have all one cure, and what helpeth the firſt, with more eaſe helpeth the Latter, in as much as it is not full ſo dangerous, nor ſo near the main ſinews.

CHAP. LXXVI.

Of the Mallander.

A Mallander is a kind of a dry ſcab, growing in the form of lines or ſtreaks over-thwart the very bought or inward bent of the knee, and hath hard hair with ſtubborn roots, like Swines briſtls, which corrupteth and cankereth the fleſh like the roots of a Childs

ſcabbed

ſcabbed head; and if the ſore be great and deep, it will make the Horſe go ſtiff at his firſt ſetting forth, and halt much. It doth proceed either from the corruption of blood, or from negligent keeping, when the Horſe wanteth clean dreſſing: for you ſhall know that ſome Horſes naturally are given to have long hair from the top to the bought of the knee downe to the fetlock, and that hair in the bought of the knee is oft apt to curl; whereby thoſe Horſes, if they be not very carefully and clean kept, are much ſubject to this diſeaſe.

Now for the cure, according to the opinion of the old Farriers, it is thus. Take a barreld herring out of the pickle with a ſoft row, and two ſpoonful of black Sope, and ſo much Allom; beat all theſe in a morter well together, and then lay it to the ſore, renewing it once a day for three dayes, and it will kill the Mallander, provided alwayes that before you lay any thing unto a Mallander, you ever pull off the dry ſcabs firſt, and leave no hair growing within the ſore. Other Farriers uſe to take a pairing of a Cheeſe, and toaſting it very hot, annoint it with Honey, and ſo lay it hot to the Mallander, and renewing it once a day till the Mallander be whole: or elſe beat Henns dung and Gilli-flowers well together, and lay it to the ſore till it be whole.

Other Farriers uſe after they have waſhed the ſore clean with warm water, and ſhaved off the hair and the ſcabbs, to take a ſpoonful of Sope, and as much Lime; mingle them together that it may be like paſte, then ſpread as much on a clout as will cover the ſore, and bind it faſt on with a liſt, renewing it every day once the ſpace of two or three dayes; and at the three dayes end take away the plaiſter, and annoint the ſore with Oyl of Roſes made luke-warm, and that will fetch away ſcurf or cruſty asker, bred by means of the burning Plaiſter; which ſcurf being taken away, waſh the ſore-place well every day once with his own ſtale, or elſe with mans urine, and then immediatly ſtrow upon it the powder of burnt Oyſter-ſhels, continuing ſo to do every day once until it be whole.

Others of our latter Farriers uſe to take a quart of water, half a pint of Oyl, and as much Flower as will thicken it with ſeething; then lay that hot to the ſore twice a day, for four dayes together; then take Maſtick, Frankincenſe beaten to fine powder, Quick-ſilver, killed either in the juyce of Lemons, or in ſtrong Vinegar, of each an ounce; then of Litargy half an ounce,

ounce, of Ceruſs ten ounces; and as much of Swines greaſe clarified; incorporate and mingle all theſe together with Vinegar and Oyl, and lay it to the ſore until the Mallander be killed; then heal it up as is fore-ſhewed. Others uſe after they have waſhed it and ſhaved it, to rub it with Piſs and Sope until it be raw; then lay to it Nerve-Oyl, Hony, and ſtrong Muſtard, until it whole. Others uſe to take Sulphur, Vitriol, Sal-nitre, Sal-gem, mixed with Oyl be Bay, and to rub the Mallander well therewith. Now to conclude, you ſhall underſtand, that ſome Horſes will have two Mallanders upon one Leg, one above another, and ſometimes one a little above the inward bending of the Knee, and another a little below the inward bending of the Knee, but the cure is all alike, and as you dreſs one, ſo you may dreſs two or three.

Now for mine own part, I have not found any thing better for a Mallander, than after the ſore is cleanſed, to take the ordure or dung of a man, and annoint the ſore therewith, and it will kill it and heal it.

CHAP. LXXVII.

Of an Upper-attaint, or Over-reach upon the Back-ſinew of the Fore-leg, ſomewhat above the Paſtern-joynt.

THis which we call an Upper-attaint, is nothing elſe but a painful ſwelling of the Maſter-ſinew, or Back-ſinew of the Shank-bone, by reaſon that the Horſe doth ſometimes over-reach and ſtrike that ſinew with the Toe of his hinder foot, and thereby cauſeth the Horſe to halt much. Now the ſigns are both the ſwelling and the halting; and the cure, according to ſome of the old Farriers, is, to dreſs the ſore place with a plaiſter made of Wine lees and Wheat flower laid hot to, or elſe to take of black Sope and Boars greaſe, of each like quantity ſcalding hot; make a Plaiſter of Sear-cloath thereof, and clap it all about the ſore place; or elſe if the ſwelling by no ſalve will diſſolve, take a fine thin hot drawing Iron, and draw his Leg all downward with the hair in many ſmall ſtrikes from the one end of the ſwelling to the other, and make the ſtrikes very thick together, and ſomewhat deep; then anoint his burning for two or three dayes with black Sope, and

ſo

ſo turn the Horſe to graſs; but if he will not run at graſs, then every day give him ſome moderate exerciſe; but this burning I fancy not much, for it is foul,& albeit it take away the ſwelling,yet the ſeames of the burning,when they are cured, will keep the member big, as if it were ſtill ſweld. Now other of the ancient Farriers uſe firſt to waſh the Leg with warm water, then to ſhave off the hair as far as the ſwelling goeth, then to ſcarifie the ſore place with the point of a razor, that the blood may iſſue forth; then take of Cantharides and Euforbium of each half an ounce, mingle them together with half a quartern of Sope, and with a ſlice ſpread ſome of this Oyntment over all the ſore, ſuffering him to reſt there where you dreſs him for one half hour after; and then you may carry him into the Stable, and there let him ſtand without litter, and ſo tyed as he may not touch the ſore with his mouth, and then the next day uſe him in the ſame manner again; then the third day anoint the place with freſh butter, continuing ſo to do the ſpace of nine dayes, and at the nine dayes end make him this bath, Take of Mallows three handfuls, a Roſe cake, of Sage an handful, boyl them together in a ſufficient quantity of water, and when the Mallows be ſoft, put in half a pound of Butter, and half a pint of Sallet oyl; and then being ſomewhat warm, waſh the ſore place therewith every day once till it be whole. Others uſe to cleave a Chicken or a Pigeon, and to clap it hot to the ſwelling, and it will abate it; or elſe take Dialthea, Agripa and oyl, and mixing it together, lay it to the ſwelling. Others uſe to take of Frankincenſe, of Rozen, of Tar, of Euforbium, of Turpentine and Fenugreek, of each a quarter of an ounce, of Suet one ounce, of Oyl an ounce, of Wax three ounces, and three quarters of an ounce of Myrrh, mix and melt them all together, and Plaiſter-wiſe lay it to the ſore place till it be whole; or elſe take for this ſorrance, three quarters of an ounce of Sangnis Draconis, an ounce of Bole-armony, as much Oyl,three ounces of Maſtick, and as much Suet, and as much Swines greaſe, the whites of half a dozen of Eggs, melt and mix them together, and lay them together, and lay it to the ſwelling, and it will take it away; then make the ſhooes of his hinder feet ſherter than the horns of his toes by a quarter of an inch, and let the horn hang over uncut away, and make the foreſhooe no longer than his heel, but rather ſhorter.

CHAP.

CHAP. LXXVIII.

An excellent approved Medicine for any Sinewſtrain whatſoever.

TAke of Vinegar a pint, the whites of three or four Eggs, and as much Bole-armonick, and Bean-flower, as will bring it to a thick ſalve over the fire; then when it is very hot, lay it Plaiſter-wiſe upon the ſtrain, and round about the Leg, and do this not only till the grief be gone, but alſo till the ſwelling be taken away.

CHAP. LXXIX.

Of a neather Attaint, or over-reach on the Paſtorn-joynts.

THe neather Attaint, or over-reach on the midſt and in the hollow of the Paſtorn joynt, is a little Bladder full of jelly, like unto a wind-gall, and though it be not apparent to the eye, yet it is eaſie to be felt, and may come as well by ſome wrinch or ſtrain, as by an over-reach, and it will make a Horſe halt much; the ſigns are, the neather joynt towards the Feet-lock will be very hot, and ſomewhat ſweld, and the little ſoft bleb will eaſily be felt.

The cure, after the opinion of the old Farriers, is, take a ſmall cord, and rowl him ſomewhat ſtrait from the Knee to the neather joynt, and then in the Paſtorn, between the hoof and the joynt with a fleam ſtrike him in the midſt of his ſwelling, and let out the matter; then take the white of an Egg, and beat it with a little Salt, and then dipping flax therein, lay it unto all the ſwelling, and then unrowel his Leg, and renew the ſalve twice a day until the grief be gone. But in any caſe let him not be laboured or ridden whilſt he is in curing.

CHAP.

CHAP. LXXX.

Of an Attaint or over-reach on the Heel.

AN Attaint or over-reach upon the heel, is, when a Horſe ſtri-keth the toe of his hinder ſhooe into the heel, juſt upon the ſetting on of the hoof, and this over-reach, if it be not looked unto, will fret and rankle ſo much inward, that it will endanger the Horſes hoof, and you ſhall commonly ſee by the cut, the skin hang over the Horſes heel, and it will make a Horſe halt. Now the cure is, firſt to cut away the skin, and alſo the hoof, and the fleſh, till you have made the ſore even and plain without any hollowneſs; then waſh it very well with Beer and Salt, then bind unto it a little flax dipt in the white of an Egge, mingled with a little Bole armony, renewing it every day once the ſpace of three or four dayes, and that will heal it.

CHAP. LXXXI.

Of the Mellet on the Heel.

A Mellet is a dry Scab that groweth upon the heel, ſometimes through the corruption of blood, and ſometimes for want of clean rubbing and dreſſing, when he is wet ſet up; it appeareth like a dry chap without any moiſture, and it will be ſometimes as well on both heels as on one. The cure, according to the practice of the old Farriers, is, to take half a pinte of honey, and a quarter of a pound of black Sope, and mix them together; then put thereto four or five ſpoonful of Vinegar, and as much Allome unburnt as a Hens Egge, and two ſpoonful of Rye Flower; mix them all well together, and then take it away, and waſh all his Leg and foot with Salt beef broath, and then rope his Leg all the day with wet Hay-ropes, and he will be ſound; provided alwayes, that before you dreſs him, you ever take off the dry ſcab or ſcurf, and make the ſore as clean and as plain as is poſſible.

CHAP. LXXXII.

Of falſe Quarters.

A Falſe Quarter is a rift or open back-ſeam, ſometimes in the out-ſide, but moſt often in the inſide of the hoof, becauſe the inſide is ever the weaker part, which ſides are ever called Quarters, whence this ſorrance taketh this name, and is called a falſe quarter, as much as to ſay, a ſick and unſound Quarter; for it is as if it were a piece ſet unto the hoof, and the Hoof not all of one intire piece as it ought to be. It commeth many times by evil ſhooing, and evil paring, and ſometimes by pricking the Horſe, and ſuch like hurts. The ſigns to know it, are, the Horſe will halt much, and the rift will bleed, and when the ſhooe is off, the whole ſorrance is apparent to be ſeen. The cure, according to the ancient Farriers, is, to take off the ſhooe, and cut away ſo much of the ſhooe on that ſide where the ſorrance is, as the ſhooe being immediatly put on again, all the whole rift may be uncovered; then open the rift with a drawer, and fill all the rift with a Rowel of Tow dipt in Turpentine, Wax and Sheep-Suet molten together, renewing it every day once till it be whole; and the rift being cloſed in the top, draw him betwixt the Hair and the Hoofe with a hot Iron overthwart that place, to the intent that the Hoofe may ſhoot all whole downward; and when the Horſe goeth upright, ride him either with no other ſhooe than this, or elſe with ſuch a ſhooe as may bear in every part but only upon the falſe quarter until the Hoof be hardned. Others uſe to annoint it once a day with Sheep-Suet and Oyl mixt together, and that will cloſe the rift.

☞ Others uſe to cut away the old corrupt Hoof, and then take ſeven whites of Eggs, the powder of Incenſe, of unſlackt Lime, of Maſtick, of Verdigreaſe, and of Salt, of each three ounces; mix them well together, then dip in as much hurds as will cover the Fore-hoof lay it on, and then about it lay Swines greaſe an inch thick, and likewiſe below it alſo: bind this on in ſuch ſort that it may remain unſtirred a fortnight, then renew it ſo again, and it will make perfect his Hoof. But if there be any corrupt matter gathered within the falſe quarter, and thereby cauſeth the Horſe to halt, then

you

you ſhall lay your finger upon it, and if the Horſe ſhrink thereat, then it is ripe; then open it with a drawing knife, and let out the matter, then lay on Horſe dung, Oyl, Salt, and Vinegar mixt together Plaiſter-wiſe, and that will heal it, and make the Hoof good; yet however, you muſt have care in ſhooing him till his Hoofs be hardened, as is before ſhewed you.

CHAP. LXXXIII.

Of a Horſe that is hipped, or hurt in the hips,

A Horſe is ſaid to be hipped, when either by ſtrain, blow, or other accident, the hip bone is removed out of his right place. It is a ſorrance as hard to be cured as any whatſoever; for if it be not taken even at the firſt inſtant, there will grow within the pot of the huckle bone, ſuch a thick hard ſubſtance, that it will leave no place for the bone, and then it is utterly uncurable. The ſigns to know the ſorrance are, the Horſe will halt much, and go ſide-long, and will trail his Leggs a little after him; the ſore hipp alſo will be Lower than the other, and the fleſh will fall away on the ſide of his Buttock. The cure is, according to the beſt Farriers, if you take him in good time, firſt to caſt him on his back, and then having a ſtrong Paſtorn on his grieved Leg, with a rope draw that Legg upright, and with your hands on each ſide his thigh-bone, guide it directly into the pot: that done, let him down gently, and ſo ſuffer him to riſe with all meekneſs; then go with him into the ſtable, and there charge all his hipp and back with Pitch and Rozen molten together, and laid on warm, and then ſome flox of his own colour to be clapped upon the ſame, and ſo turn the Horſe to graſs until he go upright.

But if the Horſe be not hipped, but only hurt in the hipp, and that newly, then firſt take of Oyl de Bay, of Dialthea, of Nerve oyl, and of Swines greaſe, of each half a pound; melt them all together, ſtirring them continually until they be throughly mingled together; then annoint the ſore place therewith againſt the hair, every day once the ſpace of a fortnight, and make the oyntment ſink well into the fleſh, by holding a hot barr of Iron over the place annointed, weaving your hand to and fro until the oyntment be entred into the ſkin: and if at the fortnights end you ſee the Horſe not any

thing amended, then ſlit a hole downward in his skin an inch beneath the hip bone, making the hole ſo wide, as you may eaſily thruſt in a rowel with your finger; and then with a cornet and a quil blow the skin from the fleſh above the bone, and round about the ſame, ſo broad as the rowel may lye flat and plain within the skin and the fleſh: and this rowel will be made of ſoft Calves Leather, with a hole in the midſt, and a thread tied unto it, to pul it out when you would cleanſe it, or the hole; and if the rowel be roled about with flax faſt tyed on, and anointed with the oyntment under written, it will draw ſo much the more.

Now you muſt thruſt in your rowel firſt double, and then ſpread it abroad with your finger: that done, rent it with a good Large tent of flax dipt in a little Turpentine and Hoggs greaſe molten together and made warm, and cleanſe the hole and the rowel every day once; and alſo renew the tent for the ſpace of a fortnight, and before you dreſs him, cauſe him every day to be led up and down a foot pace a quarter of an hour, to make the humours come down; and at the fortnights end pull out the rowel, and heal up the wound with the ſame ſalve, making the tent every day leſſer and leſſer, until it be whole: and ſo ſoon as it is whole, with a hot drawing Iron draw croſs lines of eight or nine inches long right over the hip bone, ſo as the rowelled place may be in the very midſt thereof, and burn him no deeper but as the skin may look ye low; and then charge all that place, and over all his buttocks with this charge. Take of Pitch one pound, of Rozen half a pound, and of Tar half a pint, boyl them together, and then being good and warm, ſpread it on with a clout tyed in a riven ſtick, and then clap on a few flox of the Horſes colour, and if it be in Summer, let the Horſe run to graſs a while, for the more he travelleth at his own will, the better it is for him.

CHAP.

CHAP. LXXXIV.

Of Stifling, and hurts in the ſtifle.

THat Horſe is ſaid to be ſtifled, when the ſtifling bone, which is a little bone of two inches in length, lying between the nether end of the thigh-bone, and the upper end of the great hough-bone of the hinder Legg, is by any ſtrain, ſtroak, ſlip, or ſuch like, thruſt out of his right place; but if the ſtifling bone be not removed nor looſened, and yet the Horſe halteth by means of ſome grief in that place, then we ſay the Horſe is hurt in the ſtifle, and not ſtifled. The ſigns are theſe; If the horſe be ſtifled, the ſtifle-bone will ſtick out more of the one ſide than of the other, and it is apparent to the eye, and in his halting he will no more but touch the ground with his toe.

The cure, according to the opinion of the old Farriers, is, to thruſt two round pins croſs the ſtifling bone, through the skin, in ſuch ſort as you were taught for the ſhoulder pight, but the pins would not be any thing near ſo big, nor ſo long, becauſe the ſtifling bone is not ſo broad as the ſhoulder: and ſtanding in the ſtable, let him have a paſtorn and a ring upon his ſore Legg, and thereunto faſten a cord, which cord muſt go about his neck, and let it be ſo much ſtrained, as it may bring his ſore Leg more forward than the other to keep the bone from ſtarting out: But this cure is foul and troubleſome, wherefore other Farriers of better experience, uſe only to ſet a patten-ſhooe upon his ſound foot, and ſo turn him abroad, that he may be compelled to tread upon his lame foot: and that ☞ ſtraining of it will in a day or two make him as ſound as ever he was, and put the ſtifling-bone into his true place again. But if you cannot readily get a patten-ſhooe, then you ſhall take either a plain ſurſingle, or any other broad binding web that will go three or four times about the Horſes Leg, and with it you ſhall garter up the Horſes ſound Leg three fingers above his hamm, even upon his main great ſinew, ſo ſtraight as your ſelf and another man can draw it: and then turn the Horſe abroad where he may go up and down, and in eight and forty hours the Horſe will be ſound as ever he was: then take off the garter, and rub the place that was gartered

up.

up with freſh butter, for it will be much ſwelled.

Now if this miſchance of ſtifling happen unto your Horſe in your travail, and that your occaſions will not ſuffer you to ſtay for any of theſe Cures, then you ſhall take your Horſe either to ſome deep Pond, or deep River that hath eaſie going in and out, and there ſwimm him up and down a dozen turns: which done, you may after travil him at your pleaſure: for the more he is laboured, the ſounder he will go. Now if your Horſe be not ſtifled, but only hurt in the ſtifle, either with ſome ſtripe or ſome ſtrain, then the bone will not ſtand out, yet perhaps the place will be much ſweld. The cure, according to the opinion of the old Farriers, is, to make a litele ſlit in his skin, a handful below the ſore place, and then with a quil blow all the skin from the fleſh upwards, and then with your hand preſs out the wind again, and then thruſt in a towel of Horſe-hair from the firſt ſlit to the upper part of the ſtifle bone: this done, take a pottle of old piſs and boyl it to a quart, and cleanſe it well; then take a handful of Mallows, and half a pint of Salet oyl, and add them to the piſs, and then boyl them well together: then bath all the ſore place therewith every day once the ſpace of ſeven or eight dayes, and let him not ſtir out of the ſtable during the cure, and in twenty one dayes he will be ſound.

Other Farriers uſe only to take a pound of Bole-armony, a quart of red wine Vinegar, ſix Eggs beaten, ſhels and all, two penny-worth of Engliſh honey, and as much Venice Turpentine, one quart of flower, and one good handful of Bay ſalt; put all theſe in a pot, and incorporate them well together, then keep them cloſe one night, and the next day annoint the ſore place with ſome of it; and thus dreſſing it once a day the ſpace of nine dayes, it will make the Horſe ſound.

CHAP. LXXXV.

Of the bone Spaven, or dry Spaven.

THe bone Spaven, or dry Spaven, is a great hard knob as big as a Walnut, growing in the inſide of the hoof, hard under the joynt, near unto the maſter-vein; it groweth at the firſt like a tender griſtle, and by proceſs of time, it commeth to be a hard bone,

and

and cauſeth the Horſe to halt much. This ſorrance will come ſometimes by nature or deſcent, as when either the Sire or Dam of the Horſe have had the ſame diſeaſe; and ſometimes (which is moſt generally) it commeth when a Horſe is Laboured too young; for a Horſe in that part of his hinder Legg hath ſmall bones knit all together upon one cluſter, which being preſſed before they be naturally hardned, cannot chuſe but thruſt forth theſe unnatural excreſcions. Other whiles it proceedeth from extreme labour and heat, diſſolving humours which do deſcend through the Maſter-vein, continually feeding that place with evil Nutriment, and cauſes the place to ſwell, which ſwelling in continuance of time becommeth ſo hard as a bone, and therefore is called the bone Spaven. The ſigns are the apparent ſight of the ſorrance; and truly for mine own part, I am of the mind of other Farriers, that it is very hard abſolutely to cure it, yet that the eye-ſore may be taken away, and the halting much eaſed, is not hard, for I have done it many times. Then to proceed to the cure thereof, according to the opinion of the old Farriers, is thus: Firſt ſlit the skin juſt over the head of the Spaven or Excreſcion, and open it with a Corner, and in any caſe have a care that you touch not the maſter-vein, but put it by: then with your Lancet lay the Spaven all bare, then with a fine Chizel about a quarter of an inch broad, or a little more, ſtrike off the dead of the Spaven, to the quantity of a quarter of an Almond, or according to the bigneſs of the Spaven: then take two pennyweight of Verdigreaſe beaten to fine powder, and two pennyweight of Nerve-oyl, and beat them all well together: then laying ſome of it upon fine Lint, lay it upon the Spaven; then lay dry lint betwixt the medicine and the vein, that the medicine may not touch the vein; then lay a plaiſter of Pitch, Rozen, Turpentine, and Hoggs greaſe molten together, all over the hough, both to comfort the joynt, and to keep in the medicine. And thus dreſs him the ſpace of three dayes, and it will cleanſe away the Spaven even to the bottom; at the end of three dayes you ſhall waſh away the corroſive and the matter, either with Tanners water, or with Vinegar, and lay no more of that Salve thereto for hurting the bone; then make a plaiſter of Diaculum, and lay it upon a Linnen cloath and lay that plaiſter unto the Spaven, renewing it every day once for the ſpace of ſeven dayes, and it will heal him up.

Others

Others of the old Farriers uſe, firſt to waſh the Spaven with warm water, and ſhave off the hair ſo farr as the Spaven extendeth, and then ſcarifie the place and make it bleed: then take of Cantharides one dozen, and of Euforbium half a ſpoonful; beat them into powder, and boyl them together with a little Oyl de bay, lay this boyling hot upon the ſore, and let all his tail be tied up from wiping away the medicine; and then within half an hour after ſet him up in the ſtable, and tye him ſo as he may not lye down all that night, for fear of rubbing off the medicine; and the next day annoint it with freſh Butter, continuing thus to do every day once the ſpace of five or ſix dayes; and when the hair is grown again, draw the ſore place with an hot Iron in this ſort, juſt upon the Spaven: then take another hot Iron like a bodkin, ſomewhat bowing at the point, and thruſt it in at the neather end of the middle line, and ſo upward betwixt the skin and the fleſh, an inch and an half, and then tent it with a little Hoggs greaſe and Turpentine molten together, and made warm, renewing it every day once the ſpace of nine dayes; provided that firſt immediatly after his burning, you take up the maſter-vein, ſuffering him to bleed a little from above, then with a red ſilk tye the upper end of the vein, and leave the neather end open, to the intent that he may bleed from beneath until it ceaſe of it ſelf; and this will diminiſh the Spaven, but not take it clean away.

Now there be other Farriers which uſe after they have burnt it in manner afore-ſaid, and taken up the maſter-vein, to annoint it with freſh Butter, till the burning begin to ſcale; and then take of Sage and Nettles, of each a handful, and boyl them with four handfuls of Mallows in fair water, and then put thereto a little Butter, and with that bath him every day once for three or four dayes till the burning be whole, and let him not wet his feet during the cure.

Others uſe to prick the Spaven with a ſharp pointed knife, then take a piece of a candle, and lay a piece of brown paper upon it, and with an hot Iron melt the tallow, and after annoint it with Butter. Others uſe firſt to prick the Spaven well, then to lay upon it for three or four dayes together, every day mans-dung: after that, lay to it Galbanum till the ſore-matter and rhume, and the humour come forth:

forth: then waſh it with Urine, and laſtly, heal it up with Oyl and Honey boyled together, for that will bring on the hair.

Now to conclude, that which I have ever found to be the ſureſt and the cleaneſt way to take the bone Spaven quite away, if it be uſed with diſcretion and care, is to take of *Unguentum Apoſtolorum*, and of white Mercury, of each a like quantity, but of Mercury rather the more; mix them well together: then after you have caſt your Horſe, make a ſlit juſt the length of the Spaven, ſo that you touch not the maſter-vein: then opening it, and laying all the Spaven bare, with a ſharp inſtrument ſcale the Spaven a little; then make a plegant of lint juſt ſo big as the excreſcion or bone Spaven is: then ſpreading ſome of the Salve thereon, lay it upon the Spaven; then with dry lint defend all other parts of the member, eſpecially the maſter-vein, from the corroſive: then lay the plaiſter of Pitch, Rozen, Turpentine and Hoggs greaſe before ſpoken, round about his hoof, and ſo let him reſt four and twenty hours: then take away all that medicine, and ſcaling the bone a little, if you find the corroſive have not gone deep enough, then dreſs it in the ſame manner the ſecond time, and that will be altogether ſufficient: then take of Turpentine, of Deers ſuet, and of Wax, of each a like quantity, and mix and melt them well together, then dreſs the ſore place therewith being warmed, and lint or tow dipt therein, and within a day or two you ſhall ſee the whole cruſt of the ſpaven come clean away, then may you with the ſame Salve, heal up the wound; and this hath never failed me in any practice. Alſo underſtand that whatſoever taketh away the Splint, taketh away the Spaven alſo.

CHAP. LXXXVI.

Of the blood Spaven, wet Spaven, or through Spaven.

THe blood Spaven, wet Spaven, or through Spaven, (for all is one diſeaſe) is a ſoft ſwelling growing on both ſides the hoof, and ſeems as though it went through the hoof, whereby it is called a through Spaven; but, for the moſt part the ſwelling on the inſide (becauſe it is fed continually of the Maſter vein) is greater than the

ling on the out-ſide. It proceedeth from a more fluxible and flegmy humour, and not ſo viſcous and ſlimy as the other Spaven doth, and therefore this never waxeth hard, nor groweth to a bone, and therefore it is a much eaſier cure than the other. The ſigns thereof are like the other the apparent ſight thereof; and for the cure, it is, according to the opinion of the old Farriers, in this manner: Firſt, waſh the Spaven with warm water, and then dreſs it with Cantharides and Euforbium, in ſuch ſort as was at large ſhewed in the former Chapter; only you ſhall not boyl them, but only mix them together, and dreſs the ſore therewith two dayes together: then annoint it with Butter, and after burn it with a hot Iron both without and within, in manner ar is ſhewed alſo in the former Chapter; but you ſhall by no means rent it: then immediately you ſhall take up the maſter-vein, and let it bleed, as was ſhewed before; and then for the ſpace of nine dayes, annoint him every day once with Butter, until the burning begin to ſcale, and then waſh it with this bath: Take of Mallows three handfulls, of Sage one handful, and as much of red Nettles; boyl them in water until they be ſoft, then put thereto a little freſh Butter, and bathe the place every day once for the ſpace of three or four dayes, and until the burning be whole, let the Horſe come in no wet.

Other Farriers uſe, after they have ſhaved off the hair, and taken up the vein, to take of Muſtard-ſeed, of the great Mallow root, and of Ox-dung, of each a like quantity, and as much ſtrong Vinegar as will mix them together like a Salve, then beat them all well together, and make thereof a ſoft plaiſter, or elſe an oyntment, and lay it upon the Spaven; change it evening and morning, and bind it in ſuch ſort to the ſorrance with ſome piece of cloath, that it may not fall off or be removed; and when the Spaven is clean gone, lay upon the place a plaiſter of Pitch very hot, and take it not off, until it fall away of its own accord. Other Farriers uſe unto this former medicine to add Oyl de bay, Turpentine, and Bole-armony.

And other Farriers uſe but only to take up the vein, both above and below the Spaven, and ſuffering it to bleed well; then to knit up the vein, and annoint it with Butter till it be whole, and it will conſume the Spaven.

CHAP.

CHAP. LXXXVII.

A moſt rare and well approved Medicine, which will take away any blood ſpaven whatſoever.

AFter you have taken up the vein, knit it faſt above, and then cut it in ſunder, you ſhall take of Lynſeed two or three handfuls, and bruiſe it well in a morter, then mix it with new Cowdung, and putting it in a frying pan, heat it well upon the fire, and very hot apply it to the Spaven, renewing it morning and evening till it bring the Spaven like a byle to impoſtumation, and to break it, then after it hath runn a day or two, you ſhall only apply to the ſore a plaiſter of Pitch, till it be whole.

CHAP. LXXXVIII.

Of the Sellender.

THe Sellender is a certain kind of dry ſcab, growing in the very bent of the ham of the hinder Leg; and it extendeth out into ill-favoured chaps or chincks, which if it be not prevented by medicine, it will fret in ſunder the ſinews of the hoof: It is in all points like unto a Mallander, and it proceedeth from the ſelf like cauſes, and requireth the ſelf ſame cures; therefore look into the Chapter of the Mallander, and whatſoever you find there, that will cure the Mallander, the ſame will alſo cure the Sellender.

CHAP. LXXXIX.

Of the Hough Bonny.

THe Hough Bonny is a round ſwelling like a Paris ball, growing upon the very tip or elbow of the hoof, and commeth ever of ſome ſtripe or bruiſe; but eſpecially when he beateth his hoof either againſt the poſt which ſtandeth behind him, at the neather end of his ſtall, or againſt the bar which doth divide him from another Horſe, which many Ramiſh Jades will do, when they ſeek to ſtrike at the Horſe which ſtandeth next them.

Now the cure thereof is thus, according to the opinion of the old Farriers, take a round Iron somewhat sharp at the end, like a good big bodkin, and let it be somewhat bending at the point; then holding the sore with your left hand, pulling it somewhat from the sinews, pierce it with the Iron, being first made red hot, thrusting it beneath in the bottom, and so upward into the jelly, to the intent that the same jelly may issue downward out of the hole: and having thrust out all the jelly, tent the hole with a tent of flax dipt in Turpentine and Hogs grease molten together; and also annoint the out-side with Hogs grease made warm, renewing it every day once until the hole be ready to close up, making the tent every day lesser and lesser until it be whole. Now for my own part, both for this ☞ sorrance, or any other bruise in this part, I have found this cure ever the best: First, either with rotten litter or hay boyled in old urine, or else with a plaister of Wine-lees and Wheat-flower boyled together, to ripen the swelling, and bring it to putrifaction, or else to drive the swelling away, but if it come to a head, then to launce it in the lowest part of the softness, with a thin hot Iron, and so to let out the matter: then to tent it with Turpentine, Deers suet, and Wax, of each a like quantity molten together, laying a plaister of the same Salve over it, to hold in the tent until it be perfectly well.

CHAP. XC.

Of the Curb.

A Curb is a long swelling a little beneath the Elbow of the hoof of the great sinew behind, hard above the top of the horn, which causeth the Horse to halt after a little labour: for the more his sinew is strained, the greater is his pain, and the more he hath rest, the lesser is his grief; it commeth as the Spavens come, either from descent, or from great burthens when the Horse is young, or else from some strain or wrench. The signs are the apparent view thereof; and the cure according to the old Farriers, is first to shave off the hair, then prick it with a fleam in three or four places, and for three or four dayes together, lay unto it twice a day mans dung; then

then lay Galbanum to it likewiſe twice a day until it rot, and that the matter doth iſſue forth; then waſh it with Urine: and laſtly, heal it up with Honey and Oyl boyled together, renewing the ſame twice a day till the Curb be gone; and in any caſe let all your Salves be applied warm and new made, and if you make an iſſue with a hot Iron in the bottom of the Curb, it will not do amiſs.

Others uſe to take a very hot Iron, and hold it as nigh the ſore as may be, but not touching it: then when it is warm, vent it in ſix or ſeven places: then take a ſpoonful of Salt, half a ſpoonful of Nerve-oyl, and a penny-weight of Verdigreaſe, and the white of an Egg; mix theſe well together, and dipping flax in the ſame lay it to the Curb, and this in few dreſſings will take it away. Other Farriers uſe to chafe and rub the Curb well with their hands: then take red Walt-wort leaves, and Burrage, and braying them well together, lay it to the Curb, renewing it once a day for a ſevennight together. Others uſe to ſlit the Curb all the length, then take a piece of Linnen cloath, and wet it in wine made warm: then ſtrow Verdigreaſe thereupon, and bind it to the ſore, renewing it once a day until the Curb be gone. Others of the ancient Farriers take of Wine lees a pint, of Cummin half an ounce, and as much Wheat-flower as will thicken it, and ſtir them well together; and being made warm, charge the ſore place therewith, renewing it every day once the ſpace of three or four dayes, and when the ſwelling is almoſt gone, then draw it with a hot Iron made very thin, in this ſort, and cover the burning with pitch and Rozen molten together, and layed on good and warm, and clap thereon ſome flox of the Horſes color, or ſo nigh as may be gotten, and remove them not until they fall away of themſelves; and for the ſpace of nine dayes let the Horſe reſt, and come in no wet. Now there be other Farriers which to this laſt recited Salve, will add Tar, and it is not amiſs, only it will not ſtick ſo well.

Now for mine own part, I have ever found this practice the beſt.

Firſt, with a broad incle to bind the hoof ſtrait a little about the cod: then with a ſmooth hazel ſtick to beat, rub, and chafe the Curb: then with a fleam ſtrike it as deep as you can in two or three places

places of the Curb: then thruſt out the corrupt blood; and after upon the point of your knife, put into every hole as deep as you can thruſt it, the quantity of two Barly corns of white Mercury, and ſo let the Horſe reſt four and twenty hours after; then after, only annoint the ſore place with hot molten Butter till it be whole, once a day at the leaſt. And likewiſe here underſtand, that whatſoever cureth the ſplint or Spaven, that cureth the Curb alſo.

CHAP. XCI.

Of the pains.

THe Pains is a certain ulcerous ſcab growing in the Paſtorns of a Horſe, betwixt the fetlock and the heel, full of fretting matteriſh water, and commeth only for want of good rubbing and clean dreſſing, after the Horſe hath been journeyed in the Winter wayes, by means whereof the ſand and durt remaining in the hair, fretteth the skin and fleſh, and ſo breedeth to a ſcab; and therefore your Friſonds, and Flanders Horſes and Mares, which are now ſo much in uſe with us for the Coach, are the ſooneſt troubled with this Diſeaſe, if the Keeper be not much the more careful. The ſigns hereof are, his Legs, will be ſwoln and hot, the ſcab will be palpable to be felt, and the water will iſſue out of the ſcab; which water is ſo hot and fretting, that it will ſcald off the hair, and breed ſcabs where it goeth. The cure, according to the ancient Farriers, is: Take of Turpentine, Hogs greaſe, Honey and black Sope, of each a like quatity, and having molten them upon a ſoft fire, take it off, and put in a little Bole-armony, finely beaten into powder; then work all theſe things well together with a ſtick in your right hand and a diſh of Wheat-flower by you, that with your left hand you may put it in by a little at once, till you have made it thick like an Oyntment or ſoft Salve: then ſpread it upon a Linnen cloath, as big as the ſore, having firſt cut away the hair, and made the ſore raw, apply to the ſalve, and dreſs him thus once a day until it be whole.

This medicine is well approved to cure all ſorts of pain Scratches, Mouldy heels, or any other skirvy ſcalls whatſoever, that may breed in Horſes Legs or heels, whether they come by means of evil humours,

mours, or for lack of good dreſſing or clean keeping, whether they be mattery and filthy runing ſores, or elſe dry ſcabs. Others of the old Farriers uſe for this ſorrance to take a pint of red Wine lees, and a handful of Wheat-bran, a ſaucer full of Honey, and half a pound of the powder of powdred Beef burnt, and as much of Bark duſt, and half a pound of Allom, and a quarter of a pound of Swines greaſe, and half a handful of Vervine: beat all theſe together in a Morter, and then fry them over the fire, and make a hot plaiſter thereof, and lay it to the ſore as hot as the horſe can ſuffer it, letting it abide there the ſpace of three dayes, and in once or twice thus dreſſing him, it will make him ſound; yet ſome hold, if you do with a hot drawing Iron ſear the great vein over-thwart, a handful above the fetlock, and then take a ſpoonful of Tar, a ſpoonful of butter, and a ſpoonful of honey, and warming them well together, annoint the vein therewith every day till the cure be perfected, and it is much available.

Other Farriers uſe, firſt to waſh all the Horſes paſtorns with Butter and Beer well warmed together, and then his Leg being ſomewhat dryed, clip away all the hair that doth annoy the ſore: then take of Turpentine, of Hogs greaſe, and of Honey, of each like quantity; mingle them well together in a pot, and put thereunto a little Bole-armony, the yolks of two Eggs, and as much Wheat-flower as will thicken the things afore-ſaid, and ſo by long working it, make it like a plaiſter; then ſpread it upon the Linnen cloath, and lap it round about the Horſes paſtorn, and bind it faſt on with a rowler, renewing it once a day till the Horſe be whole; and in no wiſe let the Horſe come in any wet during the cure. Others uſe, firſt to chafe the ſore place with a hay-rope, or with a hair cloath, till it either bleed or be raw; then take a little ſtrong Muſtard, Beane-flower, and freſh greaſe, with a little Fenugreek; then mix all together in a diſh, and make thereof a Salve, and therewith annoint the ſore, until it leave mattering: then take Honey, the white of an Egg, and freſh Butter; mix them together, and annoint the ſore place therewith until it be whole. Others uſe only to bathe the ſore with Beef broath, and then for four or five dayes after, to annoint it with Sope, or elſe firſt to plunge his feet in ſcalding water twice or thrice: and then bathe the ſore in ſcalding water: then have ready a hard roſted Egg, cleave it in the middſt, and lapp it to as hot as you can, and let it lye bound all night; uſe

this

this once or twice, and you may adventure to ride him.

Others uſe to take Pepper, Garlick ſtampt, Colworts, and old Hogs greaſe, of each like quantity, then beat them in a morter till they be come to a Salve, and ſo lay it to the ſore, renewing it once a day till it be whole.

Others uſe firſt to take up the ſhackle-veins on both ſides, then take the ſoft row of a red herring, and muſtard, and black ſope, and when they are well beaten together, boyl them in Vinegar till they come to a Salve, and apply it to the ſore; this will cure the pains, albeit you do not take up the ſhackle veins. If you cannot readily get this Salve, you may take Butter and Honey molten together, and it will help them, or elſe take a pound of Hogs greaſe, a penny-worth of Verdigreaſe, two ounces of muſtard, half a pound of Oyl de bay, a quarter of a pound of Nerve oyl, half a pound of Honey, half a pound of Engliſh wax, one ounce of Arſnick, two ounces of red Lead, and half a pint of Vinegar; boyl all theſe together and make an oyntment of it: then having clipt and made the ſore all bare, apply the medicine thereunto very hot, and renew it once a day until it be whole. Others uſe to take five ounces of Orpiment, five of Tartar, one of Verdigreaſe, half an ounce of Sulphur, as much of Vitriol made into powder, the juyce of four Citrons, the whites of two Eggs, with three ounces of Salet oyl; let all theſe be very well beaten together, and applyed once a day to the ſore, and it will not only heal this diſeaſe, but any ſalt humour whatſoever. Mingle with ſoft greaſe, Vinegar, Honey, Orpiment, and Arſnick; but let Arſnick be the leaſt, and it will cure this diſeaſe, ſo will alſo white Wax, Turpentine and Camphora mixt together. Others uſe to take an hundred black Snails in the moneth of May, ſlit them, and put them in a bag with a pint of Bay ſalt, then hang them over the fire, with a Veſſel ſet under to receive what drops from them, and keep it in a cloſe glaſs: then annoint the ſore every day therewith, and it will heal this ſorrance. Others take Honey and Vinegar, of each a like quantity, a little Oyl, and ſuet of a He-goat, of each alike, alſo boyl them with a ſoft fire and ſtir it well: when it waxeth red, add of Verdigreaſe and Vitriol, of each like quantity made into powder, ſtirring it till it be red and thick: then being warm, annoint the ſore place therewith once a day after it hath been waſhed with warm water: and this not only helps the pains, but

alſo

alſo any ſorrance whatſoever of like nature about the Legs.

Alſo green Copperas and Roch allom, of each half a pound, and a handful of Bay-ſalt boyled in a gallon of running water, will heal it; or elſe unto it add a pint of Honey, and boyl it over again, and it will be the better; then when you have anointed the ſore therewith, rub it with the powder of Glaſs, Muſtard and Vinegar mixed together, and afterward skin it with Cream, and the inner rinde of Elder beaten to a ſalve, which muſt be applied to the ſore twice a day at the leaſt.

CHAP. XCII.

Of the Mules or Kibe-Heels.

THeſe Mules, or Kybed heels, are certain dry ſcabs or chaps breeding behind upon the heels of a Horſe, and ſo a little inward even to the Fetlock, in long chaps and chinks; it proceedeth either from corruption of blood, or from being bred in wet marriſh grounds, or elſe from unclean and negligent keeping, in ſuch manner as the Pains are bred; this ſorrance will make the Horſe's Leg to ſwell much, eſpecially in the Winter, and about the Spring time, and he will go ſtifly, and halt much.

Now for the cure, you ſhall underſtand, that whatſoever healeth the Pains, the ſame will in like ſort heal thoſe Kybed heels; yet for more particularity, you ſhall know, that the old Farriers did uſe for this ſorrance, if they took it at the beginning, but onely to anoint it for two or three dayes with Sope, and then after to waſh it with ſtrong Urine, or Beef-broth till it were whole; but if it were of any long continuance, then firſt to cut away the hair, and lay the ſore open and plain; then take two ounces of unſlaked Lime, one ounce of Sope, and the white of an Egg, or elſe an ounce of unſlacked Lime, and as much Salt, and three ounces of Soot, and mingling them with ſtrong Vinegar, anoint the ſore therewith, and it will heal and kill them.

Other Farriers uſe to calcinate Tarter, and diſſolve it to water; then congeal it like Salt, and mingle it with Sope like an ointment, and then dreſs the ſore therewith, and this will in eight and forty hours heal any Mules, Pains, or Scratches whatſoever. If you take

the juyce of the leaves and roots of Elder, it is very good to dry up any of these evil humours.

CHAP. XCIII.

Of Wind-galls.

THe Wind-gall is a little Bleb or Bladder ful of corrupt jelly, and like the white of an Egg growing on each side of the Master-sinew of the Leg, hard above the Pastorn. Now of them some will be big, and some will be little, and there will be sometimes more than one or two of a cluster, and they are so painful, especially in the Summer season, when the Weather is hot, and the Wayes hard, that the Horse is not able to travel, but halteth down-right; they proceed commonly from extreme labour in the Summer time upon hard Wayes, whereby the humours being dissolved, do flow and resort into the hollow places about the neather joynts, which are most beaten and feebled with travel, and there are congealed and covered with a thin skin like a bladder; they are most apparent to be seen and felt.

☞ The cure thereof, according to the old Farriers, is to take a Knife, and open it in the length of a Bean, piercing no further into it than through the skin of the bladder, and then thrust out the jelly, which as I said before, will be like the white of an Egg; then take the yolk of an Egg, and as much Oyl de Bay as a good Nut, and mixing them together, make a Plaister thereof, and lay it to the sore, and in two or three dayes it will heal it. Others of the old Farriers dress it with Euforbium and Cantharides, in such sort as is shewed for the taking away of the splent; but if that will not serve, then with a hot drawing Iron to draw the Windegall in this sort: then to open the middle Line with a Launcer, the length of a Bean, and thrust out the jelly; then lay Pitch and Rozen molten together upon it, and then a few flox, and that will take it clean away. Other Farriers use to take up the Master-veins on the inside of his Legs, and suffer him only to bleed from below: Then having put up the Vein, cover all his Leg over with a Plaister of Wine-lees and Wheat-flower mingled together, and rowl it with a long rowler; dress him in this sort once a day till it be whole.

Others

Others uſe to open the skin and put out the jelly; then take a ſpoonful of Oyl de Bay, a ſpoonful of Turpentine, a penny-worth of Verdigreaſe, the white of an Egg, and a quarter of an ounce of red Lead, boyl them together till it come to a ſalve; then lay it to the Wind-gal, and it will cure it; or elſe, after you have let out the jelly, take Rozen, Sheeps Suet, and Brimſtone, of each alike, and melt them together, and lay that upon the Wind-gall, ſo it be not too hot, and it will cure it. Others take the roots of Cummin, and beat them well with a little Salt, and lay that to the Wind-gall; or elſe anoint them with the juice of Onions or Leek-blades, and that will allay them, or elſe ground-ivy and Worm-wood with the roots ſod in Wine, and laid to the Wind-gall, will take them away. Others of our later experienced Farriers, take an ounce of white Wax, an ounce of Rozen, two ounces of raw Honey, three ounces of Swinesgreaſe, two ounces of Oyl of the yolks of Eggs, five ounces of Oyl de Bay; mix all theſe well together, and ſtrain them; then rub them into the Wind-gall, by holding a hot bar of Iron againſt the Oyntment, and it will take the Wind-gall away. Now for the making of the Oyl of the yolks of Eggs, it is thus: Firſt, ſeeth the Eggs hard, then ſtamp them, and ſeeth them in an earthen pot with a ſoft fire, and ſo ſtrain them. Now this medicine will not only heal the Wind-gall, but the Ringbone alſo, it is very good for the abating of the Wind-gall, and for making the medicine to work the better, to let the Horſe ſtand in a cold running ſtream an hour morning and evening. The ſcum of the four Salts ſod in mans Urine, and laid to the Wind-gall, will take it away.

There be others which take a pottle of Vinegar, a pound of Orpiment, a quarter of a pound of Galles, and as much of the herb Molleyn ſtamped ſmall, mingle theſe well together, and put them into a pot, then every day therewith bathe the Wind-gall, and in three weeks it will dry them clean up; it will alſo take away a Curb, or a Spaven, or a ring bone, if you take them at the breeding. Other Farriers take of Sevil Oyl and Brimſtone, of each like quantity, and ſeeth them in mans Urine, and ſtir them well together; after put in the quantity of a Walnut of Sope, to keep the hair from ſcalding off; then bathe the Wind-gall with this hot, thrice together, rubbing it well in; then anoint it above with Nerve-Oyl, and Oyl de Bay, and make it, by holding to it a hot Bar of Iron, or a hot

Fire-pan, to ſink into the fleſh, and in three dayes it will dry up any Wind-gal.

☞ Now for mine own part, the beſt Medicine I have found in my practice for this Sorrance, and the eaſieſt, is, with a fine Lancet to open the Wind-gall, making the hole no bigger than that the jelly may come forth; then having thruſt it clean forth, lap a wollen wet cloath upon it, and with a Taylers hot preſſing Iron, rub upon the cloath till you have made the cloath ſuck in all the moyſture from the Wind-gal, and that the Wind-gall is dry; then take of Pitch, of Rozen, and of Maſtick, of each like quantity, and being very hot, daub it all over the Wind-gall; then clap good ſtore of flex of the colour of the Horſe upon it, and ſo let the Horſe reſt or run at graſs till the Playſter fall off by its own accord, and be ſure the Wind-gall will be gone.

Now I would give you this for a Rule, that by no meanes you uſe to a Wind-gal, either Arſnick or Reſalgar; for commonly then the Wind-gall will come again; neither muſt you burn much, nor make any great inciſion: For any of theſe will turn the ſoft ſubſtance of the Wind-gall to hardneſs, and then the Horſe will be lame without cure.

CHAP. XCIV.

Of a Strain in the Paſtorn joynt, or Fet-lock.

A Horſe may be ſtrained in the Fet-lock, or Paſtorn-joynt; either by ſome wrench in the Stable, when the Planchers are broken under him, or by treading awry upon ſome ſtone, or upon ſome Cartrut, as he travelleth by the way. The ſigns whereof be theſe; The joynt will be ſwoln and ſore, and the Horſe will halt; and the cure, according to the old Farriers, is, take a quart of ſtale Urine, and ſeeth it till the foam ariſe; then ſtrain it, and put thereto a handful of Tanſie, and a handful of Mallows, and a ſaucer ful of Honey, and a quarter of a pound of Sheeps ſuet; then ſet it on the fire, and ſeeth them all together till the herbs be ſodden ſoft; and then being very hot, lay this Pultus to the joynt, and cover it over with a blew cloath; and in three times dreſſing it will help the ſtrain.

Other

Other Farriers take of Dialthea half a pound, and as much nerve oyl, mingle them well together, and anoint the ſore place therewith, chafing it well with both your hands, that the Oyntment may enter in, continuing ſo to do every day once until the Oyntment be all ſpent, and let the Horſe reſt; but if this will not prevail, then they will uſe cantharides, as in caſe of the ſplint; but I do not hold that cure convenient, becauſe it will make a double grief. Therefore I had rather you ſhould take Pompilion, Nerve Oyl and black Sope, of each alike, and heat them hot on the fire, and then anoint the ſore place therewith, and it will make the Horſe ſound.

CHAP. XCV.

To remedy any manner of halting that cometh by Strain, Streak, or any other accident.

NOw foraſmuch as halting is ſuch a general Sorrance amongſt Horſes, that not any man that is Maſter of a Horſe, but even in his ſmalleſt travel, is at one time or other vexed with the ſame, I will here before I do proceed any further, ſet you down certain general Receits ſelected and culled out of the private practice and experiments of the beſt Farriers in Chriſtendome, of which I may give the bolder teſtimony, becauſe I have made practice of their vertues.

If then your Horſe have taken any halt, either by ſtifneſs of Sinews, Strain, Wrench, Streak, or any other accident, if the grief be in his Leg, you ſhall take Smallage, Oxe-eye, and Sheeps ſuet, of each a like quantity, chop them all together, and boyl it in mans Urine, and bathe all the Leg therewith; then with Hay-ropes wet in cold water, rowl up his Leg, and he will be able to travel the next day.

If you ſeeth a pound of black Sope in a quart of ſtrong Ale till it look like Tar, and anoint the Leg therewith, it will ſupple the ſinews, and bring them to their true courſe. If you waſh his Limbs with the grounds of Beer or Ale made warm, and then rope them up with Hay ropes wet in the ſame, it will recover a ſtrain. If you take of the flower of Linſeed, of Turpentine, and Life-honey, of each alike, and boyl them with white Wine until they be thick like

unto.

unto an Oyntment; then ſpread it on a cloath, and lay it to the grief, and it will take away any ache or pain in the ſinews; likewiſe a Plaiſter of Wine lees and Wheat flower, or a Plaiſter of black Sope and Boars greaſe will do the like.

☞ If you mix Nerve Oyl, Oyl de Bay, and *Aquavitæ* together, and warm it, and chafe it in, and upon, and about the ſtrain, it will take the anguiſh quite away. If the grief be in the ſhoulder, or the hinder Leg, then burn him upon the very joynt, by taking up the skin with a pair of pinſons, and thruſt the skin through with a hot Iron over-thwart; and if this cure him not, then his pain is betwixt the thin skin and the bone, which muſt then be rowelled. If the grief be in the ſhoulder, or in the hip, or elſe-where, then let him blood, and ſaving the blood, mix therewith the powder of Frankincenſe, and anoint the Horſe with the ſame. If the grief be only in the ſinews, then take the Plaiſter called Sologliatium, made of Gum-dragant, new Wax, Pitch and Turpentine mixed together, or elſe take the yolks of two Eggs, an ounce of Frankincenſe, and a little bran, and beat them well together, and lay it to the pain. If the grief do proceed from a hot cauſe, then let the Horſe blood, and with that blood mix Vinegar and Oyl, and anoint him, and chafe it well. But if it proceed from a cold cauſe, then let him bleed a little, and with Figs ſoaked a day in warm water, and as much Muſtard-ſeed, make a Plaiſter, and lay it to the grief. If it come either by any ruſh or ſtripe, let the Horſe blood, and with that blood mingle ſtrong Vinegar, Eggs, ſhells and all, three ounces of *Sanguis draconis*, four of Bole-armony, and five of Wheat meal, and daub it all over the ſore place. If the grief be in the ſhoulder, and the skin broken, take Galls of Soria punned, and mingle them with Honey, and lay it to the ſore. If his pain come from the ſtifneſs of his joynts, take a pound of black Sope, and boyl it in a quart of Ale till it be thick, and it will comfort the ioynts. If the joynts be ſwelled, then take Rozen, Pitch, Turpentine, and *Sanguis Draconis* molten together, and lay it to the ſwelling warm, and it will either take away the ſwelling, or elſe ripen it and make it run. If you take of the Oyl of Camomile, Oyl of Dill, Butter and Agrippa, of each a like quantity; or elſe make a Plaiſter of an ounce of Turpentine, half an ounce of Verdigreaſe, and the marrow of a Stag; or bathe the Horſe with warm water, wherein Roſemary hath been ſod, and

it

it will eaſe any pain whatſoever. If the Horſes pain be in his ſhoulder, firſt with a Lancet prick the skin through between the ſpade bone and the marrow bone; then putting in a quil, blow the skin from the fleſh, even all about; then thruſting out the wind with your hand, put in a Rowel; then take a potle of ſtale Urine, ſeeth it with a pound of Butter, and as much Swines greaſe, and a handful of Mallows, a handful of Tanſie, a handful of Vervin, a handful of red Nettles, a handful of Southernwoods, and a handful of Balm leaves, then beat them all well together, and ſo anoint his ſhoulder therewith, and let him not go forth of the ſtable for ſeven dayes. If his grief be in any nether joynt, then take a handful of Laurel leaves, and of Primroſe leaves, of ground-Ivy, of Crow-foot, of Mallows, of red Fennel, and of fine Hay, of each of them ſeveral as much; ſeeth them well together, and then let them ſtand fourteen dayes, then bathe the joynt once a day, and bind on the herbs unto it four dayes together; then after chafe into the joynt freſh greaſe and oyl mixed together, and it will eaſe all his pain. Now to conclude, if any joynt or member about a Horſe be by any flux of humours ſwelled and grown out of ſhape, whereby the Horſe goeth ſtiff and halteth; then to diſſolve thoſe humours, take Wormwood, Sage, Roſemary, the Bark of the Elm tree, and of a Pine, together with Lin-ſeed, and boyling theſe together make a Bathe or Pultus thereof, and lay it to the ſick member, and it will diſſolve the humours; and ſo likewiſe will Figs being ſtamped with Salt, and applied to the ſore.

CHAP. XCVI.

Three Rare and Well-approved Medicines, which will cure any manner of Strain or Swelling whatſoever, be it hard or ſoft, by what accident ſoever it ſhall come.

IF the Srain be newly taken, you ſhall then take Vinegar of the beſt a pint, and of ſweet Butter better than a quarter of a pound, and melt them over the fire; then with fine Wheat bran, make it into a Pultus upon the fire, and lay it as hot to the ſtrain as the Horſe is able to indure it without ſcalding; and do thus morning and evening till the ſtrain be aſſwaged. But if the ſtrain be of longer con-

continuance, then take Mallows, and Chick-weed, and boyl them either in the grounds of Ale or of ſtrong Urine, and lay them very hot to the ſtrain. Laſtly, if your ſtrain, by length of time, or evil Medicines, be grown, in mens imaginations, paſt cure, the ſinews and ſwelling being bony, hard and knotted; then you ſhall take Peece greaſe which is made of Shoe-makers ſhreds, and melting it on the fire, anoint and bathe the ſtrain therewith very hot, not only chafing it exceedingly with your hand, but alſo holding a hot bar of Iron againſt it to make the Ointment ſink in; then take a fine Linnen rowler, and rowl up the Leg gently; do thus once a day, and it will take away the greateſt and moſt deſperate ſtrain that may be.

CHAP. XCVII.

Another certain approved Cure for any Strain whatſoever.

TAke Boars greaſe, Bolearmonick, black Sope and Nerve Oyle, of each a like quantity, boyl them well together, and then apply it hot to the grief, rubbing and chafing it in exceedingly, and alſo heating it in very well, either with a hot brick-bat, a hot Fire-ſhovel, or a hot Bar of Iron. And thus do once a day till the pain depart.

CHAP. XCVIII.

Of Enterfearing.

ENterfeaing is either when a horſe through a natural ſtraitneſs in his pace, or through evil and too broad ſhooing, goeth ſo narrow behind with his hinder feet, that he heweth the one againſt the other upon the inſide of his Legs, even with the Paſtorn joynt; and by means of this hewing there groweth hard matterey ſcabs, which are ſo ſore, that they many times make the Horſe to halt much. The ſigns are the ſtraitneſs of his going, and the apparentneſs of the ſcabs. Now the Cure conſiſteth as much in prevention as in ſalve: For the prevention, which is, to keep a Horſe from hewing one Leg upon another, it conſiſteth only in the Office of the Smith, and the making of

of his hinder ſhooes, whereby he may go wider, and not touch: Of which we ſhall ſpeak more at Large when we intreat of paring and ſhooing of each ſeveral foot. For the ſalve, which is to cure the hurt being once received, it is thus: You ſhall take of May butter (if you can get it) or elſe freſh greaſe, or freſh butter, with a quantity of Rozen, and as much Nerve Oyl; then fry them all together in a pan, and then let it ſtand till it be cold, and put it in a pot, and put to it a little Cow dung; and then Plaiſterwiſe apply this unto the ſore, renewing it once a day, and it will not only heal this ſore, but alſo any prick by a nail whatſoever.

CHAP. XCIX.

Of the Shackle-gall, or Gall in the Paſtorn, either by Shackle or Lock.

IF a Horſe be galled in the Paſtorn, on the Heel, or upon the Cornet, either with Shackle or lock, as it many times happens in the Champain Countries, where the Farmers uſe much to teather their Horſes; then for ſuch a ſore you ſhall take Honey and Verdigreaſe, and boyl them together till the one half be conſumed, and that it look red; then after it is a little cooled, you ſhall anoint the ſore place therewith twice a day, and then ſtrow upon it a little chopt flox to keep on the ſalve. This is excellent for any gall whatſoever, and chiefly for the ſcratches.

CHAP. C.

Of hurts in the Legs, which come by caſting in the Halter.

THe hurts which a Horſe getteth by being caſt in the halter, are many, and proceed from divers accidents, as when the reins of the Coller are ſo long and will not run to and fro, that the Horſe gets one or both his fore Legs or hind Legs over them, and then with ſtrugling, woundeth and galleth them much; or elſe when a Horſe having a deſire to ſcratch his ear with his hinder foot, rubbing it to and fro, in the end faſteneth his foot either in the coller, or the reins, and then the more he ſtriveth to looſen it, the more he galleth

and woundeth it, even ſometimes to the very bone. Now for the cure, according to the opinion of the old Farriers, it is thus, Take of oyl olive one ounce, of Turpentine two or three ounces, melt them together over the fire, and then put thereunto a little wax, and working them all well together, lay it plaiſter-wiſe unto the ſore, renewing it once a day until it be whole. Now there be other Farriers which only anoint the ſore with the whites of Eggs and Sallet-oyl mixed together; and then when the ſore cometh to a ſcab, anoint it with butter being molten until it look brown.

Now for mine own part, the cure which I principally uſe for this ſorrance, is, to take of wax, of Turpentine, and of Hogs greaſe, of each one ounce, and having mingled and molten them well together, put them into a pot; then take an ounce of Verdigreaſe beaten to powder, and an ounce of Hogs greaſe, and mix them very well together, and put that into another pot; then when you dreſs the ſore, take of the firſt ſalve two parts, and of the latter a third part, and mixing them well together in the palm of your hand, anoint all the ſore place therewith, doing thus once a day till it be whole.

CHAP. CI.

Of the Stratches, Crepanches, or Rats-tayl.

THe Scratches, Crepanches, or Rats tayls, being all but one ſorrance, are long, ſcabby, and dry chaps or rifts, growing right up and down, and overthwart on the hinder Legs, juſt from the Fetlock unto the end of the Curb; and as the Pains are under the Fetlock, ſo the Scratches are above the Fetlock, and do proceed either from dry melancholy humours ingendred by outward filth, or elſe by fuming of the Horſes dung, lying either near or under him. The ſigns are both the apparent ſight and the eaſie feeling of the ſame, beſides the ſtareing dividing, and curling of the hair, as alſo that the ſorrance will ſtink much. The cure is, according to the opinion of the old Farriers, to take any of thoſe former Medicines whatſoever, which are already recited, either for the Pains or Mules; yet for your more particular underſtanding, you ſhall know, theſe Medicines are moſt proper for this ſorrance. Firſt, you ſhall ſhave away the hair, and make the ſore raw; then take of Turpentine half a pound

pound, of Honey half a pint, of Hogs greaſe half a quartern, and three yolks of Eggs, and of Bole-armony a quartern beaten into powder, of Bean flower half a pint; mix all theſe well together, and make a ſalve thereof, and then with your finger anoint all the ſore places therewith, and let the Horſe come in no wet during the cure.

Other Farriers uſe (and ſure it is the better practice) firſt after they have ſhaved away the hair, and laid the ſore raw, to waſh it well with old Urine very warm, then take black Sope, Muſtard, and Vinegar, of each a like quantity, and mix therewith ſome of an Oxe gall; then ſtir them well together, and chafe and rub the place therewith, and bind thereto a cloath, ſo uſe it once a day till it be whole; then after anoint it with Neats-foot Oyl to ſupple the ſinews again. Others uſe to take the fineſt hay, and burn it to aſhes upon a fair board, then mix it with Neats-foot Oyl, and make a ſalve thereof; then all to rub the ſores until they bleed, and then anoint them with the ſaid ſalve, and rope his Legs, and keep them from wet. Others uſe after they have waſhed the ſore with old Stale, then to take a quantity of ſtrong Muſtard, Vinegar, gray-Sope, Barrows greaſe and ſome Quick-ſilver; mix them together, and therewith anoint the ſore.

Other Farriers take a quantity of unſlacked Lime, half ſo much black Sope, and ſo much of ſtrong Vinegar as ſhall ſuffice to make it like an Oyntment; then the hair being cut away, and the ſore waſhed with Urine, lay to this Oyntment, renewing it not the ſpace of two dayes, and it will kill the ſorrance; then waſh the place once or twice with warm Wine; then after heal it with Turpentine and Hogs greaſe molten together; and in no wiſe let the Horſe come in any wet. Others uſe after they have waſhed the ſore place with Urine, and clipt away the hair, and made the wound raw, to take Butter and Tar, of each alike, and boyling them together, anoint all the ſore place therewith every day till it be whole.

Others take of Honey and Verdigreaſe of each alike, and boyl them together until half be conſumed, and then anoint the ſore therewith once a day until it be whole. Others of our latter Farriers uſe either to ſhave off the hair, or ſcald it off with Orpiment and unſlecked Lime boyled in ſtrong lye; then waſh it with warm Vinegar or white Wine, then when it is dry anoint it with this Oynt-

ment. Take of Orpiment one ounce, of Verdigreaſe three ounces, of Soot five ounces, a little unſleckt Lime, and of Honey one pound; mingle them all well together upon a ſoft fire, and being made like an oyntment, uſe it as aforeſaid once a day to the ſore; or elſe take Honey, Sope, Verdigreaſe, unſleckt Lime and Vinegar, and boyl them with Allom, Galles, and Mail, till it come to a plaiſter, and then apply it unto the ſore; or elſe boyl Salet oyl, with a little ſuet and ſope, then skim it and take it from the fire; then add an ounce of Quick-ſilver reſolved, two ounces of Verdigreaſe, three ounces of unſleckt Lime, and one ounce of white Wax: when all theſe are well mixt together, and made into a Salve, then apply it once a day unto the ſore, until it be whole.

Other Farriers uſe after they have ſhaved the place, to boyl Vinegar and the skin of Lard or Bacon together; and apply that to the ſore three dayes together; then take Lard, molten Litargy, Maſtick, Verdigreaſe and Soot mingled together, with Goats milk, and lay it to, renewing it once a day until the ſore be healed. The ſcraping of a panns bottom mixt with the inner pils of Elder, are alſo good for the ſcratches; or new mans dung applyed for five dayes, and after anoint the ſore with oyl and ſope mixt together. Others take of unſleckt Lime, the powder of Glaſs, and of Verdigreaſe, of each one an ounce; of Orpiment an ounce; of Oyl and of freſh greaſe, of each four ounces; mix all theſe well together, and apply it to the ſore until it be whole: If you take black ſnails and burr roots and beat them together, it will alſo help this ſorrance. Other Farriers take an ounce of Sope, two ounces of unſleckt Lime, and as much Lye, or ſtrong Vinegar as will temper it, and ſo dreſs the ſore until it be whole. Others take Fenugreek and beat it, three oranges cut in pieces, half a pound of Sheeps ſuet, new Sheeps dung; boyl all theſe in the grounds of good Ale, and then bathe the Horſe therewith as hot as may be: then rope him up with hay ropes, and ſo let him ſtand three dayes, then bathe him ſo again.

☞ Others take Hogs greaſe, Sope, Brimſtone, Soot, and Honey, boyl them and lay them to cool, you may alſo add Verdigreaſe; but before you lay on this oyntment, ſcrape the ſcabs off, and make them bleed, and rub them with Sope, Muſtard, and Vinegar mixt together.

CHAP.

CHAP. CII.

A moſt certain and approved cure for the Scratches.

AFter you have cut away the hair, rub off the ſcabs, and waſh the ſores with old Urine, Allom and Salt mixt together, and applyed as hot as the Horſe can ſuffer it; Then take the tops and tender buds of Elder, and the green brier Berries, and boyl them in a potle of new wort, and put thereto good ſtore of Allom, and with this hot, waſh the Horſes Leg once, twice, or thirce a day, and it is a certain cure.

CHAP. CIII.

Of the Ring bone.

THe Ring bone is a ſorrance, which appeareth above upon the Cronet of the hoof, being a certain hard griſtle growing ſometimes round about the ſame. It proceedeth as ſome Farriers hold opinion, either from ſome blow of another Horſe, or by ſtriking the Horſes foot againſt ſome ſtub or ſtone, or ſuch like accident: But ſurely I hold that it alſo proceedeth from ſome imperfection in nature, for as much as I have ſeen many foals foaled with Ring bones on their feet; Theſe Ring bones do breed a viſcous and ſlimy humour, which reſorting to the bones that are of their own nature cold and dry, waxeth hard, and cleaveth to ſome bone, and ſo in proceſs of time becommeth a bone. The ſigns of the ſorrance are, the apparent ſight of the ſorrance, being higher than any part of the croner, the ſtaring of the hair, and halting of the Horſe.

The cure, according to ancient Farriers, is, firſt to ſcarifie the skin above the Ring bone with a Lancet; then take a great Onyon and pick out the core; then put into it Verdigreaſe and unſleckt Lime, then cover the hole, and roaſt the Onyon ſoft, then bruiſe it in a morter, and ſo very hot lay it to the ring bone: do thus four dayes together, and it will cure it. Others of the old Farriers uſe firſt to waſh the ſorrance with warm water, and ſhave away the hair: then ſcarifie it lightly with the point of a Razor, ſo as the blood may iſſue forth;

forth: then dreſs it with Cantharides and Euforbium, in ſuch ſort as hath been taught for the ſplent, uſing him, and curing him after the ſame manner; but when the hair beginneth to grow again, then draw the ſore place with a hot drawing Iron in ſtraight lines, from the Paſtorn down to the coffin of the hoof, in this manner: and let the edge of the drawing Iron be as thick as the back of a meat knife, and burn him no deeper than that the skin may look yellow: that done, cover the burning with Pitch and Rozen molten together, and clap thereon flox of the Horſes own colour, and about three dayes after, lay again ſome of the laſt mentioned Plaiſter, and alſo new flox upon the old, and there let them remain till they fall away of themſelves. Others uſe to ſhave off the hair, and to ſcarifie the ſore with a Lancet till it bleed: then ſtrew upon it the powder of Tarter, and Salt, of each alike mixt together, and bind it ſtraight: then after anoint it with freſh greaſe, or elſe ſoften the Ring bone with the skin of old Bacon, the fat being ſcraped off, that you may ſee through the skin, and laid to after it is ſhaven and made bleed, after launce it, and let out the Ring bone. Others uſe to launce the skin with a Razer, then opening the skin with a Cronet, prick the Ring bone. Laſtly, ſtrew upon it the powder of Vitriol, and bind it on ſo as it may not ſtir for nine dayes; then thruſt out the matter which is diſſolved. Laſtly, waſh it with Salt, with Urine and Vinegar mixt together. Other Farriers do uſe after they have ſhaved it, to lay unto it a plaiſter made of Bran and Honey, with the young leaves of Worm-wood, Pellitory, and Brank-urſine mingled with Swines greaſe, and beaten together, and boyled, and uſed as hot as the horſe can ſuffer it. This medicine will not only cure the Ring bone, but any other ſwelling whatſoever. Alſo a plaiſter of the leaves of Smallage being beaten to pieces, is not only good for this ſorrance, but for any wind-gall alſo. To waſh a Ring bone continually with ſtrong Vinegar will abate it: or elſe to ſhave away the hair, and take half a Lemmon, and ſprinkle Arſnick thereon, and lay it to the Ring bone, and it will eat it away; if twice or thrice a day you bind a hard Egg burning hot unto the Ring bone, it will take it away. Laſtly, if you take Euforbium, and mingle it with oyl of Juniper, Salt and Pepper, and ſo apply it to the Ring bone, it will in a very ſhort ſpace conſume the Ring bone quite away;

way; alwayes provided that you keep the Horſe from any wet during his cure.

CHAP. CIV.

Of hurts on the Cronet, by croſſing one foot upon another.

IF your Horſe by croſſing one foot upon another, chance to wound or hurt the Cronet of his hoof, you ſhall then, according to the opinion of the old Farriers, firſt waſh it well with white Wine, or with warm Urine, and then lay unto it the white of an Egg mixt with Chimney ſoot and ſalt; and that if it be renewed once a day, will in two or three dayes dry up the ſore. Other Farriers uſe firſt to pare or cut away the hoof, that it touch not the hurt, and keep it clean from filth by waſhing it with Urine: then ſeeth two Eggs hard, and take off the ſhells, then preſs them with your hand long, and firſt roaſt one hot, and tye it to hard; when that is cold, uſe the other: after make a plaiſter of ſoot, Salt and Oyl boyled together, and lay it to the ſore, renewing it once a day until it be whole.

CHAP. CV.

A moſt certain and approved cure for any hurt upon the Cronet whatſoever.

TAke of Sope and Salt of each a like quantity, and mix them together like a paſte, then having cut out the over-reach or hurt, and laid it plain, firſt waſh it with Urine and Salt, or Beer and ſalt, and with a cloath dry it, then bind on the mixt Sope and Salt, not renewing it in 24. hours, and thus do (if the wound be great) for 3, or 4. dayes together: Then having drawn out all the venom (as this Salve will quickly do) then take a ſpoonful or two of Train oyl, and as much Ceruſe, which we call white Lead, and mix it together to a thick Salve: then ſpread that upon the ſore morning and evening till it be whole, which will be effected ſuddainly: for nothing doth dry up ſooner, nor is more kindly and natural for the breeding of a new hoof.

CHAP.

CHAP. CVI.

Of the Crownſcab.

THe Crown ſcab is a ſtinking and filthy ſcab, breeding round about the corners of the hoof, and is a cankerous and painful ſorrance, it cometh oft times by means that the Horſe hath been bred in a fenny mariſh ground, where the cold ſtriking corrupt humours up to his feet, ingendreth this ſorrance, which is ever more painful in the Winter than in the Summer. The ſigns are, the hairs of the Cronet will be very thin and ſtaring like briſtles, and the Cronets will be alwayes mattering and run on water. Now the cure, according to the opinion of many Farriers, is, to take the skin of Bacon, and lay thereon ſoot and ſalt beaten together, mingled with greaſe or ſuet, wax, and Pitch molten together, and if the fleſh chance to grow proud, eat it away either with Verdigreaſe beaten to powder, or with the ſcrapings of a Harts horn, or an Ox horn made into fine powder.

☞ Other Farriers uſe to take of Sope, and of Hogs greaſe, of each half a pound, of Bole-armony a little, of Turpentine a quartern; mix them well together, and make a plaiſter, and bind it faſt on, renewing it every day once until it leave running; and then waſh it with ſtrong Vinegar being luke-warm, every day once until the ſore be clean dryed up, and let the Horſe come in no wet until the ſorrance be whole. Others uſe only to bathe it continually with old ſtale ſod with Salt, and that will dry up the humour and heal it.

CHAP. CVII.

Of the Quitter-bone.

THe Quitter-bone is a hard round ſwelling upon the Cronet of the hoof, betwixt the heel and the quarter, and groweth moſt commonly on the inſide of the foot: It breedeth moſt commonly by means of Gravel gathered underneath the ſhooe, which fretteth inward, and forceth an Ulcer to break upward: or elſe it com-

commeth by the cloying or pricking of ſome nail driven by an ignorant Smith, the anguiſh whereof looſeneth the Griſtle, and ſo breedeth evil humours, whereof the Quitter-bone ſpringeth: the ſigns are, the Horſe will halt much, and the ſwelling is apparent to the eye, which in four or five dayes commeth to a head, and will break out with matter at a little deep hole like a Fiſtula; and ſurely then this Quitter-bone, there is no outward Sorrance whatſoever more dangerous to a Horſe. The cure thereof, according to the opinion of ſome of the ancient Farriers, is, firſt to cut the hoof to the quick, then ſeeth a Snake or an Adder till the fleſh part from the bone, and be molten as an unguent; then anoint the ſore place therewith very warm even to the bottom, and during the cure, keep the foot clean from any filth; for this both drieth and killeth the Quitter-bone. Other of the old Farriers, firſt burn about the Quitter-bone with a hot Iron in manner of a half Circle, and then with the ſame Iron draw another right through the midſt thereof in this ſort: then take of Arſnick the quantity of a Bean beaten into fine powder, and put it into the Hole, thruſting it down to the bottom with a quil, and ſtop the mouth of the hole with a little tow, and bind it ſo faſt with a cloath and a rowler, that the Horſe may not come at it with his mouth, and ſo let it reſt for that day; and the next day, if you ſee that the ſore looketh black within, then it is a ſign that the Arſnick did work well; then to allay the burning of it, tent the hole with flax dipt in Hogs greaſe, and Turpentine molten together, and cover the tent with a Plaiſter of Pitch, Rozen, Wax and Turpentine molten together, but there muſt be as much Turpentine as of all the reſt: and thus you muſt continue to do until you have gotten out the core, which the Arſnick did eat; then you ſhall ſee whether the looſe griſtle in the bottom be uncovered or not: and if it be not uncovered, then feel with your finger, or with a quil whether you be nigh it or not; and if you be, then raiſe the griſtle with a little crooked inſtrument, and pull it clean out with a pair of ſmall nippers, or mullets made for the purpoſe: that done, thruſt it again with a full tent, dipt in the aforeſaid oyntment, to aſſwage the anguiſh of the laſt dreſſing, and ſtop it hard to the intent that the hole may not ſhrink togther or cloſe up: and the next day take out the tent, and tent it anew with Honey and Verdigreaſe

boyled together till they look red, renewing it every day once until it be whole, keeping alwayes the mouth of the ſore as open as you may, to the intent that it heal not up too faſt, and let not the Horſe come in any wet, nor travel until he be perfectly whole. Other Farriers uſe to cut the hoof open to the quick; then take *Galbanum*, *Sagapenum*, pitch of *Greece*, *Olibanum*, Maſtick, Oyl and white Wax, of each one ounce, with half a pound of Sheeps ſuet: melt them upon a ſoft fire, and incorporate them well together, and therewith dreſs the ſore place until it be whole. Others uſe after the ſore is opened, to put in ſalt of Tartar, and when it hath eaten away the Quitter-bone, to heal it up with Honey and Verdigreaſe boyled as aforeſaid. Others take of Goats dung two ounces, of Sheeps tallow three ounces, and as much ſtrong Vinegar as will ſuffice to boyl them well in, and then therewith to dreſs ths Quitter-bone until it be clean whole.

CHAP. CVIII.

Of gravelling a Horſe.

GRavelling is a certain fretting of gravel, ſand, or durt, under the foot, betwixt the ſole and the ſhooe, ſometimes on the inſide, ſometimes on the out-ſide of the foot, and ſometimes on both ſides of the heel. It commeth as I ſaid, by means of little gravel ſtones getting between the hoof, or calking or ſponge of the ſhooe, which by continual labour and travel of the Horſe, doth eat through the hoof into the quick of the foot; and the rather, if the Horſes heels be ſoft and weak, or that the ſhooe do lye flat to his foot, ſo as the gravel being gotten in it, cannot get out again.

The ſigns whereof are theſe, the Horſe will halt much, and covet to go moſt on his toe to favour his heel, and the ſofter the way is, the more is the Horſes eaſe. Now for the cure, according to the old Farriers, it is thus; firſt pare the hoof till you may ſee the ſore, then take an ounce of Virgin wax, and a quarter of an ounce of Rozen, and a quarter of Deers ſuet, and half an ounce of Boars greaſe, and beat them all well together in a morter, and then melt them together on the fire; that done, dip good ſtore of flax therein, and ſo ſtop up the ſore cloſe and hard, and then you may travel the Horſe whither

whither you pleaſe; and do thus once a day until the foot be ſound. Other of the old Farriers uſe firſt to pare the hoof, and to get out the Gravel with a drawing knife, leaving none behind; then ſtop the ſore place with Turpentine and Hogs greaſe molten together, and laid on with a little tow or flax, and then clap on the ſhooe, to keep in the ſtopping, renewing it every day once until it be whole, and ſuffer the Horſe to come in no wet until it be healed. Now you muſt underſtand, that if a gravelling be not well ſtopt to keep down the fleſh, it will riſe higher than the hoof, and ſo put the Farrier to much more pain, both in bolſtring it, and abating that ill grown ſubſtance.

Others uſe only to pare the foot, and pick out all the gravel clean, then waſh it well with Beer and Salt; then melt into it Tallow, Rozen, and Pitch: then covering it hard and cloſe with flax, ſet on the ſhooe again, and do thus once a day. Others uſe after they have cleanſed the ſore, to lay hurds into it, being dipt in the whites of Eggs, then after heal it with Salt beaten ſmall and mixt with ſtrong Vinegar, or elſe with the powder of Galles, Salt, and Tartar mixt together, which alſo is good for any cloying or pricking.

CHAP. CIX.

Of ſurbating.

SUrbating is a continual beating of the hoof againſt the ground, and it commeth ſometimes by means of evil ſhooing, lying too flat to his foot, or by going long bare-foot; and ſometimes by the hardneſs of the ground, and the high lifting of the Horſes feet, either in his trot or in his amble; and the Horſes which are moſt ſubject to this ſorrance, are thoſe which have either great round feet, or ſuch as are flat footed, the Coffins whereof are weak and tender, and alſo thoſe which have weak heels. The ſigns of the grief are, the Horſe will halt much, and go creeping and ſtiff, as if he were halt foundred.

The cure, according to the opinion of the old Farriers, is, to roaſt a couple of Eggs exceeding hard, and then in the very violence of their heat, to burſt them in the Horſes feet, and then pour hot boyling Sallet oyl alſo amongſt them, and ſo ſtop the ſhooe up cloſe with

a piece of leather, and two croſs ſplents of wood, and do thus thrice in one fortnight, and it will help him.

Other of the ancient Farriers take off the Horſes ſhooes, and pare him as little as may be; and if the ſhooes be not eaſie, that is to ſay, long, large, and hollow enough, then make them ſo, and tack them on again with four or five nails: that done, ſtop his feet with Hogs greaſe and bran boyled together ſo hot as may be, and alſo cover all the coffin round about with the ſame, binding all in together with a cloath, and a liſt faſtned about the joynt, renewing it every day once until it be ſound; and give the Horſe during the cure, warm water to drink, and let him ſtand dry, and not have much travail.

☞ Now if your Horſe ſurbait in your travel, if every night you ſtop his feet well with Cows dung, or with Cows dung and Vinegar, it will make him endure out his journey; or Cows dung and new laid Eggs beaten together.

CHAP. CX.

Of the prickle in the ſole of the Foot, either by treading on a nail, or any other ſharp thinge.

IF a Horſe in his travel chance to tread either on a ſtub, nail, thorn, or any other ſharp thing whatſoever, by means whereof he is prickt in the ſole of the foot, the Rider ſhall perceive the ſame by the ſuddain faultring of the Horſe, who will inſtantly ſtand ſtill and lift up his foot, as deſiring help: And if it chance at any other time, then the halting of the Horſe, and the diligent ſearching of a careful Farrier muſt find out the miſchief.

Now the Cure, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, is, firſt to pull off the ſhooe, and pare the foot, and with a drawing knife uncover the hole, making the mouth ſo broad as a two pence: then tack on the ſhooe again; that done, doſt it by pouring into the hole Turpentine and Hogs greaſe molten together, and lay ſome flax or tow upon it; and then ſtop all the Horſes foot with Cows dung, and ſo covering it with a piece of leather, ſplint it with two croſs ſticks, ſo as the ſtopping may abide in, renewing it every day once until it be whole, and let the horſe tread in no wet.

Now

Now you muſt be very careful in the curing of this ſorrance; For if it be not healed from the bottom, beſides, that it is dangerous to the life of the horſe, it is alſo a great hazard that the ſore will break out at the top of the hoof, and ſo looſen the hoof round about, and perhaps make it to fall clean away; but if you ſee that it begin to break out above, then make a greater iſſue beneath, by opening the hole wider, and taking more of the ſole away, that the fleſh may have the more liberty: then take of Bole-armony half a quartern, and of Bean-flower as much, and two Eggs: beat them, and mingle them well together, and make a plaiſter thereof upon tow, and lay it round about the Cronet, bind it faſt on, and ſo let it remain the ſpace of two dayes, and then renew it again, not failing ſo to do every two dayes until you ſee it wax hard and firm above: for this plaiſter being reſtrictive, will force the humours to reſort alwayes downward; which humours muſt be drawn out with Turpentine and Hogs greaſe as before, until it leave mattering, and then dry it up with burnt Allom beaten into powder, and ſtrewed upon the ſore, with a little flax laid again upon that, continuing ſo to do every day once until it be hardned; and let not the Horſe come in any wet until it be whole.

Other Farriers uſe to tent the ſore with Tallow, Tar, and Turpentine being molten together, and anoint all the coffin and cronet of the hoof with Bole-armony and Vinegar beaten together, till the ſore be whole, eſpecially if the thing which did prick the Horſe was venemous or ruſty.

CHAP. CXI.

To draw out either Stub, Thorn, or Iron, either out of the foot, or any other part of the body.

IF either the Stub, the Thorn, the Iron, or any thing whatſoever, wherewith your Horſe is wounded, be gotten ſo deep into the fleſh, that you cannot get hold upon it to pull it out; then according to the opinion of the old Farriers, (if you find that albeit it be too deep, yet it is not much too deep) you ſhall take a good quantity of black Sope, and lay it to the ſore for a whole night, and it will make it to appear, ſo as you may pull it out with a pair of nippers: but

but if it lye very deep, then you may open the place with a Lancet, and thruſting in your mu'lets or nippers, pull it out by ſtrength, and afterwards heal up the wound as was before taught in the laſt Chapter.

Other Farriers ſay, that the roots of Reeds being ſtampt and mixt with Honey, will draw out any ſtub or nail: ſo will alſo black ſnails, being ſtampt and wrought with freſh Butter. Now if the place be much ſwoln, then it is good to mollifie it with a plaiſter made of Worm-wood, Parietory, Bears foot, Hogs greaſe, and honey well boyled and mixt together, which will aſſwage any new ſwelling that commeth by ſtripe, or otherwiſe. Now when you have gotten out that which you ſought for, then you ſhall pour into the wound ſcalding oyl of Olive; when that is cold, pour into it as hot Turpentine; when that is cold, ſtrew on the powder of Sulphur, and then bolſter his foot or the ſore with hurds, and keep it from all wet and filthineſs.

CHAP. CXII.

Of the Fig.

IF a Horſe having received any hurt, as is before ſaid, either by ſtub, great nail, thorn, bone, ſplent or ſtone, either in the ſole, or any other part of the foot, and be not well dreſſed, and perfectly cured, there will grow in that place a certain ſuperfluous piece of fleſh like unto a fig, full of little white grains, as you ſee are in a fig. The cure whereof, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, is, firſt with a hot Iron to cut the fig clean away, and keep the fleſh down with Turpentine, Hogs greaſe, and a little Wax molten together, and laid on with a little tow, ſtopping the hole hard that the fleſh riſe not, renewing it once a day until the ſore be whole.

☞ Now other of our latter Farriers uſe after they have, as before is ſaid, cut away the fig, then to take the crops of young Nettles, and chopping them very ſmall, lay them upon a cloath juſt as big as a Fig; then take the powder of Verdigreaſe, and ſtrew it thin upon the chopt Nettles, and ſo binde it to the ſore, renewing it once a day until the hoof have covered the ſore, and this is a moſt certain cure.

CHAP.

CHAP. CXIII.

Of a Retrait.

A Retrait is, when a Horſe by the ill government of the Smith, is pricked in the foot with ſome ill driven nail, yet in ſuch ſort, that it is immediately eſpied, and the nail drawn back again; and although it proceedeth oftest from the negligence of the Smith, yet it may alſo come by reaſon of the weakneſs of the nail, and the hollowneſs of the ſhank: for when the nail is a little too weak, the point many times bendeth awry into the quick, when it ſhould go right forth; and when it is hollow, it ſhivereth in the driving into two parts, whereof one part razeth the quick in pulling out, or elſe perhaps breaketh aſunder, and ſo remaineth ſtill behind. And this kind of pricking is the worſt of all other, becauſe it will rankle worſt, in as much as the flaw cankereth, and remaineth ſtill in the foot. The ſigns hereof are; Firſt, the apparent ſhrinking and ſtrugling of the Horſe, ſo ſoon as the quick is touched; and next his much halting: Laſtly, you ſhall ſearch his foot with a Hammer, by knocking on the clench of every nail: for when you knock upon that nail where the grief is, the horſe will ſhrink up his foot; and if that will not ſerve, then grope the hoof with a pare of pinſons round about until you have found the place grieved. Now the cure, according to the opinion of the antient Farriers, is, firſt to pull off the ſhooe, and then open the place grieved, either with a Butteriſs, or with a drawing Knife, ſo that you may perceive either by feeling or ſeeing, whether there be any piece of nail or not; if there be, then pull it clean out: After take of Nettles half a handful, and bruiſe them in a Mortar, and put thereto a ſpoonful of red Vinegar, and a ſpoonful of black Sope, and two ounces of Boars greaſe, or the fat of ſalt Bacon, and Bray all theſe well together, and ſtop well the hole of the ſore with this, and then tack on the ſhooe again, and you may ſafely adventure to travel him. Other Farriers uſe, after they have opened the ſore, to ſtop the hole with Turpentine, Wax, and Sheeps Suet molten together, and ſo poured hot into the hole; and then lay a little Tow upon it, and clap on the ſhooe again, renewing it thus once every day until it be whole; during which time, the

Horſe

Horſe muſt not come in any wet, and it muſt be ſtopped in this ſort, though it be but a prick, without any piece of nayl remaining; and if for lack of looking to in time, this Retrait cauſes the horſe to break out, then you ſhall cure it either with a reſtrictive Plaiſter of Bole-armony, Bean-flower and Eggs, mentioned in the 78 Chapter, or elſe with chopped Nettles and Verdigreaſe ſpoken of in the laſt Chapter.

Now there be many Farriers, which not only for this Retrait, but for any prick in the Horſes foot, uſe after they have laid open the wound, to take of Turpentine one ounce, of Tar one ounce, of pitch one ounce, of Beef ſuet one ounce, and one head of Garlick, boyl them all together, and lay them to it ſo hot as may be ſuffered: and if it chance to break out above the hoof, then apply alſo the ſame Medicine unto it, and it will cure it.

CHAP. CXIV.

Of Cloying.

A Horſe is ſaid to be cloyed with a Nayl, or pricked with a nayl, when the whole Nayl is ſtricken into the quick of the foot, and ſo remaineth ſtill in the ſame, and is clinched as other Nayls be, by means whereof the horſe halteth extremely. Now this grief is known by ſearching the grieved place with a hammer or Pinſons, as is before ſaid. Now for the cure, according to the opinion of the old Farriers, it is thus; If the horſe halt immediately, then pull off his ſhooe, and open the hole until it begin to bleed, and then ſtop the hole with Turpentine, Wax, and Sheeps ſuet molten together, and poured in very hot, renewing it once a day until it be whole, and let the Horſe tread in no wet, and let his ſhooe be tacked on again as ſoon as he is dreſt. Others uſe only to pour into the hole hot ſcalding Butter, and that will heal it, or elſe to burn the hole with another Nayl, and that will heal it. Other Farriers uſe, after they have opened well the ſore, to take half a pound of Frankincenſe, a pound of Rozen, a pound of Pitch of *Greece*, half a pound of black Pitch, a pound of new wax, a pound of Goats greaſe, half a pound of Varniſh, half a pound of Turpentine, two ounces of Oyl Olive, and melt them all together, and lay this to the hoof Plaiſter-wiſe, and

and it will not only heal any prick whatſoever, but alſo any cracks, chinks or clifts in the hoof howſoever they breed; provided that you let the horſe tread in no wet during the cure: But if the ſore chance to break out on the top of the hoof, then you ſhall take two or three yolks of Eggs, whites and all beaten together, and add thereunto an ounce of Bole-armony, and as much Bean or Wheat-flower as will thicken the ſame; then make a Plaiſter thereof two fingers broad, and as long as will go round about on the top of the Horſes hoof, bind it faſt on with a rowler, and renew it once a day until it be whole.

Other Farriers uſe, after they have ſearched and laid open the wound, to put into it hurds dipped in the white of an Egg, then ſtop the hole with Salt beaten very ſmall, mingled with Vervine and ſtrong Vinegar, and cover it with flax dipped in ſtrong Vinegar; or elſe holding up the Horſes foot, pour into the wound hot ſcalding Oyl Olive; and when that is cold pour in hot Turpentine, and that being cold ſtrew upon it the powder of Sulphur, then lay on the bolſter of flox, then ſhoe him, and keep him from treading in any wet.

Others uſe to take Tallow, the powder of Sulphur, Mallows, and very ſtrong Vinegar; boyl them together until they be thick like an Oyntment; then lay the ſame to the ſore as hot as the Horſe can indure it, renewing it once in twelve hours till it be whole.

Others uſe to take of Honey and Vinegar, of each a like quantity, a little Oyl, and ſuet of a hee-Goat, boyl them with a ſoft fire, and ſtir it: when it waxeth red, add Verdigreaſe and Vitriol, of each alike made into powder, ſtill ſtirring it till it be thick and red; then ſtop the ſore every day therewith until it be whole, after you have waſhed it well with Salt and Vinegar. Others take Pepper, Garlick and Cabbage leaves beaten with Swines greaſe, and lay that to the ſore: or elſe take Tallow and Horſe-dung, and mixing them well together, ſtop the ſore therewith, and in ſhort ſpace it will cure it.

Other Farriers uſe to take off the ſhooe, and having opened the ſore, to waſh it with Wine: then lay upon it the inner rine of elder, and through that melt in greaſe with a hot Iron: then tack on the ſhooe again, and do thus divers dayes together, and it is a certain cure.

CHAP. CXV.

General Obſervations for the Feet and Hoofs of a Horſe.

FOraſmuch as the Feet and Hoofs of a Horſe are the only Inſtruments of labour, and that, a ſmall grief in that part deprives a man of the benefit and uſe of the reſt; I think it not amiſs before I ſpeak of the particular diſeaſes of the Hoofs, to ſhew you ſome general notes and obſervations which you ſhall obſerve for the benefit of the feet. Know then, that firſt it is meet, that you let your ſhooes before be rather ſhort than too long, with ſtrong Spunges, but no cawkins, and your nails, to have ſpecial good heads.

Let your ſhooes behind have no cawkin on the out-ſide; but if he enter-fear, let the cawkin be on the inſide, to make him caſt outward, and let the inſide of that ſide inward have a welt an inch deep, or be twice as thick as the out-ſide: but if all this help not his enter-fearing, then bring him unto an Amble; but if he will not amble, burn him with a hot Iron between the Legs, that the ſoreneſs thereof may make him go wide behind, which is an ordinary practice amongſt the Italians and Frenchmen.

Let your ſhooes be made of Iron that will not break, of which our Engliſh is the beſt, the Spaniſh next, and the Dansk worſt. Let them alſo be light, yet ſo, as they may be able to bear the burthen of the Horſe, being broader at the toes, than at the cawkins or ſpunges.

Let your cawkins be ſhort, and blunt at the points, and your ſpunges long and thick.

Let your ſhooe be ful as ſtrait as the horn of the hoof, ſo far as the Nails go, and from the two heel Nails backward, Let the ſhooe be broader than the hoof, that the ſhooe may be without the horn.

Give unto every ſhooe nine nails, on each ſide four, and one in the middeſt, and let the ſhanks of the nails be very flat and thin, that if the hoof be naught, they may yet keep the ſhooe firm with little hold; and the neerer that your nails are driven backward towards the heel, (ſo it be without danger) the faſter the ſhooe will ſit, and the harder to be pull'd away.

Let

Let your cawkins ſit a ſtraws breadth behind the corner of the coffin, and let your nail head enter into the ſhooe, eſpecially on the outſide, and by all means hollow your ſhooe ſo little as poſſible you can.

Pare very little or nothing at all from the heel of a horſe: yet open his heels as ſufficiently as may be, becauſe ever the heel muſt be thick, and the toe thin.

In fair wayes pare the ſole thin, but in Froſt, or ſtony wayes, pare as little as may be.

To conclude, when the hoof is higher on the out-ſide than on the inſide, it will make a horſe enter-fear, and when it is higher on the inſide, it will make a Horſe ſtraddle, ſo that a fair ſmooth table is of all moſt convenient. After travel, ever ſtop the inſide of the hoof with Cows dung, and rub the out-ſide and the Cronet with the ſward of fat Bacon: for that will keep a tough, ſmooth, and a ſound hoof. As your nails have ſtrong heads, ſo let them have thin ſhanks, for that will beſt prevent hurting, and keep the ſhooe cloſe unto the hoof.

CHAP. CXVI.

Of looſening the Hoof, and how to make the Hoofs grow.

A Hoof is ſaid to be looſened when there is a diſſolution or parting of the horn or Coffin of the hoof from the fleſh, at the ſetting on of the Cronet. Now if this diſſolution or parting be round about the Cronet, then it proceedeth by meanes of ſome foundring; but if it be but in part, then it proceedeth from ſome anguiſh, cauſed either by the pricking of ſome channel nail, or other nail piercing the ſole, or quarters of the foot, or by ſome Quitter-bone, retrait, gravelling, or cloying, or ſuch like accident. The ſigns of the diſeaſe be theſe: When it is looſened by foundring, then it will break firſt, and the diſſolution will appear on the fore-part of the Cronet, right againſt the toe, becauſe the humour doth covet alwayes to deſcend towards the toe; but if it proceed from pricking, gravelling, or ſuch like, then the hoof will looſen round about equally, even at the firſt; but when it proceeds from ſome Quitter-bone, or hurt upon the cronet, then the Hoof will break

right about the place that is offended, and moſt commonly will go no further.

Now the cure, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, is, of what cauſe ſoever the looſening proceed, firſt, to be ſure to open the hoof in the ſole of the foot, ſo as the humour may have free paſſage downward; and then to bind about the top of it, the reſtrictive plaiſter ſpoken of in the ſeventy eighth Chapter, and in the 117. Chapter, and in ſuch ſort as is there written, and then heal it up with Turpentine and Hogs greaſe molten together. Others of the ancient Farriers take three ſpoonful of Tar, and a quarter of a pound of Rozen, and half a handful of Tanſie, and half a handful of Rue, and half a handful of red Mints, and half an handful of Southernwood, and bray all theſe together in a morter: then add half a pound of Butter, and a penny-worth of Virgins wax; then melt them all together over the fire, until it come to a thick plaiſter or ſalve: then ſpread ſome of it upon a cloath, and lay it to the ſore, renewing it once a day for ſeven dayes, and it will heal it.

Others uſe to take the brains of a Swine, or a Pig, and to ſtop his hoof very well therewith three dayes together, renewing it twice or thrice a day, and it will grow faſt, and endure as well, or rather better than ever it did. Other Farriers uſe to cut out the ſole below, Letting it bleed well; after ſtop it with hurds dipt in the whites of Eggs: tye this to for twenty four hours, then waſh it with ſtrong Vinegar warm, after fill it with Tarter and Salt, of each a like quantity, let that remain in two dayes; then anoint it with the oyntment made of *Olibanum*, Maſtick, pitch of *Greece*, of each alike, and a little *Sanguis Draconis*, and of new Wax and Sheeps ſuet as much as of the firſt, and melt and boyl them very well together, and let this oyntment be applyed once a day till the ſore be whole. But if you perceive that any new hoof come, then cut away the old, leſt the hardneſs of the one hinder the tenderneſs of the other; and then anoint the new hoof with ſuet, oyl, and wax, of each alike boyled together, to make it grow; or elſe with pitch of *Greece*, Maſtick, *Olibanum*, *Sanguis Draconis*, and *Galbanum*, of each alike, being molten with ſuet; for this will make the new Hoof to grow alſo.

☞ So will alſo new Wax, Honey, Oyl, Swines greaſe, and Sheeps ſuet, being boyled together, and when it is cold, add Maſtick,

Sanguis

Sanguis Draconis, and Frankincenſe, and incorporate them altogether, for nothing ſooner than this will make either new or old hoofs grow. Others uſe to take Shel-Snails, and ſtamp them, and lay them twice a day to the ſore: and it will either faſten the old hoof, or quickly bring forth a new. Now there be other Farriers, which firſt fill the ſore with Turpentine, and after it hath lain twenty four hours, then waſh the ſore with Urine and Copperas water, then fill it either with Verdigreaſe, or with Sheeps tallow, pitch and Rozen boyled together; in which, having dipt hurds, lay it to the ſore very hot twice a day till it be whole.

CHAP. CXVII.

Of caſting the Hoof.

THe caſting of the hoof, is, when the whole coffin thereof falleth clean away from the foot; which cometh of all the former cauſes rehearſed in the laſt Chapter, and is ſo apparent to the eye, that it needeth none other ſigns. Now for the cure, it is thus; take of Turpentine one pound, of Tar half a pint, of unwrought Wax half a pound, of Sheeps ſuet half a pound, and of Salet oyl half a pint; boyl all theſe things together, and ſtir them continually until they be throughly mixt together; then make a boot of Leather, with a ſtrong ſole fit for the horſes foot, to be laced faſt about the paſtorn; then dreſs his foot with the Salve afore-ſaid laid upon flax or tow, and bolſter and ſtop his foot with ſoft flax, ſo as the boot may grieve him no manner of wayes, renewing it every day once until the new hoof come: then as the hoof beginneth to harden, if it grow either thick, crumpled, or out of order, with a fine Rape file keep it ſmooth, and plain, until the hoof be perfect, and then put him to graſs, that there it may take a kindly hardning and toughneſs.

CHAP.

CHAP. CXVIII.

Of the Hoof-bound.

THe Hoof-bound is nothing elſe but a ſhrinking in of the whole hoof in the upper part thereof, and at the heels, making the skin to ſtare above the hoof, and to grow over the ſame. It proceedeth from keeping the Horſes hoofs too dry in the ſtable, or from ſtraight ſhooing, or from ſome unnatural heat after foundring; and the ſigns of the diſeaſe are, that the Horſe will halt much, and his hoofs will be hot; and if you knock upon them with an Hammer, they will ſound hollow like an empty bottle; and if both his feet be not hoof-bound, then the ſore foot will ever be the leſſer: and you ſhall alſo underſtand, that this diſeaſe of ſome Farriers is called a dry foundring. Now for the cure thereof, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, it is thus: Take a pound of the ſward of Bacon, and a quarter of a pound of white Sope, and a handful of Balm, and a handful of Bay leaves, and four or five branches of Rue, and ſtamp them well together; and then fry them, and lay them about the cronet of the hoof very hot, ſuffering it ſo to abide the ſpace of five or ſix dayes, and then renew it, but in no caſe let him tread in any wet place, and this will help him.

Others of the ancient Farriers uſe, firſt to pull off his ſhooes, and to ſhooe him with half moon ſhooes, called Lunets, or Lunet, the ſhape whereof you ſhall ſee in another place; then raſe both the quarters of the hoof with a drawing knife, from the cronet unto the ſole of the foot, ſo deep that you may ſee the dew come forth: and if you make two Raſes on each ſide, it ſhall be ſo much the better, and inlarge the hoof the more; that done, anoint all the hoof above, next unto the cronet, round about, with the oyntment deſcribed before in the laſt Chapter of caſting the hoof, continuing ſo to do every day once until he begin to amend; and let him be ridden upon ſome ſoft ground an hour or two every day once for the ſpace of a moneth; and if he go not well at the moneths end, then take off the halt ſhooes, and pare all the ſoles, fruſhes and all ſo thin, that you may ſee the dew come forth, and tack on a whole ſhooe, and

and ſtop all the foot within with Hogs greaſe and bran molten together, and laid very hot to the foot, renewing it every day once the ſpace of nine dayes, to the intent the ſole may riſe; but if this will do no good, then take away the ſole clean, and clip on a whole ſhooe, anh ſtop the foot with Nettles and Salt brayed together; yet ſtop it not too hard, to the intent the ſole may have liberty to riſe, and let this be renewed every day once till the ſole be grown again; and let him be ſhod with Luners, and ſo ſent to graſs. Other Farriers uſe only to raze the hoof from the Cronet to the verge of the hoof in four or five places, and rub it twice or thrice a day with Salt, and that will open the hoof. Others uſe only to open the horſe exceeding much at the heels once a week, and to ſhooe him with very wide open ſhooes, and then for a month or two to draw him in ſome Cart, that, being forced to ſet his foot hard to the ground, he may thereby ſtretch forth and widen his hoof. Now to prevent this Sorrance, it is good to anoint his hoofs with Neats-foot Oyl, or Turpentine, and to ſtop them underneath with Cows-dung.

CHAP. CXIX.

Of the running, or rotten Fruſh.

THe Fruſh, which of ſome is called the Frog of the foot, is the tendereſt part of the hoof toward the heel, and is faſhioned like a forked Arrow head, being only that part of the foot which Farriers cut forth, when they ſay they cut forth the ſole of the horſes foot. Now in this Fruſh breedeth many times a rottenneſs or corruption proceeding of humours, which come out of the Legs, by which the Leg is kept clean from Wind-galls, and all other tumours of ſwellings, by means that the humours have paſſage that way: notwithſtanding the miſchief of this Sorrance is greater than the benefit, becauſe it maketh the Horſes foot ſo weak and tender, that he is not able to tread upon any hard ground. The ſigns of the Sorrance are, the Horſe will halt much when he travelleth either upon looſe ſtony ground, or upon ſtiff dirty wayes, and goeth ever beſt upon green ſwarth; but above all, he halteth moſt when the paſſage of the humour is ſtopped with any gravel gathered into the Fruſh,

Fruſh, and not being ſtayed or ſtopped, it will continually run, and ſtink ſo extremely, that a man can hardly endure the ſcent of it; beſides in ſome places it will look raw.

Now the Cure, according to the opinion of the antient Farriers, is thus; Firſt, take off the ſhooe, and pare away all the corrupt places, and make them raw, ſo as you may ſee the Water iſſue out of the raw places; then tack on the ſhooe again, being firſt made wide and large enough; that done, take of Soot one handful, of Salt as much; bruiſe them well together in a diſh, and put thereto the Whites of three Eggs, and temper them all together; and with a little Tow dipped therein ſtop all the foot, and eſpecially the Fruſh, and ſplent it in ſo as it may not fall out, renewing it once a day the ſpace of ſeven dayes, and certainly it will cure him. Now during the cure, the Horſe muſt reſt, and come in no wet; and at the ſeven dayes end leave ſtopping him, and ride him abroad, and alwayes when he cometh in, let his ſore foot be clean waſhed; for there is no greater enemy unto the Sorrance than gravel and dirt. Other of our latter Farriers only take off the ſhooe, and pare him well, and keep the ſore clean both from dirt and his own dung, by waſhing it three or four times a day with Urine, and that only will cure him as well as any medicine.

CHAP. CXX.

An approved and certain Cure for the running and rotten Fruſh.

☞ AFter the foot is cleanſed, take a quart of old Urine, and boyl it with a quarter of a pound of Allom beaten to powder, and keep it in a cloſe veſſel by it ſelf; then take a good handful or two of green Nettles ſtrong and Keen, and ſpread them on ſome Plate or other Veſſel, and dry them either before the fire, or in an Oven after houſhold bread is drawn, then cruſh and bruiſe them into a very fine powder; then look what quantity of powder there is, and take the like quantity of Pepper beaten to as fine powder, and mix them both very well together, then keep this powder in a cloſe Gally-pot or Bladder.

Now, when you have occaſion to uſe it, firſt waſh the ſore place with the Urine and Allome made very warm, and the ſores throughly ſcoured,

ſcoured, after dry them well by drawing through them a fine Rag of Lawn, Cambrick, or fine old Linnen, and ſtrow or pounce of the powder upon them, ſo much as may cover all the ſores, and thus do ever after travel, as once a day in the time of reſt.

CHAP. CXXI.

Of Evil Hoofs.

HOrſes partly through a natural inclination, partly through the ſtoniness of the Soil wherein they are bred, and partly through miſchance or ill government, will have ill-favoured and naughty hoofs, as either wrinkled or crumpled, or elſe mowlded awry, or ſuch like; all which needs no ſigns, becauſe of the apparent ſign thereof: Then to amend them, the beſt cure is, with a fine Rape file to ſmooth the wrinkles away, and to anoint the cronet of the hoof with a fat ſward of Bacon rubbed in ſoot; then let the Horſe ſtand for at leaſt a fortnight upon his own dung, whereon you ſhall caſt good ſtore of water, only remove away the dung every night; and then preſently after the change of the Moon, ſhooe the Horſe with ſtrong ſhooes, keeping the ſole of the foot by paring, ſo hollow as you can poſſible, and it will ſhape his hoof to your pleaſure.

CHAP. CXXII.

Of Brittle Hoofs.

IF a Horſe either through the heat of his own nature, or in that he hath been either heated on his feet by labour, or foundred, and evil cured, ſhall happen to have his Hoofs ſo brittle and ſhort, that they will hardly bear a ſhooe: The ſigns whereof are, the hoof will be white and crumbling: Then the beſt cure, according to the opinion of the beſt Farriers, is, to take Ox dung and Vinegar, and mixing them very well together, warm them on the fire, and ſo bind it both under and above round about the Horſes foot, and then lace on his boot of ſtrong Leather, as is afore-ſaid in the Chapter of caſting of the hoof. Other Farriers uſe to let the Horſe ſtand upon his own

dung, and anoint all the upper part of his hoof with the fat of Bacon ſod and mixt with Turpentine: And this you muſt do every day once till you ſee his hoofs come to ſome toughneſs.

Others uſe to take Turpentine, Hogs greaſe, and Honey, of each alike; melt them well together, and being warm anoint all the hoof therewith: then dip tow therein, and fold it all about the Horſes foot both under and above; and then put on his boot; dreſs him once a day, and once in two dayes let him ſtand four hours without his boot, that his hoof may grow as well hard as tough.

CHAP. CXXIII.

How to preſerve Hoofs.

IF you mean to preſerve your Horſes hoofs, either from any of the former Sorrances, or any other grief whatſoever, you ſhall, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, take three heads of Garlick, a little bundle of Rew, ſix ounces of Allom beaten into powder, two pound of old greaſe, and the dung of an Aſs; boyl them all very well together, and ſtop your Horſes hoof therewith once a day. Other Farriers take of Vinegar a quartern, of Tar half a pint, of Hogs greaſe half a pound, of Oyl a pint, and a good handful of Wormwood, and four or five heads of Garlick; boyl all theſe together to a thick oyntment and therewith anoint all the Horſes hoofs. Others uſe to boyl Beans till they burſt, and then temper them with Honey, and therewith anoint all the hoofs: or elſe waſh all the Hoofs with warm Vinegar, and then anoint them with Hore-hound, Worm-wood, and Greaſe molten together.

Other Farriers take of *Olibanum*, and new Wax, of each one ounce, of Dialthea and Turpentine, of each three ounces, of Butter four ounces, of old Oyl ſix ounces, and of Sheeps ſuet and Plantain, of each a pound; boyl them all well together, and therewith anoint the hoofs twice a day. Other Farriers uſe to anoint his hoofs with Turpentine, Hogs greaſe, and Honey warmed and molten together, of each a like quantity; then pare the foot well, and ſhoe him in the new of the Moon two or three dayes after the change.

Others

Others uſe to take chalk and white lead mingled together, or elſe bark duſt and honey mixt together, and being heated in a poſnet, and laid hot on the bare fleſh, is moſt excellent to make any Hoof grow: To conclude, if a Horſe ſtand upon his own dung, (being very well watered) ſo he do not lye in it, it is moſt ſoverain for the preſerving of the hoofs.

CHAP. CXXIV.

For any hurt upon the Hoofs,

IF your Horſe ſhall receive any hurt upon his hoofs, either outwardly, or inwardly, as either by any falſe treading, or croſſing one foot upon another, or by any bruiſe either upon cogle ſtone, flint, or ſuch like, then for the cure thereof, you ſhall firſt ſtop the hoof with Honey and Vinegar mixt together, for the ſpace of three dayes at the leaſt; and then afterward with the leaves of Tamariſk well bruiſed and beaten together, until the hoof be ſound again.

Other Farriers uſe only to ſtop the hoof with Sheeps greaſe and Horſe dung mixt together, renewing it once a day until it be well.

CHAP. CXXV.

How to ſoften Hoofs.

THe Hoofs of Horſes will by long and dry ſtanding upon dry plaunchers, grow ſo hard, that they will not be pared, nor cut by any Butteriſe: Beſides, they will ſo take from the Horſe the ſenſe and feeling of his feet, that the Horſe will go very ſtiff and unnimbly: Wherefore, when you ſhall perceive any ſuch defect, which is beſt known by offering to pare the hoof, then preſently you ſhall take an ounce of Sope, two ounces of unſleckt Lime, with as much ſtrong lye as will make it ſoft like a Lenwick ſalve, then with that ſtop the Horſes feet daily till they come to a convenient ſoftneſs. Hot glowing embers put upon the hoof will ſoften it.

CHAP. CXXVI.

How to harden Hoofs.

AS dry ſtanding, and dry keeping doth harden the hoofs too much, ſo wet and moiſt keeping, as continual going in Marriſh grounds, or continual ſtanding either upon durt, or the Horſes own dung, or too hot ſtoppings will make a Horſes hoofs too ſoft; inſo much that the Horſe through the tenderneſs thereof, will neither be able to go, nor bear any ſhooe, which you ſhall perceive by the ſoft and eaſie cutting of the hoof. The manner then to harden and cure them, is, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, firſt to burn an old ſhooe ſole, then ſeeth it well in Vinegar, and therewith bathe the Horſes hoofs at the leaſt twice a day, and it will harden them.

Other skilful Farriers uſe to take of the powder of Galls, of Bran, and of Salt, of each a handful; boyl theſe well in a pottle of ſtrong Vinegar, and therewith bathe the Hoofs, and in a ſhort ſpace it will harden them.

CHAP. CXXVII.

Of the Malt-long of the Hoof.

THe Malt-long, or as ſome Farriers call it, the Malt-worm, is a cankerous Sorrance above the Hoof, juſt upon the Croner, which will break out into knobs and branches, and out of the ſame will run a watriſh ſharp lye or humour, which will venom the whole fooc; as for the ſigns, they are the apparent ſight of the Sorrance, and the continual running out of the thin water. Now the Cure, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, is, if it be in the Summer time, to take black Snails, and Bur-Roots, and beating them well together, lay them unto the ſore, and renew them once in 24. hours. But if it be in the Winter, then take the ſcrapings of a Pans bottom, or of a Cauldron, and put thereto a handful of the inner green bark or pils of the Elder-tree; and having beaten them well together in a morter, lay it unto the ſore, and renew it once a day

day, and it will heal it. Others uſe to take Garlick, Pepper, and Honey, of each a like quantity, ſtamp them very well together, then anoint his tongue with a little thereof, and then lay ſome to his paſtorns, and that will cure the Sorrance.

CHAP. CXXVIII.

How to skin any ſore foot.

THere is nothing better to skin any ſore foot of what accident or Sorrance ſoever it proceed, than to take Turpentine ſimply of it ſelf, and therewith every day to anoint the ſore foot, and it will not only gather skin but hoof alſo, if it be in a place where any ſuch need requireth. Alſo white Lead, and Train oyl beaten together, will do the like.

CHAP. CXXIX.

Of gourded or ſwoln Legs.

THe gourge, or gourded Legs, is an ill ſorrance, being a grievous ſwelling in the nether part of the Legs, proceeding either from the melting of the greaſe by immodrate labour, and then wanting wherewith to avoyd that greaſe out in excrements, it falleth down into the limbs, and there breedeth this ſwelling; or elſe when a horſe is exceedingly heated, and then without care ſet up, and taketh cold, in ſo much that the blood falleth down into his Legs and there congealeth, and maketh his Legs to ſwell. To conclude, they do ſometimes proceed from hard beating in hard wayes in the Summer time, which firſt raiſeth up wind-galls, and then thoſe wind-galls offending the ſinews, maketh them to ſwell, and this is the worſt gourding, becauſe ever for the moſt part lameneſs doth follow it.

The ſigns are, the Horſes Legs will ever be moſt ſwoln when he ſtandeth ſtill in the houſe, and leaſt when he is in travel, eſpecially if he travel in much water: and the ſwelling moſt commonly is accompanied with ſome ſmall ſcabs, and in the end it will break out into the ſcratches. The cure, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, is, to draw him with a hot Iron a handful above the knee, and

and then rope his Legs with a ſoft rope of hay wet in cold Water, and let it ſo remain a day and a night, and it will take away all the ſwelling. Other Farriers take two pound of Nerve oyl, two pound of black Sope, a pound of Boars greaſe, and melt and boyl all theſe well together: then ſtrain it, and ſo let it cool; then when you have any need, anoint and chafe your Horſes Legs therewith, and to make it ſink in the better, anoint him firſt with Nerve oyl, and hold a hot Iron againſt his Legs to make it melt, then uſe the other oyntment in the ſame manner, which done, keep his Legs clean from duſt by lapping a linnen rowler about them.

☞ Others of our latter Farriers uſe to take up the veins beneath the knee, and let him bleed well: then knit the vein both above and below, and then anoint his Legs with this oyntment: Take of Frankincenſe, Rozen, and freſh greaſe, of each a like quantity, and having boyled them well together, then ſtrain it, and uſe it once a day as you ſhall have occaſion, and it will heal any Gourge whatſoever; only for the taking up of the veins, you may if you will forbear it, ſith, if it be not done with great cunning, it will make the Horſe ſtiff ever after. See further in the new Additions, for any ſtrain in general noted thus ☞.

CHAP. CXXX.

A moſt certain and approved Cure for any Surded or ſweld Legs, by what accident ſoever.

☞ FIrſt with a Fleam prick the ſweld parts, then take a pint of Wine lees, an ounce of Comin-ſeeds, and a handful or more of Wheat-flower, and boyl them till they be thick, then apply this pultus very hot to the ſweld part, and renew it but once in 24. hours, and if this in two or three dayes draw it to an head, then launce it, and heal it either with a Plaiſter of Shoo-makers Wax, or elſe with the yolk of an Egg, Wheat-flower and Honey beaten together to a Salve.

But if it do not draw to any head, and yet the ſwelling continue, then take of Pitch a quarter of a pound, and as much Virgins wax, of Rozen half a pound, of the juyce of Hyſſop half an ounce, of *Galbanum* half an ounce, of Myrrh ſecondary half a pound, of *Bdelium Arabicum*

Arabicum half an ounce, of Deers ſuet half a pound, of *Populion* half an ounce, of the drops of Storax half an ounce, boyl all theſe together in an Earthen pot, and after it is cooled, take of Bitumen half a pound, of Armoniack an ounce and a half, and of Coſtus as much, beat theſe into fine powder, and then incorporate them with the other, and boyl them all over again: which done, pour the whole mixture into cold Water, and then rowl it into ſeveral roles, plaiſter-wiſe; after ſpread this plaiſter upon ſheeps Leather, and fold it about the ſweld member, and this will both aſſwage it, and give much ſtrength to the ſinews. You ſhall by no means remove this plaiſter ſo long as it will ſtick on.

This plaiſter is wonderful ſoverain, and of ſingular uſe, for the Horſe that is continually kept therewith, I mean, that hath if applied to his Limbs ever when he commeth from travel, he ſhall never be troubled with ſweld Legs, nor yet ever put out Wind-gall.

Now, if you will neither go to this coſt, nor endure this trouble, yet would have your Horſe cured of this infirmity, then know, there is not any thing better, or more approved, than continually both before and after Travel, and in the Houſe many times in the day, to lave and waſh your Horſes Legs, or other ſweld parts, with the coldeſt and cleareſt fountain Water that you can get, and ſometimes let the Horſe ſtand in ſome cold running ſtream the ſpace of a quarter of an hour or more, up to the Knees and Cambrels, but in any caſe no further.

This Medicine how poor ſoever it look, is of much vertue, and though I write of cold Water, yet is the operation hot and fiery: Only this you muſt take to your Remembrance, that this application appertains not to impoſtumations, but unto ſtrains, and ſwellings, and bruiſes, which are without much anguiſh.

CHAP.

CHAP. CXXXI.

Of the Farcy, or Faſhions.

THe Farcy, (of our ignorant Smiths called the Faſhions) is of all outward Sorrances the vileſt, the moſt poyſonous, infectious, and the moſt dangerous, (being any whit neglected) or otherwiſe the moſt eaſie, and with the leaſt coſt or trouble to be helped. It is a kind of creeping Ulcer, growing in knots, ever following alongſt ſome one vein or other, and ſometimes alongſt divers or ſundry Veins, according to the ſtrength of the infection. It proceedeth ſometimes from corrupt blood ingendred in the body, ſometimes from outward wounds or hurts received by cankerous or poyſonous inſtruments, as ruſty Spurs, ruſty Forks, biting of Dogs or Horſes, biting of Ticks, Hogs-lice, or ſuch like; ſometimes by the rubbing of Swine againſt the Legs of the Horſe, or by lying in the litter where Swine have lain, or by enter-fearing, or hewing one Leg upon another; but generally it proceedeth from an evil habit of the body, being ſurfeited by diſorderly and unruly Travel, whereby the blood being heated, the greaſe melted, and ſudden cold taken, there groweth ſuch obſtructions in the blood, and ſuch putrifaction in the body, that it can no way evacuate or avoid, but by theſe ſmall Knots, Puſtules, or Ulcers, which are ſo infectious, that as many Horſes as do gnaw or gnap upon the Horſe infected, will within one moneth have the ſame diſeaſe: or if the Horſe infected, do bite any other, he will infect him alſo; and this infection without preſent Cure is mortal, and will kill any Horſe: therefore, whenſoever you have any Horſe troubled with this Sorrance, ſee that you ſeparate him from other Horſes to prevent the danger.

Now for the ſigns, they are the appearance and palpable feeling of the Knots, which knots are never but accompanied with gerat ſwellings and rancklings, running along as the veins run, and dividing themſelves as the branches of the vein divide, the number of the knots multiplying and increaſing until the body be univerſally covered over, or elſe that the member (if it be in a member) be utterly deformed and mis-ſhapen.

Now

Now the cure, (according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers) is, firſt let him blood on the neck vein, and on both his ſpur veins, then give the Horſe this drink: Take a gallon of water, and put into it a good handful of Rue, and a pound of Hemp-ſeed, both being firſt bruiſed in a morter, then boyl them in water till the one half be conſumed, and give the Horſe this to drink in the morning faſting being cold, for divers mornings together, and it will cure him.

Others of the ancient Farriers uſe firſt to let the Horſe b'ood in that vein where the Sorrance firſt riſeth, as nigh the ſore place as may be, and let him bleed well: then fire or cauterize every Knot one by one, taking the knot in your left hand, and pulling it ſo hard as you can from his body, to the intent you may the better pierce the knot with the round blunt hot Iron, of the bigneſe of a mans fore-finger, without doing the body any hurt, and let the matter out, leaving none unburned being little or much: That done, anoint every knot ſo burned with Hogs greaſe warmed every day once until the cores be ready to fall; and in the mean time, prepare a good quantity of old Urine, and when you ſee the cores ready to fall, then boyl the Urine, and put therein a little Copperas and Salt and a few ſtrong Nettles, and with that water being warm waſh out all the cores, and all the corruption: that done, fill every hole immediately with the powder of unſleckt Lime, continuing thus to do every day once until the holes be cloſed up; and if any be more ranke than others, fill thoſe with Verdigreaſe; and during this cure, let the Horſe be thinly dyeted, that is to ſay, with ſtraw and water only, unleſs it be now and then to give him a loaf of bread, or a little other Provender: for the lower he is kept in fleſh, the ſooner he will heal; and in any wiſe let his neck either be yoaked in an old bottomleſs pail, or elſe ſplented with ſtaves in ſuch ſort, that he may not come to lick any of his ſores, and the leſs reſt he hath, the better will be his amendment. Now there be other latter Farriers, which for the Sorrance take a good quantity of Miſtleto, Honey and black Sope, and boyl them very well in old Urine, and being very warm, waſh your Horſe all over therewith, every day once for the ſpace of five or ſix dayes, and it will help it. Others uſe to cut the Horſe two inches long down the fore-head, and open it in the midſt thereof on both ſides two inches, and put thereto a tampin made of the inner rind of Elder bark which is green, and

look that it lye croſs the cut; for ſo it will deſtroy all the venemous humour in his body, and it will heal him very perfectly, having been very oft approved. Others uſe to take a very ſharp bodkin, and to thruſt it croſs-wiſe through the nether part of the Horſes noſe, even through the ſmall griſtle, ſo that he may bleed well; or elſe to let him blood in the neck-vein, then feel the knots, and as many as are ſoft, Launce them, and let them run, then take ſtrong lye, Lime, and Allom, and mixing them well together, bathe all the ſore therewith, and it will cure him.

☞ Others take a ſharp lance Knife, and in the top of the Horſes fore-head ſomewhat above his eyes, make a long ſlit even unto his skul; then with a blunt inſtrument for that purpoſe, looſe the fleſh from the ſcalp a good compaſs, then take carrot roots cut into little thin round pieces, and put them between the skin and the skul, or, for want of carrot roots, you may take red Dock roots, and ſee that they be a little beaten or bruiſed before you put them in, and once a day ſee that you thruſt out the matter, but by no means thruſt out the roots: but if the roots do not ſtay in, then with a needle and ſilk ſtitch the wound together that it may hold in the Medicine; then once a day anoint the wound with freſh Butter: This is held a very certain cure for the Farcy, for look how this wound made thus ſhall rot, waſt, and grow ſound, ſo ſhall the Sorrance break, dry up, and be healed; only the fault of this cure, is, that it will be ſomewhat long in healing, and is a foul eye-ſore until it be whole.

Now there be other Farriers, which, after the putting in of roots, as is afore ſaid, uſe to burn all the ſore place round about with a hot Iron; and then with another blunt hot Iron as big as a mans finger, to burn the ſores in the midſt till the white matter come forth, then with a pair of pinſons pluck out the knots: this done, anoint all the ſore places with Sope, and then dreſs him no more the ſpace of four or five dayes, in which time you muſt prepare a good quantity of ſtrong piſs, with the which you muſt waſh him every day, the piſs being firſt made ſcalding hot, and rub the ſores well until they begin to bleed; then having dryed all the ſore places, throw on the powder of unſleckt Lime, or of burnt Allom, which will heal better than Lime. Now if you ſee that in any of the ſores through negligent dreſſing there riſeth proud fleſh ſo high, that you cannot correct

it

it ſufficiently with the aforeſaid powder, then you may burn any ſuch place ſo ſore or ſorer as you did at the firſt, and dreſs it as before. Now there be other Farriers, which, when they ſee the Farcy to have been old and long gone, and that it is ſo far entred into one Member or other, that the member is disfigured, they will then firſt purge the Horſe with ſome ſtrong purgation, of which you may find choice in a Chapter before written, and then under his belly, put in one rowel either of hair or Leather; or on the pitch of his ſhoulder of his grieved Leg (if it be before) or elſe on the ſtifling place, if his grief be behind, put in another Rowel, and ſo keep thoſe two places, together with the iſſue in his fore-head open, until the cure be finiſhed; then with another hot Iron burn all his Leg down with long ſtrikes, even from the body to the hoof, not above an inch one ſtrike from another, the edge of the Iron being not above a ſtraws breadth, and draw your ſtroak ever downward with the hair, and burn him no deeper than that the skin may look brown. Now, when by this practice you have cured the diſeaſe, if then the Member be unfaſhionable, or by ſwellings out of all form, then you ſhall lay unto the member a plaiſter made of Wine lees, and Wheat-flower, and Rowl it with a wollen Rowler, renewing it once in twenty four hours, till the member be aſſwaged, and this practice will heal any great ſwell'd Leg, if it be applied and continued with patience; but if by former dreſſings, burnings, manglings or cuttings of ſome ignorant Farriers, there be any extraordinary, hard, or horny ſubſtance grown about the member, which the plaiſter afore-ſaid will not reſolve, then you ſhall take of Virgins Wax half a pound, of Mirrh one pound, of raiſins a pound, of *Galbanum* half a pound, of Coſtus ſix ounces, of Armoniack ſix ounces, of Swines greaſe two pound; put your Swines greaſe firſt into an earthen pot, and having placed it in a broad cauldron full of water, then make a ſoft fire under it, to the end that your water may boyl; and when you do perceive your Swines greaſe is almoſt melted, then ſhall you put in all the other ſimples, except the Coſtus, and when they are all molten, which will ask five or ſix hours boyling at the leaſt, then your Coſtus, which is a white root, being beaten into fine powder, you ſhall add to, the afore-ſaid things after it is taken from the fire, and incorporate them all very well together, then make a plaiſter thereof upon a piece of Sheeps leather, ſomewhat bigger than the ſore,

and this Plaiſter without renewing will ſerve for at the leaſt thirty dayes, with a very little refreſhing, only you muſt once a day take it off, and rub his Leg very well for fear it itch, which may cauſe the Horſe to beat and ſtamp with his foot, and ſo rather increaſe than decreaſe the ſwelling; and you muſt regard, that you do not Rowl him too ſtrait, for that is moſt hurtful. It ſhall not be amiſs now and then to ride him into the water, and walk him an hour after, then bringing him into the Stable, rub his Leg well; then warm his Plaiſter over a Chafing-diſh and coals, and ſo lay it to again: and this practice in two or three moneths will take away any deformity of ſwelling, be the Member never ſo uncomly.

Now there be other Farriers, which for this Farcy, if it be but young, and eſpecially if it be about the head or face of a Horſe; will take only of *Aquavitæ* two ſpoonfulls, of the juyce of Garlick two ſpoonfuls, and of the juyce of Rew, or herb of Grace, two ſpoonfuls; mix them well together, then take plegants or round balls of flax, and ſteep them therein, and then ſtop them hard into the horſes ears; then take a needle and thred and ſtitch the tips of his two ears together, by means whereof he cannot ſhake out the Medicine, and uſe the Horſe thus three ſeveral mornings together, and it will kill the Farcy, as hath been oft proved.

☞ Other Farriers uſe to take Drag-worts, or Ground-ſel, and beat it well in a morter with white Salt, and then ſtop it hard into the Horſes ears, and ſo either ſtitch them together, or with a broad inckle bind them up, renewing it once in fourteen hours for three or four dreſſings, and it will heal any reaſonable Farcy.

Others uſe to anoint all the ſores either with Tanſey, and Verjuyce boyled together, or elſe with Boars greaſe very hot, and that will kill it. Others uſe firſt to waſh the ſores with old Urine, then take the powder of Glaſs, Brimſtone and Hogs greaſe well ſtamped and beaten together, then opening, or ſlitting the knots, anoint them all therewith, and it will cure them immediatly. Other Farriers uſe to let the Horſe blood, if it be at the beginning of the diſeaſe, or elſe not; and then to burn all the knots as is aforeſaid, and then to heal the burnings with Tar, Oyl and Honey mixt together, and give him with a pint of Malmſey, two or three ſpoonful of the powder Diapente:

Diapente: or elſe give him four ounces of the powder of Wall-wort, or Dan-wort, with a pint and a half of Malmſey three dayes together: after that take an ounce of Aloes, one once of Centuary, one ounce of Opoponax, beat them all into fine powder, and give them him to drink in a pint and half of Malmſey warmed, wherein the roots of the afore-ſaid herb called Wall-wort, or Dan-wort, have been ſodden: uſe to Ride him oft until he ſweat, and when the Diſeaſe is killed, turn him to graſs: for running in the open air is very wholeſome.

There be others, which take black Sope, Arſnick, unſleekt Lime, Verdigreaſe, and Red Lead, work all theſe well together, and opening the Knots, dreſs them therewith till you ſee them begin to dry up and dye. Others open the knots with a hot Iron, and then take black Sope, and great Bay Salt beaten together, and half ſo much as of them, of Verdigreaſe, and boyl the Verdigreaſe with freſh greaſe, and then take a ſaucerful of Muſtard, and put them all together, and dreſs the ſores therewith.

There be others that take three ounces of Quick-ſilver, and put it into a bladder, with two ſpoonful of the juyce of Oranges or Lemons, and ſhake them together to cool the Quick-ſilver: then take half a pound of freſh Hogs greaſe, and of Verdigreaſe an ounce; put all theſe in a trend diſh, and work them well together: then anoint the knots with this Oyntment till they rot: then let them out with a ſharp Knife, and anoint them ſtill, and put into his ears the juyce of Rag weed, and the ſores will dry up. This Medicine is very well approved. Others take black Sope, Muſtard made of Wine Vinegar, and red Lead; mix all theſe together, and anoint the vein all along, holding a hot Iron cloſe to the ſore, to make the Oyntment ſtrike in, and do thus once a day until the ſores dry up. Other Farriers take of the juyce of hemlock a good quantity, and dipping tow therein, ſtop his ears therewith, then open all the knots and thruſt in Salt. Laſtly, give him to drink ſweet wort mixt with Fennel and Treacle. Other Farriers take the butter Bur, and being dryed and beaten to powder, ſtrew it upon the knots after they have been opened, and then give him two or three ſpoonful of the ſame powder with a pint of Malmſey to drink, and it will cure the Farcy; and it is alſo exceeding good for all manner of Ulcers; the root is ſtrong in ſmell, and bitter in taſte.

Others

Others take Sulphur, Orpiment, unſleckt Lime, and mixing them together, put it into the Knots, and it will kill the Farcy: which done, anoint him with Bole-armony made into powder, and incorporated with ſtrong Vinegar, the juyce of Houſleek, and of white Leeks, and Solatro. Other Farriers after they have let the Horſe blood, will boyl in Vinegar, Bean-flower and Swines greaſe, then add a pretty quantity of oyl, and then ſtrain it, then add one part of Aloes, and two of Brimſtone, and boyl it a little: then being warm, anoint all the ſore places therewith, or elſe anoint them twice a day with the juyce of Smallage, and the yolks of Eggs beaten together.

There be other Farriers which take two ounces of Oyl de bay, one of *Euforbium*, and two ounces of Arſnick, and mixing them together, anoint the ſores therewith, and it will kill the Farcy. Now after all theſe many Receipts, of which not any but hath been approved to be very good, yet theſe two which I will now rehearſe, I have ever found to be the moſt excellent for any manner of Farcy whatſoever, whether it be, as our ſimple Smiths term it, a dry Farcy, a wet or watry Farcy, or a running Farcy, all being indeed but one Farcy, and proceeding from one cauſe; only ſome Horſes not having ſuch flux of humours in them as others have, the Knots will be unwilling to break, and then they ſay it is a dry Farcy: others of the contrary part will break as faſt as the Knots ariſe, and run filthy matter, and then they call it a watery Farcy: Others will ſpread in many parts of the body, yet not break, but as it were move betwixt the skin and the fleſh, but that they call a running Farcy.

Now all theſe are but one Farcy, and have but one certain Cure, which is this. First, with diligent heed mark upon what principal vein of the Horſes body the Knots do ariſe, and note how they ſpread and run, then if the Farcy be divided into ſundry branches, according as the vein doth divide, you ſhall take the laſt knot of every branch, which for the moſt part will be hard, and not come to rottenneſs; and then ſlit them, and fill them with your Knives point ful of white Mercury: then thoſe which you find to be rotten, let the matter forth, and anoint them with black Sope and Mercury mixt together: then within a day or two you ſhall ſee thoſe which you dreſs with Mercury ſimple, to have their cores fall out; and the

the reſt which you dreſs with black Sope, will dry up: then anoint them all with freſh Butter molten till they be whole. Now if you perceive any new knots to ariſe, then you ſhall dreſs them like-wiſe with Mercury ſimple, as was ſaid before, and not leave any uncured. Now if the Farcy be not very contagious, but as it were newly begun, then if you only take black Sope and Mercury, as before ſaid, and anointing your finger and your thumb therewith, do but nip and bruiſe every knot, and within two or three dayes after they will dry up and heal. But if the Farcy be foul and deſperate, that is to ſay, either univerſally ſpread over the body, or ſo gotten into any Limb or Member, that the Limb is deformed, and hath loſt his proportion, ſo that a man can neither judge which way the veins run, nor in what part the knots are moſt venemous, becauſe that healing one, two new ones will ariſe;

In this ſame caſe, you ſhall firſt give your Horſe a ſtrong ſcouring or purgation, according to the ſtrength of his body, of all which, a pint of Muſkadine, or a quart of ſtrong Ale, with half a pint of the oyl of Oats, is the moſt ſoverain: then ſhall you take a penny-worth of Tar, and two good handfuls of Pigeons dung, and twelve penny-worth of white Mercury; mix all theſe very well together, and make them into a ſalve: then with a ſlice daub it all over the ſore place, leaving no part of the Member uncovered; then heating a bar of Iron Red hot, hold it ſo near that it may dry the Salve upon the ſore: then lay more freſh ſalve on, and dry in like manner, and ſo let it reſt until it fall off, and it will kill any Farcy whatſoever, at the firſt or ſecond dreſſing. There be others which will ſtop the Knots with the powder of Verdigreaſe and of Arſnick mixt together, or elſe waſh the ſores with *Aqua-fortis*, but they are neither ſo good as the other before rehearſed.

CHAP. CXXXII.

Of the Canker in any part of the body.

A Canker is a poyſonous creeping Ulcer, fretting and gnawing the fleſh a great breadth, whoſe beginning is knotty, not much unlike to the Farcy, and ſpreadeth it ſelf into divers places; and being exulcerated, gathereth together at the length into one

Wound

Wound or filthy ſore, from whence there runneth a thin ſharp lye, which galleth off the skin whereſoever it goes, and ſo both increaſeth the Ulcer, and maketh it more incurable. It proceedeth from Melancholy and filthy blood, ingendred either by rankneſs of keeping, or elſe by too extreme poverty; and if this naughty blood be mixt with ſharp and Salt humours, then it cauſeth more painful and grievous exulceration. It alſo may proceed from ſome loathſome Wound, which is neither clean kept nor well dreſt, but in ſuch ſort, that the corrupt matter thereof poyſoneth the other clean parts of the body. For ſigns of the Sorrance, there needeth no more but the deſcription already mentioned. And for the cure, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, it is, firſt to let the Horſe blood in thoſe veins which are next the ſore, and make him bleed well; then take of Allom half a pound, of green Copperas as much, of white Copperas one quartern, and a good handful of Salt, boyl all theſe things together in fair running water, from a pottle to a quart: and this water being warm, waſh the ſore therewith with a clout, and then ſprinkle thereon the powder of unſleckt Lime, continuing ſo to do every day once the ſpace of fifteen dayes; and if you ſee that the Lime do not mortifie the rank fleſh, and keep it from ſpreading any further, then take of Sope half a pound, of Quick-ſilver half an ounce, and beat them together in a pot until the Quick-ſilver be ſo well mingled with the Sope, as you can percieve no Quick-ſilver in it; and with an Iron ſlice or ſplatter, after that you have waſhed the ſore with the ſtrong Water afore-ſaid, cover the Wound with this oyntment, continuing thus to do every day once until the Canker leave ſpreading abroad. And if it leave ſpreading, and that you ſee the rank fleſh is well mortified, and that the edges begin to gather a skin, then after the waſhing dreſs it with Lime, as before, continunig ſo to do until it be whole; and in the dreſſing, ſuffer no filth that comes out of the ſore to remain upon any whole place about, but wipe it clean away, or elſe waſh it away with warm water: and let the Horſe during this cure, be as thinly dyeted as may be, and throughly exerciſed. Now if this cankerous Ulcer happen to be in the tail of a Horſe, as it is often ſeen, and which you ſhall perceive as well by the falling away of the hairs, as alſo by the wound, then you ſhall make a bolſter of ſoft cloath or ſpunge, and wet it with Vinegar both within and without, and ſo bind it faſt

to

to the ſore; and alwayes when it waxes dry, you muſt wet it again; do thus twice or thrice a day, if it be done oftner it is better: ſo ſhall you continue for three or four dayes, and then heal it up as you heal an ordinary wound; that is, with Hogs greaſe and Turpentine molten together, or ſuch like. There be other Farriers, which for the Canker on the body, do take an ounce of the juyce of the root of Affedely, three ounces of unſleckt Lime, two ounces of Orpiment, or Arſnick, put this in an earthen Veſſel cloſe ſtopt, and either boyl or bake it in an oven till it come to a powder; then firſt waſh the ſore with ſtrong Vinegar, and after ſtrew this powder thereon. Others uſe to take Garlick, and beat it in a morter with Swines greaſe till it come to a Salve, and then having waſht the ſore either with Vinegar, Allom water, Copperas water, or old Urine, anoint it once or twice a day with it till it be whole. Other Farriers take the herb Mullen, and bruiſe it, and mix it with Salt and Verdigreaſe, and dreſs the ſore therewith morning and evening for the ſpace of three or four dayes, then uſe the ſame ſalve again as long without Verdigreaſe, then laſtly uſe the herb alone: but if at any time you ſee it do begin to Wax raw, then begin again as is afore-ſaid, and ever before you anoint it, waſh it firſt with Vinegar and greaſe mixt together. Others take Savin, Bay-ſalt, and Rew ſtampt with Barrows greaſe, and anoint the ſore therewith, and when the ill humours are kild, (which you ſhall know by the whiteneſs) then heal it with Tar, Oyl, and Honey mixt together.

Laſtly, (and which I hold the beſt) take Vinegar, Ginger, and Allom, and mix them together till they come to a Salve, and with it anoint the ſore, and it will both kill the Poyſon, and heal the Ulcer.

CHAP. CXXXIII.

Of the Fiſtula.

A Fiſtula is a deep, hollow, crooked, mattering Ulcer, and for the moſt part, commonly a great deal ſtraighter at the mouth than at the bottom, being ingendred in ſome wound, bruiſe, ſore, or Canker, not throughly healed. The ſigns to know it are, the hollowneſs of the ſore deſcending downward from the Orifice, and the

thinneſs of the matter which iſſueth from the ſame; beſides, the crookedneſs which you ſhall find in the Ulcer, when you ſearch it.

☞ Now for the cure, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, it is thus: Firſt ſearch the bottom thereof with a Gooſe or Swans quill, or with a ſmall Rod well covered with a fine Linnen cloath; and having found the bottom thereof, cut it ſo large with a Razor, that the matter may have free paſſage downwards; but take heed in launcing it, that you cut not any maſter ſinew, or main tendon: then having ſtanched the blood either with Swines dung, or ſuch like, take of good Honey a pint, of Verdigreaſe one ounce, and boyl them well together upon a ſoft fire three quarters of an hour; then having cleanſed the ſore by tying a tent of flax or fine Linnen cloath to the point of your quill, with a thread draw it ſoftly into the Wound: then cut off your quill or feather ſo long that you may take good hold in the nether end of the tent, which then ſhall come out at the bottom of your ſore: then dip another tent in the aforeſaid Salve, and then with a needle and thred make faſt your tent to your firſt clout, at the upper end thereof; then draw out your firſt tent downward, ſo ſhall you draw your tent with the Medicine eaſily into the Wound, and your firſt tent will have cleanſed the ſore very clean; and if the matter do abound much, then it ſhall be good to dreſs him twice a day: but you muſt not dreſs him with this Medicine no more but one day, and afterward you ſhall dreſs him with this Medicine following: take of Turpentine, of Swines greaſe, of Honey, and Sheeps ſuet, of each a like quantity, and melt them together, and make a ſalve thereof, wherewith you ſhall dreſs your ſore four dayes, for one day that you dreſs him with the former Medicine made of Honey and Verdigreaſe; and take heed that you make your tent of very ſoft Linnen cloath, and fine flax: and let not your tent be too big after the firſt and ſecond time dreſſing, but preſently after the firſt dreſſing you muſt cover the ſore place, and round about the ſame, with this Pultus here following.

Firſt, take two Gallons of fair Water, and having boiled and ſcum'd it ſo long till you have perfectly cleanſed it of all corruption, then take two or three handfuls of Mallows, and as much of Violet leaves, and two or three of Oat-meal, and having boyled all theſe three

three things well in your former prepared Water, you ſhall add thereto of Hogs-wort, and freſh Butter, of each a pound: then ſhall you let it boyl ſo long till it become thick, like paſte or pap, and then apply it hot to the ſore, and take heed that in opening this ſore you let not any air ſtrike into it: And on the other ſide, that you keep it not too hot: And if this Fiſtula be in the Horſes Withers, you muſt take heed that you tye his head to the rack, ſo as he may neither lye down, nor put his head lower than his manger: for if you ſuffer him to feed on the ground when he hath any grievous ſore in his Withers, it ſhall hardly be poſſible ever to cure him; but if you perceive the Wound to heal apace, and that it matter but a little, then ſhall it be enough to dreſs him once a day: and alſo it ſhall be good, to take great heed, that you make not your tent too big, and ſee that you uſe your Pultus till it be perfectly cured. Now there be other of the ancient Farriers, which uſe for this cure, firſt to ſearch the depth of the Fiſtula either with a quil, or with ſome other inſtrument of Lead, which may be bow'd every way: for unleſs you find the bottom of it, it will be very hard to cure; and having found the bottom, if it be in ſuch a place as you may boldly cut and make the way open with a Lancet or Razor, then make a ſlit right againſt the bottom, ſo wide, that you may thruſt in your finger to feel whether there be any bone or elſe griſtle periſhed, or ſpongy, or looſe fleſh, which muſt be gotten out; and then tent it with a tent of flax dipped in this Oyntment: Take of Mirrh, of Aloes, and of Sarcocolla, of each one ounce, of good Honey ſix ounces, and of Verdigreaſe two ounces, and melt all theſe on a gentle fire, and make them into a Salve; then being luke-warm, dreſs the tent therewith, and bolſter the tent with a bolſter of flax, and if it be in ſuch a place as the tent cannot conveniently be kept in with a band, then faſten on each ſide the hole two ends of a ſhooe-makers thred right over the bolſter, to keep in the tent, which ends may hang there as two laces to tye and untye at your pleaſure, renewing the tent every day once until the ſore leave mattering, and then make the tent every day leſſer and leſſer until it be whole: for you ſhall underſtand, that this Salve doth purge this fiſtula of putrifaction, incarnateth and breedeth fleſh, conglutinateth and eateth away all naughty fleſh. Now when you have done as afore-ſaid, then you ſhall cloſe it up by ſprinkling thereon a little unſleckt Lime; but if the fiſtula be

in ſuch a place, as you can neither cut againſt the bottom, nor tye the ſame, then there is no remedy, but every time you dreſs it, to pour into it either through ſome quil, or by ſome ſmall ſquirt or ſeringe, ſome ſtrong white Copperas water, or ſome Allom water, ſo that it may go down to the bottom, and dry up the filthy matter: and this you muſt do twice a day at leaſt until it be whole. Now there be of our latter Farriers, which uſe this cure, after they have ſearcht the Fiſtula to the bottom, to take a pottle of white Wine Vinegar, of Camphire half an ounce, of Mercury precipitate half an ounce, of green Treacle three ounces, of Red Sage an handful, of Yarrow and Rib-wort of each an handful, of Honey half a pint, of Boars greaſe half a pint, boyl all theſe together till a quart be conſumed, and with this you ſhall waſh and cleanſe the Wound. then to heal up the ſame, you ſhall take oyl of Roſes, Virgins Wax and Rozen, of each a like a quantity, of Turpentine five ounces, of the gum of Ivy and Deers ſuet as much, boyl theſe together unto a Salve, and then dreſs the ſore therewith until it be whole, obſerving ever, both in this cure, and all the reſt, that as ſoon as you have put in your Tent, to clap a plaiſter over it of Pitch, Rozen, Maſtick, Turpentine and Hogs greaſe molten together, which will both comfort the Wound by taking away evil humours, and alſo keep in the tent from falling out. Now if the Fiſtula be in or about the head of the Horſe, then you ſhall take the juyce of Houſlick, and dip therein a lock of Wool, and put it into the Horſes ears, and it will ſtay the inflammation; but if it be exulcerated and broken, then you ſhall cut away all the rotten and falſe fleſh, and then bathe it well with the grounds of Ale made warm, and then wipe the blood clean away: then take Butter, Rozen, and Frankincenſe a little, and boyl them all together, and boyling hot pour it into the wound, and then clap on the plaiſter; do thus once a day till the Horſe be whole. Now if there be any inflammation behind the Horſes ears, or that it grow to any impoſtumation in that place, then you ſhall boyl the roots of Mallows in water till they wax tender, then bruiſe them, and ſtrain out the water clean, and being warm, apply it to the ſore, and it will heal it.

There be other ancient and skilful Farriers, which for the general Fiſtula uſe as a prevention thereof, to take Honey and Sheeps ſuet, and making it ſcalding hot, to ſcald the ſore extremely therewith upon

upon the firſt ſwelling, and it will keep the Fiſtula that it ſhall not breed; but if it breed, then you ſhall Launce it in the nethermoſt part, and put into it as much Mercury *Sublimatum* as a peaſe, being firſt abated with Salet oyl, and laid on with a feather; after that take of Verdigreaſe four penny worth, of Vitriol a half penny-worth, of Red Lead three penny-worth, beat theſe together, and every day waſh the wound with Copperas water, made with Copperas and Elder leaves in Summer, and with the inner green bark in Winter; after the waſhing take the powder, and put it on the ſore, and after it drop on a little Oyl.

Others Farriers take the outermoſt green ſhels of Wal-nuts, and put them in a Tub, ſtrowing three or four handfuls of bay ſalt upon them, ſome in the bottom, ſome in the midſt, and ſome on the top, and ſo keep them all the year; and when you will uſe them, take a pint of them, a little bay Salt, and half a quarter of a pound of black Sope, with half a ſpoonful of May Butter, (and for want thereof, other Butter) and mix and incorporate them together; and then ſpread it on the ſore, or tent the ſore therewith; but two hours before you lay it on, anoint the place with *Venice* Turpentine, and do thus till the fiſtula be whole.

Others Farriers take *Unguentum Ægyptiacum*, which is made of Honey, a pint, Vinegar half a pint, Allom a quarter of a pound, and Verdigreaſe one ounce and a half; and ſeeth them all together till they be thick, and of a tauny colour; this is called *Ægyptiacum*, and to make it the ſtrongeſt way, is, to put in of Mercury *Sublimatum* one ounce made into powder, and of Arſnick two ſcruples, and boyl it together; with either of theſe, eſpecially the ſtrongeſt, dreſs any Fiſtula, Canker, or foul old Ulcer whatſoever, and it will kill it; and the weaker of theſe, which wanteth the Mercury and the Arſnick, may be applied to the Fiſtula in the mouth of a Horſe. Other Farriers take of *Sublimatum* made into powder one ounce, the midſt of well Leavened bread ſlack baked three ounces, of Nenin ten drams, mingle them together with a little Roſe water, and make tents thereof, and dry them upon a Tile, and at your pleaſure tent your fiſtula therewith, and it will aſſuredly kill it. Others take ſtrong Lye, Honey, Roch-Allom, and Mercury, and ſeeth them together, and ſquirt it into a Fiſtula, and it will kill it at the bottom, and when you mean to dry up a Fiſtula, take red Wine, Goats dung,

dung, and Bean-flower, and ſeeth them together, and apply it to the Fiſtula, and it will dry it up.

Now if you intend to ſink down the ſwelling of a Fiſtula, firſt of all ſear it with a drawing Iron in this proportion ✠, and then take Roſin, Sheepsſuet, and Brimſtone, and boyl them together, and lay it upon a Fiſtula very hot with a cloath, and it will ſink down the ſwelling. It is alſo moſt excellent to take away a Wind-gall, if it be laid on after the Wind-gall is prickt, but not too hot, but very reaſonable, and it will keep it alſo very clean.

☞ There be other Farriers, which for a fiſtula take Verdigreaſe, Butter and Salt melted together, and pour it ſcalding hot into the ſore; and uſe this till all the fleſh look red; then tent it with Verdigreaſe, burnt Allom, Wheat-flower, and the yolks of Eggs well beaten and mingled together: Laſt of all, skin it with Barm and Soot mixt together.

CHAP. CXXXIV.

A rare and true approved Medicine to cure any Fiſtula, or hollow impoſtumation whatſoever.

☞ TAke a pint of the ſtrongeſt Vinegar, and being hot upon the fire, mix therewith the lome of a clay Wall, which hath not any Lime in it, but by no means do not pick out the chopt ſtraws or hay that is in the lome, but boyl them all together till it come to a Salve: then being reaſonable hot, ſpread it over all the ſweld place, and over every part which you ſhall feel hard: and you ſhall thus do twice a day, and it will not only ripen and break the hollow Ulcer, but alſo ſearch it to the bottom and heal it. This medicine cureth any ſore back whatſoever, how grievouſly ſoever, either gall'd or bruiſed.

CHAP.

CHAP. CXXXV.

Of the Ambury.

AN Ambury is a great ſpungy Wart full of blood, which may grow upon any part of the Horſes body, chiefly about the Eye-brows, Noſtrils, or privy parts, and it hath a root like unto a Cocks ſtone. Now the cure, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, is, firſt to tye it about with a thred or hair ſo hard as you can pull it, and the thred will eat in by little and little, in ſuch ſort as within ſeven or eight dayes it will fall away of it ſelf; and if it be ſo flat, that you can bind nothing about it, then take it away with a ſharp hot Iron, cutting it round about, and ſo deep as you leave none of the root behind, and then dry it up with the powder of Verdigreaſe, but if it grow in ſuch a ſinewy place as it cannot be conveniently cut away with a hot Iron, then it is good to eat out the core with the powder of Reſalger, or Mercury, and then to ſtop the hole with flax dipt in the white of an Egg, for a day or two: and laſtly, to dry it up with the powder of unſleckt Lime, and Honey, as is before taught. Other Farriers, in ſtead of tying the Wart with a thred, do tye it with ſome Horſe hair: and that is a great deal the better, and will rot it off ſooner, and faſter.

CHAP. CXXXVI.

Of the Cords.

THe Cords is a certain ſtring, which cometh from the ſhackle vein to the Griſtle in the Noſe, and between the Lip, the length of an Almond; or there be two ſtrings like threads, which lye above the knee, betwixt the knee and the body, and goe like a ſmall cord through the body to the noſtrils, making a Horſe to ſtumble much, and ſometimes to fall alſo; and it is a diſeaſe very much incident to many young Horſes. The ſigns are, an apparent ſtiff going, and much ſtumbling, without any outward or viſible Sorrance; the Cure is, according to the opinion of our ancient Farriers,

riers, to take the end of a crooked Harts horn that is ſharp, put it under the cords, and twine it ten or twelve times about, till the Horſe be conſtrained to lift vp his foot; then cut the cord aſunder, and put a little Salt into the iſſue, or cut it firſt at the Knee, than at the end of his Noſe, and ſo draw it upward a ſpan length, and cut that off. Other Farriers let the Horſe blood in the veiñ that deſcendeth in the inſide of the Leg, by the breaſt, and take away at leaſt a pottle of blood, and after ſeven dayes waſh him with Beef-broth, and it will heal him.

Other Farriers take Muſtard, *Aqua-vitæ*, and Salet oyl, and boyl them on the coals, and make a plaiſter, and bind it to the place that is grieved, and it will help.

Others take the grounds of Ale, and being made warm, bathe his Legs therewith, and then rope them up with wet hay ropes, and it will make the Horſe perfectly ſound.

CHAP. CXXXVII.

Of the String halt.

THe ſtring halt, of ſome called the Mary hinchcho, is a ſuddain twitching up of the Horſes hinder Legs, as if he did tread upon needles, and were not able to indure his feet upon the ground; the ſigns whereof be an apparent ill-favoured manner of halting, moſt viſible to the eye. And the cure is, to take up the middle vein above the thigh, and underneath the ſame, then under the ſaid vein there lies a ſtring, which ſtring muſt be cut away: and then anoint him with Butter and Salt, and he will both do well, and go well.

CHAP. CXXXVIII.

Of a Horſe that is Spur-gall'd.

IF a Horſe by the indiſcretion of an Evil Rider, be Spur-gall'd, which is a diſeaſe moſt plain both to be felt and ſeen: then the cure is, either to bathe it with Urine and Salt mixt together, or with Water and Salt, or with warm Vinegar, or elſe

elſe bind unto the place the crops of leaves of Nettles ſtamped; and any of theſe will cure him.

CHAP. CXXXIX.

Of Wounds in general.

WOunds, according to the opinion of all Farriers, is a ſolution, diviſion, or parting of the whole: for if there be no ſuch ſolution, or diviſion, then it is rather called a bruiſe than a Wound; and therefore, Wounds are moſt commonly made with ſharp or piercing Weapons, and bruiſes with blunt weapons: notwithſtanding, if by ſuch blunt weapons any part of the whole be evidently broken, then it is to be called a Wound, as well as the other, and theſe wounds do proceed from ſome ſtroak, prick, or violent accident. Now of Wounds, ſome be hollow, and ſome be deep and hollow: Again, ſome Wounds chance in fleſhy parts, and ſome in bony and ſinewy places; and thoſe which chance in the fleſhy parts, though they be very deep, yet they be not ſo dangerous as the others, and therefore I will ſpeak firſt of the moſt dangerous. If then a Horſe have a wound newly made, either in his head, or in any other place which is full of ſinews, bones or griſtles, then, according to the opinion of the moſt ancient Farriers, you ſhall firſt waſh the Wound well with white Wine warmed, and keep it ever whilſt you are in dreſſing it, covered with cloaths wet in warm white Wine: that done, you ſhall ſearch the bottom of the wound with a probe or ſmall inſtrument of Steel made for the purpoſe, ſuffering the wound to take as little wind or air as you can poſſible: then having found the depth, ſtop the hole cloſe with a clout until your ſalve be ready: then take of Turpentine, *Mel roſatum* oyl of Roſes, of each a quartern, and a little unwrought Wax, and melt them together, ſtirring them continually that they may be well mingled together; and if the Wound be a cut, make a handſome rowl or round plegant of ſoft tow, ſo long and ſo big as may fill the bottom of the Wound, which for the moſt part is not ſo wide as the mouth of the wound: then make another rowl or plegant ſomewhat bigger to fill up the reſt of the wound, even to the hard mouth, and let both theſe rowls be anointed with the oyntment afore-ſaid, made luke-warm; only

this you muſt ever obſerve, that if the wound be long and large, that then it is beſt, if you can conveniently, to ſtitch the wound together with a fine needle and a Crimſon ſilk: for that will make it heal the ſooner, and make the skar leſs. But if the hurt be like a hole made with ſome prick, then make a ſtiff tent either of tow or lint, ſuch a one as may reach the bottom, anointed with the afore-ſaid Oyntment, and bolſter the ſame with a little tow: and over both this and the other, or any wound whatſoever, as ſoon as your rowels, plegants or tents are put in, you ſhall clap a ſticking plaiſter made of Pitch, Rozen, Maſtick, and Turpentine melted together, as hath been before taught, both to keep in your ſalve, and to comfort the ſore. Now if the mouth of the wound be not wide enough, ſo as the matter may eaſily run forth, if it be in ſuch a place as you may do it without hurting any ſinew, then give it a pretty ſlit from the mouth downward, that the matter may have the freer paſſage, and in any wiſe have an eſpecial regard that the tent may be continually kept in by one means or other, and alſo that it may not be drowned within the wound, but by tying ſome thread about the upper end thereof, ſo kept, that it may be teken out at pleaſure. Now if the hole be deep, and in ſuch a place as you may not cut it, then make your tent full as big as the hole, of a dry ſpunge that was never wet, ſo long that it may reach the bottom; and the tent being made ſomewhat full, with continual turning and wrying of it, you ſhall eaſily get it down, and then dreſs the wound with this twice a day, cleanſing the Wound every time with a little white-wine luke-warm: for the ſpunge anointed with the Oyntment afore-ſaid, will both draw and ſuck up all the filthly matter, and make it ſo fair within as is poſſible; and as it beginneth to heal, ſo make your tent every day leſſer and leſſer, until it be ready to cloſe up, and never leave tenting it ſo long as it will receive a tent, be it never ſo ſhort: for haſty healing of Wounds breedeth Fiſtulaes, which properly be old ſores; and therefore muſt be healed like Fiſtulaes. Now if the wound proceed from any ancient impoſtumation, then you ſhall take two or three great Onions, and taking out the cores, put therein a little Bay Salt, and a little whole Saffron, and ſo roaſt them in the hot Embers: then plaiſter-wiſe lay them all hot on the wound, renewing it once a day till the wound be healed. Now if the upper skin of the wound be putrified, and you would have it away, then

make

make a plaiſter of Cows dung ſod in milk, and clap it to for four and twenty hours, and it will leave nothing vile about the wound. Others uſe generally for any cure whatſoever, to take a quarter of a a pound of Butter, of Tar and black Sope, of each half as much, and a little Turpentine; boyl all but the Sope together, then when you take it off the fire, put in the Sope, and with this oyntment dreſs any cut, and it will heal it.

Other Farriers uſe only to take Hogs greaſe and Venice Turpentine, and to melt them together, and it will heal any Wound. Other Farriers take eight drams of Turpentine, four drams of new Virgins wax; melt them in a pewter veſſel, and ſtir them well together, and when they are well melted and mixed, take them from the fire, and by and by whileſt they be hot, pour into them half a pint of white Wine, then after they be cold, throw away the Wine, and anoint your hands with Oyl of Roſes, and work the Wax and Turpentine well togther, after that put them into the pewter veſſel again, then put to them half an ounce of the gum of Firr-tree, and three drams of the juyce of Bettony, then ſeeth them well together until the juyce of Bettony be waſted, then put to it three drams of Womans milk, or the milk of a red Cow, and ſeeth them once again until the milk be waſted; and then put it in a cloſe pot or glaſs, and with this dreſs any wound whatſoever, and it will heal it. Others uſe to take Roſemary, and dry it in the ſhadow, and beat it to powder, then waſh the wound with Vinegar, or the Urine of a child. and ſtrew thereon the aforeſaid powder, & it will heal an indifferent wound.

Other Farriers take Worm-wood, Marjoram, Pimpernel, Calamint, *Olibanum*, beat them all into fine powder, then take Wax and Barrows greaſe, and boyl them on a ſoft fire until they be as thick as an Oyntment or Salve, with this dreſs any wound and it will heal it. Others uſe to take the tops of Nettles, Butter, and Salt, and beating them well in a morter till they come to a Salve, and it will dry and heal a Wound. Now the powder of Honey and Lime, or Turpentine ſimply of it ſelf, will dry up and skin any Wound. Take Turpentine, Honey, Hogs greaſe, Wax and Sheepsfuet of each alike; melt them well together to a Salve, and they will heal any wound. Now if a Horſe be goared upon a ſtake, then you ſhall caſt him, and pour into the wound Butter ſcalding hot,

and ſo let him lye till it be gone down into the bottom; and do thus once a day till the wound be whole. If you deſire to keep a wound open, put into it the powder of green Copperas, and it will do it; but if you intend to heal it ſpeedily, then Wheat-flower and Honey well beaten together to a Salve will do it, dreſſing the wound once a day therewith.

CHAP. CXL.

Of a hurt with an Arrow.

IF a Horſe be ſhot or hurt with an Arrow, tent the hole only with Hogs greaſe and Turpentine molten together, and renew it once a day until the wound be whole.

CHAP. CXLI.

Of the healing of any old ſore or Ulcer.

OLd Ulcers or ſores are of three kinds, the firſt deep, hollow and crooked, and they be called Fiſtulaes; the ſecond broad and ſhallow, but much ſpreading and increaſing, and they be called Cankers; and the laſt broad, deep, black about the ſides and bottom, yet not much increaſing, although not at all healing, and they be called old ſores or Ulcers: They proceed either from ſome great bruiſe, wound, or impoſtume, which is either venomed or abuſed in healing by contrary ſalves; or through the flux and abundance of humours flowing down to thoſe parts, through the negligence of a moſt unskilful Farrier. The ſigns are, the long continuance of the ſore, the thinneſs of the matter which iſſueth away, and the blackneſs of the ſore, which is ever full of inflammation.

Now for the cure, according to the opinion of the moſt ancient Farriers, it is thus: Firſt cleanſe the ſore well with white Wine; then take Copperas and the leaves of Lillies, beat them well in a mortter with Swines greaſe till it come to a perfect Salve, and lay it upon the ſore with flax, and then cover it with a plaiſter

ſter as in caſe of wounds, and renew it once a day, and it will heal it.

Other Farriers take Lime, and tough Horſe dung, and mix it very well together with Pepper, and the white of an Egg, and lay it to the ſore, renewing it once a day till the Ulcer be cured.

Other Farriers ſtrew upon the ſore the powder of Galls, and that will dry it up.

Others ſcald it once a day with hot oyl Olive, and that will heal it.

CHAP. CXLII.

A moſt certain and approved Cure for the healing of any old Ulcer whatſoever.

TAke Maſtick, Frankincenſe, Cloves, green Copperas, and Brimſtone, of each a like quantity, of Myrrhe double ſo much as of any one of the other; beat all to powder, then burn it on a Chafing-diſh and coals, but let it not flame: then as the ſmoak ariſeth, take a good handful of Lint, or fine hurds, and hold it over the ſmoak, ſo that it may receive all the perfume thereof into it, then when it is throughly well perfumed, put the Ling or hurds into a very cloſe box, and ſo keep it.

Now when you have occaſion to uſe it, firſt waſh the ſore with Urine or Vinegar made warm, then dry it; and laſtly, lay on ſome of this Lint or hurds; and thus do twice a day, and it is a ſpeedy and moſt infallible cure.

CHAP. CXLIII.

Of bruiſings or ſwellings.

ALL bruiſings and ſwellings come unto a Horſe, either by accident, or by ſome blow, ruſh, pinch, or outward venoming; or elſe naturally, as through the flux of Blood, or through the abundance of Wind. The ſigns are, the ſightly appearance in what place or member ſoever they be: And the firſt, which are thoſe which

which come by accident, are properly called bruiſings, or ſwellings; and the other, if they do rot or corrode, and ſo turn to matter, are called impoſtumes.

Now for the general Cure of any bruiſe or ſwelling, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, it is thus: Take of dry Pitch, of Gum, of each an ounce, of *Galbanum*, of Lime, of each four onces, of Bitumen two ounces, of Wax three ounces, melt and boyl them very well together, then anoint the ſore place therewith once a day, and it will heal it. But if the ſwelling proceed only from ſome bruiſe or ruſh, then you ſhall take two pints of Verjuyce, one pint of Barm, and putting a little fine Hay thereto, boyl them very well together, then bind the hay to the ſwelling very hot, and after pour on the Liquor; do thus three or four dayes together, and it will take away the ſwelling.

Other Farriers take the tops of Worm-wood, Pellitory of the Wall, Branck Urſine, beat them well together with Swines greaſe, then ſeeth them; then add a pretty quantity of Honey, Linſeed-Oyl, and Wheat meal; then ſtir it over the fire till all again be ſodden together, then lay it to the ſwelling, and renew it once a day till the ſwelling be gone.

Other Farriers uſe firſt to prick the ſwelling with a fleam, then take of Wine-lees a pint, as much Wheat-flower as will thicken it, and an Ounce of Comin; boyl them together, and lay this ſomewhat warm unto it, renewing it every day once until the ſwelling either depart or elſe come to a head, which if it do not, then launce it, and heal it according to a wound.

☞ Other Farriers take of Rozen, of Turpentine, and of Honey, of each half a pound, diſſolve them at the fire, then ſtrain them, and add of Mirrh, Sororcol, and the flower of Fenugreek, and of Linſeed, of each an ounce; incorporate them altogether, and then make it thick like a Salve with the meal of Lupins, and lay it to the ſwelling, and it will aſſwage it.

Other Farriers take of *Galbanum*, and of Ceruſe, of each an ounce, of Oyl two ounces, and of Wax three ounces, mix them together over a ſoft fire, and when they are brought to a Salve, then lay it unto the ſwelling, and it will aſſwage.

☞ If you take only rotten Litter, or Hay boyled in ſtrong Urine, and apply it daily unto any ſwelling, it will take it away.

Now

Now if the ſwelling be upon the Legs, and come by any ſtrain, Then you ſhall take of Nerve oyl one pound, of black Sope one pound, of Boars greaſe half a pound; melt and boyl them all well together, then ſtrain it, and let it cool; then when occaſion ſerveth, anoint and chafe your Horſes Legs therewith, holding a hot Iron near thereunto, to make the Oyntment enter in the better; then rope up his Legs, and keep them clean from duſt or durt: But if the ſwelling be upon any part of the back or body, then take of Honey and Tallow of each alike, and boyl them together, then ſpread it on a cloath and lay it on the ſwoln place, and let it there ſtick till it fall away of it ſelf. Now if the ſwelling proceed from any windy cauſe, and ſo appear only in the Horſes belly, then you ſhall take a ſharp pointed Knife or Bodkin, and arm it ſo with ſome ſtay that it go not too deep for piercing his guts: then ſtrike him therewith through the skin into his body before the hollow place of his Haunch bone, half a foot beneath the back bone, and the Wind will come out thereat; then if you put a hollow quil therein, or ſome feather to keep it open a while, the wind will avoid the better, then heal it up again.

It is alſo very good to Rake the Horſe, and to Ride him up and down a little: but if the ſwelling be under the Horſes jaws, or about any part of his head, then you ſhall take his own dung hot as ſoon as he makes it, and with a cloath bind it faſt thereto, renewing it twice, a day till the ſwelling be gone. See further in the new additions for the Fiſtula, marked thus ☞.

CHAP. CXLIV.

Of Impoſtumes, and firſt how to ripen them.

IMpoſtumes are a gathering or knitting together of many and moſt corrupt humorus in any part or member of the body, making that part to ſwell extremely, and growing into ſuch violent inflammation, that in the end they rot and break out into foul, mattery, and running ſores; they commonly proceed either from corruption of food, or corruption of blood; they are at the firſt appearance, very hard, and very ſore; which hardneſs is the principal ſign that they will rot. And of theſe impoſtumes, ſome be hot im-

impoſtumes, and ſome be cold; yet for as much as every impoſtume muſt firſt be ripened, and brought to matter before it can be healed, we will firſt ſpeak of the ripening of them. If therefore you would ripen any Impoſtume, (according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers:) You ſhall take of *Sanguis Draconis*, of gum *Arabick*, of new Wax, of Maſtick, of Pitch of *Greece*, of Incenſe, and of Turpentine, of each a like quantity, and melting them together, and ſtraining them, make a plaiſter thereof, and lay it to the impoſtume without renewing: and it will both ripen, break, and heal any impoſtume.

Other Farriers take Swines greaſe, red wax, and the flower of *Euforbium*, and mixing them on the fire well together, lay it to the impoſtume, and it will do the like.

Other Farriers take of Honey, and of Wheat-meal, of each a like quantity, and either boyl it in the Decoction of Mallows, or elſe mix it with the yolk of an Egg, and it will ripen, break, and heal; yet it muſt be renewed once a day.

Other Farriers take Barley meal, and boyl it with Wine and Pigeons dung, and ſo lay it to the Impoſtume plaiſter-wiſe, and it will ripen exceedingly.

Other Farriers take a handful or two of Sorrel, and lapping it in a Dock Leaf, roaſt it in the hot Embers as you would a warden, and then lay it to the Impoſtume as hot as may be well indured, renewing it once a day; and it will ripen, break, and heal it. A Plaiſter of Shoo-makers Wax will do the like alſo.

Other ancient Farriers take Mallow roots, and Lilly roots, and then bruiſe them, and put thereto Hogs greaſe and Linſeed meal, and plaiſter-wiſe lay it to the Impoſtume, and it will ripen it, break it, and heal it perfectly. See further in the new Additions for the Fiſtula, noted thus ☞.

CHAP.

CHAP. CXLV.

Of cold Impoſtumes.

IF the impoſtume do proceed from any cold Cauſes, as thoſe which riſe after cold taking, or when a Horſe is at graſs in the Winter ſeaſon, then you ſhall take the herb called Balm, and ſtamp it and Hogs greaſe well together, and ſo Plaiſter-wiſe apply it to the ſore, and it will heal it: or elſe when the impoſtume is ripe, open it in the loweſt part with a hot Iron, then waſh it with warm Urine; after that anoint it with Tar and Oyl well mixt together; and if you make your inciſion in the manner of a half Moon, it is the better.

Other Farriers take white Mints, and ſeeth them in Wine, Oyl, Ale, and Butter, and ſo lay it hot to, and it will heal it.

Other Farriers take Cuckoo-ſpit, and ſtamp it with old greaſe, and ſo apply it, and it will heal it.

Other Farriers take a handful of Rue, and ſtamp it well with the yolks of Eggs and Honey, and then apply it plaiſter-wiſe, and it will heal any cold impoſtume.

CHAP. CXLVI.

Of hot Impoſtumes.

IF the impoſtume proceed from any hot cauſes, as from the extremity of travel, the parching of the Sun, or the inflammation of the blood, then according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, you ſhall take Liver-wort, and ſtamp it, and mix it with the grounds of Ale, Hogs greaſe, and bruiſed Mallows, and then apply it to the ſore, and it will ripen, break, and heal it: But if you would not have the ſwelling to break, then take the grounds of Ale, or Beer, and having boyled Mallows therein, bathe the ſore place therewith, and it will drive the ſwelling away. Other Farriers take either Lettis-ſeed, or Poppy-ſeed, and mix it with oyl of red Roſes, and lay it to the ſore plaiſter-wiſe, eſpecially at the beginning of the ſwelling, and it will take it clean away.

CHAP. CXLVII.

Of the Tetter.

A Tetter is a filthy kind of Ulcer like unto a canker, only it is ſomewhat more knotty, and doth not ſpread, but remaineth moſt in one place, and many times it will remain between the skin and the fleſh, like a knotted Farcy, and will not break.

☞ The cure thereof, according to the opinion of the ancient and underſtanding Farriers, is, to make a ſtrong Lye with old Urine, Aſh-aſhes, and green Copperas, and bathe the knots therewith, and it will kill and heal them. Some other Farriers take a Snake, and cut off the head and the tail, and caſt them away, the reſt cut into ſmall pieces, and roaſt them on a ſpit, then take the greaſe that droppeth from them, and being hot anoint the Sorrance therewith, and it will heal it in a ſhort time: but look that you touch no part of the Horſe therewith, ſave only the Sorrance, for it will poyſon and venom.

CHAP. CXLVIII.

Of ſinews that are cut, prick'd, or bruiſed.

IF a Horſe by the miſchance of ſome Wound, ſhall have any of his ſinews either cut, prick'd, or ſore bruiſed, then if there be no Convulſion of the ſinews, you ſhall, according to the opinion of the moſt ancient Farriers, take Tar, and Bean-flower, and a little Oyl of Roſes, and mixing them together, lay it hot unto the places, and if it do not preſent good, take Worms and Salet oyl fryed together, or elſe the oyntment of Worms, which you may buy of every Apothecary, and applying either of them, they knit the ſinews again, if they be not clean aſunder. But if there be a Convulſion, then with a pair of ſheats you muſt cut the ſinew in pieces, and then ☞ take Rozen, and Turpentine, Pitch, and *Sanguis Draconis*; then melting them together, clap it ſomewhat hot unto the ſore; then take flax and put upon it, for that will cleanſe and defend it, and than this Medicine there is none better for any ſwoln joynt whatſoever.

Now

Now if the joynt be not much ſweld, but only that the ſinews are exceeding ſtiff, through the great bruiſings, then you ſhall take of black Sope a pound, and ſeeth it in a quart of ſtrong Ale till it wax thick like Tar; then reſerve it, and when you ſhall ſee cauſe, uſe to anoint the ſinews and joynts therewith, and it will ſupple them, and ſtretch them forth, although they be never ſo much ſhrunk, as hath been approved.

CHAP. CXLIX.

Of fretting the Belly with the fore-girths.

IF when you ſaddle and gird your Horſe, the girths be either knotty or crumpled, and therewithall drawn too ſtraight, they will not only gall and wound the Horſe under the belly very much, but they will alſo ſtop the blood which is in the principal veins, called the plat-veins, in ſuch ſort, as they will occaſion moſt extreme and hard ſwellings.

The cure whereof, is, according to the general opinion, to take of Oyl de Bay, and Oyl of Balm two ounces, of Pitch two ounces, of Tar two ounces, and one ounce of Rozen; mingle them well together, and then anoint the Horſes fore bowels therewith; then take either flox, or chopt flax, and clap upon it, and ſo let it abide until it fall away of it ſelf, and it will ſurely cure him.

Other Farriers uſe to take Vinegar and Sope, and beat them well together, and ſtir it with a ſtick or cloath, and then all to rub and waſh the galled place therewith, and do thus at leaſt twice a day, and it will dry it up in two or three dayes at the moſt; but if the galling be about any part of the Horſes neck, then you ſhall take the leaves of Briony, (called the Hedge-vine) and ſtamp them, and mix them with Wine, and then plaiſter-wiſe lay it to the ſore, and it will heal it.

CHAP. CL.

Of Bliſters,

BLiſters are certain wateriſh hollow blebs, which do ariſe betwixt the skin and the fleſh, proceeding either from ſlight burnings, ſcaldings, or chafings, and they be very ful of thin matter. The cure thereof, according to the opinion of the moſt general Farriers, is, firſt in the Sun to fret them till they bleed; then take the roots of Ivy, and ſtamping them in a morter, mix them with as much Tar, Brimſtone, and Allom, till they come to a Salve; and then dreſs the bliſter therewith, and it will heal it.

CHAP. CLI.

To take away all manner of Bones, Knobs, or any ſuperfluous fleſh.

WHen a Horſe hath any bone growing upon any part of his body, more than natural, or when he hath any Lumps or bunches of ſuperfluous fleſh, otherwiſe than of right both belong to his true proportion; then ſuch bones, knots or bunches, are called Excreſcions, proceeding from tough and flegmatick ſubſtances, ſtirred up either by moſt ſore bruiſes, imperfect healed Wounds, or other naughty putrifaction of the blood, being moſt apparent to the eye, and moſt palpable to the hand.

Now for the Cure, (according to the general opinion of the moſt ancient Farriers) you ſhall firſt uſe Corroſive medicines, after drawing Medicines, and laſtly drying medicines; or more particularly, thus you ſhall cure them: firſt with an inciſion Knife ſcarifie the Excreſcions, then apply Sulphur and Bitumen, or Coloquintida burnt and ſifted, and when it hath eaten the Excreſcion away, then heal it up with drying Salves, as powder of Honey, and Lime, or Bole-armony, or ſuch like. Other Farriers uſe after they have made the Excreſcion to bleed well, then to take two ounces of the aſhes of Vitis, and as much unſleckt Lime mixt with ſix ounces of ſtrong lye, firſt ſtrained, then ſod till half be conſumed, and ſo brought to a firm ſubſtance; then keep it in a glaſs in a dry place, and apply it

to

to the Excreſcion till it have eaten it away, and then heal it up as is before ſaid. Other Farriers uſe to take a pound of ſtrong Lye, and Sope, and a quarter of a pound of Vitriol Romane, one ounce of Sal-armoniack, and as much Roch Allom, and boyl them together until they be very thick, and then with that Oyntment eat away the Excreſcion. Others uſe to take of *Egyptiacum* the ſtrongeſt kind, and lay it on the Excreſcion with a Cotten three or four times, and it will take it clean away: This medicine is moſt excellent for any ſplint, and of no ſmall importance, if it be uſed againſt any Fiſtula; for it will ſink it, although it were in the Crown.

CHAP. CLII.

How to eat away any ſuperfluous or dead fleſh.

IF when your Horſe hath any Wound, Ulcer, and other ſore, you ſhall perceive that there groweth therein dead fleſh, which dead fleſh you ſhall know partly by the inſenſibility thereof, and partly in that it is a ſpungy, hollow, naughty fleſh, not ſubſtantial as the true fleſh is, and either of a blackiſh, or an high red Colour; then it ſhall be meet that you ſeek all means poſſible how to conſume and eat away that ſuperfluous and naughty fleſh, becauſe the ſore that is peſtered therewith, neither can nor will ever heal, till it be cleanſed of the ſame: Therefore, according to the opinion of the moſt ancient Farriers, The beſt means to eat it away, is, to boyl freſh greaſe and Verdigreaſe, of each alike quantity together, and either to tent or Plaiſter the ſore therewith, until the dead fleſh be conſumed.

Other Farriers take either the ſcrapings of Harts-horn, or Ox-horn, and mixing them with old Sope, dreſs the ſore therewith, and it will eat away dead fleſh.

Other Farriers take *Spongia Marina*, or Sea-ſponge, and therewith dreſs the ſore, and it will do the like. Other Farriers uſe the powder of Riſagallo, or Riſagre, but it is a great deal too ſtrong a fretter. Others uſe Litergy, or Lime in lye, but they are like wiſe very violent and ſtrong eaters.

Others uſe to take either White or black Eleborus, Ink, quick-Sulphur, Orpiment, Litergy, Vitriol, unſleck Lime, Roch-Allom, Galls, Soot, or the aſhes of Avellan, of each half

an

an ounce, and they will conſume dead fleſh; likewiſe Quick-ſilver extinct, and Verdigreaſe, of each an ounce made into powder, will do the like: the juyce of Borage, of Scabious, of Fumitary, and of a Dock, of each half an ounce; a little old Oyl and Vinegar boyl with a ſoft fire, put to it Tar, and it will likewiſe eat away any dead fleſh.

There be other Farriers which take Cantharides, Ox dung, and Vinegar, and mix them well together, and lay it to the ſore, and it will fetch away the dead fleſh. Others uſe firſt to pounce the ſore with a Razer, then anoint it with greaſe, and ſtrew upon it a pretty quantity of Orpiment. Other Farries uſe in ſtead of Riſagallo, to take the powder of Verdigreaſe and Orpiment, of each an ounce, of unſleckt Lime and Tartar, of each two ounces; mix them together, and therewith dreſs the ſore, after you have waſht it well with ſtrong Vinegar; and if you pleaſe, you may add thereunto Vitriol and Allom, for they are both conſumers of dead fleſh. Other Farriers take the powder of Tartar and Mans dung burnt with Salt, and then beaten into powder, and ſtrewed on the ſore; or elſe take Salt, unſleckt Lime, and Oyſter-ſhels, and beat them in a morter with ſtrong Lye, or old Urine, till it be like a paſte: then bake it in an Oven, and after beat it to a powder, and ſtrew it on the ſore, and it will eat away the dead fleſh.

Other Farriers uſe firſt to waſh the ſore with Ale, wherein Nettle-ſeeds have been ſodden, and then ſtrew upon it the powder of Verdigreaſe.

☞ Now to conclude, you muſt ever obſerve, that before you uſe any of theſe medicines, you do ſhave away the hair, that it be no impediment to the Salve; alſo when you have dreſt it once, and ſee that there is no asker raiſed, then you ſhall dreſs it with ſome mollifying or healing Salve till the asker come away, and then dreſs it with your eating Salve again: and thus do until you behold that all the dead fleſh be conſumed, and that there is nothing but perfect and ſound fleſh, and then heal it up as in caſe of Wounds. Alſo Precipitate ☞ ſimple of it ſelf will eat away any dead fleſh.

CHAP.

CHAP. CLIII.

For Knots in joynts, Hardneſs, Cramps, or any Inflammations.

THere do grow in joynts three ſorts of ſwellings: namely, a hot ſwelling, a hard ſwelling, and a ſoft ſwelling; all which you may eaſily diſtinguiſh by your feeling; and they do proceed either from abundance of groſs humours ingendred by foul keeping, or elſe by accident, as from ſome Wound, Ruſh, or Strain. The Cure whereof, according to the opinion of the moſt ancient Farriers, is, to beat the powder called Diapente, together with Oyl, till it be like an Oyntment, and then apply it once a day to the grief, and it will take it away, eſpecially if it be a Cramp, or an Inflammation.

Other Farriers uſe to incorporate with oyl half an ounce of liquid Storax, two ounces of Turpentine, five of Wax, and ten of Bird-Lime, and apply that to the grief, and it will eaſe it. Other Farriers take Wine, and old Oyl, and Tar, mingled and boyled together, and therewith dreſs the ſore place, and it will help it.

Others of our old and latter Farriers take half a pound of greaſe, three ſcruples of Muſtard, and the like of Bay Salt, mix theſe with Vinegar, and apply it to the grief. Others uſe to take a plaiſter of figs, and the roots of fern and rocket, or mingle them with Greaſe and Vinegar, and apply it to the grief. Other Farriers uſe to take the *Unguentum Baſilicon*, which is made of Honey, Storax, *Galbanum*, *Bdelium*, black Pepper, Bay-berries, the marrow of a Stag, of each a like quantity; twice as much of Armoniack, and of the powder of Frankincenſe as much as of any of the other, and incorporate them with Sheeps ſuet, and apply it to the grief, and it will help it.

Other Farriers take dry Pitch, pitch of *Greece*, of each one part, of *Galbanum*, and of Lime, of each four parts, of *Bitumen* two parts, of Wax three parts; melt them all together, and anoint the place therewith very hot, and it will take away the grief, and peradventure alſo the eye-ſore.

CHAP.

CHAP. CLIV.

How to cure any Wound made with the ſhot of Gun-powder.

ACcording to the opinion of the moſt anciens Farriers, you ſhall firſt with a probe, or long inſtrument, ſearch whether the Bullet remain within the fleſh or no; and if you find that it doth, then with another inſtrument for the purpoſe, you ſhall take it forth if it be poſſible; if otherwiſe, let it remain: for in the end nature it ſelf will wear it out of its own accord, without any grief or impediment; becauſe Lead will not corrode or canker: Then to kill the fire, you ſhall take a little Varniſh, and thruſt it into the wound with a feather, anointing it within even unto the bottom: Then ſtop the mouth of the wound with a little ſoft flax dipped in Varniſh alſo; then charge all the ſwoln place with this charge: Take of Bole-armony a quartern, of Linſeed beaten into powder, half a pound, of Bean-flower as much, and three or four Eggs, ſhels and all, and of Turpentine a quartern, and a quart of Vinegar, and mingle them well together over the fire, and being ſomewhat warm, charge all the ſore place with part thereof, and immediately clap a cloath or piece of Lether upon it, to keep the wound from the cold air, continuing both to anoint the hole within with Varniſh, and alſo to charge the ſwelling without, the ſpace of four or five dayes: Then at the five dayes end, leave anointing of it, and tent it with a tent reaching to the bottom of the Wound, and dipped in Turpentine and Hogs greaſe molten together, renewing it every day once or twice until the fire be throughly killed, which you ſhall perceive by the mattering of the wound, and by falling of the ſwelling: For as long as the fire hath the upper hand, no thick matter will iſſue forth, but only a thin yellowiſh water, neither will the ſwelling aſſwage; and then take of Turpentine waſhed in nine ſeveral waters, half a pound, and put thereunto three yolks of Eggs, and a little Saffron, and tent it with this oyntment, renewing it every day once until the Wound be whole. But if the ſhot have gone quite through the wound, then you ſhall take a few Weavers Linnen thrums, made very Knotty, and dipping them firſt in Varniſh, draw them clean through the wound, turning them up and down in the

the Wound at leaſt twice or thrice a day, and charging the wound on either ſide upon the ſwoln places, with the charge afore-ſaid, until you perceive that the fire is killed; then clap on a comfortable Plaiſter upon one of the holes, and tent the other with a tent in the Salve, made of waſht Turpentine, Eggs, and Saffron, as is before ſaid. Other Farriers uſe only to kill the fire with oyl of Cream, and after to heal the wound up with Turpentine, Wax, and Hogs greaſe molten together.

Other Farriers kill the fire with Snow Water, and charge the ſweld place with Cream and Barm beaten together, and then heal up the Wound by dipping the tent in the yolk of an Egg, Honey, Saffron well beaten and mixt together.

CHAP. CLV.

Of burning with Lime, or any other fiery thing.

ACcording to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, you ſhall firſt waſh the ſore round about, and in every part very clean with warm Urine; then kill the fire, by anointing the place with oyl and Water beaten together, dreſſing him ſo every day until the ſore be all raw, and then anoint it with Hogs greaſe, and ſtrew thereupon the powder of unſleckt Lime, dreſſing him thus every day once until he be whole.

Other Farriers uſe firſt to waſh and cleanſe the ſore with Salet Oyl only warmed, then to kill the fire with Cream and Oyl beaten together, and when it is raw, then to ſpread upon it Cream and Soot mixt together; and laſtly, to ſtrew upon it the powder of Honey and Lime, until it be perfectly skinned.

CHAP. CLVI.

Of the biting with a mad Dog.

IF your Horſe at any time be bitten with a mad Dog, the venom of whoſe teeth will not only drive him into an extreme torment, but it will alſo infect and inflame his blood, in ſuch ſort, that the Horſe will be indangered to dye mad. The cure thereof, according

cording to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, is, to take of Goats dung, of fleſh that hath lain long in Salt, and of the herb Ebulus generally called Danwort, of each half a pound, and forty Walnuts; ſtamp all theſe together, and lay part thereof to the ſore, and it will ſuck out the venom, and heal up the wound; but upon the firſt dreſſing, you ſhall give the Horſe Wine and Treacle mixt together to drink.

There be other Farriers, which firſt give the Horſe Sack and Salet Oyl to drink, then with a hot Iron cauterize and burn the ſore; and laſtly, heal up the wound with the ſalve firſt recited.

Other Farriers firſt give the Horſe two or three ſpoonful of the Powder of Diapente to drink in a pint of Muskadine; then take a live Pidgeon, and cleaving her in the midſt, lay it hot to the Wound, and it will draw out the venom; then heal the ſore with Turpentine and Hogs greaſe well molten together. The leaves of Ariſtoloch bruiſed will take away the poyſon.

CHAP. CLVII.

Of hurts by the tuſks of a Boar.

IF a Horſe be ſtricken with the tuſks of a boar, you ſhall then take Copperas or Vitriol, and the Powder of a Dogs head being burned, after the tongue hath been pulled out, and caſt away, and mixing them together, apply it once a day to the ſore, and it will cure it: Yet before you dreſs it, firſt waſh the ſore very well, either with Vinegar, or with white Wine, or Urine.

CHAP. CLVIII.

To heal the biting or ſtinging of Serpents, or any venemous beaſt Whatſoever.

IF your Horſe be either bitten or ſtung, either with a Serpent, or any other venemous beaſt, which you ſhall eaſily know by the ſuddain ſwelling either of the body or member; then you ſhall firſt chafe him up and down until he ſweat, and then let him blood in the roof of the mouth; and laſtly, take a young Cock or a Pidgeon, and

and cleaving it in the midſt, clap it hot to the Wound, and then give the Horſe white Wine and Salt to drink. Other Farriers take a good quantity of the herb called Sanicula, ſtamp it, and temper it together with the milk of a Cow, till it be all of one colour, and give it the Horſe to drink, and it will heal him. Other Farriers clap to the ſore Hogs dung, or Ox dung, or Henbane bruiſed, or elſe the aſhes of Reeds; then give him to drink Mug-wort, or great Tanſie, and Wine and Camomil ſtampt together: Or elſe give him Wine and *Oleum Roſatum* mixt together.

Other Farriers make a Plaiſter of Onions, Honey, and Salt, ſtampt and mingled together, and lay that to the ſore place, and give the Horſe Wine and Treacle to drink, or elſe white Pepper; Rue, and Time, mixt with Wine. Other Farriers take Aphodillus, *Haſtula Regia*, ſtamp with old wine, and lay to the ſore: for it is moſt ſoveragin good.

CHAP. CLIX.

Of Lice or Vermin, and how to kill them.

THe Lice or Vermin which breed upon a Horſe, be like unto geeſe Lice, but ſomewhat bigger, and do breed moſt commonly about the Ears, Neck, Mane, Tail, and generally over the whole body; they do proceed from poverty, or feeding in Woods, where Trees are continually dropping upon them: The ſigns are, the Horſe will be alwayes rubbing and ſcratching, and albeit, he eat much meat, yet he will not proſper: And with this continual rubbing: he will fret and wear away all his Mane and Tail, and you ſhall alſo perceive the Lice, when the Sun doth ſhine, running on the tops of the hairs. The cure according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, is, to take of Sope one pound, and Quick-ſilver half an ounce, mix and beat them together well, until the Quick-ſilver be kild, and then anoint the Horſe all over therewith, and it will conſume the Lice preſently.

Other Farriers take Staves-aker and Sope, and mixing them together, anoint the Horſe all over therewith. Others take unripe Mulberries, and their roots or ſtalks, and ſeeth them in ſtrong Urine, and then waſh the Horſe therewith, after that anoint all his body

over with *Sanguis Draconis*, the juyce of Leeks, Salt, Pitch, Oyl and Swines greaſe, very well mixt together.

☞ Others uſe to chafe all his body over with Quick-ſilver, and ſoft greaſe mixt together, till the Quick-ſilver be kild, and in two or three dreſſings the Lice will be conſumed.

CHAP. CLX.

How to ſave Horſes from the ſtinging of Flies in Summer.

IF you will ſave your Horſe in the Summer time from the ſtinging or biting of flies, which is very troubleſome unto them, then you ſhall anoint all the Horſes body over either with oyl and Bayberries mingled together, or elſe bind unto the head-ſtal of his Collar, a ſponge dipped in ſtrong Vinegar: Some uſe to ſprinkle the ſtable with water wherein herb of Grace hath been laid to ſteep; or elſe to perfume the ſtable with the ſmoke of Ivy or Calamint, or with Githe burned in a pan of coals.

☞ But the ſureſt way of all, both in the ſtable and abroad, is, to make two good wiſps of Rue, and therewithall to rub the Horſes body all over, and no flye will light upon him, or touch him, as hath been often approved.

CHAP. CLXI.

Of bones being broken, or out of joynt.

☞ OUr common Engliſh Farriers are very far to ſeek in this cure; becauſe they do neither perfectly acquaint themſelves with the members of a Horſe, nor have ſo much invention in this extremity, to make a Horſe, being an unreaſonable creature, to ſuffer like a reaſonable perſon; and alſo in that the old traditions in Horſe-leach craft affirm, that all fractures above the Knee are incurable; and ſo deſpairing, they ceaſe to make practice: But they are much deceived: for neither the fracture above the Knee, not the fracture below the Knee, is more incurable in a Horſe than in man, if the Farrier can tell how to keep the Horſe from ſtrugling or tormenting the member grieved.

If therefore your Horſe have any bone broken, which is moſt eaſie to be diſcerned by the deprivation of the uſe of that member, and as eaſie to be felt by the ſeparation of the bones, the one part being higher than the other, beſides the roughneſs and inequality of the place grieved: you ſhall then for the Cure thereof, Firſt take a ſtrong double Canvas, which ſhall be as broad as from the Horſes fore-ſhoulder to the flank; and ſhall have another double Canvas, which ſhall come from between the Horſes fore-booths up to the top of the withers, where meeting with the reſt of the Canvas, and having exceeding ſtrong loops, to which ſtrong ropes muſt be faſtned, you ſhall by main force ſling up the Horſe from the ground, ſo as his feet may no more but touch the ground: And if it be a fore-Leg that is broken, then you ſhall raiſe him a little higher before than behind: If a hinder Leg, then a little higher behind than before, ſo that the Horſe may reſt moſt upon the Members moſt ſound. When your Horſe is thus ſlung, then you ſhall put the bones into the right place; which done, wrap it cloſe about with unwaſhed Wool newly pulled from the Sheeps back, binding it faſt to the Leg with a ſmooth Linnen roler ſoaked before in Oyl and Vinegar mingled together, and look that your Roler lye as ſmooth and plain as may be; and upon that again, lay more Wool dipt in Oyl and Vinegar, and then ſplint it with three broad, ſmooth, and ſtrong ſplints, binding them faſt at both ends with a thong, and in any caſe let the Horſes Legs be kept out very ſtraight, the ſpace of forty dayes, and let not the bones be looſened above thrice in twenty dayes, unleſs it ſhrink, and ſo require to be new dreſt and bound again; but fail not every day once to pour on the ſore place, through the ſplints, Oyl and Vinegar mingled together: And at the forty dayes end, if you perceive that the broken place be ſowdred together again with ſome hard Knob or Griſtle, then looſe the bonds, and eaſe the Canvaſe, ſo as the Horſe may tread more firmly upon his fore foot, which when he doth, you ſhall looſen him altogether, and let him go up and down fair and gently, uſing from hence forth to anoint the ſore place either with ſoft greaſe, or elſe with one of theſe Plaiſters, or Oyntments: Take of *Spuma argenti*, of Vinegar, of each one pound, of Salet Oyl half a pound, or Armoniack, and of Turpentine, of each

each three ounces, of Wax, and of Rozen, of each two ounces, of Bitumen, of Pitch, and of Verdigreaſe, of each half a pound, boyl the Vinegar, Oyl and *Spuma argenti* together, until it Wax thick: then put thereunto the Pitch, which being molten, take the pot from the fire, and put in the Bitumen, without ſtirring at all, and that being alſo molten, put in then all the reſt, ſet the pot again to the fire, and let them boyl all together, until they be all united in one: that done, ſtrain it, and make it in Plaiſter form, and uſe it as occaſion ſhall ſerve.

Other ancient and well experienced Farriers, take of liquid Pitch one pound, of Wax two ounces, of the pureſt and fineſt part of Frankincenſe one ounce, of *Amoniacum* four ounces, of dry Rozen and of *Galbanum* of each one ounce, of Vinegar two pints; boyl firſt the Vinegar and Pitch together, then put in the *Amoniacum* diſſolved firſt in Vinegar, and after that the aforeſaid Drugs: and after they have boyled all together, and be united in one, ſtrain it, and make it into a Plaiſter; and uſe it according to occaſion.

Other Farriers take of old Sale oyl a quart, and put thereunto of Hogs greaſe, of *Spuma Nitri*, of each one pound, and let them boyl together until it begin to blub above: then take it from the fire, and, when you uſe any of the Oyntment, let it be very hot, and well chafed in; and then one of the two former Plaiſters folded above it, and it is moſt ſoverain and comfortale for any bone that is broken.

CHAP. CLXII.

Of bones out of joynt.

IF a Horſe have any of his bones out of the joynt, as either his Knee, his ſhoulder, his paſtorn, or ſuch like, which you ſhall perceive both by the uncomlineſs of the joynt, and alſo feel by the hollowneſs of the member that is diſplaced: Then your readieſt Cure, is, to caſt the Horſe on his back, and putting four ſtrong paſtorns on his feet, draw him up ſo as his back may no more but touch the ground; then draw the grieved Leg higher than the reſt, till the poiſe and weight of his body have made the joynt to ſhoot into

into its right place again; which you ſhall know when it doth, by aſuddain and great crack which the joynt will give when it falleth into the true place; then with all gentleneſs looſs the Horſe, and let him riſe: And then anoint all the grieved place, either with the laſt oyntment rehearſed in the laſt Chapter, or elſe with the oyl of Mandrake, or the oyl of Swallows; both which are of moſt ſoverein vertue.

CHAP. CLXIII.

To dry up humours, or to bind, being aſtrictive, or binding charges.

TAke of *Unguentum Tripharmacum*, made of Litergy, Vinegar, and old Oyl, boyled till they be thick, only take as much oyl as of both the others, and it will ſtop and ſtay the flux of any humours.

If you take ſtrong Lye, it is a great drier, and a binder of humours.

Diſſolve in Vinegar, Rozen, Aſſalto, and Myrrhe, of each an ounce, of red Wax half an ounce, and of Armoniack half an ounce, mingle them well together in the boyling; for this Salve drieth wonderfully, bindeth all looſe members, and comforteth all parts that are weakned.

Take of Lard two pound, and when it is ſodden, ſtrain it with three ounces of Ceruſe, and as much Allom melted, and it both drieth and bindeth exceedingly.

Dry figs beaten with Allom, Muſtard, and Vinegar, do dry abundantly.

Oyl or ſoft greaſe beaten to a Salve with Vitriol, Galls, and Allom, and the powder of Pomegranats, Sal and Vinegar, both dry and bind ſufficiently.

Sope and unſleckt Lime mixt together, drieth perfectly after any inciſion.

Verdigreaſe, Orpiment, Sal-armoniack, and the powder of Coloquintida, of each alike, made into a Plaiſter, with Milk or Wax, drieth and bindeth:

The greaſe of Snakes roaſted, the head and tail being cut away, is a great drier.

To

To conclude, the bark of a Willow tree burnt to aſhes, is a great drier, and binder, as any ſimple whatſoever.

CHAP. CLXIV.

A plaiſter to dry up ſuperfluous moiſture, and to bind parts looſened.

TAke of Bitumen one pound, of the pureſt part of Frankincenſe three ounces, of *Bdellium Arabicum* one ounce, of Deers ſuet one pound, of *Populeum* one ounce, of *Galbanum* one ounce, of the drops of Storax one ounce, of Common Wax one pound, of Reſin Cabial half a pound, *Viſcus Italicus* one ounce and a half, of Apoxima one ounce, of the juyce of Hyſſop one ounce, of the drops of Armoniack one ounce, of Pitch half a pound: let all theſe be well and perfectly molten, diſſolved, and incorporated together according to Art, and then make a plaiſter thereof.

CHAP. CLXV.

Another plaiſter to dry up any ſwelling, wind-gall, ſplent, or bladders, in or about the joynts.

TAke of Virgins Wax half a pound, of Rozen one pound and a quarter, of *Galbanum* one ounce and an half, of Bitumen half a pound, of Myrrhe ſecundary one pound, of Armoniack three ounces, of Coſtus three ounces: boyl all theſe things together in an earthen pot, ſaving the armoniack and Coſtus, which being firſt ground like fine Flower, muſt be added unto the other things, after that they have been boyled and cooled, and then boyled all together again, and well ſtirred, ſo as they may be incorporated together, and made all one ſubſtance, and then applying as occaſion ſhall be adminiſtred.

CHAP.

CHAP. CLXVI.

Receits to diſſolve humours.

TAke of Worm-wood, Sage, Roſemary, and the bark of an Elm, or of a Pine, of each a good quantity, and boyl them in oyl with a good quantity of Linſeed; and making a bathe thereof, bathe the grieved parr, and it will diſſolve any humours that are gathered or bound together.

A pound of figs ſtampt with Salt till they come to a perfect ſalve, diſſolveth all manner of humours, by opening the pores, and giving a large paſſage.

CHAP. CLXVII.

How to mollifie any hardneſs.

TAke of Linſeed pun'd, and of Fenugreek, of each four ounces, of Pitch and Rozen, of each three ounces, of the flowers of Roſes two ounces, Pitch of *Greece* three ounces; boyl them together, then add three ounces of Turpentine, ſix ounces of Honey, and a little Oyl: and then applying this ſalve, it will mollifie and ſoften any hard ſubſtance.

Malvaviſco well ſod, and ſtampt with *Oleum Roſatum*, being laid hot to any hardneſs will make it ſoft.

Boyl Branck urſine, and Mallows together, and beat them with Oyl and Lard, and they will ſoften much.

Malvaviſco, Cole-worts, Branck urſine, herb of the wall, and old greaſe punded, doth mollifie very much.

The oyl of Cypreſs, both mollifieth and healeth.

Whear-meal, Honey, Pelitory, Branck urſine, and the leaves of Worm-wood being beaten with Swines greaſe, and laid hot unto any hard tumour, doth ſuddenly mollifie it, and is paſſing good for any ſtripe alſo.

Greaſe, Muſtard-ſeed, and Comin boyled together, doth mollifie very much.

Take of Sope half an ounce, of unſleckt Lime an ounce, and mix them well with ſtrong Lye, and it will mollifie even the hardeſt hoofs.

The juyce of the Leaves and roots of Elder, or a plaiſter made thereof, doth dry up and mollifie humours marvelouſly.

So doth the juyce of the tops of Cypreſs, and dry Figs, macerated in Vinegar, and ſtrained, of each three ounces: And if you add to it of Salt-niter one ounce, of armoniack half an ounce, of Aloes and Opoponax a little, and make it into an Oyntment, it will mollifie any hardneſs very ſufficiently.

Mallows, Nettles, Mercorella, and the roots of Cowcumbers, and old Turpentine, being beaten together with old greaſe, will mollifie any hardneſs ſpeedily.

CHAP. CLXVIII.

To harden any ſoftneſs.

THe ſole of an old ſhooe burnt, and ſodden in Vinegar, will harden hoofs, and ſo will alſo the powder of Galls boyled with Bran and Salt in ſtrong Vinegar.

The powder of Honey and Lime, or the Powder of Oyſter-ſhels, or the powder of a burnt felt, or thick Cream and Soot mixt together, will harden any ſore whatſoever.

CHAP. CLXIX.

To Conglutinate.

Iris Illirica beaten and ſifted, mingled with Pepper, Honey, Currants, and given the Horſe to drink with Wine and oyl, helpeth and conglutinateth any inward rupture or burſtneſs whatſoever.

Dragant, Saffron, the fruit of the pine, with the yolks of Eggs, given likewiſe to drink with Wine and oyl, doth alſo conglutinate any inward member or vein broken.

Incenſe, Maſtick, and cute, doth the like alſo. Poligano ſod in Wine, and given to drink is good alſo.

The roots and ſeeds of Aſparagus ſod in water, and given to the Horſe; then after for three dayes give him Butter and Opoponax with Honey and Myrrhe, and it will conglutinate any inward Ulcer or Rupture whatſoever.

CHAP.

CHAP. CLXX.

To mundifie and cleanſe any ſore.

TAke oyl of Olives, Swines greaſe clarified, the greaſe of a young Fox, Turpentine, allom, and white Wax, ſeeth them all together till they be moſt throughly incorporated together, and with this Oyntment dreſs any foul ſore whatſoever, and it will mundifie and cleanſe it moſt ſufficiently.

CHAP. CLXXI.

Of Repercuſſive medicines, or ſuch as drive back humours.

REpercuſſive medicines, or ſuch as drive evil humours back, are commonly called amongſt Farriers, Plaiſters or Salves defenſative, and are to be uſed about every great Wound or Ulcer, leſt the flux of humours flowing to the weak part, both confound the medicines, and breed more dangerous Exulcerations. Now of theſe Repercuſſive medicines theſe are the beſt, either Vinegar, Salt, and Bole-armoniack beaten together, and ſpread round about the ſore, or elſe white Lead and Sallet oyl beaten alſo together, or red Lead and Sallet oyl, or elſe *Unguentum Album Camphoratum*, and ſuch like.

CHAP. CLXXII.

Of burning Compoſitions.

BUrning Compoſitions are for the moſt part Corroſives, of which we ſhall have occaſion to ſpeak more at large in a Chapter following: yet for as much as ſome are of better temper than others, you ſhall here underſtand, that of all burning compoſitions, the gentleſt is *Unguentum Apoſtolorum*, next to it is Verdigreaſe and Hogs greaſe beaten together; next to it is Precipitate, and Turpentine mixt together: next to it is arſnick allayed with any oyl, or healing ſalve: Next to it is Mercury ſublimate, likewiſe allayed with

ſome cooling ſalve: And the worſt is Lime and Sope, or Lime and ſtrong Lye beaten together, for they will corrode and mortifie the ſoundeſt part or member whatſoever.

CHAP. CLXXIII.

For all manner of hurts about an Horſe whatſoever.

TAke an ounce of Oyl, two ounces of Turpentine, and a little Wax, mingle them at the fire: this will heal any Wound or Gall, and keep it clean from filth, water, and durt.

Take Vinegar and Honey, and boyl it together, when it is cold, add the Powder of Verdigreaſe, Copperas and Braſs burnt, mingle them well together: this will take away all ill and dead fleſh, and cleanſe and heal any old Ulcer.

Take Wax, Fitch, Swines greaſe, and Turpentine, and mix them well together: this will heal any bone, ſpel, or any other ſtub.

Take houſe Snails, and ſeeth them in Butter, and they will draw out any Thorn or Nail, being oft renewed. So will alſo the roots of Reeds being bruiſed and applied.

The roots of an Elder beaten to powder, and boyled with Honey, is good for any old ſore whatſoever.

Take Salt, Butter, and Honey, or white Wax, Turpentine, and oyl *Roſatum*, of each like quantity, with twice as much Bean-flower as of any of the other: mix it very well together, and make it into a Salve, and it will heal any ſore, either old or new whatſoever.

Take Wax, Turpentine, and Deers ſuet, or the Marrow of a Stag, and mix them well together, and it will heal any Wound or any Impoſtume whatſoever: ſo will alſo Wax, Oyl, Maſtick, Frankincenſe, and Sheeps ſuet, well molten together: or the Powder of Maſtick, Frankincenſe, and Aloes, mixt and molten well together.

The whites of Eggs beaten with *Oleum Roſatum*, and Salt, and ſo laid upon flax hurds, healeth any Wound that is not in any principal part where the Muſcles are.

If you will purifie, cleanſe, and heal any old ſore, take three pints of well clarified Honey, and boyl it with one pint of Vinegar, and one of Verdigreaſe, and ſo apply it: or elſe take of Maſtick, and Ver-

Verdigreaſe, of each half an ounce, of Frankincenſe one ounce, of new Wax four ounces, of Turpentine ſix ounces, and of Hogs greaſe two pound: boyl and incorporate all theſe together, and then apply it to the ſore place, and it will both cleanſe, purifie, and heal.

Chick-weed, Groundſel, Graiſe, and ſtale Urine, very well boyled together, will heal any galling or hurts by halter, or other accident, or any ſtrain, or ſtripe, or ſwelling, which cometh by any ſuch like miſchance.

Take of new Milk three quarts, a good handful of Plantain, let it boyl till a pint be conſumed: then add three ounces of Allom made into Powder, and one ounce and an half of white Sugar-candy, made likewiſe into Powder: then let it boyl a little, till it have a hard curd, then ſtrain it: with this warm, bathe any old Ulcer, then dry it, and lay on ſome *Unguentum Baſilicon*; this cleanſeth, drieth, ſtrengtheneth, and killeth the itch, and healeth the fouleſt Ulcer either in man or beaſt that may be. Alſo, if you take of milk a quart, of Allom in Powder two ounces, of Vinegar a ſpoonful; when the milk doth ſeeth, put in the Allom and Vinegar, then take off the curd, and uſe the reſt, and it will likewiſe dry up and heal any foul old ſore whatſoever.

CHAP. CLXXIV.

How to make the powder of Honey and Lime.

TAke ſuch a quantity of unſleckt Lime as you ſhall think fit, beat it into very fine powder: then take ſo much Honey as ſhall ſuffice to mingle it together, and make it into a very ſtiff paſte, in the form of a thick Cake or Loaf: then put the ſame Cake or Loaf into a hot Oven, or a burning fire, till it be baked, or burnt glowing red: then take it forth, and when it is cold, beat it into very fine Powder, and then uſe it as occaſion ſhall ſerve. It drieth, healeth, and skinneth any ſore whatſoever very marvelouſly.

CHAP.

CHAP. CLXXV.

The order of taking up of Veins, and wherefore it is good.

FIrſt, before we ſpeak of the order of taking up of Veins, you ſhall underſtand, that all Veins, except the Neck-veins, the Eye-veins, the Breaſt-veins, Palat-veins, and the Spur-veins, are to be taken up, and not ſtriken with the fleam: partly becauſe they are ſo little and thin, that if you ſtrike them, you ſhall either indanger the ſtriking thorough them; or partly becauſe they are ſo near adjoyning to Arteries and Sinews, that if in ſtriking you ſhould hit and prick either Artery or Sinew, it were a preſent laming of the Horſe, as I have oftentimes ſeen and noted in the practice of many ignorant Smiths. Now touching the order of taking up of a vein, it is thus.

Firſt, you ſhall caſt your Horſe either upon ſome ſoft ground, graſs, ſome dunghil that is not very moyſt, or in ſome light ſome Houſe, upon good ſtore of ſweet ſtraw; then when the Horſe is thus caſt, you ſhall look for the vein which you intend to take up, and if it be either ſo ſmall, or lye ſo deep, that you can hardly perceive it: Then you ſhall with warm Water, rub, chafe, and bathe all that part where the vein lyeth; then take a narrow ſilk garter, and a handful or two above the vein, (if it be of any of the Horſes Legs) garter the member very ſtraight; but if it be a vein to be taken up on the body or breaſt, then with a good ſurſingle either cloſe behind the hinder point of the ſhoulder, or within a handful of the place, where you mean to take up the vein, gird him very ſtraight, and preſently you ſhall ſee the vein to ariſe; then mark that part of the skin which covereth the vein, and with your finger and your thumb, pull it ſomewhat aſide from the vein, and then with a very fine inciſion Knife ſlit the skin clean through, without touching the vein, and in any wiſe cut no deeper than through the skin, and that long wiſe too, in ſuch ſort as the vein goeth, yet not above an inch at the moſt in length; that done, remove your finger and your thumb, and the skin will return again into his place, right over the vein as it was before, in ſo much, that but opening the orifice, or ſlit, you ſhall ſee the vein lye blew, and bare before your eyes;

eyes; then take a fine ſmooth Cronet, made either of the Browantler of a Stag, or of an old Buck, and thruſt it underneath the vein, and lift it up a pretty diſtance, (that is to ſay, half the thickneſs of the Cronet) above the skin; that done, you ſhall then looſe either the Garter or the Surſingle, for they are but only helps for you to find out the vein; and when the vein doth appear, have a ſpecial care that you touch not the ſinews.

Now when you have thus taken your vein up on your Cronet, you ſhall then either put a red ſilk thrid, dipt in Oyl of Butter, or elſe a ſmall Shooe makers thrid, underneath the vein alſo, ſomewhat higher than the Cronet, which ſilk or thrid muſt ſerve to knit the vein when time requires; then the Cronet ſtanding ſtill as before, with your Knife ſlit the top of the Vein long wiſe, the length of a Barly corn, that it may bleed: then ſtopping the nether part of your vein with the ſilk, or the thred ſuffer it to bleed from above; then with your ſilk or thred removed above, knit it faſt with a ſure knot above the ſlit, ſuffering it only to bleed from beneath, and having bled there alſo ſufficiently, then knit up the vein beneath the ſlit with a ſure knot, then fill the hole of the vein with Salt, and heal up the Wound of the skin with Turpentine and Hogs greaſe molten together, or elſe with a little freſh Butter, laid on with a little flax or ſoft tow is ſufficient.

Now the vertue which redounds from this taking up of veins: firſt, it is very neceſſary, and doth eaſe all griefs, ſtrains, and ſtiffneſs of the Limbs: for the taking up of the plat veins eaſeth all pains in the breaſt, and griefs in the cheſt; the taking up of the fore-thigh veins eaſeth Farcies, and ſwellings of the Legs: the taking up of the ſhackle veins before, helpeth Gourding, Quitter-bones, and the ſwelling of the joynts, ſcabs and ſcratches: the making up of the hinder hough veins, helpeth Spavens of both kinds, moſt eſpecially, any Farcy in thoſe parts, and generally all ſwellings or impoſtumes; the taking up of the paſtorn veins behind, helpeth ſwellings about the Cronet, or nether joynts, pains, Mules, and all manner of Kibed heels, beſides ſundry other ſuch like diſeaſes.

CHAP.

CHAP. CLXXVI.

Of Cauterizing, or giving the fire, the kinds and uſes.

THe giving of fire, which amongſt the beſt Farriers is called Cauterizing, and amongſt the ſimpler burning, ſearing, or bliſtring, is, (according to the general opinion of all the moſt ancient Farriers, the chiefeſt Remedy) and as it were the laſt refuge of all Diſeaſes incident to any Horſes body, whether they be Natural or Accidental: for the Violence of fire ſeparating and digeſting all manner of humours into a thin air, and looſe body, cleanſeth and avoideth thoſe groſſneſſes which are the material cauſes of all Putrifaction and Ulceration. Now of Cauterization, there be two kinds, the one of them Actual, which is that which is done by the hand, and with the Inſtrument, that is to ſay, of the hot Iron of what faſhion ſoever; the other Potential, which is done by the applying of a Medicine, whoſe nature is either Corroſive, Putrifactive, or Cauſtick.

Now the firſt of theſe, which is the Cauterize actual, is principally to be uſed when there is any apoſtumation in any ſinew, part, or member, or amongſt any of the moſt principal Veins: alſo when you ſhall diſmember or cut away any joynt, or make any inciſion, where there is fear of any flux of blood, or where you ſhall find either the skin or Muſcles ſhrunk or ſtraightned; and in many ſuch like caſes.

The Cauterizing potential is to be uſed in old cankered Ulcers, Wens, or any ſpungy excreſcions, either of fleſh or bone whatſoever, of whoſe natures and properties you ſhall read more hereafter in a following Chapter.

CHAP. CLXXVII.

Of the Cauterize actual, and the form of inſtruments.

AN actual Cautery, according to the opinion of the moſt ancient Farriers, being moderately uſed, is a notable remedy to ſtop all corruption in members, to keep perfect the complexion of the

the ſame, and alſo ſtanch the blood; only you muſt have a careful regard, that in the handling of your Iron you touch neither Sinews, Tendons, Cords nor Ligaments, leſt you do utterly diſable the member, or breed Cramps or Convulſions; except it be when you diſmember or cut away any joynt: As when you do make Curtals, geld Horſes, or ſuch like: and then your Cautery is to be uſed only to ſear the Veins, Sinews, and Ligaments, till ſuch time that you are perfectly aſſured that all Flux of blood is ſtopped whatſoever.

Now again, the actual Cautery bindeth together parts looſened, it doth attenuate things blown, and puffed up, it drieth up ſuperfluous moiſture, it both looſeneth, diſperſeth, and divideth evil matter gathered into knots, it aſſwageth old griefs, it rectifieth thoſe parts of the body that are corrupted by any manner of way, reducing them to their firſt perfect eſtate, and ſuffereth no abundance of evil humours to grow or increaſe: For the skin being ſeparated, and opened with the hot Iron, all putrifaction whatſoever through the vertue of the fire, is firſt digeſted and ripened, and then ſo diſſolved, that the matter doth iſſue out abundantly at the holes, whereby the grieved or ſickned member is now healed, and eaſed of all pain and grief; yea, and inſomuch that the holes being once cloſed, and cloſe ſhut up, the place is ſtronger and better knit together, and covered with a tougher and harder skin than ever it was before; only the greateſt blemiſh that can any way be found in Cautery is, that it commonly leaveth a great skar, which is many times an eye ſore more than is tolerable: and therefore, the uſe of Cauterizing is only to be preferred but in deſperate caſes of great extremity: for albeit it work foul, yet I am perſwaded it is moſt certain, and it works moſt ſure.

Now as touching the inſtruments wherewith you muſt Cauterize, their ſubſtance and proportion, you ſhall underſtand, that the moſt curious Farriers do prefer either Gold or Silver to be the beſt metal to make them of, in that few or no evil accidents do follow where they burn: But the wiſeſt, beſt, and moſt skilful Farriers, take Copper to be ſufficient enough, and a metal without any lawful exception; yet where Copper Inſtruments cannot be had, there you may with commendations enough uſe ſuch inſtruments as are made of Iron, and find your work nothing at all hindred.

Now for the fashion, or proportion of your Instruments, or Irons, they are to be only referred to the sore or place grieved, wherewith you are to meddle, according to the diversity whereof your Instruments are to be made of divers fashions; as some are to be made Knife-wise, either with thin edges, or broad edges; and they be called drawing Knives, or searing Knives, because they are principally, imployed in the drawing of straight lines, shallow, or deep, and sometimes in circular or divers squares: some are made like straight, and some like crooked Bodkins, and they are imployed either in fleshly Excrescions, to cause Exulcerations, or else in Impostumes, to open small passages for the matter; some are made like hooks or sickles, and they are to be used where the Wound is crooked, for the burning out of dead flesh, or such like hidden evils, which cannot be reacht by any straight instruments: Others are made either with great Buttons, or little Buttons at the end, and they are used to open Impostumes, or else to burn into the sound flesh, where you intend to make any new sore or issue for the drawing or keeping back of other evil humours. And in making of these Irons, the Farriers own judegment is to be of great value, because he must either increase or diminish them according to the manner of the place grieved; and be sure that he ever make them fit for his right purpose.

Now for the use of these Instruments, there are two principal things to be regarded: First, the heating of the Iron, and next, the true temper, or bearing of the Farriers hand.

Touching the heating of the Iron, you shall understand, that the back of the Iron must never be so hot as the edge, that is to say, you must never make the back of the Iron red hot, for fear that thereby it yield too much heat, and consequently breed inflammation: therefore, whensoever you see the back of your Iron as hot as the edge, you shall a little cool it with water.

Now for the temper, of bearing of your hand, you shall understand, that the more evenly, and light it is done, so much the better it is done; and herein is to be considered, the fineness or thickness of the Horses skin, which you shall know most commonly by his hair: for if it be short, and fine, then the skin is thin: if it be long and rough, then is his skin thick and boysterous.

Now the skin that is fine, must be Cauterized or seared with a very

very light hand, in as much as the skin is ſo ſoon pierced through, and the thick skin with a heavy hand, and both of them with ſuch a tempered hand, that the skin muſt no more but look yellow: wherein you ſhall ever find, that the fine skin will ſooner look yellow than the thick skin, the main reaſon being, becauſe the thickneſs and roughneſs of the hair of the thick skin doth cool and choak the heat of the Iron, in ſo much, that if it be not laid to with a more heavy hand, and the Inſtrument ſo much the more and the oftner heated, it cannot work that effect which in Art it ſhould do.

Now you ſhall alſo obſerve, that in drawing of any Line or other Cauterize, whatſoever, that you ever draw with the hair, and never againſt the hair, whether the Lines be ſhort, long, deep, ſhallow, ſtraight, crooked, or over-thwart, according as the grief doth require.

Now to conclude, you are to obſerve in Cauterizings, theſe few precepts: Firſt, that you do not give fire to any ſinewy place, except there be ſome apparent ſwelling, or elſe impoſtumation. Secondly, that you give not fire to any bone that is broken, or out of joynt, for fear of breeding a general weakneſs in the whole member. Thirdly, never to give the fire ſo deep, or ſuffer your hand to be ſo heavy, that you may miſhape, or deform the Horſe, either by unneceſſary figures, or uncomely Skars. Fourthly, not to be too raſh or haſty in giving fire, as if every cure were to be wrought by that practice only, (as I know ſome very well reputed Farriers hold opinion) but only to attempt all other good means before, and when all hope elſe is deſperate, then to make the fire your laſt refuge, as an extremity that muſt prevail when all other practices do periſh.

Laſtly, I would not have you, like thoſe fooliſh Farriers, which know nothing, utterly to contemn and neglect it, as if it were uſeleſs, but with all moderation and Judicious diſcretion to apply it in fit time and place, ſo the poor Horſe may gain eaſe, your ſelf good Reputation, and the owner profit: which is moſt certain, as long as you are governed by wiſdom.

CHAP. CLXXVIII.

Of Cauterize by Medicine, which is Cauterize Potential.

THe potential Cauterize, or ſearing of the fleſh by Medicine, is, (as I ſaid before) when the medicines are either Corroſive, Putrifactive, or Cauſtick: Corroſive, as when they do corrode, rot, gnaw, and fret the fleſh: Putrifactive, when they do corrupt the complexion of the member, and do induce a main Skar like dead fleſh, cauſing infinite pain, in ſuch ſort, that they are often accompanied with Fevers and mortality, and therefore are not to be adminiſtred, but to ſtrong bodies, and in very ſtrong diſeaſes; and Cauſtick, which is as much to ſay as burning, when the operation is ſo ſtrong, that it inclineth, and cometh neareſt to the nature of fire, and ſo burneth and conſumeth whatſoever it toucheth.

Now theſe Potential Cauterizes do exceed and excel one another by certain degrees, as thus: the Corroſives are weaker than the Putrifactives, and the Putrifactives are weaker than the Cauſticks; the Corroſives work upon the upper part in the ſoft fleſh, the Putrifactives in the depth of the hard fleſh, and the Cauſticks have power to break skin ſound or unſound, both in hard and ſoft fleſh, and that very deeply alſo.

Now of Corroſives ſome be ſimple, and ſome be compound: the ſimple Corroſives are Roch-allom, burnt or unburnt, the Spunge of the Sea ſomewhat burnt, Lime, red Curral, and the powder of Mercury, the ſhavings of an Ox or Harts-horn, Precipitate, Verdigreaſe, and ſuch like. The compound Corroſives are, black Sope, and Lime, *Unguentum Apoſtolorum*, and *Unguentum Egyptiacum*, and *Unguentum Caraceum*, and many ſuch lick: and theſe are to be applied unto Sores, Ulcers, or Excreſcions, after they are Corroded.

The Putrifactives are Arſnick, either white or yellow, Reſalgar, or any Medicine compounded with any of them; beſides, Sandaracha, Chryſocolla, and *Aconitum*.

Now if you would have your Putrifactive medicines to be canſtive, that is, breeding a great Skar, and hot in the fourth degree: then they are unſleckt Lime, and the burned dregs of wine; and theſe are to be uſed to Carbuncles, Cankers, and Amburies.

The

The Cauſtick medicines are thoſe which are made of ſtrong Lye, called *Capitellum*, or Magiſtra, of Vitriole Romane, Sal-niter, *Aqua-fortis*, *Apium*, Cantharides, Ciclamine, onions, ſtrong Garlick, *Melanacardium*, the ſtones or grains of Briony, and many ſuch like.

Now in concluſion, I would wiſh every diligent Farrier, ſeldome or never to uſe either Arſnick, Reſalgar, or Mercury ſublimate, ſimply of themſelves, but rather to allay them (if the ſuſtance whereon they are to work be very great) with *Unguentum Apoſtolorum*; but if it be very little, then with Hogs greaſe, Turpentine, or ſuch like. And thus much for this potential Cauterizing, and the proper uſes.

CHAP. CLXXIX.

Of the Rowelling of Horſes, and the uſe thereof.

THe Rowelling of Horſes, is, amongſt our ignorant and ſimple Smiths, the moſt ordinary and general practice of all other whatſoever, inſomuch that not any Diſeaſe can almoſt be found about a Horſe, either how ſlight or great ſoever it be, but preſently without any reaſon or ſenſe therefore, they will Rowel him for the ſame; whereby they not only put the Horſe to a needleſs torment, but alſo bring down (now and then) ſuch a flux of naughty humours, that they lame the Horſe, which otherwiſe would be perfectly ſound. But it is not my Theam to diſpute of theſe ignorances; only this I muſt ſay of Rowelling, it is a practice as neceſſary and commendable for the good eſtate of a Horſes Limbs, and Body, as any medicine whatſoever, ſo it be applied in his due time, and in his due place: otherwiſe on the contrary part, it is contrary to all goodneſs.

The helps which are got by Rowelling, are theſe, it ſeparateth and diſſolveth all evil humours, which either through Natural or Unnatural corruptions are gathered and knit together in any one place, hindring the office of any member, or deforming the body by any ſuperfluity or evil ſubſtance; it looſeneth thoſe parts which are bound, and bindeth thoſe parts that are Weakned; it giveth ſtrength unto ſick joynts, and comforteth whatſoever is oppreſſed with any cold flegm, or hot cholerick ſubſtance: the general uſe of Rowelling, is either for inward ſtrains, eſpecially

eſpecially about the ſhoulders or hips, or elſe for great hard ſwellings, which will not be mollified or corroded by any outward medicine, which is either Plaiſter or Unguent, for you ſhall underſtand, that when a Horſe receiveth any ſtrain or bruiſe, either in the upper joynts of his ſhoulders, or his hips, which joynts do not ſtand one upon another, as the lower joynts do, but they go one into another, as the one end of the Marrow-bone into the pot of the Spade-bone, and the other end into the pot of the Elbow, which is a double bone: Now as I ſay, when a bruiſe is received in theſe parts, if by preſent application of hot and comfortable medicines, the grief be not taken away, then eſt-ſoons there gathers between the pot and the bone, a certain bruiſed jelly, which continually offending the tender Griſtle which covers the end of every bone, makes the Horſe to halt vehemently: and then is this corrupt matter not to be taken away by any outward medicine, but by Rowelling only: and as I ſpeak of the ſhoulder, ſo I ſpeak of the hips, alſo, where the upper thigh-bone goeth into the pot of the cannel-bone, and there breeds the like infirmity. Now for the manner of Rowelling, it is in this ſort: Firſt, when you have found out the certain place of the Horſes grief, as whether it be on the fore-Pitch of the ſhoulder, on the hinder Elbow, or on the Hip, then you ſhall (having caſt the Horſe upon ſome Dung-hil, or ſoft ground) make a little ſlit more than a good handful below the place of his grief through the skin, and no more, ſo big as you may well thruſt in a Swans quill into the ſame: then with your Cronet raiſe the skin a little from the fleſh, and then put in your quill, and blow all the skin from the fleſh upward, even to the top, and all over the ſhoulder: then ſtopping the hole with your finger and your thumb, take a ſmall Hazel ſtick, and all to beat the blown place all over; and then with your hand ſpread the Wind into every part, and after let it go: then take a tampin of Horſe hair twound together, or which is better, of red Sarcinet, half the bigneſs of a mans little finger, and above a foot or ſixteen inches in length, putting it into your Rowelling needle, which would be at the leaſt ſeven or eight inches long; thruſt it in at the firſt hole, and ſo putting it upward, draw it out again at leaſt ſix inches above; and then, if you pleaſe, you may put in another above that: and then tye the two ends of the tampins or rowels together, and move and draw them to and fro in the skin,

in

in any wiſe not forgetting, both before you put them in, and every day after they are in, to anoint them well with Butter, Hogs greaſe, or Oyl de Bay.

Now there be other Farriers, which in that they are opiniated, that theſe long rowels, or tampins of hair or ſilk, do make both a double ſore, and a great ſcar, therefore they make their rowels of round pieces of ſtiff Leather, ſuch as is the upper part of an old ſhooe, with a round hole in the middeſt, according to this from: and then doubling it when they put it in, as ſoon as it is within, to ſpread it, and lay it flat between the fleſh and the skin, and ſo as the hole of the Rowel may anſwer juſt with the hole that is made in the horſes skin; and then once in two or three dayes to cleanſe the Rowel, and to anoint it, and ſo put it in again.

Other Farriers do uſe to make the Rowel of Lanthorn-horn, in the ſame faſhion as is made of Leather, and in like ſort to uſe it. But for mine own part, I have uſed them all, and truly in my practice find not any better than other: only the Leather or the horn is ſomewhat more clean'y, and leſs offenſive to the Eye, yet they ask much more attendance.

Now if you do Rowel your Horſe for any ſwelling, then you ſhall ever put in your long Rowel the ſame way that the veins run, and ſeldome or never croſe-wiſe, and the more you blow the skin for a ſwelling, ſo much the better it is: for the wind is it which only occaſioneth putrifaction, and makes theſe feſtred humours to diſſolve, and diſtil down from the ſecret hollows of the joynts, into thoſe open places, where it falleth away in matter, and ſo the Beaſt becomes cured.

CHAP. CLXXX.

How to geld Horſes or Colts.

THere is to be obſerved in the gelding of Horſes, firſt, the age: Secondly, the ſeaſon of the year: and laſtly, the ſtate of the Moon. For the age, if it be a Colt, you may geld him at nine dayes old, or fifteen, if his ſtones be come down: for to ſpeak the truth, the ſooner that you geld him, it is ſo much the better, both for his growth,

growth, ſhape, and courage: albeit, ſome hold opinion, that at two years old ſhould be the ſooneſt, but they are miſtaken, and their reaſons are weak therein.

Now if it be a Horſe that you would geld, then there is no ſpeech to be made of his age: for it is without any queſtion, that a perfect Farrier may geld a Horſe without danger at any age whatſoever, being careful in the cure.

Now for the ſeaſon of the year, the beſt is in the Spring, between April and May, or in the beginning of June at the fartheſt, or elſe about the fall of the Leaf, which is the later end of September.

Now for the ſtate of the Moon, the fitteſt time is ever when the Moon is in the Wane: as touching the manner of Gelding, it is in this ſort, whether it be a Foal, Colt, or Horſe: Firſt, you ſhall caſt him either upon ſtraw, or upon ſome dunghil: then taking the ſtone between your foremoſt finger, and your great finger, you ſhall with a very fine inciſion Knife ſlit the Cod, ſo that you may preſs the ſtone forth, and no more: Then with a pair of ſmall Nippers, made either of Steel, Box-wood, or Braſil, being very ſmooth, and clap the ſtrings of the ſtone between them, very near unto the ſetting on of the ſtone, and preſs them ſo hard, that there may be no flux of blood: then with a thin drawing Cauterizing Iron made red hot, ſear away the ſtone; then take a hard Plaiſter made of Rozen, Wax, and waſht Turpentine, well molten together, and with your hot Iron melt it upon the head of the ſtrings: then ſear the ſtrings, and then melt more of the Salve, till ſuch time as you have laid a good thinckneſs of the ſalve upon the ſtrings: Then looſe the Nippers, and as you did ſo with that ſtone, ſo do with the other alſo: Then fill the two ſlits of the Cod with white Salt, and anoint all the outſide of the Cod, and all over the Horſes belly and thighs with Hogs greaſe clean rendered, and ſo let him riſe: And keep him in either ſome very warm ſtable, or otherwiſe in ſome very warm paſture, where he may walk up and down; for there is nothing better for a Horſe in this caſe, than moderate exerciſe.

Now if after his gelding you do perceive that his Cod and ſheath doth ſwell in any extraordinary faſhion, then you ſhall chafe him up and down, and make him trot an hour in a day, and it will

ſoon

ſoon recover him, and make him ſound without any impediment.

CHAP. CLXXXI.

Of the making of Curtals, or cutting off of the tails of Horſes.

THe Curtailing of Horſes is uſed in no Nation whatſoever, ſo much as in this Kingdom of ours, by reaſon of much Carriage, and heavy burthens which our Horſes continually are exerciſed and imployed withall, and the rather, ſith, we are ſtrongly opinionated, that the taking away of thoſe joynts doth make the Horſes chine or back a great deal ſtronger, and more able to ſupport a burthen, as in truth it doth, and we daily find it by continual experience.

Now for the manner of Curtailing of Horſes, it is in this ſort: Firſt, you ſhall with your finger and your thumb, grope till you find the third joynt from the ſetting on of the Horſes tail; and having found it, raiſe up all the hair, and turn it backward: then taking a very ſmall ſtrong Cord, wrap it about that joynt, and pull it both with your own ſtrength and another mans, ſo ſtraight as you can poſſible pull it: then wrap it about again, and draw it as ſtraight or ſtraighter again: and thus do three or four times about the tail, with all the poſſible ſtraightneſs that may be; and then make faſt the ends of the cord: then take a piece of Wood, whoſe end is ſmooth and even, of juſt height with the ſtrunt of the Horſes tail, and ſetting it between the Horſes hinder Legs, (after you have tramelled all his four Legs, in ſuch ſort that he can no ways ſtir) then lay his tail thereupon, and taking a main ſtrong ſharp Knife made for the purpoſe, ſet the edge thereof ſo near as you can gueſs it, between the fourth and fifth joynt, and then with a great Smiths Hammer ſtriking upon the back of the Knife, cut the tail aſunder: then if you ſee any blood to iſſue forth, you ſhall know that the cord is not ſtraight enough, and therefore you muſt draw it ſtraighter, but if no blood follow, then it is well bound: This done, you ſhall take a red hot burning Iron, made round after this faſhion, of the full compaſs of the fleſh of the Horſes tail, that the bone of the tail may go through the hole, and with

it you ſhall ſear the fleſh, till you have mortified it; and in the ſearing, you ſhall plainly ſee the ends of the veins ſtart out like pap-heads; but you ſhall ſtill continue ſearing them, until you ſee all to be moſt ſmooth, plain, and hard, ſo that the blood cannot break through the burning: then may you boldly unlooſe the Cord, and after two or three dayes, that you perceive the ſore begin to rot, you ſhall not miſs to anoint it with freſh Butter, or elſe with Hogs greaſe and Turpentine, until it be whole.

CHAP. CLXXXII.

To make a white Star in any part of a Horſe.

IF you will at any time make a white Star, either in your Horſes fore-head, or in any other part of his body, you ſhall, according to the opinion of the moſt ancient Farriers, take a Tile-ſtone, and after you have burned it, beat it into fine Powder: then take Lilly Roots, Daſie Roots, White brier Roots, of each a like quantity, and having dryed them, beat them alſo into fine Powder, and mix them with the firſt: then with a Razor ſhave that part of your Horſe where you would have your Star: and then with this Powder rub it ſo vehemently, that you ſcarce leave any skin on; then take a good quantity of Honey-ſuckle flowers, and a like quantity of Honey, and the water wherein a Moul hath been ſodden, and then diſtil them into a water, and with that water waſh the ſore place the ſpace of three dayes together, and keep the Wind from it, and you ſhall preſently ſee the white hairs to grow; for this Receipt hath been often very well approved.

There be other Farriers, which take a Crab, and roaſt it, and being fiery hot, bind it to that part which you would have white, and it will ſcald away the old hair, and the next hair that groweth will be white. Other Farriers uſe, after they have ſhaved the place, to take the juyce of ſharp Onions, or Lees, and to bathe the place very much therewith: then to take Barley bread, as fire hot as it cometh from the Oven, and clap it to the ſhaven place, ſuffering it to lye ſo till it be cold; and then after anoint it with Honey, and the White hair will come. Other Farriers uſe to anoint the ſhaven place with the greaſe of a Mouldy-warp ſodden, and that will bring the

the white hairs. Other Farriers uſe after they have ſhaved it, to rub the place well with Salt, and then twice every day for a fortnight, to waſh it with the broth wherein a Mouldy-warp and ſome Swines greaſe hath been ſodden.

Other Farriers uſe to boyl a Mouldy-warp in Salt water for three dayes together, or elſe in ſtrong Lye, and ever as one Liquor conſumeth, to ſupply it with another; then with this Decoction being warm, anoint the ſhaved place, and it will bring white hairs ſuddenly. Other Farriers take the Gall of a Goat, and rub the ſhaved place therewith, and it will bring white hairs alſo.

Other Farriers take Sheeps milk, and boyl it, and in that wet a Linnen cloath, and being very hot lay it to, renewing it until you may rub off the hair with your finger; this done, apply the milk to it twice a day luke-warm, till the hair do come again, which without all queſtion will be white.

Other Farriers take the Roots of Wild Cowcumbers, and twice as much Nitrum mingled with Oyl and Honey, or elſe add to your Cowcumbers Sal-nitrum beaten, and Honey, and anoint the ſhaven place therewith, and it will bring white hairs.

Other Farriers uſe to take a piece of a Brick-bat, and with it gently to rub and chafe the place, till by the continuance thereof, you have rubbed away both the hair and the skin, ſo broad as you would have the Star, and then after to anoint it with Honey, until the hair come again: Or elſe to roaſt a Colewort ſtalk like a Warden, or an Egg, until it be ſtone hard; and then as they come hot out of the fire, to clap either of them to the Horſes fore-head, and it will ſcald off the hair, then to anoint it with Honey till the hair came again.

Now to conclude, and to ſhew you the moſt perfect and abſolute ☜ experiment, which I have ever found to be moſt infallible, and it is thus: You ſhall take a very fine, ſharp, long Bodkin, made for the ſame purpoſe, and thruſt it up betwixt the skin and the bone upwards, ſo long as you would have the Star; and in thruſting it up, you ſhall hollow the skin from the bone, the bigneſs that you would have the Star: this done, you ſhall take a piece of Lead, made in the true ſhape of your Bodkin, and drawing out the Bodkin, thruſt in the Lead into the ſame holes; then you ſhall thruſt the Bodkin croſs-wiſe the forehead underneath the Lead; and then thruſting

in ſuch another piece of Lead, you ſhall ſee it in the Horſes face to preſent this figure; which being done, you ſhall take a very ſtrong pack-thread, and putting it underneath all the four ends of the Leads, and drawing it with all ſtraightneſs, you ſhall gather all the hollow skin together on a purſe, folding the pack-thread oft and oft about, and ſtill ſtraighter and ſtraighter, ſo that you ſhall ſee it then to preſent unto you this figure: this done, you ſhall let it reſt at leaſt the ſpace of eight and forty hours, in which time the skin will be, as it were, mortified: then may you unlooſe the pack-thread, and draw forth the leaden pins, and with your hand cloſe the hollow skin to the Fore-head hard again; and ſhortly after you ſhall ſee the hair to fall away, and the next hair which cometh will be white; and this experiment is moſt infallible.

Now there be ſome other Farriers, which will not put in pins, nor uſe any pack-thread, but only will ſlit the fore-head, and open the skin on both ſides, and then put in either a Horn or a plate of Lead as big as the Star, and ſo let it remain till the skin Rot: Then take out the Horn or Lead, and anoint the place with Honey, and the water of Mallows ſod, and it will bring white hair: And ſurely this experiment alſo is moſt infallible; but it maketh a foul ſore, and is ſomewhat long in bringing his vertue to effect.

Again, I have ſeen a white Star alſo made by taking the guts of a Hen, or Pullet, and clapping them hot as they come out of the belly to the Horſes face, having in readineſs ſome hollow round thing made for the ſame purpoſe, to keep the guts together upon the horſes face.

CHAP.

CHAP. CLXXXIII.

How to make a black Star, or white hair black.

IF at any time you would have a deſire to make upon a white Horſe a black Star, you ſhall take a ſcruple of Ink, and four ſcruples of the wood of Oliander beaten to Powder; incorporate this in as much Sheeps ſuet as will well ſufficie, and then anoint the place therewith, and it will no doubt make any white hair black.

Other old Farriers take the Decoction of Fern Roots, and Sage ſod in Lye, and waſh the place therewith, and it will breed black hair: but you muſt waſh the place very oft therewith.

Other Farriers uſe to take the ruſt of Iron, Galls and Vitriol, and ſtamp them with Oyl: or elſe take Souters ink, Galls, and Ruſt, and beat them well together, and then anoint the place therewith, and it will turn any white hair to black.

CHAP. CLXXXIV.

To make a red Star in a Horſes face.

IF you deſire to make in your Horſes face, or any other part, a Red Star, you ſhall take of *Aqua-fortis* one ounce, of *Aquavitæ* a penny-worth, of Silver to the value of eighteen pence; put them into a glaſs, and hear them well therein, and then anoint the place very well therewith, and it will immediately turn the hair to be of a perfect red colour, only it will endure no longer than till the caſting of the hair: and therefore, at every ſuch time you muſt renew the hair again, if you will have the Star to continue.

CHAP.

CHAP. CLXXXV.

How to make hair to come very ſoon, very thick, and very long.

IF you would have hair to come very ſoon in any bare place, or to grow thick where it is thin, or long where it is ſhort, you ſhall take (according to the opinion of the moſt ancient Farriers) the Urine of a young Boy, and with it at firſt waſh the place: after that, take Lye made of unſleckt Lime, Ceruſe, and litergy, and with it waſh the hair off, and it will make it come ſoon, long, and thick.

Other Farriers uſe to waſh the place with Water wherein the Roots of Althæa have been ſod: then after dry it gently with your hand, and it will increaſe hair much. Other Farriers uſe to waſh the place with Oyl mingled with the aſhes of Nut-ſhels burnt, or elſe Snail-ſhells burnt, and it will increaſe hair alſo. Other Farriers take Agrimony punded with Goats milk, and with it anoint the place, or elſe Oyl wherein a Mouldiwarp hath been boyled, and anoint the place with either of them, and it will increaſe hair very much. Other Farriers take the dung of Goats, Allom, Honey, and the blood of a Swine: mingle them all together, and ſtir them till they be ready to boyl, and being hot, rub the bare place therewith. Other ancient Farriers take Nettle-ſeed bruiſed with Honey, water and Salt, and then rub the place therewith. Other Farriers take the Root of a white Lilly beaten and ſod in Oyl, and anoint the place therewith. Others take the juyce of a long Onion, or elſe the juyce of Radiſhes, and anoint the place therewith. Others take Tar, Oyl Olive, and Honey boyled together, and with it anoint the bare place. Others take the Soot of a Cauldron mixed with Honey and Oyl, and anoint the place therewith.

There be other ancient Farriers which uſe this, and it is the beſt of all, they take green Wal-nut ſhels, and burn them to Powder, and then mix it with Honey, Oyl, and Wine, and anoint the place therewith, and it will increaſe hair wonderfully, and very ſoon.

CHAP.

CHAP. CLXXXVI.

To make hair ſmooth, ſlick, and ſoft.

IF you will make your Horſes Coat to be ſmooth, ſlick, ſoft, and ſhining, you ſhall with ſufficient ſtore of cloath keep him warm at the heart, for the leaſt inward cold will make the hair ſtare: then you ſhall make him ſweat oft; for that will raiſe up the duſt and filth, which makes his coat foul and hard: then you ſhall, when the Horſe is in his greateſt ſweat, with an old Sword blade turning the edge towards his hair, ſcrape, or as it were curry away all the white foam, ſweat, and filth, which ſhall be raiſed up, and that will lay his coat even, and make it ſmooth: And laſtly, you ſhall when you let him blood, rub him all over with his own blood, and ſo let it remain two or three dayes, and then curry and dreſs him well, and this will make his coat ſhine like glaſs.

CHAP. CLXXXVII.

How to take off hair in any part of a Horſe.

IF you will at any time take off the hair from any part of a Horſe, you ſhall diſſolve in water (according to the opinion of the moſt ancient Farriers) eight ounces of unſleckt Lime: and then boyl it till a quarter be conſumed, then add to it an ounce of Orpiment, and then lay a Plaiſter thereof to any part of the Horſe, and it will in very few hours bring all the hair away.

There be other ancient Farriers which boyl in runing water, Ruſt and Orpiment, and with it being very hot waſh the place, and it will ſoon bring the hair away.

CHAP,

CHAP. CLXXXVIII.

How to caſt and over-throw a Horſe.

WHenſoever you intend to caſt or over-throw your Horſe, after you have brought him into a convenient place: as namely, either upon ſome green ſwarth, or upon ſome Dung-hill, or in ſome Barn upon good ſtore of ſoft ſtraw, you ſhall take and double a long rope, and caſt a knot a yard from the bought; then put the bought about his neck, and the double rope betwixt his fore-Legs, and about his hinder paſtorns, underneath his fetlock, then put the ends of the rope under the bought of his neck, and draw them quickly, and they will overthrow him, then make the ends faſt, and hold down his head, under which alwayes you muſt be ſure to have good ſtore of ſtraw. Now if you would at any time, either brand your Horſe on the buttock, or do any thing about his hinder Legs, that he may not ſtrike, take up his contrary fore-Leg, and when you do brand your Horſe, ſee that the Iron be Red hot, and that the hair be both ſeared quite away, and the fleſh ſcorched in every place before you let him go, and ſo you ſhall be ſure to loſe no labour.

CHAP. CLXXXIX.

How to know the age of a Horſe.

THe age of every Horſe is known, either by his teeth, by his hoofs, or by his tail.

It is known by his teeth; at two years old he changeth the four fore-moſt teeth in his head, at three years old he changeth the teeth next unto them, and leaveth no more apparent foals teeth but two of each ſide, above and below: at four years old he changeth the teeth next unto them, and leaveth no more foals teeth but one on each ſide, both above and below; at five years old he hath never a foals tooth before, but then he changeth his tuſhes on each ſide: at ſix years old he putteth up his tuſhs, near about which you ſhall ſee apparently growing a little circle of new and young fleſh; beſides, the tuſh will be white, ſmall, ſhort, and ſharp: at

ſeven

ſeven years old, the two out-moſt teeth of his neather chap on both ſides will be hollow, with a little black ſpeck in them: And at eight years old, then all his teeth will be full, ſmooth, and plain, the black ſpeck being clean gone, and his tuſhes will be ſomewhat yellow, without any circles of young fleſh: At nine years old, his fore-moſt teeth will be very long, broad, yellow, and foul, and his tuſhes will be blunt: At ten years old, in the inſide of his upper Tuſhes will be no holes at all to be felt with your fingers end, which till that age you ſhall ever moſt perfectly feel; beſides, the Temples of his head will begin to be hollow and crooked: At eleven years of age his teeth will be exceeding long, very yellow, black, and foul, only he will cut even, and his teeth will ſtand directly oppoſite one againſt another; at twelve years old his teeth will be long, yellow, black, and foul, but then his upper teeth will over-reach and hang over his neather teeth; at thirteen years his tuſhes will be worn cloſe to his chap, if he be a much ridden Horſe, otherwiſe they will be black, foul, and long like the fangs of a Boar.

If a Horſes hoofs be rugged, and as it were ſeamed, one ſeam over another; if they be dry, full, and cruſty, it is a ſign of a very old age; as on the contrary part, a ſmooth, moiſt, hollow, and well ſounding hoof is a ſign of young years.

If you take your Horſe with your finger and your thumb, by the ſtern of the tail, cloſe at the ſetting on by his Buttock, and feeling there hard; if you feel betwixt your finger and your thumb of each ſide his tail, a joynt ſtick out more than any other joynt, by the bigneſs of a hazel Nut, then you may preſume, the Horſe is under ten years old, but if his joynts be all plain, and no ſuch thing to be felt, then he is above ten, and at leaſt thirteen. If a Horſes eyes be round, full, and ſtarting from his head, if the pits over his eyes be filled, ſmooth, and even with his Temples, and wrincles either about his brow, or under his eyes, then the Horſe is young: if otherwiſe you ſee the contrary Characters, it is a ſign of old age. If you take up a Horſes skin on any part of his body, betwixt your finger and your thumb, and pluck it from the fleſh; then letting it go again, if it ſuddainly return to the place from whence it came, and be ſmooth and plain without wrincle, then the Horſe is young, and full of ſtrength; but if being pulled up he ſtand, and not return to his former place, then be aſſured he is very old, and exceedingly waſted.

Laſtly, if a Horſe that is of any dark Colour, ſhall grow griſſel only about his Eye-brows, or underneath his mane, it is then an infallible ſign of moſt extreme old age: And thus much touching a Horſes age.

CHAP. CXC.

How to make an old Horſe ſeem young.

TAke a ſmall crooked Iron, no bigger than a Wheat Corn, and having made it red hot, burn a little black hole in the tops of the two outmoſt teeth of each ſide the neather chap before, next to the tuſhes, and then with an Aul blade prick it, and make the ſhell fine and thin; then with a ſharp ſcraping Iron, make all his teeth white and cleau: this done, take a fine Lancer, and above the hollows of the Horſes eyes which are ſhrunk down, make a little hole only but through the skin, and then raiſing it up, put in a quil that is very ſmall, as the quil of a Raven, or ſuch like: and then blow the skin full of wind, till all the hollowneſs be filled up, and then take out the quil, and lay your finger a little while on the hole, and the wind will ſtay in, and the Horſes countenance will be as if he were but ſix years old at the moſt.

CHAP. CXCI.

How to make a Horſe that he ſhall not neigh either in company, or when he is ridden.

IF either when you are in ſervice in the Wars, and would not be diſcovered, or when upon any other occaſion, you would not have your Horſes to neigh, or make a noiſe, you ſhall take a liſt of wollen cloath, and tye it faſt in many folds about the midſt of your Horſes tongue, and believe it, as long as the tongue is ſo tyed, ſo long the Horſe can by no means neigh, or make any extraordinay noiſe with his voice, as hath been often tried and approved of.

CHAP.

CHAP. CXCII.

How to make a Horſe exceeding quick and nimble of the Spur.

IF your Horſe be either dul of the Spur through his natural inclination, or through tiring, or any other accident, you ſhall firſt ſhave him the breadth of a ſaucer on both ſides, juſt in the ſpurring place, on both ſides the vein, then with a Launcet make ſix iſſues, or ſmall orifices on both ſides; then raiſing the skin from the fleſh, you ſhall put into the holes a pretty quantity of burnt Salt, which will make the ſore to rankle.

In this ſort you ſhall keep it three dayes, and by no means ride the Horſe: the third day being ended, you ſhall ſet a Child on his back with ſpurs, and make him ſpur the Horſe in the ſore place; which done, you ſhall waſh the place with Piſs, Salt, and Nettles ſodden well together, and this will make his ſides ſmart ſo extremely, that he will never abide the ſpur after.

Now you ſhall let him ſtand after his waſhing three dayes more, and then take half a pint of Honey, and with it anoint his ſides once a day till they be whole. Alſo rub his ſides with the powder of glaſs, and it will do the like.

CHAP. CXCIII.

How to make a Horſe that tires, or is reſtiff, to go forward.

IF your Horſe, (as it is the common nature of Jades) through the naughtineſs of his nature, or dulneſs of ſpirit, be either ſo reſtiff, or ſo tyred, that he will not go forward a foot, but ſtandeth ſtock ſtill: You ſhall then make a runing ſuickle of a good ſmall cord, and put it about his Cods and Stones, in ſuch ſort that it may not ſlip: then you ſhall draw the reſt of the cord between the girths and the Horſes body, and bringing it up juſt between the Horſes fore-Legs, be ſure to hold the end of the cord in your hand as you ſit in the Saddle, then ride the Horſe forward, and when he beginneth to grow reſtiff, or to ſtand ſtill, then pluck the cord, and cramp him by the Stones, and you ſhall ſee that im-

mediately he will go forward: And in this ſame manner you ſhall uſe him for at leaſt a fortnight together, and it will clean take away that evil quality.

CHAP. CXCIV.

Other moſt excellent and approved wayes to preſerve a Horſe from tyring, never diſcloſed till now.

IF your Horſe either through violence of Labour, diſtemperature of Body, or naughtineſs of Nature, happen to tyre under you, or travel not with that ſpirit you deſire, then when you come to a baiting place alight, and ſet up your Horſe warm, but do not walk him: then after he hath been well rubbed, take a quart of ſtrong Ale, and put thereto half an ounce of the fine ſearſt powder of Elicampane, and brew them together, then give it the Horſe with an horn; which done, tye his head to the rack, for you need not care for Provender till night, at which time Provender him well, and in the morning give him Oats or Bread, or both in plentiful manner, and being ready to take his back, give him the former quantity of Ale and Elicampane as afore-ſaid, and doubtleſs you ſhall find him to travel with great courage and ſpirit, as hath been approved.

Alſo if you take a bunch of Penny-royal, and tye it to the mouth of your bit or ſnaffle, you ſhall find is very comfortable, and it will cauſe your Horſe to travel luſtily.

☞ Again, if you take of the beſt Tobacco, and dry it in the Sun in a glaſs cloſe ſtopt, then pund it very ſmall, and mix it with an equal quantity of the Cockle-ſhels, then with the Oyl of Dil, and the Oyl of Cloves, make the Powder into a paſte, then make pretty round balls thereof as big as Wal-nuts, and dry them in the ſhadow in the Dog dayes, then keep them cloſe in Gally pot, and give them as pills in the time of neceſſity; that is to ſay, a ball at a time, whenſoever your Horſe ſhall fail in travel: And this doth not only help tyring, but alſo takes away any cold whatſoever.

Laſtly, if your Horſe notwithſtanding for all this, do happen at ☞ any time to tyre, then preſently take off his Saddle, and with the herb Arſmart rub his back all over very hard, then laying Arſmart alſo

alſo under the Saddle, ſo ride him gently at the firſt, and if there be any life in him, it will make him go, as it hath been made proof of.

CHAP. CXCV.

How to make a Horſe to follow his Maſter, and find him out, and challenge him amongſt never ſo many people.

IF you will have your Horſe to have ſuch a violent love towards you, that he ſhall not only follow you up and down, but alſo labour to find you out, and own you as ſoon as he hath found you: you ſhall then take a pound of Oat-meal, and put thereto a quarter of a pound of Honey, and half a pound of Lunarce, and then make a Cake thereof, and put it in your boſome next unto your naked skin: then run or labour your ſelf up and down until you ſweat, then rub all your ſweat upon your Cake; this done, keep your Horſe faſting a day and a night, and then give him the Cake to eat, which as ſoon as he hath eaten, you ſhall turn him looſe, and he will not only moſt eagerly follow you, but alſo hunt and ſeek you out when he hath loſt, or doth miſs you; and though you be environed with never ſo many, yet he will find you out, and know you; and you ſhall not fail, but every time that he cometh unto you, you ſhall ſpet in his mouth, and anoint his tongue with your ſpittle: And thus doing, he will never forſake you.

CHAP. CXCVI.

The nature and ſpecial qualities of all the Simples that are ſpoken of in this whole Work, ſet down in the manner of Alphabet.

A

Abrotanum, which we call in Engliſh Southern-wort, is hot and dry in the third Degree, and openeth the pipes of the body, and is good for ſhort wind.

Abſinthium, which we call Worm-wood, is hot in the firſt Degree, and dry in the ſecond: it cleanſeth, and bindeth, and is good for the ſtomach.

Acetoſa,

Aceto, which we call Vinegar, eſpecially if it be of Wine, is cold and piercing, to wit, cold in the firſt, and dry in the third Degree.

Agaricum, is hot in the firſt, and dry in the ſecond Degree: it expelleth humours, purgeth all flegm and choler, and is good for the Liver and Kidneys.

Allium, which we call Garlick, is hot and dry in the fourth Degree it draweth, openeth, and expelleth all evil humours.

Agrecum, which we call Creſſes, is hot and dry in the fourth Degree: it burneth, draweth, and reſolveth, and is exceeding good for Scurf, or wild Scabs, or for the Lungs.

Agripa, is a known Unguent that is good againſt all tumours.

Allum, called commonly Roch-Allom, is hot and dry in the third Degree, and is good for cankers.

Alder, or Elder-tree, is hot and dry, it purgeth choler and flegm, and healeth wounds.

Aloes, is hot in the firſt, and dry in the third Degree: it cleanſeth and diſſolveth, and alſo comforteth the vital parts.

Althea, which we call white Mallows, is hot and dry: it looſeneth and ſcattereth humours, warmeth and moiſtneth very much.

Almonds are hot and moiſt in the firſt Degree: provoke Urine, and are very good for the Lungs or Liver.

Ambroſia, which we call Wood-ſage, repreſſeth, driveth back, and bindeth humours.

Ammoniacum is hot in the third, and dry in the ſecond Degree: it ſoftneth, and diſſolveth humours.

Anetum, which we call Dill, is hot in the third, and dry in the ſecond Degree: it ripeneth crude Humours, and expelleth heat.

Anniſeeds are hot and dry in the third Degree: expel cold, diſſolve humours, and provoke Urine.

Antimonium, or *Stibium*, is cold and dry, it bindeth, mundifieth, and purgeth.

Appio, which we call *Smallage*, or *Parſley*, is hot in the firſt, and dry in the ſecond Degree: it ripeneth, cleanſeth, openeth, and provoketh Urine.

Ariſtolochia, which we call *Birth-wort*, or *Hart-wort*, is hot, and cleanſeth: but if it be *Rotunda*, then it is ſo much ſtronger, being hot and

and dry in the fourth Degree: it draweth and purgeth thin water and flegm, and is good to open the Lungs; it is good againſt all manner of poyſon whatſoever, or biting of any venemous Beaſts.

Armoniack both drieth, cooleth, ſofteneth, and draweth.

Artemiſia, which we call great Tanſy, or Mug-wort, is hot in the ſecond, and dry in the third Degree: it is very good for Worms, and ſwellings in the ſinews.

Arſnick of both kinds, is hot in the third, and dry in the firſt Degree: it bindeth, eateth, and fretteth, being a very ſtrong Corroſive.

Aſſafetida is a gum that is hot in the third, and dry in the firſt Degree: it cleanſeth evil humours.

Aſphaltum is a pitch that is mixt with *Bitumen*: it is hot and dry, and comforteth any ſwelling.

Aſſonteo is hot in the firſt, and dry in the ſecond Degree: it cleanſeth and drieth, and is good for to comfort the ſtomack.

Aſſungia, which we call the ſoft or freſh greaſe, is hot and moiſt in th firſt Degree: It mollifieth, ripeneth, and healeth any wound, impoſtume, or Ulcer.

Avena, which we call commonly Oats, are naturally dry: they do dry, bind, cleanſe, and comfort all the inward parts, and are the only principal ſimples which do naturally agree with the compoſition of a Horſes body; and therefore the Oyl or the quinteſſence of them is the only abſolute and perfect medicine that can be adminiſtred for any inward ſickneſs, as experience will approve and make perfect.

Avelane, which we call the aſhes of Nut-ſhels burnt, are hot and dry, and do skin or ſtop the flux of matter.

B

Bay-berries, are vehemently hot and dry, and are good for all manner of rhumes, or ſhortneſs of wind, eſpecially for any diſeaſe in the Lungs: they are good againſt Poyſons, Conſumptions, ſhort Breath, flegm, hardneſs of hearing, help tyring, Cramps, Scurvy, the Stone, ſtoppings of the Liver, cure the Yellows and Dropſie.

Balſamum is hot and dry in the ſecond Degree: it cleanſeth, draweth, and comforteth. *Bdellium*

Bdellium is a gum that is hot and dry: it ſoftneth, and draweth away moiſture, and is excellent againſt all hard ſwellings whatſoever.

Bertonicum or *Bettonicum*, which we call Dog-ſtone, or Kegwort, is hot and dry in the firſt Degree: it purgeth, and cleanſeth all evil humours.

Blacca is cold and dry in the ſecond Degree: it cloſeth things opened, it ſoftens hardneſs, filleth places empty, and doth extenuate all excretions.

Bittole, which we call Beets, is cold and moiſt, and cleanſeth Ulcers.

Bitumen is a kind of Brimſtone, or fatneſs from the ſea, it is hot and dry in the ſecond Degree, and is comfortable againſt any ſwelling.

Bottiro is hot in the firſt, and moiſt in the ſecond Degree, and it ripeneth impoſtumes.

Bole-armonia is a certain earth which is cold and dry, which bindeth and driveth back evil humours, and is alſo an excellent Defenſative againſt fluxes of blood.

Brancurſin is a wonderful great ſoftener and mollifier.

Braſſica, which we call Cole-worts, is very dry, it doth conglutinate Wounds, is healeth Ulcers and Tumours, it holdeth the ſeed, and killeth evil humours.

Brotano, which is the ſame that *Abrotanum* is, look there.

Bruſco, which we call Butchers Broom, or kneeholm, is hot in the ſecond Degree, and dry in the firſt, in provokes Urine.

Briony, of theſe there are two kinds, the White and Black, but the white is more effectual; the root of it is hot and dry in the ſecond Degree: it cleanſeth and ripeneth, and is good for all old Diſeaſes, it alſo drieth, draweth, and mollifieth all manner of hardneſs.

C

Calafonia or *Colofonia*, doth incarnate Ulcers, and doth conglutinate things which are ſeparated.

Calaminto, which we call Wild Penny-royal, or Wild Mint, of which, that which grows on the Mountains is the beſt, is hot and dry

dry in the third Degree, doth reſolve tumours, and draweth away humours.

Calcinaviva, which we call unſleckt Lime, is hot and dry in the fourth degree, it aduſteth, drieth and corrodeth.

Camomila, which we call Camomile, is hot and dry in the firſt degree: it mollifieth and diſſolveth all griefs, and is good eſpecially for the Liver.

Camedros, which we call Germander, is hot and dry in the third degree; and is good againſt all moiſt colds.

Camphora, is a kind of a Gum which is cold and dry in the third degree; it preſerveth the body from putrifaction and bindeth humours.

Canabis, which we call Hemp, is hot, the ſeed whereof driveth away extraordinary colds: it ripeneth and diſſolveth humours, and mollifieth and drieth inflammations

Cinamon is hot and dry in the third degree; and is comfortable in all inward ſickneſſes.

Canna, which we call Reeds, eſpecially the hedge Reed, draweth out pricks, if you lay the Roots to with the knobs.

Cantharides are certain flyes, which are hot and dry in the third degree; they will raiſe bliſters in the ſound parts.

Capilli venere, which we call maidens hair, is dry, and bindeth looſe humours.

Cardimomum is hot, it extenuateth humours, and being mixt with Vinegar killeth ſcabs.

Cloves are hot and dry in the third degree, and are very comfortable to the inward parts.

Carrowales are hot and dry in the third degree, it helpeth Wind, and cleanſeth evil humours.

Caſſia is hot and moiſt in the firſt degree, it expelleth Wind, diſſolveth humours, and purgeth the ſtomack of choler and flegm.

Caſtoreum is hot and dry, and purgeth much.

Cabbage is hot in the firſt, and dry in the ſecond degree, it cleanſeth and ripeneth humours.

Cenere, which we call Aſhes, are hot and dry in the fourth degree, and cleanſeth mightily.

Centuria, which we call Wild runing *Bettony*, ſmelling like *Marjoram*, is hot and dry in the third degree; it bindeth wounds,

and conglutinateth, and is good for diseased Livers, for the Worms, old Sores and Wounds, and is commonly called Centuary.

Cepe, which we call Onions, is hot in the fourth degree: it doth cleanse corruptions, and ripens swellings.

Cervil is hot and dry, and bindeth much.

Cerusa is a white Oyntment made of oyl and white Lead, it is cold and dry in the second degree: and for the effects it hath all those which *Braccha* hath.

Cerecallo: see *Serecocollo*.

Chelidonium which we call *Seladine*, is hot and dry in the third degree; it cleanseth all putrifactive humours, and is excellent against inward sicknesses, especially yellows or jaundies.

Cicuta, which we call Hemlock, is cold in the fourth degree, it nummeth and astonieth.

Cicoria, which we call Succory, is cold and dry in the first degree, and bindeth much.

Comin is hot in the third degree, and dry in the second: it mollifieth and ripeneth.

Cipollo, which is Leeks, or as we call them, chives, see *Cepe*.

Cinabar, or *Sanguis draconis*, or all we call it *Vermilion*, is a certain metal drawn from quick Sulphur, and Quicksilver, it drieth, healeth, incarnateth, bindeth and comforteth Ulcers.

Cito or *Cisto*, is dry in the second degree, and bindeth much.

Citrons, or *Cithrons*, are cold and moist in the second degree, they do cleanse and pierce.

Colloquintida, is hot and dry in the third degree, and mundifieth only.

Colofonia, which we commonly call Earth-pitch, or Greek pitch, is hot and dry in the third degree: it conglutinateth and gathereth together. See *Pece Graece*.

Cocumeri, see *Cucumeri*.

Consolida, which we call Comphry, is cold: it conglutinateth and bindeth, and is good against Ruptures.

Costro, or *Cosso*, being bitter, is hot, and healeth Ulcers.

Costus, is hot in the third degree, and dry in the second Degree: and it raiseth up worms, and is that which we call Herb *Mary*, or the root of *Angelico*.

Corno di cervo, which we call Harts-horn, is dry, yet it strengthneth very much, and expelleth poyson.

Crocum,

Crocum, which we call Saffron, is hot in the ſecond, and dry in the firſt degree: it bindeth, comforteth, and reſolveth impoſtumes.

Cucumeri ſilvaggi, is hot and dry in the third degree: it diſſolveth, ſofteneth, and purgeth flegm.

Cucumeri elaterium, is cold and moiſt in the ſecond degree: it cleanſeth much, and is made of the juyce of Wild Cowcumbers.

D

Dates are hot and moiſt in the ſecond degree: they do reſolve, and diſperſe things knit together.

Diacatholicon purgeth all offenſive humours which offend the body whatſoever.

Diaphinicon, or *Diaphenicon*, purgeth Wind exceedingly, and comforteth all griefs of the belly which are begot by crude humours, ſpringing from Cholicks, or ſuch like pains.

Dialtea or *Dialthea*, is an oyntment made of Holy hox, or Sea mallow; it warmeth and moiſteneth.

Dragonwort is hot and dry, and bindeth much.

E

Ebuli, which we call Elder, is hot and dry in the third degree; it drieth, and driveth out Water, and expelleth Choler and thin flegm: ſee *Sambuchus*.

Edera terreſtris, which we call ground Ivy, ſee *Hedera*.

Elatrium, ſee *Cucumeri*.

Elleboro, which we call neeſing powder, of it are two kinds, the white and black; it is hot and dry in the third degree.

Eruca, which we call Rocket, and of which the wild is the beſt; the ſeeds thereof are hot and dry, and expelleth Urine, Worms and Water.

Eluſa, which is a herb like ſpung, is hot in the fourth degree, and drieth and cleanſeth exceedingly, and of ſome is called Woolfs milk.

Euforbium is a gum that is hot in the fourth degree: it drieth, purgeth, cleanſeth, and exulcerateth much.

Excruſion is that which we call *Oxicration*, is a certain compoſition or mixture made of *Aceto* and water, and is good to allay ſwellings and tumours.

F

Fabæ, which we call a Bean, is cold and dry, and it cleanſeth, and diſſolveth very much.

Farina which we call Bran, is hot and dry in the firſt Degree, and diſſolveth very much.

Fern is dry and binding, but the root is hot and cleanſing, and killeth Worms.

Felle, which we call Gall, is hot and dry, and it cleanſeth and mundifieth.

Ferugo, which we call the ruſt of Iron, is hot and dry in the ſecond Degree, it comforteth and reſtraineth evil humours.

Ficiaridi, which we call dry figs, are hot and dry in the ſecond Degree: they ripen tumours, ſoften and conſume hardneſs, and are good for purſiveneſs, coughs, and Diſeaſes of the Loungs.

Filomontano, which we call a Dodder, being a thing that cleaveth to herbs, winding about them like threds; it openeth the Liver and Milt, and purgeth all flegm and choler.

Filomio is a compoſition, which will aſtoniſh or benumb any part or member.

Fennel is hot in the third, and dry in the firſt Degree; it doth diſſolve all manner of groſs humours, and is good for the Liver or Lungs.

Fuligo, which we call Soot, is hot and dry, and it drieth marvelouſly, and ſo doth all ſoots whatſoever.

G

Galanga, which we call Galingale, is hot and dry in the third Degree: it eaſeth the ſtomack of all griefs which proceed from cold cauſes: it ſtrengthneth the brain, and comforteth the ſenſes.

Galbanum is hot in the third Degree, and dry in the ſecond: it ſofteneth, ſtoppeth, and draweth away evil humours, and is good againſt cold.

Galla,

Galla, which we call Galls, or a light fruit of Okes, are hot and piercing.

Garifilata, which we call herb Bennet, is hot and dry in the ſecond Degree.

Garofoli, which we call Cloves, are hot and dry in the third Degree, and are very comfortable for inward ſickneſs.

Ginger is hot, and is excellent to preſerve heat in the inward parts.

Geniſta or *Gineſtra*, which we call Broom, is hot and dry in the third Degree: it killeth Worms, and ſcoureth much.

Gentian, eſpecially the Root, is hot in the third, and dry in the ſecond Degree: it doth extenuate, purge, and cleanſe all evil humours, and it is good for the Liver and ſtomack, and for Wounds and ſores.

Gillio, which we call Lillies, ſofteneth ſinews, and are good for wounds and ſores.

Gramen, which is any manner of grain or pulſe, is cold and dry, except Wheat, and that is temperately hot and moiſt: they do incarnate and mundifie.

Graſſo, which is any manner of fat, is hot and moiſt and doth ripen and ſoften.

H

H *Arundinis cortex*, which we call Cane-reed, is hot and dry in the third Degree.

Hedera, which we call Ivy, is a great drawer and opener.

Helxine, which we call Pellitory of the wall, cleanſeth and bindeth, and is good for any old cough, or for any inflammations.

Hyſſoppo, which we call Hyſſop, there is both wild, and that of the Garden, but the Garden is the beſt; it is hot and dry in the third Degree: it cleanſeth and warmeth, it is good for inflammations of the Lungs, old Coughs, Pozes, Rhumes, and ſhort Wind.

Hordeum, which we call Barley, is cold and dry in the firſt Degree, and it mundifieth and cooleth.

Incenſe,

I

Incenſe, which we call Frankincenſe, it drieth and incarnateth: ſee *Olibanum*.

Ipericon, which we call Saint *Johns* wort, expelleth moiſture, and healeth burnings.

Iriot Florentia, which we call Flower-de luce, eſpecially the root: it warmeth, ripeneth, and cleanſeth, and is good for the cough, and is hot and dry in the third degree.

Iride Illyrica: ſee *Helpine*.

Iris is a root that is hot and dry: it cleanſeth and ripeneth, and is good againſt colds, and purgeth Ulcers.

Iaſquiani, which we call Hembane, is cold in the fourth degree: it aſtonieth and benumbeth.

Iuniper is hot and dry in the third degree; the berries are good for the Stomack, Lungs, Liver, and Kidneys; cureth all coughs, gripings, and Windineſs of the Belly, and provoketh Urine; is good againſt all Venom, the infection of the Plague, and kills Worms.

L

Liguſtum, which we call Lovage, is hot and dry in the third degree: it expelleth Wind, eſpecially the Seed and root.

Lapathum, which we call a Dock, is cold and moiſt, and it mollifieth.

Lauri, which we call Laurel, or Bayes, are hot and dry, and they cleanſe and mundifie.

Lentiſco is a gum that is like Maſtick; it is dry in the ſecond Degree, and moderately bindeth: it is bitter in taſte, and ever green.

Lineſa, which we call flax or Line, the ſeed thereof is hot and dry, and it ripeneth and mollifieth tumours.

Lee is hot and dry in the fourth Degree: it is very aduſtive, cleanſing and piercing.

Litbargirio, of which there are two kinds, the one of the colour of Gold, the other of Silver: it is very dry, it bindeth, ſofteneth, incarnateth,

carnateth, cooleth, and cloſeth up; and of theſe two, that which is like Gold is the beſt.

Lolium, which we call Cockle, is hot and dry in the third degree, and diſſolveth much.

Lumach, which we call Houſe-ſnails without ſhels, do conglutinate very much.

M

Malva is cold and moiſt, it ſtoppeth, ſofteneth, and mitigateth pain.

Malvaviſcus is very dry, it ſofteneth, looſeneth, and mitigateth.

Mace is dry in the third Degree, without heat, and only bindeth.

Manna is of equal temper, hot and dry, it openeth, mollifieth, and incarnateth.

Mariaton or *Martiaton*, is a hot unguent againſt all cold humours: it helpeth the grief of ſinews, purgeth cold watry matters, and ripeneth tumours.

Marrobio, which we call Hore-hound, of which there are two kinds, the white and the black; but the white is the better: it is hot in the ſecond, and dry in the third Degree: it helpeth obſtructions in the Liver, openeth and purgeth, and is good againſt colds or for ſores.

Maſtick is hot in the firſt, and dry in the ſecond Degree: it draweth and drieth, bindeth and ſofteneth, and is good againſt cold.

Medulla, which we call Marrow, of what kind ſoever, is cold and moiſt, and mollifieth Ulcers; now the beſt Marrow is that of a Hart, or old Stagg, the next that of a Calf, the next that of a Sheep, and the laſt that of a Goar.

Mel, which we commonly call Honey, is hot and dry in the ſecond Degree; it cleanſeth the ſtomack and entrails, ſtoppeth humours, and incarnateth Wounds.

Meliſſa, which we call Balm, is hot in the ſecond, and dry in the firſt Degree; it cleanſeth and conglutinateth.

Mentha, which we call Mints, is hot in the third, and dry in the ſecond Degree, of which the wild Mint is the beſt: it killeth Worms, it bindeth, it diſſolveth, and is good for the ſtomack, or a cold Liver.

Minio,

Minito, which we call red Lead, is cold and dry, and good againſt ſwellings.

Myrrhe or *Myrrha*, is a ſoverain Gum; it is hot and dry in the ſecond Degree; it conglutinateth, bindeth, and cleanſeth wounds, is good againſt all colds, killeth worms, and helpeth the purſick: for though it doth cleanſe much, yet it doth not exaſperate the Arteries; alſo it doth incarnate.

Morcoſita or *Marcaſita*, is hot and dry, it comforteth, bindeth, and melteth humours.

Mirtilia is the fruit of the Myrtil tree, it is dry in the third Degree, it doth bind good, and looſen evil humours.

Morcas, which we call the Mulbery, the unripe is cold and dry in the ſecond Degree: the bark, but chiefly the root, is hot and dry in the third Degree; it doth cleanſe, purge and bind, the root thereof killeth Worms, and the gum thereof doth looſen, and the juyce of the berry doth heal cankers, or ſore mouths.

N

Narciſſi radix, which we call the Root of a white *Daffodil*, or elſe Prim-roſe pearleſs, is dry, it cleanſeth and draweth, and healeth wounds.

Nardi radix, which we call Setwall, is hot in the firſt, and dry in the ſecond Degree; it bindeth and *Spica Nardi* provoketh Urine.

Naſturtium is hot and dry in the fourth Degree: it burneth, it draweth and melteth, and killeth Worms; ſee *Agrecum*, which we call Creſſes.

Nigilla, which we call Git, is hot and dry in the third Degree: it ſtayeth Wind, killeth Worms, and looſeneth, yet to give too great a quantity is dangerous.

Nitrum is of the ſame nature that Salt-peter is, and it mundifieth exceedingly.

O

Olibanum is a gum, it is hot and dry in the ſecond Degree; it warmeth, bindeth, cloſeth wounds, and incarnateth.

Oyl

Oil of Olives is of a very temperate nature, and changeth his qualities according to the nature of the Simples which are mixt with him.

Opium is cold and dry in the fourth degree, and is a Liquor made of Poppy dried and mixt with Saffron, it doth aſtoniſh and provoke ſleep.

Opoponax is a Gum that is hot in the third, and dry in the ſecond degree: it ſoftneth and ſtayeth humors; it is good againſt all Colds. See *Papaver*, *Galbanum*, *Bdellium* or *Sagapenum*.

Orpiment is a kind of Metal, of which the artificial is called Arſenick, it is hot in the third degree, and dry in the ſecond: it bindeth, corrodeth, burneth and fretteth, and is a Corroſive.

Origano, which we call wild Marjoram or Peniroyal, is hot and dry in the third degree; it taketh away ſtoppings, and is good for Coughs.

Orobus, which we call Fitches are hot in the firſt and dry in the ſecond degree: they do open and cleanſe.

Oriza, which we call Barley, is cold and dry in the firſt degree: it ripeneth and cleanſeth.

Ortica, which we call Nettles, are hot and dry: they are biting and wholſom for the Lungs, or for Sores.

Ova, which we call Eggs, the white is cold, and the yolk is hot, and doth incarnate.

P

Panacea is that Herb whoſe fruit we call *Opoponax*.

Panico is a grain which we call Panick, it is cold and dry, and bindeth.

Papaver, which we call Poppy, the Seeds thereof are white, and hot in the fourth degree. See *Opium*.

Paſtinache, which we call Parſnips, are hot and do provoke Urine.

Pece, which we commonly call Pitch, is hot and dry in the ſecond degree, draweth, drieth and ripeneth.

Pece liquida, which we call Tar, is hot and dry in the ſecond degree, is good againſt Colds, or evil humors gathered together in the breaſt, and draweth wounds.

Pece Raſina, which we call Roſin, or Pitch of *Greece*, it draweth, healeth and incarnateth.

Pece Raſina & liquida, which we call Turpentine, it doth draw, skin, incarnate and conglutinate things together.

Pepper is hot and dry in the fourth degree, it is both attractive and mundificative, and good for all Diſeaſes of the Breaſt or Lungs.

Peaches are cold and moiſt in the ſecond degree: they bind and ſtir up Worms.

Petaſites, which we call Butter-bur, is dry in the third degree.

Petrolium is a certain Oil made of Salt-peter and *Bitumen*, it is hot and dry in the ſecond Degree: it healeth wounds and comforteth weak members.

Petroſellinum, which we call Parſley, or Stone Parſley, is, and eſpecially his Seed, hot and dry in the third degree: it ſtays wind, openeth, and provoketh Urine.

Philonium, of which there are two kinds, *Philonium Romanum* and *Philonium Perſicum* are excellent Compoſitions, and moſt comfortable after the loſs of bloud.

Pologono, which we call Knot-graſs, is cold in the ſecond degree, and keepeth back humors.

Plantago, which we call Plantain, is cold and dry in the third degree: it comforteth, drieth, bindeth and incarnateth wounds.

Porri, which we call Leeks, Scallions or Onions, are hot and dry, and do extenuate Obſtructions, and raiſe and looſen all evil humors in the Body.

Puce or *Porrum*, is hot in the ſecond degree, and is good for all cold watrith Stomachs.

Pulegium, which we call Peniroial, is hot and dry in the third degree: it doth vehemently dry in moiſture, warmeth, ripeneth, and is good for the Lungs. See *Origano*.

Punicum Malum, which we call Pomegranate, is cold and dry: it bindeth, provoketh Urine, and is good for the Stomach.

Raſana

R

Rafanus or *Raphanus*, which we call Radiſh, is hot in the third and dry in the ſecond degree: they comfort and are good for old Colds; but eſpecially they provoke Urine.

Reſina, which we call Roſin, is hot and dry in the ſecond degree: it ſtoppeth, ſoftneth, cleanſeth, draweth and purgeth wounds, and is good againſt cold cauſes.

Reſalgar, ſee *Riſigalla*.

Rogoretio or *Rigoritio*, which we call Licoras, is temperate in heat, and moiſtneth, and ripeneth, and is good for heat in the Stomach or Liver, and profitable againſt wounds.

Riſigallo is a compoſition of Sulphur, Orpiment, and unſlecked Lime; and is a moſt ſtrong Corroſive.

Roſa flos, which we cal Roſe-leaves, or Roſe-cakes, are dry and binding.

Rubea, which we call Madder, is dry: it comforteth and incarnateth, the root thereof provoketh Urine and is good for the yellows.

Ruberb or *Rubarb* is hot and dry in the ſecond degree: it purgeth choler and flegm, and putteth away ſtoppings.

Ruta, which we call Rue or Herb of grace, is hot and dry in the third degree: but the wild Rue in the fourth degree, and therefore exulcerateth: the Garden-Rue digeſteth, and mightily comforteth, all inward inflammations it ripeneth, and drieth, and expelleth wind.

S

Savina which we commonly call Savine, is hot and dry in the third degree: it openeth, diſſolveth, drieth mightily, and is moſt ſovereign againſt worms.

Sacaro is hot and moiſt, and is very comfortable.

Sagapenum, ſee *Serapino*.

Sagina or *Saggina* or *Sorgo*, of ſome called *Panicum Indicum*, is only hot and dry.

Salo, which we call Salt, is hot and dry in the ſecond degree: and it cleanſeth,

Salamora, which we call Brine, or Water and Salt, is of the ſame nature that Salt is.

Sal-armoniack is hot and dry in the fourth degree: and it cleanſeth.

Salee, which we call Sallows or Willows: it bindeth and drieth vehemently.

Salgemma, is a kind of Salt which is hot and dry: it cleanſeth and mundifieth.

Salnitro, ſome uſe for this Salt-peter, it is hot and dry, and evaporateth: it comforteth Sinews and taketh away tyring or wearineſs.

Salvia, which we call Sage, is hot and dry in the ſecond degree: it cleanſeth and bindeth, is good for Wounds, or Exulceration of the Lungs.

Sambucus, which we call Elder-tree or Wall-wort, that is like Elder-tree, is hot in the ſecond degree, and dry in the firſt: it drieth, digeſteth, and conglutinateth.

Sandolo, which we call Sanders, are cold and dry in the ſecond degree, and drive back humors.

Sandolo Roſſo or *Sandolo Bianca*, which we call red Sand or white Sand, are hot and dry, and bring on skin.

Sanguis draconis, ſee *Cinaber*: yet ſome take it for the red Dock, or red Patience, but it is not ſo.

Sapone, which we call Sope, is hot: it draweth, mollifieth, drieth, cleanſeth and purgeth.

Saſſifrigia, which we call Saxifrage, is hot, dry, and binding.

Scabioſo, which we call Scallions, is hot and dry in the ſecond degree; they do regenerate, and are good for ſcabs, for the Lungs, or for the ſoreneſs in the breaſt.

Scamonicum, which is the juice of a root, is hot in the third degree: it digeſteth and purgeth choler, but muſt never be given inwardly, unleſs it be corrected.

Scariola, which we call Endive, is cold and dry, and binding.

Sarcocolla, is a Gum of the kind of *Euforbium*, it is hot and dry in the ſecond degree: it cleanſeth, incarnateth, and comforteth Wounds.

Sea Onions, is hot in the ſecond, and dry in the firſt degree: it ripeneth and expelleth humors, it hindreth putrefaction, and preſerveth health.

Semola,

Semola, which we call yong Cole worts, are hot and dry in the firſt degree.

Semper vive, which we call Houſleek, and ſome call Stone-crop, is cold in the third and dry in the ſecond degree: it is good for burnings or frettings, or for inflammations of Ulcers; it driveth back humors, cooleth and bindeth.

Sevadolce is hot in the ſecond, and dry in the firſt degree: it cleanſeth and openeth.

Ser-pino, is a Gum of Ferula, it is hot in the third, and dry in the ſecond degree: it mollifieth, looſeneth, and is good for Colds.

Serpillo, which we call wild running Betony or Time, ſmelling like Marjoram, is hot and dry in the third degree.

Sinapi, which we call Muſtard, is hot and dry in the fourth degree: it draweth and reſolveth, and is good for Scurfs or wild Scabs.

Solatro, which we call Night ſhade, is cold in the third degree.

Sulphur vive, which we call Brimſtone, is hot and dry in the third degree: it draweth, diſperſeth humors, and killeth worms.

Spelta, which we call Beer-Barley, is a grain leſs than Wheat, and ſhorter than Rye, but not ſo black, is cool and cleanſing.

Sparagi, which we call Aſparagus, is without any manifeſt heat or cold, and only cleanſeth.

Spiga or *Spica*, which we call Lavender, is hot in the firſt, and dry in the ſecond degree: it cleanſeth, and is good for the head, eſpecially the conſerve, which is very comfortable.

Squille, is that which we call the Sea-Onion: ſee Sea-Onion.

Stecados, which we call French Lavender, is hot and dry.

Sterax or *Stirax*, is a ſweet Gum, which is hot and dry: it correcteth, ſofteneth, and is good for coughs or any ſickneſs in the head.

Tartaro,

T

Tartaro, which we call Tartar, is the excrements of Wine, which ſtick to the Veſſel: it is hot and dry in the third degree, and only cleanſeth.

Tartaruch, which we call Snails with ſhells, are of the ſame nature that Snails without ſhells are.

Taſſo barbaroſſo, which we call Yew, is of nature poiſon.

Turpentine is hot in the ſecond, and dry in the firſt degree: it draweth, cleanſeth, skinneth and comforteth.

Thymum, which we call Time, is hot and dry in the third degree, and expelleth flegm.

Thuris Lacrime, which we call Frankincenſe, is hot in the ſecond, and dry in the firſt degree. See *Olibanum*.

Thuris cortex, is dry in the ſecond degree, and bindeth.

Thuris ſucculis is hot and dry in the third degree.

Tithymalis, which we call Spurge or Milk-Thiſtle, is hot and dry in the fourth degree: it cleanſeth and purgeth flegm and choler, and is good for old ſores or fiſtula's.

Triſera magna is a certain Compoſition which will provoke ſweat, helpeth grief in the Stomach, and taketh away all cold Rheums.

Tutia preparata is a certain Mineral that is cold in the firſt, and dry in the ſecond degree, and is very good for ſore Eyes.

V

VEratro, ſee *Ellebor*.

Verbena, which we call Vervin, is hot and dry: it comforteth and mundifieth.

Verderame, which we call Verdigreaſe, is hot and dry in the third degree, and is a Corroſive that eateth away dead fleſh.

Vermi, which we call Worms, do conglutinate and comfort ſinews.

Vere is hot and dry: See *Braſica*.

Vitro, which we call Glaſs, is hot in the firſt and dry in the ſecond, and it cleanſeth,

Vinacea,

Vinacea, which we call the Kernels of Grapes, are dry.

Virga Paſtoris, which we call Wild Taſſel, is cold in the third, and dry in the firſt degree: it comforteth and bindeth.

Viſchio, which we call Lime, is hot in the fourth Degree; it drieth and skinneth, but being mixed with any liquid ſtuff, it burneth, and is Corroſive.

Vitalia or *Vitis alba*, which we call Briony, is hot, chiefly the root: it cleanſeth and killeth ſcabs: it drieth, it draweth, mollifieth and diſſolveth.

Vitelli, which we call the yolks of any Eggs, are hot, and do ſtrengthen and incarnate.

Vitriol, which we call Copperas, is of two kinds, that is, *Vitriolum Romanum*, which we call green Copperas, and *Vitriolum album*, which we call white Copperas, they both are hot and dry, but the white is much the ſtronger; they take away ſcurfs, and kill ſcabs.

Vitriola Calcanthum, is reckoned amongſt Metals, and is a kind of inky earth: it drieth and fretteth.

Vitriola herba is an herb that groweth on the Wall, and is taken for Pellitory of the Wall. See *Helxin*.

Urtica, which we call Nettles, are hot and dry, and ſtop and cleanſe humors, and are good for ſores.

Z

Zeferano, which we call Saffron, is hot in the firſt, and dry in the ſecond Degree: it comforteth and expelleth all inward Poiſon, and incarnateth Wounds.

Zebulus, ſee *Ziziphe*.

Zeutonico, which we call Worm-ſeed, is hot and dry.

Zenzero, which we call Ginger, is of the nature of Pepper, and hath the ſtrength of long Pepper; it maintaineth natural heat, and is good for cold ſtomachs.

Ziziphe taketh away Coughs, and helpeth the ſhortneſs of Breath

Zucche, which we call Gourds, are cold and moiſt in the ſecond degree, and it allayeth all manner of Inflammations, or hot ſwellings.

CHAP.

CHAP. CXCVII.

Certain Principles touching SIMPLES.

YOu ſhall underſtand, that touching Simples, ſome are only to eaſe pain, as Lin-ſeed, Camomil, ſoft Greaſe, Suet of all ſorts, or any other Oil that is hot in the firſt degree; and whenſoever any of theſe Simples are compounded with their like, the Medicine is called *Anodyna* or Lynogs.

There are other Simples which are aſtonying, benumbing or bringing aſleep, as Opium, Mandrake, Poppy, Hemlock, and ſuch like, which are groſs and cold in the fourth degree; and whenſoever any of theſe Simples are compounded with their like, then the Medicine is amongſt Leaches, called *Narcotica.*

The third ſort of Simples are ſuch as incarnate or breed fleſh, as Frankincenſe, Flour, Saffron, Yolks of Eggs, and ſuch like, which are hot in the ſecond degree; and whenſoever any of theſe Simples are compounded with their like, then the Medicine is called *Sarcotica.*

The fourth ſort of Simples are corroding, fretting or burning, as Arſnick, Riſagallo, Mercury, Lime, and ſuch like, which are hot in the fourth degree; and whenſoever they are applied ſimple or compound, then the Medicine is called Corroſive.

The fifth ſort of Simples are thoſe which be called mollifying, and are four in number: that is, green Mallows, white Mallows, Violets, and Brank-urſin.

The laſt ſort of Simples are thoſe which are called Cordials, and are three in number; that is to ſay, Violets and Bugloſs of both kinds.

And thus much touching the nature, uſe, property and operation of Simples.

CHAP.

CHAP. CXCVIII.

Of Weights and Meaſures, and how to know them by their Characters.

ALbeit I have in this work ſet down your Weights and Meaſures in ſuch plain Engliſh, that every one may underſtand them; yet foraſmuch as the more curious do ſet down many excellent Receits under obſcure Characters, I think it good here to acquaint you with them all, that when you find any ſuch, you may not be ignorant in the underſtanding of them.

Know then that the leaſt of all weights is a grain, which is the weight either of a Barley-corn, or of a Pepper-corn, and his Character is *G.* or *Gr.*

Siliqua is four grains, and his Character is *ſ.*

An Engliſh half-peny is five grains, and his Character is *ob.*

A Scruple is ten grains, and his Character is ℈.

A Dram is three Scruples, or the eighth part of an ounce, and his Character is ʒ.

A Roman Penny is the ſame that a Dram is, and his Character is *X.*

An Ounce is the twelfth part of a pound, which is twenty four ſcruples, and four hundred and eighty grains, and his Character is ℥.

The Character of half an ounce is ß.

A Pound in medicinal Receits is twelve ounces, and his Character is ℔.

The Handful is ſix Ounces and a half, and his Character is *M.*

The Character of as much as you can hold betwixt your Fingers is ℞.

The Character for a drop is *Gut.*

The Character for three drops is *Gut.* iij.

℔ ß is half a Pound.

℥ ß is half an Ounce.

ʒ ß is half a Dram.

℈ ß is half a Scruple.

℥ j ß is an Ounce and a half.

M j ß is a Handful and a half.

℔ j is half a handful, which is three ounces and a half.
Ana or *an*, is alike, or of each alike.

And thus much touching Weights, and their true Characters.

CHAP. CXCIX.

The Farriers Inſtruments expounded, with their Names and Properties.

THe Figure 1. ſheweth the Hammer, which driveth in the nail.
Figure 2. the Pincers which breaketh off, clincheth and draweth the nail.

3. The Butteris, which pareth and openeth the Foot.

4. The Raſp or Rape, which maketh ſmooth the Hoof.

5. The Cutting Knife, which taketh away the ſuperfluous Hoof.

6. The Fleam, with which he letteth bloud in the Neck, or in the groſs places where the vein is great.

7. The Farriers Lancet which openeth ſmall veins and thrids, where a Stroak may not be uſed.

8. The Inciſion-Knife, to open Impoſtumes and to cut away ſuperfluous Fleſh.

9. The Cronet to take up Veins.

10. The drawing cauterizing Iron to open and ſeparate the fleſh either ſound or impoſtumed.

11. The round button cauterizing Iron to boar holes in the skin and ſwelled places.

12. The Mullets to cleanſe Wounds.

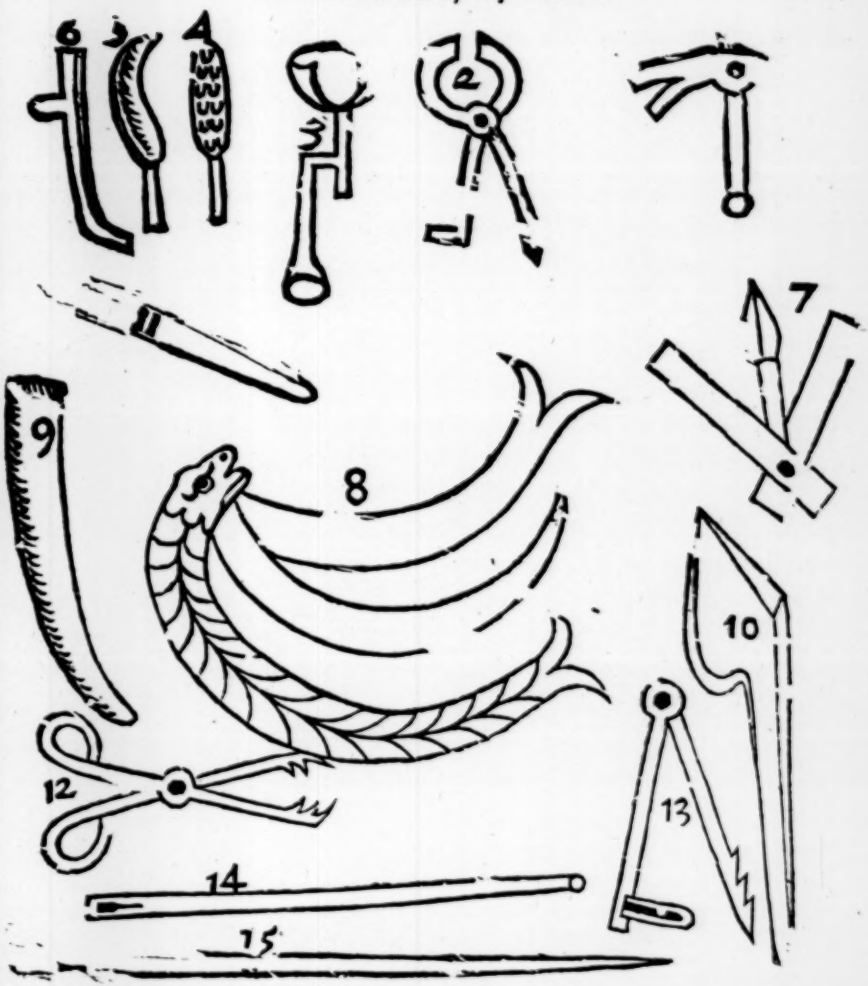
13. The Barnacles to pinch an Horſe by the noſe or ears, to make him endure pain patiently.

14. The Needle to ſtitch up Wounds.

15. The Probe to ſearch and find out the depth of Wounds.

And thus you have a full Explanation of all the needful Inſtruments belonging to the skilful Farrier.

The Farriers chief Inſtruments.



THE POSTSCRIPT.

Courteous Reader,

HAving now with infinite Labour and Induſtry perfected and finiſhed this my MASTER-PIECE for the Cure of Horſes and Mares, wherein the Phyſical part of Horſemanſhip concerning thoſe manifold inward Diſeaſes which are incident to Horſes is clearly diſcovered, and the Chirurgical part concerning outward Accidents, is plainly opened and deſcribed; and having for the more abſolute Advancement of Horſemanſhip, and to give ſatisfaction therein, made a particular Speculation and run through every Part, Vein, Bone, Sinew and Artery of the Horſes Body, demonſtrating not only their Number and Place by Figure, but alſo conſidering their Diſaffections and Diſeaſes which do thereunto belong; and having alſo with much pain (as a Work of this difficult nature requireth) brought it to a full period, not only giving you a few terms of Art concerning Horſemanſhip, but making an Anatomy from head to foot of all the Integral parts of a Horſe, with their Diſeaſes inward and outward, and their Phyſical and Chirurgical Cures exactly preſcribed and ſet down, and have given you ocular Demonſtrations of the whole Fabrick of the Horſes Body. So that as in a Map you may behold every ſmall Part, River, Creek or Stream running up and down within the Superficies of the Earth; ſo I have likewiſe made and drawn divers Pictures, ſetting out all the parts

and

and parcels of a Horſes Body, and that they may be plainly ſeen and conſidered, I have moſt lively delineated and figur'd out every Part and Vein in the Horſe, where to find it from head to foot. I have alſo Anatomized the Horſe in every Bone, that you may perceive their Conjunction, and how they are joyned, and thereby judge of their Diſlocations, and putting out of their places; and all this you ſhall at one view behold in the ſeveral Parts and Figures which you ſhall find in this Book.

Therefore, I would adviſe all Gentlemen, and others, who being of a generous ſpirit, cannot chuſe but delight and take wonderful pleaſure in Horſes, to conſider, that for want of Care and Experience many excellent Horſes falling into ſlight and common Diſeaſes, have either utterly periſhed, or elſe been lamed and ſpoiled; it will be therefore a Study worthy the thoughts of a generous Spirit, to know how to accommodate and apply Cures and Medicines to the outward and inward Diſeaſes of Horſes, in regard that a Horſe is a Beaſt whoſe praiſes cannot be ſufficiently declared.

The Horſe is commodious for common uſe, as pleaſing Tillage, and tranſporting of Carriages and Burthens, and alſo for mens continual occaſions and daily Journeys. In time of Peace, when Princes did uſe to recreate themſelves with Hunting Deer and other wild Beaſts, Horſes were always had in high eſtimation and honour; and thoſe that would out-run the Wind, and made the beſt ſpeed after the Chaſe were moſt eſteemed, ſo that there could be no pleaſure in hunting, if they had not Horſes to carry them after their Game; and what a brave ſight it is to ſee in a field an hundred or more hunting Horſes riding and running this way or that way after the time-

rous

rous Deer, or fearful Hare? Therefore the Horſe, as he was made for induſtrious Labour, ſo he is fit to maintain and procure the Pleaſures and Delights of a Prince, or any Nobleman.

And moreover in War, the Courage and Service of a Horſe is daily now ſeen, and too well known; he will, as if he were animated by the ſound of Drums and Trumpets, preſently ruſh into the Battel, and take delight to charge the Enemy; he is all fire, and full of Metal and Fury. And thus we ſee that a Horſe is not only convenient for daily occaſions of the Husbandman, of Travellers, and divers others, but in Princes Courts he is highly eſteemed for Hunting, for Races, and other Paſtimes; and alſo in the Wars, his daily Service is ſufficiently known, being a Beaſt of a magnanimous and undaunted courage, ſo that the Horſe is naturally made for Profit and Pleaſure; for Labour and Delight; for Peace and War; for Hunting, for Triumphs, and all gallant occaſions.

It is pitty then that a brave Horſe, well limb'd and ſpirited, falling ſick of any inward Diſeaſe, or outward accidental Infirmity, as Sprains, Diſlocation of Bones, Spavins, and hundreds more, ſhould be ſpoiled, in ſuffering the Diſeaſe to grow on him until it be incurable, or in applying Remedies unfit for the Malady; whereby many a Horſe becomes maimed, and for want of Cure utterly diſabled for any Service.

Therefore my advice and counſel is, (as I ſaid before) that if any Gentlemen whatſoever, ſhall have their Horſes either by outward accident, as Sprains, pricking in the Feet, and the like; or inward Surfeits, Glanders, Colds and Heats by intemperate and extraordinary Riding fall ſick, or become through the aforeſaid Infirmities any ways

ways diſabled for Service, they ſhould not depend upon their own Experience or Judgment, but ſhould wiſely conſider with themſelves, and conſult with the Farrier, reaſoning together, and comparing their Opinions concerning the Cauſes and Cures of ſuch Diſeaſes as are incident to their Horſes, that ſo by this means, by the height of Diſcourſe and Reaſon, they may come to a certain and infallible knowledge of the Horſes Diſeaſes and Infirmities, and having diligently ſearched out the Cauſes thereof, they may know likewiſe to cure the ſame; for you ſhall meet with many illiterate Farriers, who are not Book-learned, and therefore have no more knowledge than Horſes themſelves, but are ſubject through their Ignorance to run into many groſs Errors, ſo that through their Negligence and aforeſaid Ignorance, miſtaking the cauſes and cures of Diſeaſes, and in one word moſt groſsly, for it is good to have experience both in the Theorick and Practick part of any Art or Science.

For another (to my knowledge) many good Horſes do continually remain lame and unfit for Service, or elſe do utterly periſh for want of underſtanding their Diſeaſes and the particular Cures thereof. Therefore as wiſe Phyſicians do conſult together when they meet with a ſick Patient, ſo I adviſe both Gentlemen and Farriers to compare their Judgments together, whereby the Beaſt may be ſaved, the Gentlemen and Farriers gain Credit, and their Experience and knowledge in the many Diſeaſes of Horſes be much bettered.

Moreover, for the Readers greater benefit, all Simples and Compounds good for Horſes are Alphabetically here placed, and the Conditions of them whether hot or cold, with their Names and Qualities are deſcribed. Alſo what Ounces, Drams and Scruples are to be given in any

any Drink. If Gentlemen be unacquainted with theſe things, let them conſer with the Farriers, and ſo confirm their Judgments by Diſcourſe. And ſo, courteous Reader, I have left you my beſt Work thus accompliſhed, and thus perfected, that I know, in all the points belonging to the Cure of Horſes it will give full ſatisfaction, if the Reader follow the Advice of this Poſtſcript.

THE TABLE OF THE FIRST BOOK, CONTAINING All Cures Physical.

Chapter.		Page.
	THE compoſition of Horſes bodies	1
2	Of Elements	2
3	Of Temperaments	5
4	Of Humours	7
5	Of Members	9
6	Of Powers	10
7	Of Actions or operations	11
8	Of Spirits	12
9	Of things natural	13
10	Of complexions	17
11	Of inward ſickneſſes	19
12	Of ſigns of ſickneſſes	20
13	Of Obſervations in Phyſicking	24
14	Of Urine and excrements	26
15	Of Fevers	28
16	The Quotidian	31

Chapter.		Page.
17	*The Tertian*	32
18	*The Quartan*	32
19	*The continual*	33
20	*The Hetique*	33
21	*The Autumn Fever*	34
22	*The Summer Fever*	35
23	*The Winter Fever*	35
24	*Fever by surfeit*	36
25	*Fever pestilent*	37
26	*Of the plague*	38
27	*Fever accidental*	39
28	*One general approved cure for all Fevers*	40
29	*Diseases in the head*	40
30	*Of Head ach*	41
31	*Of Frenzie*	42
32	*Of the sleeping evil*	43
33	*A Horse taken*	44
34	*Of the Staggers*	45
35	*Of the falling-evil*	47
36	*Of the Night-mare*	48
37	*Of the Palsie*	50
38	*Of the general cramp*	51
39	*Of the cold*	53
40	*How to take away any cold*	54
41	*The best of all medicins for the cold*	55
42	*Of Hide bound*	55
43	*Of the Glanders*	57
44	*Two certain cures for the Glanders*	61
45	*Of the mourning of the Chine*	62
46	*A certain approved medicine for the mourning of the Chine*	64
47	*Of the cough*	64
48	*Of the wet cough*	66
49	*Of the dry cough*	67
50	*Two approved cures for any cold cough*	70
51	*The best of medicines for any dry cough*	71
52	*Of broken Lungs*	71
53	*Of rotten Lungs*	72

54 *Of*

Chapter.	Page.
54 Of ſhortneſs of breath	73
55 Of the broken winded	75
56 Of the Conſumption	78
57 Conſumption of the fleſh	79
58 To make a Horſe fat	80
59 The mirrour and maſter of all medicines to fatten a Horſe	82
60 Of the breaſt pain	83
61 Of the Anticor, or heart ſickneſs	84
62 Of tyred Horſes	86
63 Of loathing of meat	87
64 Of caſting out drink	90
65 Of g'ut of provender	91
66 Of ſoundring in the body	92
67 Of the hungryevil	93
68 Of inflammation in the Liver	94
69 Of obſtructions in the Liver	97
70 Of the Conſumption of the Liver	98
71 Of Diſeaſes in the Gall	100
72 Diſeaſes in the ſpleen	101
73 Of the Yellows	102
74 Of the Dropſie	105
75 Of the Cholick	107
76 Of the Belly-ake	108
77 Of Coſtiveneſs	109
78 Of the Lax	110
79 Of the bloody flix	111
80 Falling of the Fundament	112
81 Of Bots and Worms	113
82 Of pain in the Kidneys	117
83 Of the Strangury	118
84 Of the pain-piſs	119
85 Of the ſtone	120
86 Of piſſing blood	122
87 Of the Colts evil	123
88 Of the mattering of the yard	124
89 Of the ſhedding of the ſeed	125
90 Falling of the yard	125

Chapter.	Page.
91 *Barrenesse of Mares*	126
92 *Consumption in Mares*	127
93 *Rage of love in Mares*	127
94 *Of casting of foals*	128
95 *Of hardnesse in foaling*	128
96 *Of making Mares cast their foals*	129
97 *Drinking of Horse-leaches*	129
98 *Eating of Hens dung*	130
99 *Of the Suppositary*	130
100 *Of Glisters*	131
101 *Of Purgations*	133
☞ 102 *An excellent and approved scouring*	139
103 *Of neezing or fumes*	140
104 *Of frictions and bathes*	142
105 *General drenches*	143
106 *To make Diapente*	144
107 *A famous Drench and ointment*	145
108 *Of the oyl of oats*	146
109 *Brief observations, &c,*	147
110 *Principles in foals and horses*	151
111 *Observations in mares*	152
112 *Observations in buying a horse*	154
113 *Notes concerning some principles*	155

THE

THE TABLE OF THE SECOND BOOK; CONTAINING All CURES CHIRURGICAL.

Chapter.		Page.
P	*Reportions of members*	159
	2 *Of the Veins*	161
2	*The Anatomy of veins*	162
3	*Of the sinews*	164
3	*The Anatomy of sinews*	165
4	*Of all the Bones*	166
4	*The Anatomy of Bones*	167
5	*Of letting blood*	168
6	*Of outward Sorrances*	172
7	*Of weeping eyes*	174
8	*Of blood-shotten eyes*	175
9	*Dimness of sight*	176
10	*A certain and approved Medicine for any blindness, &c.*	177
11	*Another to the same effect*	178
12	*Pearl, pin, or Web*	178
13	*An infallible cure for any pin, pearl, or Web*	180
14	*Of*	

Chapter.		Page.
14	*Of the Haw*	180
15	*Of Moon eyes*	181
16	*Canker in the eye*	183
17	*Stripe in the eye*	183
18	*Wart in the eye*	185
19	*Inflammation in the eye*	185
20	*Impostume in the eye*	186
21	*The pole evil*	187
☞ 22	*A rare and certain cure for the pole-evil*	189
23	*Of leaved ears*	190
24	*Of the vives*	190
☞ 25	*A rare and certain approved Cure for the vives*	193
☞ 26	*Another excellent cure for the vives*	193
27	*Of the strangle*	193
28	*Canker in the nose*	195
29	*Bleeding at the nose*	196
30	*Bloody rifts*	197
31	*The Gigges*	198
32	*Of the Lampass*	198
33	*Of the Cameree*	199
34	*Canker in the mouth*	200
35	*Heat in the mouth*	201
36	*The tongue hurt*	202
37	*Of the Barbes*	202
38	*Pain in the teeth, and of Wolves teeth*	203
39	*Crick in the neck*	205
40	*Wenns in the neck*	206
41	*Swelling after blood letting*	207
42	*To stanch blood*	208
43	*Falling of the crest*	209
☞ 44	*A certain approved way to raise the crest*	210
45	*Mangines in the Main*	211
46	*Of shedding the hair*	212
47	*Grief in the withers*	212
48	*Any galled back*	215
49	*Canker in the withers*	218
50	*Of the fic-fast*	219

Chapter.	Page.
51 *Wenns below the ſaddle*	219
52 *Navil-gall*	220
53 *Swaying of the back*	221
54 *Weakneſs in the back*	222
55 *Swelling of the cods*	223
56 *Of burſtineſs, or incording*	224
57 *Botch in the groin*	226
☞ 58 *A certain approved cure for the botch*	227
59 *Itch in the tail*	227
60 *Of the general ſcab*	228
☞ 61 *Two moſt excellent and approved cures for the ſcabs*	231
62 *Of halting before*	232
63 *Of halting behind*	234
64 *Of hidden grief*	235
65 *Of griefs in the ſhoulder*	236
66 *Wrinch in the ſhoulder*	237
67 *Wrinch in the nether joynt*	239
68 *Splatting the ſhoulder*	239
69 *Shoulder-pight*	240
☞ 70 *A certain cure for any deſperate ſtrain in the ſhoulder, &c.*	242
71 *Swelling in the fore leggs*	242
72 *Foundring in the feet*	243
73 *Of the ſplent*	248
☞ 74 *An approved and certain cure for any ſplent*	251
75 *Of the Screw*	252
76 *Of the Mallender*	252
77 *Of an upper attaint*	254
☞ 78 *An approved medicine for any ſinew-ſtrain*	256
79 *A neather attaint*	256
80 *An over-reach on the heel*	257
81 *The mellet*	257
82 *Falſe quarters*	258
83 *An Horſe hipped*	259
84 *Of ſtifling*	261
85 *Bone-ſpaven*	262
86 *Blood-ſpaven*	265
☞ 87 *An approved cure for any blood-ſpaven whatſoever*	267

Chapter.		Page.
88	*Of the Sellander*	267
89	*Of the hough-bone*	267
90	*Of the Curb*	268
91	*Of the paines*	270
92	*The Mules*	273
93	*Of Wind-galls*	274
94	*Strain in the paſtorn*	276
95	*To help any halting*	277
☞ 96	*Three rare and approved Medicines to cure any ſtrain or ſwelling whatſoever*	279
☞ 97	*Another approved cure for any ſtrain*	280
98	*Of enterfearing*	280
99	*The ſhackle-gall*	281
100	*Caſting in the halter*	281
101	*The ſcratches*	282
☞ 102	*A certain and approved cure for the ſcratches*	285
103	*Of the Ring-bone*	285
104	*Hurts on the cronet*	287
☞ 105	*A certain approved cure for any hurt on the Cronet*	287
106	*The crownſcab*	288
107	*The Quitter-Bone*	288
108	*Of gravelling*	290
109	*Of ſurbating*	291
110	*Prick in the ſole*	292
111	*To draw out a ſtub*	293
112	*The Fig*	294
113	*A Retrait*	295
114	*Of cloying*	296
115	*Obſervations for the hoofs*	298
116	*Looſening the hoof*	299
117	*Caſting the hoof*	301
118	*Of hoof-bound*	302
119	*The running Fruſh*	303
☞ 120	*An approved and certain cure for the running Fruſh*	304
121	*Of evil hoofs*	305
122	*Of brittle hoofs*	305
123	*To preſerve hoofs*	306

Chapter.		Page.
124	*Hurts on the Hoofs*	307
125	*To ſoften Hoofs*	ibid.
126	*To harden Hoofs*	308
127	*Of the Mat-long*	ibid.
128	*To skin a ſore Foot*	309
129	*Of gourded Legs*	ibid.
☞ 130	*A moſt certain and approved Cure for gourded Legs*	310
131	*Of the Farcy*	312
132	*Of the Canker*	319
133	*Of the Fiſtula*	321
☞ 134	*A rare and approved Cure for any Fiſtula*	326
135	*Of the Ambury*	327
136	*Of the Cords*	ibid.
137	*Of the String-halt*	328
138	*Of Spur-gall*	ibid.
139	*Of Wounds in general*	329
140	*Hurts with Arrows*	332
141	*Of healing old Sores*	ibid.
☞ 142	*A certain and approved Cure for any old Sore*	333
143	*Of Bruiſings or Swellings*	ibid.
144	*Of Impoſtumes*	335
145	*Of cold Impoſtumes*	337
146	*Of hot Impoſtumes*	ibid.
147	*Of the Tetter*	338
148	*Of Sinews cut, &c.*	ibid.
149	*Of Fretting with the Girths*	339
150	*Of Bliſters*	340
151	*To take away Bones, &c.*	ibid.
152	*To eat dead Fleſh*	341
153	*Of Knots in Joints*	343
154	*Wounds made with Gun-powder*	344
155	*Of burning with Lime*	345
156	*Biting of a mad Dog*	ibid.
157	*Hurts with a Boars Tuſks*	346
158	*The Stinging of Serpents*	ibid.
159	*Of Lice*	347
160	*Defence from Flies*	348

Chapter.		Page.
161	*Of Bones broken*	348
162	*Bones out of joint*	350
163	*To dry up Humors*	351
164	*To dry up ſuperfluous Moiſture*	352
165	*To dry any Swelling*	ibid.
166	*To diſſolve Humors*	353
167	*To mollifie Hardneſs*	ibid.
168	*To harden Softneſs*	354
169	*To conglutinate*	ibid.
170	*To mundifie*	355
171	*Repercuſſive Medicins*	ibid.
172	*Of burning Compoſitions*	ibid.
173	*For all manner of Hurts*	356
174	*Powder of Honey and Lime*	357
175	*The taking up of Veins*	358
176	*Of Canterizing*	360
177	*Canterizing actual*	ibid.
178	*Canterizing potential*	364
179	*Of Rowelling*	365
180	*To geld Horſes*	367
181	*To make Curtals*	369
182	*To make a white Star*	370
183	*To make a black Star*	373
184	*To make a red Star*	ibid.
185	*To make Hair to come very ſoon*	374
186	*To make Hair ſmooth and fine*	375
187	*How to take off Hair in any part of a Horſe*	ibid.
188	*How to caſt and overthrow a Horſe*	376
189	*How to know the Age of a Horſe*	ibid.
190	*How to make an old Horſe ſeem young*	378
191	*How to make that a Horſe ſhall not neigh, neither in company, or when he is ridden*	ibid.
192	*How to make a Horſe exceeding quick and nimble of the Spur*	379
193	*How to make a Horſe that tires, or is reſtiff, to go forward*	ibid.
☞ 194	*Other moſt excellent and approved ways to preſerve an Horſe from tiring, never diſcloſed till now*	380

Chapter. Page.

195 *How to make a Horſe to follow his Maſter, and to find him out, and challenge him among never ſo many people* 381

196 *The Nature and ſpecial Qualities of all the Simples that are ſpoken of in this whole Work, ſet down in the manner of Alphabet* ibid.

197 *Certain Principles touching Simples* 350

198 *Of Weights and Meaſures, and how to know them by their Characters* 351

199 *The Farriers Inſtruments expounded, with their Names and Properties* 352

F I N I S.

AN

APPENDIX,

CONTAINING

The exactest RECEIPTS for Curing

ALL

DISEASES

IN

OXEN, COWS, SHEEP, HOGS, GOATS,
and all ſmaller Cattel.

Never before made Publick.

LONDON:
Printed by *Andrew Clark*, for *Thomas Paſſenger* at the Three Bibles
on the middle of *London-Bridge*. 1675.

The right Method for the Ordering of Cattel.

I. Of Oxen.

THE worthy Author having excellently treated of the Order and Government of Horſes, both as to their Breeding, Feeding and Managing, as alſo for the Curing of all Diſeaſes they are or may be incident to, I thought it very proper to add by way of *Appendix*, this ſhort, but neceſſary Treatiſe for the direction of the painful Country-man in his ordering all other ſorts of Cattel, *viz.* Oxen, Cows, Sheep, Hogs, *&c.* and herein I ſhall be as ſhort as may be, giving you only thoſe approved Receipts, which not only the former, but theſe modern times have frequently experienced.

CHAP. I.

For the Cough in Oxen.

A Cough of no long continuance may ſoon be remedied by a Drink which you make with Water and Barley-Meal, adding ſome Bean-Flour and ſome Stitch-wort and ſo given to your Beaſt.

A certain Cure for an old Cough, is to ſteep two pound of Hyſſop in a quart or two of Water, well mixt with eight pounds of Lentil-peaſe mingled together; likewiſe give the Beaſt fine Wheat and Roots of Leeks clean waſhed, well beat together, faſting. You may alſo ſtamp Garlick with Dragon-Water, new Ale and Butter, and being warm give it the Beaſt.

CHAP. II.

For a Beasts Hoof hurt.

IF your Ox by chance be hurt with a Stub of Wood, or with a Coulter or Share, or any part of the Clees, mix but the Powder of Brimstone with a Salve of Pitch and old Grease well melted together; then pour it hot on any sore part.

To keep your Beasts from Foundering, when you unyoke them, wash their Feet with cold Water, likewise let their Pasterns and Clees be anointed with old Grease, and they will do well.

To cure the Gravel or a Cut in an Oxes foot, let him be bathed in warm Water, then melt Tar and old Grease for an Ointment, and if with old fresh Grease you rub and chafe their Feet, before you unyoke them, nothing is better to preserve them.

CHAP. III.

For a Bruise on a Beasts Shoulder.

LAbouring Oxen may be lame or sore bruised on their Shoulders, either by going on the hard Ground, by a crush of a Post or Gate, let them but bleed on the Fore-legs, it shall certainly heal them.

CHAP. IV.

For a Beast that has accidentally gotten Venom either in his Tongue or Body.

YOur Ox will commonly gape, and eat no meat, but stand holding his head and mourn, if he has eat any venomous Grass or such like, for Cure whereof give him to swallow down a white Onion bruised, well mixed with a little good Vineger, but be sure before he has it, you rub his Mouth and Tongue well with it.

CHAP.

CHAP. V.

To kill Lice or Ticks in Cattel.

BY taking Cold after a great Rain, by ſome Sickneſs or Surfeit, your Oxen, Kine or other Cattel may be louſie; for a Remedy, rub and chafe the Beaſt all over with the Decoction of wild Olives mixt with Salt, or take Penniroial mixt with Garlick ſtampt. Give it the Beaſt in Ale or Beer, and chafe him a while after. Some ſay Rain will kill them, if you ſift Aſhes on their Backs. If you feed your Cattel well, and put them into good paſture, it will not be long ere they are well. If they have Lice or Ticks about them, theſe Medicins above are very good to kill them with.

CHAP. VI.

Againſt the Swelling of Cattel by eating of green Corn.

YOur Cattel will be in danger of Death (without ſpeedy Remedy) if through negligence of the Keepers, they eat of Barley, Rie or Wheat, that is near ripe; for it will lie and ſprout in their Maws, and cauſe in them a mighty Swelling. To help them, ſome drive them up and down, till they ſee them aſſwage thereof, and ſo they recover. Some throw a new-laid Egg ſhell and all into the Beaſts Mouth, and break it in his Mouth, making him ſwallow it with Ale. Some give him a handful of Nettle-tops well beat, and ſtrained with Wine or honied Water. Some ſtamp or ſtrain Juniper Leaves or green Berries with Wine, and give it the Beaſt. Others give the Beaſt in Ale or Beer, Soot and the hard Rone of a red Herring well beaten. All which are approved Remedies.

CHAP. VII.

For an Ox or other Beaſt that have loſt their Quids.

AN Ox or other Beaſt will mourn, and eat nothing (becauſe he cannot digeſt what he has already eaten) if he happen to

loſe his Quide, as perhaps by ſome occaſion it may fall out of his Mouth. To remedy this, ſome take part of the Quide out of another Beaſts Mouth of the like nature; if it be a Cow wants her Quide, they take part of the Quide of another Cow, giving it her to ſwallow down, and ſhe will be well, and ſo the like of other Beaſts. Some bruiſe a quantity of the Herb called Cudwort, and put to it a quantity of Far, and ſo make the Beaſt that hath loſt his Quide ſwallow it, and he will amend. O hers put a piece of Leaven into the Beaſts Mouth, as aforeſaid, and thereby he will recover: but if he have continued ſo long that he is far ſpent and waſted, take out his Tongue, prick the Vein under it with an Awl in two or three places, and ſo it will bleed, whereby he will be well again.

CHAP. VIII.

For Worms in Cattel.

STamp a good handful of Wormwood, ſtrain it with Ale or Beer, and give to your Cattel troubled with Worms. Some ſtamp Garlick and mix it with Milk or Ale, and give them. Some ſtamp a good handful of Mugwort, and being ſtrained with Ale, give it the Beaſt. Others ſtamp Garden-Creſſes, then ſtrain it with Ale, and give them. All which are very good Remedies for Worms in Cattel.

CHAP. IX.

To help a Beaſt that piſſeth Blood.

IN arable Land you may find Shell-ſtones, which burnt and beaten to powder, and mixed in a Veſſel of Milk and Water, is very proper to be given to your Cattel, or you may take Bloud-wort and Knot-graſs, and ſtamp a handful of each together, mix them with good Milk; add to it ſome Runnet and ſome of the husks of Acorns. Give this in a drenching-Horn twice a day, and it will effect what is deſired.

CHAP.

CHAP. X.

To help Cattel that cannot piſs.

TAke *Cardunus Benedictus* a good quantity, and ſteep it in White-Wine a whole night, afterward ſtrain it; you may alſo add ſome Sow-thiſtles a handful of Anniſeeds and two or three Onions ſliced all ſteeped the ſame time and ſtrained, and ſo given to the Beaſt it will force Urin and increaſe the Appetite.

CHAP. XI.

For Beaſts that are gored or hurt by one anothers Horns.

YOu may take red Earth and Oker and mingle them well together with a little Ale, make a Salve of it and ſpread it upon a Plaſter. Aſhes finely ſifted mixed with the Grounds of Ale, have been found an excellent Remedy, but it muſt be made very thick and applied by Plaſter to the place grieved. It certainly heals.

CHAP. X.

To breed Calves and cut them.

AS Husbands relate, it is not convenient to take Calves, of which you will make young Bulls, which are calved within the Prime, which is counted five days after the Change, for they will not prove well: And Calves (or any other Beaſt) then calved are not good to keep, but to eat or ſell: Two Calves of a hundred will be enough to make Bulls. For the reſt it will be beſt to cut them quickly after they are calved, or two years old; then mix with Litharge the Aſhes of Vine-Twigs burnt, and put it upon the Sores, three days after for fear of Swelling anoint it with melted Tar mingled with the aforeſaid Aſhes.

Some approve of gelding of Calves young and tender, not with Iron, but a cloven Hazel-ſtick preſſed together, raſing the end by degrees, whilſt it is conſumed. This way is counted beſt, for it is performed without wound.

It

It is not ſo convenient to cut a Calf (that is big) the firſt year, as it is the ſecond.

In Autumn at the Decreaſe of the Moon, it is beſt to cut them, the Sign not being in the place; then take two ſtraight Laths, like Rulers of Wood, made in faſhion of a pair of Tongs or Barnacles, caſting him down, his Feet being traveſſed together, touch him with Iron, afterwards take up the Stone with the Nerves and Strings they hang by, and cloſe your Tongs under betwixt his Body and Stones; let the Stones be on the out-ſide, but cloſe them hard together, then firſt ſlit the purſe of one Cod, and put forth the Stone therein. Let it be cut off within hard by the ſaid tongue, cloſe up the Nerves; then take out the other Stone. For fear of bleeding too much, anoint him with freſh Greaſe, and let him go, but cut them ſo that you leave the ends of the String joining to the ſaid Nerve, and he will not loſe ſo much blood, and will not be Feminate nor ſtout of his Members. After ye have thus dreſſed, anoint him with freſh Greaſe.

CHAP. XIII.

The Government of Cattel and the ordering of Kine with their Calves.

THe right and good ordering and nouriſhing of Cattel and Kine (as able Authors relate to us) muſt be the Care of the Husbandman himſelf, or ſome honeſt experienced Servant that will have a diligent eye over his Cattel, whether they be Oxen or Kine, at home or abroad, and to ſee that they have (both Morning and Evening) Meat and Water ſufficient, and in due time; and if ſick, to provide them Medicins, and to get Stalls for them to lie in, ſet Eaſt and Weſt, with Windows and Doors Southward but cloſe Northerly, for the better ſecurity of the Cattel from the ſharpneſs of the Winter. Some hold ſtrewing of Salt beat, on the Boards or Stones under them to be good for the preſervation of the health. Some ſtrew Sand on their Plinks for fear they ſhould ſlide. Be ſure they be well littered after their work at night.

If you put them out in the Spring with your Kine, ſeparate the young Calves as ſoon as they have ſucked their Dams, and put them ſeveral into a Houſe, where they muſt remain one day, if you have

a

a mind they ſhould ſuck, turn them out to their Dams only Morning and Night, then houſe them again. Thus doing your Calves will be fairer and fatter than going with their Dams. It is neceſſary to give Kine with Calf of the green Herb called Melilot, ſtampt with Honey, ſteept all night in Milk, this Herb aforeſaid (although ſhe be a good Nurſe herſelf) without ſhe be well looked to by the Owner, ſhe will not be able to give nouriſhment enough to her Calf. Farmers Wives may (without any waſt) make Butter and Cheeſe, when the Calves are took up and the Milk put apart, gather your Cheeſe well and cloſe, preſs out the Whey clean, if you leave any in, the Cheeſe will be ſowr and full of holes, ſcald and waſh your Pots and other Veſſels thoroughly. Let not your Women-Servants touch the Butter or Cheeſe when they have their monthly terms, for it is not wholſom. It is not a good Sign for a day-labouring Ox to bate none of his fleſh, but to continue fat, for he is Flegmatick. Open his mouth every eighth day, waſh it with his own Water, it will draw forth the Flegm, which he would ſtill ſwallow down. The Flegm oft-times hinders his eating, and you may diſcern that it occaſions the Catarrh or Rheum by the hanging down his Ears, by the dropping of his Eyes, and being watery: Then bruiſe Thyme in White-wine and waſh his Mouth, and rub it with Fat and Garlick well mixt; after this waſh it again as before. Several Remedies are preſcribed for it, but for the Catarrh or Rheum, if his Eyes do inflame, let but bleed on the vein under his Tongue, and you ſhall find the Cure perfected to your hearts content.

CHAP. XIV.

For Purging of Cattel.

BRuiſe and ſeeth in Water the Leaves of the Alder, ſtrain them, give them to the Beaſt in the Morning, and both Choler and Flegm ſhall be purged downwards by it, it will likewiſe cleanſe the Stomach of Water.

Others take a quart of Ale or Beer, putting into it a good handful of the Tops, Leaves and Flowers of Centaury, which they boil until a quart of it waſt away; then it being pretty warm (but

(but be ſure well ſtrained) they give it the Beaſt, if the Sign ſerve. This is a gentle Purge for Choler and Flegm, but chiefly Flegm, and is neceſſary at any time for the Cattel. If the weather be ſharp, let him be in the Houſe ſix hours after. Some put into a Pint or more of honied Water or Ale a handful of green Broom-Crops, which they ſteep a night, and ſo (being ſtrained the next morning) give it the Beaſt warm. There are ſeveral other things might be ſet down, but theſe well ordered the Beaſts will do well, God willing.

CHAP. XV.

For Fatting of Oxen.

COuntrymen and my Friends, if you deſire to fat your Oxen well, obſerve theſe following Directions; firſt, he will like his Meat the better if he go in the Sun, or if with warm Water he be waſhed three times a week; then give him to eat ground Beans, dried Barley, or Elm-Leaves; or if you boil Coleworts with Bran, it will make their Bellies looſe, and add to Nutriment more than Barley; Chaff likewiſe ſometimes mixt with ground Beans is very good. If your Oxen by labour be weak or feeble, once a month give him Fetches beat, and ſteeped in water, mixt with beaten Bran, and to make your Beaſt lively and nimble, rub his Horns with Turpentine being mixt with Oil Olive; touch not any other part of his beſide the Horns, for it will in ſome time endanger his Sight. Alſo if you rub and chafe the Muzzel or Mouth of an Ox with Garlick bruiſed or Leeks well beat; he being made to ſwallow it, he will aſſuredly be cured of a Riſing that comes over the Heart of the Beaſt, whereby he ſeems as though he would vomit.

CHAP.

CHAP. XVI.

A certain Cure for the Murrain or Plague amongſt Cattel.

THere are ſeveral Remedies for the Plague or Murrain amongſt Cattel, if taken betimes. Infectious Bloud cauſes the Diſeaſe; it is vulgarly diſcerned in the Head by a Swelling, they will have great Eyes that run of Water; they will eat though they are ſick, and when once they froth at mouth they are near Death. For Cure of this Diſeaſe it is thought good of ſome to bind a ſmall Cord hard about the Neck, then take a Launcet and ſtrike on the farther ſide, where you will find a Vein, bleed him a Pint or more, and ſo for the other ſide of the neck: It will ſtanch, the Cord being taken away, but it is more dangerous of bleeding ſtill if the Sign be there; and if it continue, put to it Nettles and Wild Tanſie bruiſed with Salt, and ſome give them Drinks. Thus ſerve your infected Cattel, being all together in one Paſture, by this means you will avoid great peril in this Diſeaſe. The Murrain is caught by venomed Graſs, by Company, by poiſoned Water, and by Hunger.

CHAP. XVII.

To rear Calves that they may increaſe.

IT will be Prudence in a Husbandman every year to rear as many Calves as he thinks neceſſary for the maintenance of his Stock. Thoſe that fall betwixt *Candlemas* and *May* are eſteemed of beſt, for at that time they can ſpare their Milk, and there will be Graſs enough, and they will be able by the next Winter to ſhift for themſelves with other Cattel, being looked after a little; alſo their Dams in *June* will take Bull again and bring other Calves in the ſpace above-mentioned. A Cow is barren oftentimes and the Calf weak, if it be after *May* ere ſhe Calf, and beſides it would be too chargeable to rear Calves the latter end of the year, and to keep their Dams in the Houſe all the Winter, as it is practiſed in ſome places: Again for their own Advantage it will be beſt they come

betimes, that they may put them out, for Graſs increaſes a great deal more milk, when the Kine are abroad, than Hay or Straw at home, for dry meat will abate Milk, Graſs does not; and if your Calves have been uſed to Graſs, wean them abroad and not at home; your Calves will have great Bellies if you wean them with Hay, Graſs makes them ſtir better and not noxious to them. In the Winter-ſeaſon inſtal them, rather than let them run abroad anights; when you take them in you may give them Hay, but in the day-time let them feed in the Fields. Obſerve but theſe Directions, and you will find them a great deal fitter for the Plough, when you come to make uſe of them.

CHAP. XVIII.

For a Cow that has newly Calved wanting Milk.

ANiſeeds boiled in Ale and ſtrained, given warm to a Cow that has newly Calved, and being poor wants Milk, is very good for the increaſe of it. Colewort-Leaves boiled or raw, will do the like: Alſo Barley and Fennel-ſeed ſod together is good for her. There are ſeveral others, but theſe are the principal approved Medicins to increaſe Milk in Kine.

CHAP. XIX.

For the Shoulder-Bone of a Beaſt out of Joint.

YOu may eaſily diſcern by the tripping of a Beaſt on the ſame Foot, that the Shoulder-Bone is out of Joint; for Cure whereof throw him on the ground, and bind faſt his other three Legs, then ſtretch out the other Leg and put one hand on his Shoulder, where the Bone went out, and the other near his Body within ſide, and place the Bone right, and juſt even with the other Bone; when it is right and faſt together, get two wooden Pricks of a length, and boaring two holes croſs under the Skin in the middle of the Joint, from both ſides of the Joint, they muſt be diſtant an inch and an half from each other, and there put your Pricks croſs under the Skin, then wrap it round with ſtrong Pack-thred binding

binding of it round the ends of the Pricks draw up the Skin in a Lump with it; ſo when your Thred is faſtned, there let it be until it drop away of itſelf, and the Beaſt will be well, fit for work in two days time. If it be in the heat of Summer, anoint the place with Tar by reaſon of the Flies.

CHAP. XX.

To cure Cattel that be ſick and will not feed in Paſture.

BRuiſe and boil of Horehound, Camomil, Betony, Cinquefoil, Penitoial and Agrimony, of each a quantity alike in a quart of Ale, until half of it be conſumed, with a Stick of bruiſed Licoris; afterwards ſtrain it, and mix with it three penniworth of good Treacle; give it him faſting, when it is wel mixt together, walk him for ſome ſpace after, and he will certainly recover.

CHAP. XXI.

A certain Sign to know if an Ox or Cow be ſound.

GRipe him on the Back with your hand behind the Fore-ſhoulder, and if he be not ſound, he will ſhrink with his Back, and almoſt fall down; but on the contrary, if he be ſound, he will not ſhrink in the leaſt.

CHAP. XXII.

A Remedy for the Diſeaſe in the Guts of an Ox or Cow, if it be Flux, Colick or any ſuch like thing.

IF at any time your Beaſt be troubled with the Colick, Belly-ake or Gnawing in the Guts, it will ſpeedily give him eaſe, if you boil good ſtore of Oil in the water he uſes to drink. For the Bloudy-Flux give the Beaſt ſome Powder of Wood, Roſe-Seeds well beat and dried, and brewed with a quart of Ale, and it will cure him.

CHAP. XXIII.

For Weakneſs, Stiffneſs or Soreneſs in the Sinews of a Beaſt.

IF your Beaſts Sinews be at any time tender or do ſhrink, you may perceive it by the flow pace he goes. Bind to the place out of order Mallows and Chickweed; but they muſt be boiled in the Dregs of Ale or Vineger, and being very warm when you lay them on, they will very much ſtrengthen the Sinews.

CHAP. XXIV.

A Cure for the Palat of a Beaſts Mouth that is down.

THe Palat of a Beaſts Mouth by hard working will be apt to come down, which you may diſcern by two things, they will often ſigh, and would fain eat, but cannot. To cure him, throw him down, putting it up again with your hand, then bleed him in the Palat and anoint it with Honey and Salt, and turn him to Graſs, for you muſt not let him eat any Hay or dry Meat.

CHAP. XXV.

For any inward Diſeaſes in Cattel.

TAke a handful of Wormwood and as much Rue, and boil them in a quart of Ale; then let it be ſtrained, and put into it two ſpoonfuls of the Juice of Garlick, as much of Houſe-Leek and as much of *London*-Treacle; make it lukewarm, mix them well together, and then make the Beaſt drink of it, and you will in a ſhort time ſee the virtue of it againſt any inward Diſeaſe or drooping in Cattel.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXVI.

For all ſorts of Bruiſes in general.

FRy the leaſt ſort of Brook-lime with Tallow, and apply it hot to the place that is hurt, and if it does not expel it, yet it will ripen it and break it and heal it, as many by Experience have found to be very true.

CHAP. XXVII.

A Remedy to kill any ſorts of Worms either in Oxen, Cows, or Calves.

CHop the Herb Savin very ſmall, beat it with freſh Butter, then roll it up in Balls; give it the Beaſt, and it will deſtroy the Worms in their Bodies ſooner than any other thing. Likewiſe a little Black Sope mixt with ſweet Wort, and given the Beaſts to drink, will make them void their Worms better and quicker than other things.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Againſt the Gout in Cattel.

YOu may diſcern by the often riſing and ſwelling of your Beaſts Joints, whether they have the Gout or not: For Cure whereof, boil Galingal in the Dregs of Ale and ſweet Butter, and being made like a Pultice, clap it to the place that is diſordered.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXIX.

For Purging of Cattel as ſome do.

GReen weedy Graſs growing under Trees in Orchards is the beſt thing to purge Beaſts naturally, and the beſt Purging Medicin for them is Sugar-candy, Butter and Tar, well mingled together, then rolled up in Balls as big as Hen-Eggs, and ſo given them.

CHAP. XXX.

Things good to breed Milk in Kine.

IF your Cows Milk after ſhe hath Calved, come not down as it was wont to do: Beat to powder Coriander and Aniſeeds, and put them into a quart of ſtrong Poſſet-Ale, and make her drink every Morning; which thing alone will beget great and wonderful increaſe in her Milk; beſides it will aſſuredly cauſe it ſpring, and to come down in abundance.

CHAP. XXXI.

For the Rot in Beaſts.

IF your Beaſts wax lean, ſlight their Meat or ſcour much behind, you may aſſure your ſelf they are ſubject to rottenneſs; you muſt beat to pouder Bay-Berries, and mix with it Myrrh, Ivy Leaves, Elder-Leaves and Feverfew, a good lump of Clay and Bay-Salt altogether in ſtrong Urin, and when it is warm, give the Beaſt half a pint thereof to drink, and it will firmly knit and preſerve them.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXII.

Againſt Vomiting of Blood.

I Muſt give you to underſtand, that this Sickneſs happens to your Beaſts by being hard kept, and then put into good Paſture where they feed over-much, and ſo get ſuch rank Blood, that you may diſcern it flow from their Mouths. The Remedying of this muſt be to bleed the Beaſt, and afterwards to drink give him ſome Bole-Armoniack and Ale mixt together.

CHAP. XXXIII.

For the over-flowing of the Gall in Beaſts.

IF the Skin and the Eyes of your Beaſt look yellow, it is a true ſign of the over-flowing of the Gall: For a Remedy, firſt let him Blood, afterwards for three mornings one after another make him a Drink of two pints of Milk, Saffron and Turmerick; mix it all together; then give it him, and it will help him.

CHAP. XXXIV.

To draw out Thorns.

IF at any time your Beaſts accidentally get Thorns or Stubs in their Feet, get but ſome black Sope and black Snails, and let them be well beat to a Salve; then lay them to the ſore place, and it will by degrees draw them out, and your Beaſt (whether Ox, Cow or Calf) will in a ſhort time be perfectly well again.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXV.

A Cure for Feverish Cattel.

BEasts many times surfeit by their Meat being raw and musty, whereby the Fever cometh upon them, or if they are kept in the Cold (through a Flux of cold Humors ingendred by it) they will have a Fever. If they tremble, groan or some at mouth, it is a true sign they have it: To cure him, let him bloud, sprinkle his Hay with Water, and boil three or four Plantan Roots and two spoonfuls of *London* Treacle in a quart of Ale, and then give it him to drink,

These Remedies afore-mentioned are the best (as by experience several have found) for Oxen, Cows, and Calves, some I know by my own Experience; others are collected out of such able skilful Authors that would never have prescribed such Medicines, if they would not certainly have cured the Beasts.

The right Method for the Ordering of Cattel.

II. Of Sheep.

CHAP. I.

Some ſhort but ſure Rules for a certain Cure of Diſeaſes in Sheep.

IF the greateſt quantity of your Sheep happen to fall ſick, Change of Paſture will conduce much towards their Recovery, and place them a good diſtance from the Ground they went in before: If the Murrain come by Cold, put them in the Sun; if by Heat, in the Shade: Alſo over-driving them and ſo will lying ſtill be the worſe for their Diſtemper; you muſt keep them going on a moderate pace. Likewiſe it will be much better to part them at their new Paſtures, for in a ſmall parcel the Infection will not prevail ſo much as in a great quantity, and a few will be ſooner cured than a great many.

CHAP. II.

For the Itch and Maggots in your Sheep.

BRimſtone and Tar well ſtirred together over a ſmall Fire is an excellent Remedy; when the Wool is ſheared off anoint the ſore place with that above-mentioned. Likewiſe Powder of Brimſtone mixt with Wax is good for the Scab.

CHAP. III.

For Sheeps Feet.

A Certain Cure for Sheeps Feet that are galled, is if you beat a Pomgranat not ripe with Alum, and adding to it a little Vineger, apply it to the place. Or the Powder of Galls burnt, mixed with red Wine, and ſo laid unto it, is very good.

CHAP. IV.

For broken Bones in Sheep.

IF accidentally any one happen to break his Leg, the Bones will be knit again, if you bruiſe yong Aſhen Leaves, and lay to it, or apply to it the Herbs of Comfrey, Betony, or Cuckow-ſpit well ſtampt, and the Bones will knit.

CHAP. V.

For the Glanders or Snivel in Sheep.

GIve them to drink honied Water, well mingled with the Juice of Betony, and it will help them. Some for their Cure, take a Stick, and (at what time they think fit) cleanſe their Noſes of all the Matter and Snivel they can get out. Others ſtamp the Herb called Bucks-Beard with Wine, which they ſay is an excellent Remedy for to drive Cold or Flegm out of their Bodies.

CHAP. VI.

For Sickneſs in Lambs.

IF your Lambs have a Fever or are grieved otherwiſe, the Diſtemper will be catching; therefore take them from their Dams,

Dams, and if you would have them well again in a ſhort time, force them to drink Rain-water mingled with ſome of the Ews Milk. Alſo ſome pour down their Throats Goats Milk with a Horn, and for ſome time after keep them warm; which is preſcribed for an excellent Medicin.

Sometimes your Lambs will have Scabs on their Chins, ſometimes on other places; if on their Chins, waſh the Palat of the Mouth and Sores with Cypreſs-Leaves ſtamped in Water; or Tar and Hogs-Greaſe mixt and made into an Ointment, is very good, but you muſt waſh the Scab with Vineger, before you anoint it. If they happen to be ſcabby on the Brisket or elſewhere, I might ſet down ſeveral Remedies, but I ſhall inſtance but one, which I do imagin to be the beſt, becauſe moſt Shepherds do generally uſe it, which is only ſome fine Greaſe mingled with Tar, and ſo to lay it upon the place infected.

CHAP. VII.

Some ſhort but neceſſary things to be obſerved concerning Sheep.

FIrſt, If the Wool come off when they have been ſcabby, greaſe them with Tar and Gooſe-greaſe, and it will grow again.

Secondly, For the Cough, ſtamp the great Nettle, then let it be ſtrained with Wine, and give him of the Juice thereof to drink, but it muſt be warm; and ſo he will be well. You muſt be ſure to take it in time, for until it be gone he will not be fat, but abate in his Fleſh daily.

Thirdly, If a Sheep be blind, which they will be for a ſpace at one time or other, ſome ſay he will be well again of himſelf, but if you bleed him under the Eye, or drop Tar in his Eye, he ſhall recover his Sight the ſooner.

Fourthly, Scabs often come on the Muzzels of Sheep by pricking their Lips and Muzzels with eating the Tops of Furz, which

you muſt anoint with Plantan and freſh Greaſe boiled both together, and it will perfect their Cure.

Fifthly, They are troubled with the Haw in the Eye, for which the Juice of Pimpernel dropt into the Eye and ſhut it cloſe, is very good.

Sixthly, A Shepherd muſt always carry with him his Knife, Sheep-hook, Sheers and Tar-Box, and a Dog muſt not be wanting, which muſt be ſuch a one as he has brought up to his own command, to go or ſtand ſtill as he pleaſes.

Seventhly, Sheep ſometimes have the Pox, which you may diſcern by things like red Pimples on their Skin, and Locks of Wool will hang looſe on their Backs; the Pimples will be as broad as a Groat, and many Sheep for want of early looking after, die by it.

Eighthly, Sheep by feeding on Hills or places full of Fern are in the Spring-time commonly troubled with the Cramp, or as ſome call it, the Wood-Evil; which Diſeaſe (without ſpeedy Remedy) will endanger their Lives in two days time. For Cure, cauſe them to be anointed with Neats-Foot Oil and Houſe-Leek ſtamped together, or Scallions or Bugloſs ſtamped and bound to their Legs is good. Likewiſe it will help towards their Cure, to remove them into ſome other lower Meadows to feed in.

Ninethly, Sheep in the hot ſeaſon will be troubled with Fly-Blows and Maggots, which you may be certain of, if they bite, ſtamp or ſhake their Tails, and many times they are wet; to dry it up, throw Powder that is very dry upon it, ſome time after ſtrike it off again, and anoint it well with Tar, and they will be perfectly well.

Tenthly, by cropping ſome noxious Herb your Sheep may be poiſoned, which you may eaſily know by their Heads hanging down, and they will ſwell and ſtagger and ſome at mouth, and

in

in a ſhort time (without ſpeedy Remedy) fall down dead, which to prevent, cut the Bladders which you will ſee under his Tongue, then chafe it with Lome beat ſmall or the crums of Bread, and afterwards waſh it down. If his water be ſtopped, pour ſome Drink down his Throat, and give him Juice of Wormwood in Vineger, and it will cure him.

Eleventhly, Sheep may have Worms in their Guts, which come by reaſon of ſome cold Humor; you may know it by ſeveral things, he will not feed as formerly, he groans, hangs down his head and many times ſwells, which without help will ſpeedily kill him: Now for his Cure, give him Powder of Worm-ſeed in a little Malmſey or Powder of Savin in Ale or Wine finely beat and it will throughly heal them.

Twelfthly, if you imagin your Sheep have the Rot, honied Water warm mixt with Elder-Berries will clear their Bodies of Water; or ſeeth a little Water, put ſome Milk to it, then give it to them; for it will purge them between their Fleſh and Skin. If they will drink ſalt Water after they have been a great Journey, you may aſſure your ſelf of their Health, and that they will do well.

CHAP. VIII.

For the Red Water in Sheep.

SHeep are oftentimes troubled with the Red-Water, which is a poiſonous Diſeaſe, very noxious to the Heart; for this Water will ſo ſcald and conſume it, that at length he will periſh by it, without ſome ſpeedy help, which muſt be done thus: Firſt, Bleed him in the Foot between the Claws, and under the Tail; then ſtamp Wormwood and Rue with Bay-Salt, and it will cure them, being applied to the ſore places.

CHAP.

CHAP. IX.

For the Itch or Scab in Sheep.

WAsh the ſcabby places of your Sheep with the Root of Camelion noir and the Herb Bears-Foot boiled both together in Water; it muſt be warm; and without any other thing they will be cured.

CHAP. X.

Herbs hurtful for Sheep.

SEveral Herbs are very noxious to Sheep: I ſhall inſtance the principal; Firſt, Spear-wort, which uſually grows in moiſt places, is very thick and hard of digeſtion. Knot-graſs and mill-dew'd Graſs are not good. Black Ellebore is very hurtful for Sheep or other Cattel, if they eat any ſtore of it. Two-peny Graſs, and dead Graſs or rotten Fog which is in low Commons and Meadows is very deſtructive to them, and will breed the Rot in them. Hemlock and Muſhroms are naught for Sheep. Laſtly, if Sheep eat Oak-Leaves when they are green, it is bad for them; eſpecially for yong Lambs, for it will certainly kill them.

CHAP. XI.

Againſt the Gall in Sheep.

SHeep will ſtand ſhrinking their four Feet together, if they are troubled with the Flowing of the Gall; you muſt let him bloud under the Tail; then give him to drink half a Spoonful of good Vineger and as much *Aqua Vitæ* mixed together, and he will be better.

CHAP.

CHAP. XII.

The Turning Diſeaſe in Sheep.

SHeep oftentimes hold their Heads on one ſide, by reaſon of this Turning Sickneſs. Some Shepherds give advice, that if the Sheep hold their Heads on the right ſide, ye muſt cut off the Horn on the left ſide, for under that Horn there lies a Worm which will be killed if you anoint it with Tar, and they will be well again.

CHAP. XIII.

Some Directions to increaſe Milk in Ews.

THere is nothing better than altering of Paſture for the increaſing of Milk in Ews; put them to graze ſometimes in Valleys, ſometimes in Hills, let them feed longeſt upon ſhort Graſs, if it be ſweet, for there they eat moſt heartily; for touching giving them Fitches, Dill and Aniſeeds, and ſuch like, Milk will ſpring much better by Change of Paſture.

CHAP. XIV.

For looſe Teeth.

IF your Sheeps Teeth be looſe, let him bloud in his Gums, and under the Tail, and afterwards rub his Teeth with Earth, Salt and Sage, and they will faſten.

CHAP. XV.

For the Wild-Fire in Sheep.

THere is a dangerous Sickneſs, which is called the Wild-Fire, that will infect the whole Flock, if not lookt after. Some bury the firſt infected Sheep alive, with his heels upwards before the Sheep-Coat door; but it is very certain you may ſave your Sheep alive, if you take but Chervil, ſtamp it with old Ale, make a Salve thereof, and anoint the Sore therewith, and your Sheep will be ſure to recover again.

The right Method for the Ordering of Cattel.

III. Of Hogs.

THere are ſeveral Diſeaſes which Hogs (as well as other Creatures) are incident unto, which you may find diſcourſed of in the Pages following, with Directions for the Cure of them.

CHAP. I.

For Impoſthumes under the Throats of Hogs.

IF your Hogs have Kernels or Impoſtumes underneath their Throats, they muſt be let bloud under the Tongue; and when they have bled ſufficiently, beat ſome fine white Meal and Salt together, and rub and chafe his Throat and Groin with it, and he will do well. Others preſcribe as followeth; you muſt give them ſix ounces of *Garum*, which you may buy at the Apothecaries, then with a flaxen Cord bind it thereunto with Ferules of Wood, and hang them about his neck, ſo that they may touch the Impoſtumes and Kernels, and it will certainly cure them.

CHAP. II.

Directions to preſerve your Hogs from the Meaſels.

IN the heat of Summer, as from the middle of *July* to the middle of *Auguſt*, in which time are the hotteſt and Dog-days, you muſt give your Hogs ſome cooling Herbs chopt ſmall, as Lettuce, Endive, Succory, Violet-Leaves, Fumitory, Dandelion, Sowthiſtle, and ſuch like, or the Leaves of Dwale, they muſt be mingled with their Waſh or other Meat: Theſe Herbs aforeſaid are very

good to keep them in a cool temper; you muſt uſe but a few of the Leaves of Dwale, for they are exceeding cold in Operation. For I muſt acquaint you, that it is the great and vehement heat of Bloud in Hogs which doth breed the Meaſels. There will be Kernels in the outward part of the Body, which will appear in his Throat, and at the roots of his Tongue, and you may firſt know his Infection, if he be hoarſe, or rattle in his voice when he cries, it is a certain ſign; then if you look into his mouth, you may ſee the Kernels under his Tongue; thus you may know Meaſly Hogs. Likewiſe to preſerve them from the Meaſles, put mens Urin amongſt their Waſh, and it will keep them from it. Sope-water and Fiſh-water is naught for them, it will breed the Meaſles: Some ſay if you often uſe to put Muſtard amongſt the Waſh they eat, it will in a ſhort time make them Meaſly.

Now it will be neceſſary to give you ſome Directions to cure your Meaſled Hogs, for take all the Care you can to prevent it, ſome may happen to be ſo. An approved Remedy to help them, is to ſhut them up in a Sty without any thing whatſoever, either Meat or Water for the ſpace of three days and three nights. Then make a hole in the tops of half a dozen Apples and take out the Cores; afterwards fill it up with Brimſtone beat to powder, and cover the Brimſtone with Pieces of Apples, and ſo throw them to your Meaſly Hogs; firſt give him one or two and ſo the reſt, for being hungry he will eat them all; then after two or three hours give him a little Meat, and no more until the next Morning, then the next Morning ſerve him as aforeſaid with five or ſix Apples, as before is directed. Thus ſerve him five or ſix days, and he will be well again. Alſo ſome mix the Lees of Sope with ſome ſtrong Lee of a Buck, and give that, and uſe them as the other aforeſaid, and give him no Meat for an hour or two after; and they ſay this is a very good Remedy againſt the aforeſaid Sickneſs.

CHAP. III.

What Herbs are good, and what are bad for Hogs to eat.

THe Roots of Daffadils are very good for to cleanſe the Lights of Hogs. Knot-graſs is good for Hogs, and they love it marvellous

vellous well; it binds the Belly, and cauſes Urin; the Juice of it put into their ears, helps the pains in the Head; theſe are the Herbs that are wholſom.

Likewiſe many there be which are not wholſom: The Herb called Gooſe-Foot, or the Camelion Thiſtle will kill Hogs, if they eat of them. If they eat of Hen-bane or Hemlock, which is ſo cold in operation, that they are very nigh unto a cold Venom, and will make Hogs lie as if they were dead for ſome time; to cure them, warm the Juice of Cucumbers, give it them to drink, for it will make them vomit, whereby they will ſo throughly cleanſe their Bodies, that in a ſhort time they will recover their Health again.

CHAP. IV.

Of the Garget, Catarrh and Staggers in a Hog.

FIrſt, for the Garget, it is very noxious to them and many are killed by it, you may know by a Swelling and Inflammation in the Throat behind a Hogs Jaws. For to give him eaſe they do uſe to ſlit the Sore in the middle, and then flay up the Skin on both ſides of it; afterwards they rub it with Salt within, and lay Tar without, and he does well. Some rub it with Nettles and Salt. Some mix burnt Alum with Plantan.

Hogs have ſometimes the Catarrh or Rheum, which makes their Eyes water; it happens to them by eating a great deal of rotten Fruit, which breeds a corrupt matter almoſt as bad as the Plague. For help, old Capers mixt with their Meat or Waſh is good; or Coleworts both red and white put amongſt their Meat is alſo good. Some mingle Marſh-Mallows with their Meat. Others boil Liverwort in honied Water, and give it them. All theſe aforeſaid are excellent things to ſtay the Rheum or Catarrh.

For the Staggers in a Hog, give him of the Herb called Starewort or Gall-wort in Milk, and he will amend.

CHAP. V.

How to kill Lice or Maggots in Hogs.

AS long as your Hogs are louſie they will not thrive; be ſure you keep them well in cold Weather, for it is through Poverty and want of good feeding in the Winter, they are ſo full of this Vermin. To rid them, take Quick-ſilver, firſt kill it with faſting Spittle and Sallet-Oil; then mix therewith freſh Greaſe or Neats-foot Oil, and ſo anoint them all over. Some melt Sope and Tar together, with the powder of Staves-acre, and ſo anoint them with it. If Maggots breed in your Hogs Ears, or any other hollow place under the Skin, drop the Juice of Hemlock into the Hole and they will die or avoid; alſo take but Oil and put in that place and all the Maggots will die or avoid the place incontinent, if they live; this has been well experienced by ſeveral perſons.

CHAP. VI.

How to ſpay a Sow.

YOu muſt firſt lay her upon ſome Form or Board, then with a Cord bind her mouth faſt, lay her ſo that her left ſide be upward; then take your Launcet and ſtrip away the Hair two inches long, three fingers from the hinder Leg, and likewiſe from the edge of her Flank: Then with the point of your Launcet cut aſlope her Belly through the skin two inches and a half long, ſo that you may put in your Fore-finger towards her Back, and there you ſhall feel two Kernels as big as Acorns on both ſides the Birth, and with the top of your finger draw one to the ſlit, then cut the ſtring with your Knife; ſo take out the other alſo, and cut them off, then ſtrike away the Bloud and ſtitch up the ſlit again with a ſtrong Thread. Be ſure you have a ſpecial Care of her Guts, then afterwards anoint her with Tar, and ſo you may let her go.

THE

THE TABLE OF THE APPENDIX.

I. Of Oxen.

Chapter.		Page.
1	*For the Cough in Oxen*	1
2	*For a Beasts Hoof hurt*	2
3	*For a Bruise on a Beasts Shoulder*	ibid.
4	*For a Beast that has accidentally gotten Venom either in his Tongue or Body*	ibid.
5	*To kill Lice or Ticks in Cattel*	3
6	*Against the Swelling of Cattel by eating of green Corn*	ibid.
7	*For an Ox or other Beast that have lost their Quide*	ibid.
8	*For Worms in Cattel*	4
9	*To help a Beast that pisseth Blood*	ibid.
10	*To help Cattel that cannot piss*	5
11	*For Beasts that are gored or hurt by one anothers Horns*	ibid.
12	*To breed Calves and eat them*	ibid.
13	*The Government of Cattel and the ordering of Kine with their Calves*	6
14	*For Purging of Cattel*	7
15	*For Fatting of Oxen*	8
16	*A certain Cure for the Murrain or Plague amongst Cattel*	9
17	*To rear Calves that they may increase*	ibid.
18	*For a Cow that has newly Calved wanting Milk*	10
19	*For the Shoulder-Bone of a Beast out of Joint*	ibid.
20	*To*	

Chapter.		Page.
20	*To cure Cattel that be ſick and will not feed in Paſture*	11
21	*A certain Sign to know if an Ox or Cow be ſound*	ibid.
22	*A Remedy for the Diſeaſe in the Guts of an Ox or Cow, if it be Flux, Colick or any ſuch like thing*	ibid.
23	*For Weakneſs, Stiffneſs or Soreneſs in the Sinews of a Beaſt*	12
24	*A Cure for the Palat of a Beaſts Mouth that is down*	ibid.
25	*For any inward Diſeaſes in Cattel*	ibid.
26	*For all ſorts of Bruiſes in general*	13
27	*A Remedy to kill any ſorts of Worms either in Oxen, Cows, or Calves*	ibid.
28	*Againſt the Gout in Cattel*	ibid.
29	*For Purging of Cattel as ſome do*	14
30	*Things good to breed Milk in Kine*	ibid.
31	*For the Rot in Beaſts*	ibid.
32	*Againſt Vomiting of Blood*	15
33	*For the over-flowing of the Gall in Beaſts*	ibid.
34	*To draw out Thorns*	ibid.
35	*A Cure for Feveriſh Cattel*	16

II. Of Sheep.

Chapter.		Page.
1	*Some ſhort but ſure Rules for a certain Cure of Diſeaſes in Sheep*	17
2	*For the Itch and Maggots in your Sheep*	ibid.
3	*For Sheeps Feet*	18
4	*For broken Bones in Sheep*	ibid.
5	*For the Glanders or Snivel in Sheep*	ibid.
6	*For Sickneſs in Lambs*	ibid.
7	*Some ſhort but neceſſary things to be obſerved concerning Sheep*	19
8	*For the Red Water in Sheep*	21
9	*For the Itch or Scab in Sheep*	22
10	*Herbs hurtful for Sheep*	ibid.
11	*Againſt the Gall in Sheep*	ibid.
12	*The Turning Diſeaſe in Sheep*	23
13	*Some Directions to increaſe Milk in Ews*	ibid.
14	*For looſe Teeth*	ibid.
15	*For the Wild-Fire in Sheep*	24

III. Of Hogs.

Chapter.		Page.
1	*For Impoſtumes under the Throats of Hogs*	25
2	*Directions to preſerve your Hogs from the Meaſles*	ibid.
3	*What Herbs are good, and what are bad for Hogs to eat*	26
4	*Of the Garget, Catarrh, or Staggers in a Hog*	27
5	*How to kill Lice or Maggots in Hogs*	28
6	*How to ſpay a Sow*	ibid.

FINIS.